THE METHOD OF PHYSICK, CONTANING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY, FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies *and medicines, which our Physitions commonly* vse at this day, with the proportion, quantity, and names of each medicine.

By Philip Barrough.

The fifth Edition, corrected and amended.



LONDON.
Imprinted by *Richard Field*, dwelling in great Woodstreete. 1617.

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MAISTER, THE Lord Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honorable priuie Councell:

P.B. wisheth all health, with long life, and increase of honour.

THE chiefest thing (right Honorable and my singular good Lord) that emboldeneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any personage, is the affinity betweene the matter of the worke which they offer, and the mind of him to whom it is presented. And as the ancient comicall Poëts were wont to pen such Enterludes, as they thought wold be plausibly heard of all the auditory: so our common writers do fashion and shape the subiect of which they intreate, according to the affection of him, whose patronage they require in countenancing their writings. This (I say) though it be practised of all writers now adaies, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue followed: yet I haue swerued and digressed from so generall a custome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter so farre dissenting from your Honors disposition) so that as it may perhaps not without some colour be obiected, that I might haue prouided farre better (had I bene any way sufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politicke gouernment of our countrey, and of the weilding of a commonwealth: to the necessity of which calling, not Fortune the Queene of the old Philosophers, but

ſed himſelfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magiſtrate taketh vpon him his office vnwillingly. But that obiection will ſoone be taken away, if we conſider how fooliſh a thing it were to inſtruct him with his imaginarie precepts, whom (beſides a great light of nature) moſt happy experience hath made a perfect and abſolute gouernour. Plato that moſt graue and wiſe deemer of the ſtate tyrannicall, was ſo many times conuicted of folly, how often he aduentured in the preſence of Kings to diſcourſe of the regiment of a Commonwealth. Dionyſius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme cruelty, or good by his prouident wiſedome, which both he left alike to his ſucceſſours to imitate) called that notable Philoſopher (whom I euen now named) into Sicilia, of purpoſe to heare him, and with great patience liſtened to him, as he diſputed of mans felicity, and admired him as he handled thoſe morall vertues, which Socrates his maiſter was feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the Kings attention) when he had ſtolen into the diſcourſe of Policie, Dionyſius felt himſelfe ſo moued, that he had exerciſed his tyrannie againſt him alſo, if Dion and Ariſtomanes had not recouered him out of his iawes, and ſo rid him out of the land, by ſelling him to Polis the Lacedæmonian Merchant. And this was the verdict, that the wiſe King (when his fury was ſomewhat calmed) gaue of that moſt learned Philoſopher for his wholeſome counſell (as he thought) namely, that his diſcourſes ſeemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: ſo much Experience diſdaineth to be controlled by Art, and ſo impatient is he of inſtitution, whoſe knowledge is acquired Vſu & Memoria (the two ancient parents of wiſedome.) What a great argument of folly therefore ſhall he giue, that ſhall go about to lay a plot for your Honour, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernment, who haue ſo many yeares, in ſo troubleſome a commonwealth, and to the moſt wiſe and vertuous Princeſſe in the world, bene retained as a moſt Honourable and graue Counſellour? I will not ſay as Zopyrus vnto his Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Creſus vnto his Cyrus; the one of which by policy aduiſed his King to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to his ſubiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne vnfortunate ex-

experience, directed him how to conney any dangerous enterprise; all which serued their Princes to none other vse, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glory by bloudy oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Xenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, who thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them with forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amity, the strõgest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needs confesse that these comparisons do faile in representing so much as I do conceiue. For, that I may not feare the suspition of flattery in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life, so gorgeously and stately set forth by the Historiãs of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage, two such notable actors; namely, so redoubted, so peereless, and so vertuous a Princesse holding the Scepter? so graue, so wise, and so prouident a Counseller sustaining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saued with your Honor) pursue your praises yet farther; but I know very well, that you (who with an vnwearied affection do not ceasse continually to commit such vertuous deeds as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembred by another. And truly I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certaintie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of all good things; before whom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blameworthy, then shamlesly to assume vnto our selues what soeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? Namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, which is so impossible in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie which feareth not to come vnder your learned censure. Which excellency of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answer, I purposed (as I thought) more politickly to assay your humanity; which indeed, graceth alll the rest of your vertues: which (I thought) I might soone abuse, in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge; and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the commonwealth, in which your are alwayes busied, together with the inconuenient vse of the studie, hath kept your Honor from being acquainted

with. Which bold attempt of mine, your Wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemency encouraged me to enterprise it. For I do plainely confesse, that I haue not thought this booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnability, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue farre more eloquent then this of ours, discerne & know the secrets of Physicke, which I haue now in part reuealed; if the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, then that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate study. And yet neuertheleſſe, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affectatiō of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countrymen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke: and also (if I may without the suspect of vaineglorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commodity vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Emperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnesse which I haue alwayes had (though of late it hath bene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: I say, these causes meeting thus together, did especially induce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offering to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite your Honors most fauourable Protection, that this book of mine (vnable of it selfe) may run vnder your patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venimous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the aduancement of his glory, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen and protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen which her Maiestie hath layd vpon your shoulders; and with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,
PHILIP BARROVGH.

The

The Preface to the Reader.

WHen God had perfected that wonderfull worke of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had assigned to euery part thereof his speciall duty: namely to the water to harbour fishes, to the aire to vphold all fethered foules, to the earth to foster beasts, and to produce & bring forth good and wholesome herbes and trees: and ouer all these, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man, his last and noblest creature: he demanded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered, Nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secrets of his labours, to talke and commune of them; with the which also, he, as workman of all, might be extolled and magnified: who partly moued by this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduance his glory, as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries: so now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the sundry conceptions of the heart, whatsoeuer is imagined. This fable (proceeding I know not from what brain) is remembred of *Philo* the Iew in his Treatise of the world: which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath as it were kept to himselfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacity of man: so there is no meanes by which a man can approch nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the secrets of nature, or any way whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industry atchieued, and to haue a care also, that it may be faithfully commended to his posterity. And doubtlesse this was the consideration that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glistering shewes which his riches & kingdome proffered him, applied his minde to the study of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discoursed not onely of birds & beasts, but of all herbes and trees, euen from the Cedar of Lebanon, to Hysope that goweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many Kings and noble personages, vowing to themselues without any light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudy darknesse of nature. And although they sometimes stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscurity, and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first, that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginnings of an Art, by setting downe certaine

with. Which bold attempt of mine, your Wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemency encouraged me to enterprise it. For I do plainely confesse, that I haue not thought this booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnability, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue farre more eloquent then this of ours, discerne & know the secrets of Physicke, which I haue now in part reuealed; if the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, then that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate study. And yet neuerthelesse, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affectatiõ of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countrymen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke: and also (if I may without the suspect of vaineglorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commodity vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Emperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnesse which I haue alwayes had (though of late it hath bene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: I say, these causes meeting thus together, did especially induce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offering to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite your Honors most fauourable Protection, that this book of mine (vnable of it selfe) may run vnder your patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venimous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the aduancement of his glory, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen and protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen which her Maiestie hath layd vpon your shoulders; and with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,
PHILIP BARROVGH.

The

The Preface to the Reader.

WHen God had perfected that wonderfull worke of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had assigned to euery part thereof his speciall duty: namely to the water to harbour fishes, to the aire to vphold all fethered soules, to the earth to foster beasts, and to produce & bring forth good and wholesome herbes and trees: and ouer all these, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man, his last and noblest creature: he demanded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered, Nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secrets of his labours, to talke and commune of them; with the which also, he, as workman of all, might be extolled and magnified: who partly moued by this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduance his glory, as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries: so now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the sundry conceptions of the heart, whatsoeuer is imagined. This fable (proceeding I know not from what brain) is remembred of *Philo* the Iew in his Treatise of the world: which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath as it were kept to himselfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacity of man: so there is no meanes by which a man can approch nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the secrets of nature, or any way whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industry atchieued, and to haue a care also, that it may be faithfully commended to his posterity. And doubtlesse this was the consideration that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glistering shewes which his riches & kingdome proffered him, applied his minde to the study of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discoursed not onely of birds & beasts, but of all herbes and trees, euen from the Cedar of Lebanon, to Hysope that goweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many Kings and noble personages, vowing to themselues without any light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudy darknesse of nature. And although they sometimes stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscurity, and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first, that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginnings of an Art, by setting downe certaine

precepts of the same, and after him *Osiris* the King of Ægypt, and *Zesostris* also King of the same countrey (though rudely) layed the foundation of Astronomy by demonstration of the course of the heauens, and of Physicke, by opening the nature of many herbes, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grieuous malady in Ægypt, and being not able by his owne experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preserued by the Priests of that countrey, who taught him the vertue of their water, whereas after in remembrance of this benefite he wrote this verse, rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniuersa proluit hominum mala:* The sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Philosopher had neuer brought vs newes out of Ægypt, either of their policie and gouernment of their countrey, or of their rare and exquisite knowledge in Astronomie, if he had not tasted of the benefite which the physicke of that time affoorded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasie to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the sea gulfe of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of Pontus shall be the first, who at one time vndertooke two mighty battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror: and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glory of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last ouerthrow. The which (as *Pliny* remembreth) was a like profitable to the common wealth, and to mans life: for in his Manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies for many infirmities of the same. *Euax* also the King of Arabia wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no King, either of Aethiopia, Aegypt, or Arabia, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Art of Physicke, or else by his liberality encouraged others to employ their time in the same? Which may make much (no doubt) to the credite of the Art, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselues, and haue thought themselues honored by the profession of the same. And, as many arguments do induce me to beleeue, besides the witnesse of Historians, that Physicke is the Art wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tied to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to Elis, *Diana* to Ephesus, *Apollo* to Delos, and so forth; *Aesculapius* the sonne of *Apollo* by the daugter of *Phlegias*, made a god for his cunning in Physicke, hath his temple and altars euery where, in Corinth, in Lacedæmon, in Athens, in Thebes, in Epidaure, in Arcadia, Messenia, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth:) all which honors so done to him, were instituted (no doubt) by the Kings and rulers of those countries, who especially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reason, that he who inuented an Art so generally auailable for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

inferiour

inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his line, sauing that the one was placed amongst the gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrey, onely by the accesse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderfull skill in Physicke? What familiarity had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? And to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarrie vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages; as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Aegineta*, and others. For it will easily appeare of what credite this noble science of Physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolency and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldened onely by the credite of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudency, that they would haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Cyprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Art he could breathe life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially reigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedon, vseth these words: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke: it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man; and it was so fed with the applause and approbation of his citizens who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the City with a traine of gods after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vpon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the midst resembling *Iupiter*, wore a purple robe, and a crowne of gold vpon his head, and held in his hand a mighty scepter. The opinion of this Science did so possesse the minds of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commodity of the whole countrey, and for the preseruation of mankinde: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be; whereof grew this excessiue pride, which hath arrested as it were the minds of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse ro visite euen the poorest, when their helpe is required. For seeing the life of the most miserable vassal is as deare in the sight of God, as the life of the most renowmed Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Gods hand, if he either hath proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place,

though

though (to ſpeake the truth) the arrogancy of many of our Phyſitions might giue vs ſufficient occaſion, wiſhing them to leaue off to imitate the ſwelling inſolency of *Menecrates* and the reſt, and to tract rather in the ſteps of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer diſdained to ſhrowd themſelues vnder the ſimpleſt roofe in their countrey, to do the pooreſt man good: and as they themſelues ſaid (beſides the glory that they purchaſed by their courteous benignity) they added alwayes to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Art and knowledge, which might well ſtagger, if you reſpect the infinite variety of diſeaſes, and the ſtrange diuerſities of mens diſpoſitions. And truly if nothing elſe, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered eſpecially by long experience, might be cauſe good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occaſion to go to the diſeaſed perſon. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetouſneſſe or pride, hath bene the onely cauſe, that euen from the beginning there haue bene reckoned ſo few good Phyſitions. For (exempt onely *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Auicen*, *Ægineta*, *Aetius* and *Soranus*, though the number of common Phyſitions hath bene great) you ſhall not find any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their ſcience: nay farre from that which might chalenge the fift or ſixt place. Which although ſome men will aſcribe to the laborious difficulty & confuſed vaſtnes of this Art eſpecially; yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene, nor is, any ſuch blocke or ſtay, which hath impeached ſo much their endeuours, as the defect of experience. And truly I cannot more fitly compare our Emperiques and practitioners, then to him that purpoſeth to be a ſea-man and traueller, who though he ſtudiouſly ſtriueth to attaine to the perfectiō of his Art, though he carefully buſieth himſelfe about the coſmographicall maps, though he induſtriouſly peruſeth the bookes of Nauigation, nay (which is more) though he conferre diligently with very expert ſaylers: yet when he hath forſaken the quiet hauen, and launched out into the rough ſeas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ſhip, when he ſhall behold ſo many horrible mountaines of water, the roaring of ſo many huge waues, and the outraging ſurges of the diſquieted monſter; he will then confeſſe, that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the courſe of the ſeas; that his bookes were lame ſchoolemaiſters, that the tales of his cōpanions were a great deale leſſe then the things themſelues: when he ſhall caſt vp his eyes, and thinke that euery ſtarre which he had hoped to haue vſed as guides and directions had threatned his ruine and deſtruction: when he ſhall looke downe, and tremble at the riſing of euery waue: when he ſhall turne him about, and with great feare ſeeke to eſchew thoſe rocks, which he had read were couched in that part of the ſea: and to conclude, when he ſhall conſider the hugeneſſe of the Ocean ſea, and the ſmalneſſe of his barke, he will thinke ſure the leaſt perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithſtanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen ſo fareth it with our common Phyſitions, who while they containe themſelues within the compaſſe of their little ſtudie, where they do as it were *è tabula pictos edíſcere morbos*, where they perceiue their ſcience redacted into a method, where they ſee *Galen* reaching his hand vnto them, to leade them through the whole body of Phyſicke, by whom

they

they are taught the constitution of the body, the diuersitie of temperatures, the variety of diseases, the causes, signes, and symptomates of the same; they straight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becometh an Emperique. But after that, when they shall go into the commonwealth to practise, when they shal meet with diseases which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they shall view the maruellous and secret affections and properties of mens bodies, the sudden and momentanie changes of the same (which a man can scarcely follow with his minde,) when they shall perceiue that in respect of the strange temperature of the body, and the violent alteration of the same, they scarcely can aime at the disease, when they shall strike vpon so many rockes, besides their great paines and watchfull industrie: will it not (thinke ye) amaze them? will they not confesse then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Physicke, so that now it is the true and sincere accomplisher of the perfection of the same? Since therefore the case so standeth, that Art is weake without practise, and that (as *Galen* saith) experience is gotten *longo rerum vsu*: let the Physition (if he preferre not lying fame and vile lucre before true and absolute knowledge) let him, I say, that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the poorest house vnfrequented. But to say the truth, nothing derogateth so much from the excelling in their science, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is especially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerse determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongst them, he sitteth still and admireth himselfe, thinking then, that he hath studied enough both for himselfe and his countrey, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongst the number of excellent Physitions, by that ignorant and vnaduised register. I haue spoken this by the way, and the interiecting of these few lines hath not made me to forget (good reader) that before I discoursed of the glory of this science, and how it hath bene accounted of in times past: the dignity whereof, though it be something lessened and empaired, (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Physitions, or by the sinister opinion of the world, I will not now discusse:) yet if we will vprightly weigh with our selues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignity of the thing it selfe. For truly, what can be more noble, then to preserue the body of man in a good estate, which of the Philosopher is termed, a little world, in respect of the variety of his seuerall functions? What can be more excellent, then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that best workmanship of God, and (which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning pilote to gouerne and rule it as a litle vessell cast out into the great Ocean, subiect to I know not how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And seeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God more acceptable then the health of the body, how honorably must we thinke of the meanes by which it is continued, and restored if it be lost? *Pyrrhus* the King of Epire did sacrifice vnto no other god or goddesse, but only vnto Health, to whō he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum Sanitatis*. He contemned, or at the least neglected all oracles, which other Princes busily sought after, as predictions of the euents & successes

of

of the battels which they attempted, or any other the like enterprise. He craued nothing at the hand of the gods, but onely the fruition of his health; thinking that industry and diligence meeting with the health of the body, were able to atchieue any thing, were it beset with neuer so many dangers. And in mine opinion, (as the Historian very gravely discourseth) men do foolishly erre, when they complaine of nature, for limiting the age of man within the compasse of so few yeares, as three or fourescore: when as truly, if the matter were well expended, we would confesse, *Industriam potius quam tempus deesse* (as he saith,) and that there is no Art or science, be it neuer so difficult, but might be perfectly knowne within that short precinct, if the greater part of our life did not passe and vanish away in darknesse, (slouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature,) or if the course thereof were not interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is hastned on our parts by our inordinate and heedlesse liuing. The yong man flourishing as it were in the Aprill of his age, cockereth in himselfe, a foolish imagination of his owne lustinesse, and reputeth it as a discredite vnto him to seeme to feare the approach of any disease, leauing the prouident gouernment of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reines vpon his affections, and exposeth himselfe to any inconuenience: either he weltereth in idlenesse, or is tyred with immoderate exercise, or (which is incident specially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnseasonable watchings, surfetting banquets, and the vnsatiate executing of the follies of *Venus*; thinking indeed that there is nothing lesse agreeing vnto youth and adolescency, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholesome method of life: yea many of them are of this mind, that the time of their your is infamously ouerslipped, when they do not rush in their voluptuous and inordinate demeanour, at what time the lustie prime of to their age doth somewhat enable & support them. And if at any time they be ouertaken with any infirmity (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the science of Physicke, they leaue it to be worne away by the strength of their body; which indeede I confesse hideth many diseases, and for the time taketh away the sense of thē, but it neuer vtterly extinguisheth any. For although in the infancy of the infirmity, in respect of the weakenesse of it, it is easily depressed and ouermaistered by the valour of the body (which in youth is something puissant and forcible:) yet when age coming on with his stealing steps, or else rectlesse life doth detract from the force of the one, and maketh way for the other to spread and gather power, the disease being as it were the surueyour, possesseth the whole bodie, and at the last procureth his vtter subuersion. And many times it hapneth that a disease breaketh out in old age, the cause whereof perhaps was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs as it doth with them that are bitten with the little serpent of Arabia, which striketh a man, but so secretly that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the wound which sheweth it selfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the ancient Physitions had of the effect of Snow-water is of force to perswade this, who haue written, that if snow resolued into water be drunke of a young child, it will as it were maintaine warre against naturall heate, and that with such continuance, as it will not shew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto

extreme

extreame old age. I do not altogether beleeue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water, may leade me to thinke, that it is of a mighty operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men repoing too much trust in the strength of their bodies, and so being careleſſe in gainstanding and reſiſting the beginnings of maladies (which their diſſolute order of life hath begotten and ingendred) haue bene yoked by old age before the courſe of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it ſo to paſſe, that their bodies haue bene nothing elſe but ſtorehouſes and maſions of diſeaſes. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being ſetled in a faire dwelling houſe by his land-lord, ſuffereth it to ruinate, and in the end to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: ſo they, when God hath beſtowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or maſion houſes, wherein the mind may dwell with pleaſure and delight, do firſt by this euill demeanour ſhake and diſcraſe them, and then being altogether careleſſe of repairing them, do ſuffer them to run to deſtruction, or elſe while they go about too late to vnderprop them declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin, feareth leſt with euery puff of wind it ſhould be ouerturned) ſo they quake at the leaſt alteration of the body, and at euery litle paine do expect a finall diſſolution: then they will confeſſe vnto you, that while they rioted vnaduiſedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they elſe but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the intercepting and preuenting of diſeaſes is very auailable, which carieth a man throughout his race with pleaſure and delight, euen ſo nothing cometh more neare vnto the goodneſſe thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any diſeaſe) carefully to prouide that the beginning therof may be impeached: the which that thou mayeſt the better do, I haue (good reader) for thy benefit collected out of ſundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of Phyſick; & together with thoſe deductions; I haue enterlaced experiments of mine owne, which by long vſe and practiſe I haue obſerued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curious in preſcribing the ſundrie curations and waies to helpe the diſeaſes, then in explaning the nature of them: my reaſon was, becauſe if my books ſhould come to the hands of the vnlearned, a litle would ſuffice (the former being more neceſſary.) Againe, I knew that the learned would not be contented or ſatisfied with it, though it had bene neuer ſo great: and yet I haue not omitted any neceſſary ſigne, that the diſeaſe may appeare eaſily to any capable braine. I ſhall ſeeme boldly to haue aduentured the Edition of this labour, ſeeing that I ſhal runne into the babble of our countrey Phyſitions, who thinke their Art to be diſcredited, when it is publiſhed in a baſe tongue; and againe, are loath to haue the ſecrets of their ſcience reuealed to euery man. Indeed I know that vnder ſome colour they may obiect ſomewhat, but yet they may vnderſtand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Phyſitions, both of our Engliſhmen and other countrimen alſo, who publiſhed their practiſes in their mother tongue, and in other countries, eſpecially it is ſo rife and common, that in Italy and France you ſhall not find any learned Phyſition that hath not written as much, (nay rather more) in his owne countrey language, then in Latin: yea we haue many booke in Phyſicke, that

haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commodity of other Nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countreimen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profite their owne countrey, being willing that all men (as indeed it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in this one Art (which is this) That then all Artes should be truly happy, when the professours of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwaies bene of this minde, that it behoueth euery man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to know so much as may serue to forestall the coming of many ordinary diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath already caught hold of the body: my reason is, both because euery man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declinings and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physition being not alwaies at their elbow) whereas in the beginning of their sickenesse, a little knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmity. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted only of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, yong children, together with other Artes, did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the body, and learned also preseruatiues against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinary diseases, which (indeed) were but few, the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoolemaister to *Hercules*, when he had instructed him in the Art of wrastling, (which then was honoured especially) and in Musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenetrable, but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all the wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machaon* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Æsculapius*, in that they could cure themselues when they were at any time hurt of the enemy? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabricius* the Romane, he that vanquished *Pyrrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius*, and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnecessary, when there is no man which so farre swarueth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needful for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the proning of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue already offended in exceeding the iust length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vndertake a long iourney, stumbled euen in the very threshold of his doore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chusing rather to be carped at of the Rhetorician for vsing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended

ded of the readers for being too ſparing in vttering the reaſons whereby I was firſt induced to publiſh this my labour. For I know not how it cometh to paſſe, yet we ſee it daily, that ridiculous toyes, and abſurd pamphlets, being put forth without any colour, be neuertheleſſe plauſibly and pleaſingly accepted: whereas a man moued with an honeſt care to profite his countrey, being willing to leaue a teſtimony of the ſame behinde him, when he offereth any worke, if it hath not a delectable ſubiect, it behoueth him to ſhew many graue & ſubſtantiall reaſons of his doings, or elſe they will not yeeld their hoped for benefite, which is to be benignely conſtrued, and peruſed with humanity. So that if a man couet to haue his bookes fauourably accepted and read, he muſt behaue himſelfe ſo in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* ſaith) did not faſhion them according to the true line of equity, but ſet downe ſuch as he thought the people would willingly obſerue: euen ſo the iniquity of the time hath brought to paſſe, that thoſe bookes which are generally peruſed and read throughout, muſt not ſerue the time, but muſt ſatisfie the opinion of men. A man may eaſily diſcourſe of this, but the fantaſies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in diſſwading thē. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not ſought nor hunted after any vaineglory by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeuoured by this meanes (being vnable any way elſe) to do ſome good to my countrey-men: which deſire of mine ſhall ſufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the hands of the learned, that if by chance my bookes come vnder their cenſure, they will either giue them their good word, or elſe ſuffer themſelues to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily ſung;

Cum tua non edas, carpis mea carmina Leli:
Carpere vel noli noſtra, vel ede tua.

Though indeed this ſupplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who thinke they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchaſe their owne credite, when they can, vnder ſome colour, maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their eſtimations, or the errours of other men the ſubiect of their praiſes. Thoſe kindes of ſerpents (I ſay) which do nothing elſe but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduiſe them either to ſpeake themſelues, or (if their ignorance will not let them) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harueſt of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whileſt they themſelues reſt vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptation of theſe my labours; which expectation of mine if it be not deluded, I ſhall be further encouraged to conſecrate the reſidue of my ſtudies to thy commodity.

Philip Barrough.

OF WEIGHTS.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weights, which are generally vsed, and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantity of them.

FOrasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantity of weights, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them. For seeing the weights of some medicines be so iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantity thereof, he doth much hurt to the body, and many times putteth the life in icopardie: you must therefore diligently endeuour, and apply your minde to study and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full & perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weights, be these, as followeth.

1. Grana.	have this note,	G.
2. Scrupuli.		℈.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciæ.		℥.
5. Quar.		qr.
6. Libræ.		lb.
7. Semis.		ß.
8. Manipuli.		M.
9. Pugilli.		p.
10. Ana.		ana.

A Graine is a barley corne taken out of the middest of the eare.
A Scruple is twenty barley cornes.
Three Scruples containe a Drachme.
Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.
Quart, signifieth a quart of anything.
Libra is a pound.
Semis, is the halfe of euery weight.
Manipulus, is a great handfull.
Pugillus, is a small handfull.
Ana, signifieth of euery one a like much.

THE

THE METHOD OF PHISICKE, CONTAINING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES of inward diſeaſes in mans body, from the head to the foote.

The firſt Booke.

The firſt Chapter; of Headach.

GALEN the prince of Phiſitions affirmeth, that there are onely three ſundry paines in the head: whereof the one is called of the Greeks κεφαλαλγία, *Cephalalgia*, & of the Latins *Capitis dolor*; the barbarous ſort of Phiſitions call it *Soda*: in Engliſh it is called commōly the headach. The ſecond kind is called of the Greekes κεφαλαία, and in Latine likewiſe it is called *Cephalea*: in Engliſh it may be called a long continuing or inueterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks ἡμικρανία, *Hemicrania* alſo is the Latin name for it: in Engliſh it is called the Migrime. Of the two laſt kinds ſhall mention be made hereafter, for now we will intreate of the firſt kind, declaring only in this chapter, what it is, and what be the generall cauſes thereof, and then in the chapters next following, ſhal the ſignes and cures of each cauſe be declared. Vnderſtand therefore firſt, that *Cephalaigia* is nothing elſe but a laborious and painfull ſenſe and feeling, newly begun in the whole head, through ſome great mutation thereof: this word newly, is added to make it differ from *Cephalea*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added to make it differ frō *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one halfe of the head. Note alſo that by the head we meane ſo much as is couered with haire, wherein paine is ingendred, ſometime without the ſcull, and ſometime within: ſometime in all the outward parts, and ſometime in all the inward parts; ſometime not in all, but in one part, as in the arteries onely, or the veines, or ſinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it ſelfe: but theſe differences, as Galen teſtifieth, be very hard to know. But this may eaſily be knowne, whether the paine be within the ſcull or without it, if you conſider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the ſcull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, and from the filmes, and other veſſels that are about it: ſo that the paine will quickly

Differences of paine in the head three.

1

2

3

What Cephalalgia or Soda is.

The diuerſitie of places that paine is in.

Whether the headach be within the ſcul or without it.

come from them to the roots of the eyes: but if the paine that is felt, do not extend to the eye rootes, then is the ach without the ſcull. This paine of the head generally (as alſo all other paines) is cauſed of an vnequall diſtemper coming with humours or without, eſpecially when it is hote or cold; or it is cauſed by ſolution of parts coherent, or of both. But as for particular and eſpeciall cauſes of headach there be very many. For ſometime it cometh onely of a ſimple diſtemper without any humours, and ſometime it cometh through the euill quality of humours, ſometime it cometh through great abundance of humours, ſometime through humours that ſtop the paſſage of the vapours and moiſture in the head, ſometime through windineſſe engendred in ſome part of the head, being weake. Alſo ſometime headach is cauſed of ſome diſeaſe in the ſtomacke: ſometime of an outward cauſe, as of heate of the Sunne, of great cold, of drunkenneſſe, or of ſome ſtripe or wound. Hereby it appeareth that the headach is engendred of ſeuen ſundry cauſes, which are to be knowne by their proper ſignes, whereof we will ſpeake more at large in the chapters following, for in this chapter they ſhall be but briefly touched. Note therefore that the headach which is cauſed of a ſimple diſtemper without humour, is not eaſie to be knowne, except a man be well exerciſed in Phiſick, and by much and diligent looking on the griefe: but that paine of the head is moſt vehement, which is cauſed of a ſimple diſtemper being hote or cold. The headach that is cauſed of drineſſe, is moderate. As for a moiſt diſtemper, alone it doth cauſe no headach, except it be ioyned with heate or cold, or with abundance of humours, or ſharpeneſſe of them. If paine of the head doth come through abundance of humours, contained in one part of the head, or in two, or in all parts, the paine is more vehement that cometh of hote humours or of cold; that which commeth of dry things is more moderate, if there be no manifeſt heate or cold ioyned with them: as for moiſt things touching their qualitie, they do cauſe no paine at all, but with their quantity they may fil the paſſages, and ſo cauſe paine. If abundance of all foure humours equally, or of bloud alone, do cauſe headach without obſtruction and ſtopping of the paſſages, it maketh the head heauy and full, as it were ſtretched out and ſwolne: but if the multitude of humours be with obſtruction, it cauſeth moderate paine if the obſtruction be but little, but if the obſtruction be great, there ſhall be very great paine. Alſo if the multitude of humours haue a ſharpe and biting quality, according to that quality the paine will be pricking and ſhooting. If with the heauineſſe or ſtretching of the head there be beating, and as it were a pulſe, it betoketh inflammation in the head: but if the ſtretching be preſent without heauineſſe or pulſe, it declareth abundance of windie ſpirits, and in this kind of headach there will be noiſe in the eares. Thoſe that haue headach coming of an externall cauſe, as of heate of the Sunne, cold of the aire, drunkenneſſe, ſtripes, or of any hote ſauours, can eaſily tell themſelues the cauſe thereof. Seeke for ſignes more particular in the Chapters next following.

Cauſes of headach generall.

Cauſes of headach ſpeciall.

Signes of each cauſe of headach generally.

CHAP. II.

Of headach cauſed of heate.

VNderſtand, that by heate in this chapter is meant a hote diſtemper without any kind of humour. It is engendred for the moſt part of the burning heate

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Also it is sometime caused of immoderate mouing, or by hote bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiousnes, or last of all through hote diseases, or hote sauours of outward things. The signes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you shall feele their head hote as soone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be; their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the sprinckling or annointing of cold things, and do feele great ease by them. As for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure of this kinde of headach, you must first prouide that the aire and the chamber where the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by your diligence, as by strewing in the house flowers and branches of cold things (as Roses, Violets, Water-lilly-flowers, and Vine leaues, Bryer boughes, Willow, and such like) Also it will coole the ayre well to sprinckle cold water in the house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had to his sleeping, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do, he must altogether eschue long watching, and keepe himselfe quiet: he must not retaine his excrements, but auoide them by and by after sleepe if he can, or let nature be helped to expell them by a lenitiue clister, for their retention increase paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes. Let him eschue all perturbations of the mind, especially anger and fury. Let him haue but a little meate, of good digestion, and let it be cold in operation, as is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of Ptisan, Lettuce, Endiue, Purslaine, flesh of Chickens, Hens or Pigeons, with verjuyce made of Grapes. Fishes are good that come out of stonie riuers, and that are tender. Also Almond milke, Pomgranates, Raisins, and ripe Peares may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it: if not, seeth a little Cinamon in it, or Coriander seede preparate, or mixe with the water, iuyce of soure Pomegranates, or syrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus Acetosus simplex*, or *Oxysaccharum*: or if they cannot abide that, you may giue them small wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head caused of heate, is cured with such things as do coole without manifest restriction, especially if they be of thinne and piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to powre on the head good oyle of Roses, made of vnripe oyle, and if a little vineger be added to it, it wil pierce the faster and the deeper. The places that you must poure or annoint it on, is the forepart of the head, where the seame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, and the seames haue pores in them: also you must vse it on the top of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples where the haire groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of Roses is oyle of Cammomill to be vsed in like wise, especially in those bodies that we would not coole to much, as womens, eunuches, children, and other that haue soft flesh, and are white in colour. If there be need of greater cooling you may adde to the oyle of Roses iuyce of Housleek, or Purslaine, or Knotgrasse, or of vnripe grapes, or Nightshade, or Sorrell, or Psillium, or such like. Vse not iuyce of Pop-

Signes. *Ayre.* *Sleepe.* *Meate.* *Drinke.* *Cura.* *Oyle of Roses.* *Oyle of Cammomill.*

pie, or of Mandrake in this cauſe, for they do hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or ſuch like, in this ſort: ℞. oyle of Roſes, ℥.ij. Roſe water, ℥.j. ſtrong vineger, ℥ ß. or iuyce of Houſleeke, or Purſlaine, or Lettuce, ℥.j. and ſo commixe them. Or thus, ℞. diſtilled water of Houſleeke, Lettuce and Nightſhade, ana. ℥.ij. water of Cammomill, ℥.j. ß. vineger, ℥ j. commixe them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot ſuffer cooling without hurt, becauſe the marrow of the backe bone beginneth there. Thoſe medicines which you will vſe for cooling, eſpecially in Sommer, muſt ſtand a while in very cold water. This alſo is good for abundance of humours and vapours, that be liſted vp into the head. In like manner alſo you may vſe other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of Quinces, Violets, Waterlillies, and Gourds. Neither will it be vn-

A Liniment. profitable to vſe a Liniment made in this ſort: ℞. of the mucilage of the ſeeds of Quinces, and great Mallowes, or of Pſillium, ana ℥ iij iuyce of Purſlaine ℥ j ß. iuyce of Nightſhade, ℥.ß. oyle of Roſes, ℥.j. commixe them, and make a Liniment: or by putting too Waxe and other medicines, make an ointment in this ſort: ℞. *vnguenti Populeon*, ℥.j. oyles of Violets and Roſes, of each ℥.iij. dry flowers of white Waterlillies, and of red Roſes, ana ℈.j Waxe as much as is ſuf-

Vnguentum. ficient, and make an oinment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the tem-

Embrochæ. ples. It profiteth alſo to vſe Embrocations (that is, decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by little and little, or to let it drop downe:) they may be made of Roſes, Violets, flowers of Waterlillies, willow leaues, Vine

Supefacientia leaues, Purſlaine, Barley and ſuch like. You muſt not apply ſtupefactiue things to the griefe, becauſe they coole, not without hurt, and therefore Opium, iuyce of Poppy, and Mandragora are to be eſchued. Iuyce of Nightſhade alſo becauſe of his ſtupefaction is not to be vſed at all, or very little of it at once, as we do vſe

Note. in the Liniment aforeſaid. Alſo thoſe things that haue manifeſt aſtriction and binding, with their cooling, are to be refuſed, except neceſſitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of ſweet Pomgranates, Quinces and Medlars, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of ſowre Pomegranates is good, becauſe it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vſed in the beginning of this griefe. Afterwards you may vſe to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, ſuch things as do mittigate and digeſt. Make therefore an Em-

Embrocha. brocation after this ſort: ℞. flowers of Roſes & Violets, ana M.ß. leaues of Willow, Cammomill, and Mehlot, ana M.j. ſeeds of Mallowes, ℥.iij. Barley husked ℥.j ſeeth theſe in two pound of water till the third part be conſumed, and make

Alia. an Embrocatiõ. Or thus: ℞. Mallow leaues, Violets, Roſes, ana pug.ß. the flowers of Waterlillies, ℥. iij. Vine leaues, or the wreathes that they wind about things withall, Purſlaine, or Houſleeke, of each, M.j. Cammomill, Mehlot, Fenugreeke, ana ℥.ij. ſeeth them as is aboue ſaid, and make an Embroca, adding too a little vineger, eſpecially if the paine be within the ſcull Laſt of all, you may vſe moſt of the diſcuſſiue medicins, withdrawing the aforeſaid repelling things; ſuch be, Althæa, Dill, Sothernwood, Butter, Cammomill, Barley meale, Fenugreeke, Linſeed, Lupines, &c. Of theſe and ſuch like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or ointments, as you liſt. For inward medicines (eſpe-

cially if the headach be caused of exercise, anger, or such like) minister Iulep of Violets or Roses, or their conserues, or *Manus Christi*; or giue the sicke two or three houres before meate in the morning, ℥.j. ß. of syrupe of infusion of Roses, or of syrupe of Waterlillies, with ℥.ij. or iij. of water of Borage or Cychorie. It is good for the sicke to smell Rose water, mixed with a little vineger; also it is good to snuffe it vp in the nose. *Inward medicines.* *Odours.*

CHAP. III.

Of headach caused of cold.

BY cold, is meant in this Chapter, a cold distemper simply, without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as when the aire is very cold, especially when one tarieth in it long time bare headed; as also it may be caused by the sodaine applying of any cold thing to the head. The signes of headach caused of cold, are contrary to those signes that are caused of hote distemper. For in this, though the paine be vehement, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, and the face and eyes do not looke red, nor their face is not drie and shrunke, but contrariwise full and pale, and their eyes are swolne and swart. Also they neither desire cold things, nor do feele ease by them. Concerning the diet of those that haue this kinde of headach, they must eschue cold ayre, and abide altogether in hote ayre. They must sleepe moderately, but no longer then they were wont. They must vse moning of the whole body, especially walking and riding. Let their bodies be soluble rather then costiue, so that they may each day haue a siege either by nature or by art, as by a suppositarie or a clister. Let them eschue sadnesse, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them eschue all meates and drinks that be cold in operation, as milke, fish, and such such like. Let them eate reare egges, and flesh of Hennes, Chicken, Partrich, Phesants, and such like. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne of substance, for that doth moderately extenuate and heate. For the same cause also hote baths are to be vsed; and generally for the cure hereof, you must vse things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you must diligently consider the naturall temperature of the braine, for it is such a thing as cannot suffer medicines vehement hote nor yet vehement cold. Therefore (as Galen affirmeth) if oyle of Rew be powred hote vpon the forepart of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be neede of greater heating, you may put Pepper or *Euphorbium* into the oyle; or you may mixe some oyle of Pepper or oyle of *Euphorbium* with the oyle of Rew, or in the steed of oile of Rew, you may vse oyles of Laurel, Ireos, Dill, or Cammomil, of Spikenard, *Serpillum*, Marioram, and such like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead also, and the nosthrils, and the holes of the eares. Of the aforesaid medicines you may make an ointment after this sort: ℞. oyles of Ireos and Rew, ana ℥.ß. Marioram, Betony, Pepper, ana ℈.j. of *Euphorbium*, gra.v. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the nosthrils: or make an ointment thus: ℞. of the oyle of Rew, Cammomill, and *Nardinum* ana ℥.j Hysope, Lauender, and flowers of Stœchas, ana ℥.ß. Masticke and Frankensense, of each ℥.j Waxe a little, and make an ointment. You may sometime ad to it, if you wil, *Castoreum*, ℈.j. Also Embrocations profit much, if they be made *Cura.* *Vnguentum.* *Aliud.* *Embrochæ.*

of flowers of Melilot & Cammomil, Marioram, Origan, Betonie, Sage, Laurel leaues, Stæchas, and ſuchlike ſodden in water, It is good for the ſicke to draw vp the vapours of ſuch decoctions by his noſtrils. Alſo a quilt made in this ſort profiteth much: ℞. leaues of Laurell, *Serpillum*, and [illegible]oram, ana. M. ß. flowers of Roſemarie, M. j. Rew, M. ß. Cloues and Stæchas, ana ℥. j. Peniroyall and Calamint, ana. ℥. j. ß. beate theſe to powder, and ſew them in ſilke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which muſt be layd to the head warme, and firſt ſprinkled with vineger. It is good alſo to vſe a pomander made in this ſort: ℞. of *Storax calamite*, ℥ ij. Cloues, Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. ℥ ß. Lauender, ℥ ij. *Gallia moſchata*, ℥ j ß. of Musk and Amber, ana gra. iij. powder them and ſearce them, and with water of Marioram, and *Storax liquida* as much as ſhall ſuffice, make pomanders.

Sacculus.

Pomum odoriferum.

CHAP. IIII.

Of headach cauſed by drineſſe or moiſture.

BY drineſſe is meant in this place a drie diſtemper of the quality alone, and by moiſture, a moiſt diſtemper of the bare quality. Neither of theſe qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cauſe any headach at all (as *Galen* teacheth in the 5. Chapter of his firſt booke *de Symptomatum cauſis*) Therefore we do not make mention here of theſe diſtempers, as though headach might be cauſed of them alone, but that the ſtudious in Phyſick might haue ſtore of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drineſſe, or moiſture with heat, or when cold mixed with drineſſe or moiſture cauſeth headach. Headach through drineſſe, is cauſed through drineſſe of the aire, or by drie medicines, by hunger, exerciſe, lecherie, and perturbations of the minde. And headach of moiſture, is cauſed by moiſtneſſe of the aire, or by moiſtning medicines, by baths, hote waters, and other things that moiſten ouermuch. Drineſſe is knowne by theſe ſignes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the noſe: if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before: theſe be ſignes of headach of drineſſe. Alſo in it the skinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and ſome drie diet hath bene vſed. But in this kind, drie medicines do not eaſe the paine, but rather increaſe it. Moiſtneſſe is knowne by theſe ſignes; much filth cometh out of the noſe, the eies be puffed vp and ſwolne, and the patient ſleepeth much: but of this diſtemper alone, there doth no headach enſue. Thoſe that haue headach cauſed of drineſſe, let them remaine in a moiſt aire, and let them eate meates that do moiſten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, Cocks ſtone, and the broth of them, Pheſants, Partrich, and ſuch like things, that do nouriſh much and moiſten. Let them drinke thinne wine allayed with water: let them ſleepe largely: let them eſchue motion of the body and exerciſe, and vſe quietneſſe and reſt: let them eſchue carnall copulation, hunger, thirſt, and all things that do drie: let them vſe baths of ſweete waters that are warme: let them be merry, and eſchue all other perturbations of the minde. If headach be cauſed of moiſture, you muſt vſe the contrarie diet to this that is before prefcribed (that is, all ſuch things as do drie, which you may eaſily know by that which hath bene ſaid before.) For pain of the head cauſed of drineſſe, you muſt annoint the former

Cauſa.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

ſeame of the head with oyle of ſweet Almonds, or with oyle of Gourds, or with oyle of Violets and Cammomill mixed together. It is alſo good to drop ſome of theſe oyles into the noſtrils. You may alſo mixe with the ſayd oyles Gooſe greaſe, Hens greaſe, Ca[illegible]reaſe, or freſh butter, after this ſort: R. oiles of Violets and Waterlillies, ana ℥ iiij Calues ſuit, Hens greaſe and freſh butter, ana ʒ. ij. commixe them, and make a Liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore, Embrocations profit not a little, if they be made of Violets, Mallowes, and other herbes that haue vertue to moiſten. Againſt headach cauſed of moiſture, you muſt vſe medicines cleane contrary to the aforenamed, which muſt differ according to the heat or cold which is ioyned to the moiſture. You may finde ſufficient ſtore of ſuch remedies out of the former Chapters. *Linimentum.*

CHAP. V.

Of the headach cauſed of bloud.

Hitherto we haue ſpoken of the cure of headach which cometh through alteration and diſtemper of the bare qualities; but now we will ſpeake of that which is cauſed of fulneſſe, and abundance of bloud. We call plenitude in this place that which the Greekes call in their tongue *plethora*; it chanceth when all the foure humours be increaſed in their proportion, or when bloud alone doth abound. This kind of headach is cauſed of all ſuch things as do ingender great abundance of humors in the body, as meates and drinks of great nouriſhment being plentifully taken: as alſo the neglecting and omitting of exerciſes, baths, ſweatings, and other natural and artificiall vacuations, be cauſes of the ſaid plenitude. The ſignes be theſe: the face and the eyes be ruddie, the veines are ſwolne, ſo that the leaſt and ſmalleſt may eaſily be ſeene: the pulſe is great & vehement, the vrine reddiſh and thick, the veines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauineſſe. Concerning diet, let the ſicke be in a cold and dry aire, let him eſchue fleſh, reare egges, and ſuch things as nouriſh plentifully: let him vſe Ptiſan made of barley, or Aliaca made of barley: let him vſe cold herbs, as Endiue, Scarioll, Purſlaine, Lettuce, and ſuch like: let him eſchue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon or Barley hath bene ſodden: let him vſe meane exerciſe: let him be rubbed: let him alſo vſe bathing often, but ſo that his body be firſt emptied, and the patient free from a feuer. Let his ſleepe be meane: let him be merry and ioyfull: and let him abſtaine from all perturbations of the minde. The cure muſt be begun with bloud letting as ſoone as can be. You muſt open the vttermoſt veine, which in the arme is called *Humeralis* or *Cephalica*: it muſt be on the arme which is of that ſide that the griefe is moſt vehement. For this veine is ſo annexed to the head, that not onely by it you ſhall pull backe bloud into a contrary part, but alſo you ſhall emptie out that bloud by it, as *Hippocrates*, and after him *Galen*, and *Rhaſes* do teach. But if age or weakneſſe do prohibite bloudletting, you muſt vſe boxing: not to the head it ſelfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the ſhoulders and breaſt, to the intent to pull backe the bloud. Theſe being done, you muſt apply to the head medicines that be cold and aſtringent, whereof we haue made mention before ſufficiently in the ſecond Chapter, ſo that they neede not hereto be repeated.

What is meant by plenitude. πλήθωρα. *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Curatio.* *Venæ ſectio.* *Cucurbitæ.* *Ventoſæ.* *Localia.*

Furthermore, the Phyſition muſt haue ſpecial regard in this caſe, that the patient be kept ſoluble. Therefore if the patient be any thing coſtiue, you may miniſter this decoction, or ſome ſuch like: ℞. flowers of Bugloſſe, Borage, roſes & violets, ana M. ß. the foure great cold ſeeds husked, ana ℥. ij. Sebeſten, damask proines, of each in number xij. great Raiſins, Tamarinds, ana ℥. j. barks of Myrobalanes, *Citrinorum, Indorum, Chebulorum, Emblicorum, Belliricorum*, ana ℥. iij. Liquorice, ℈ j. Fumitory, Maidenhaire, ana M. j. *Tamariſcus*, Harts toung, ana ℥. iij. Sene and Polipody, of each ℥. ß. Agarick choſen, ℥. j. ß. Ginger, ℥. ß. Seeth all theſe in a ſufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it and preſſe it hard. Ad to that decoction Sugar ſufficient to make it ſweete, purifie it with the whites of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient ſhall drink each morning, ℥ iiij faſting. And if ſo be that the patients coſtiueneſſe require a ſtronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the ſaid decoction, ℥ j. ℈ ß of fine Reubarbe beaten to powder, and Spikenard, ℥. ß. or you may diſſolue it in *Caſia fiſtula*, ℥ j. ß. newly drawne, or ℥ j. of Manna, or of Diaphænicon, ℥ iij. For the ſame purpoſe it is good alſo to miniſter vnto the patient ſyrupe of Violets, and *Acetoſus ſimplex*. After this you muſt apply ſuch medicines to the head, as be able to diſperſe the remnant of the paine and diſeaſe, as be ſeeds of Mallowes, Fenugreeke, Cammomill, and Melilot flowers. Alſo oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and ſuch like, whereof the Phyſition may at his choiſe make Liniments, Ointments, or Emplaiſters in maner aforeſaid. Note here further that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may alſo ſtrike the veine in the forehead: as alſo for that purpoſe it is good to vſe cliſters ſometime very ſtrong, and you may vſe frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull back the humours. Moreouer gargariſing and ſneeſing may be vſed in time conuenient, and boxing in the hinder part of the head, with ſcarification, at the diſcretion of the Phyſition, as occaſion and time ſhall ſerue.

Decoctum purgans.

Diſcutientia.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach cauſed of choler.

HEadach coming of cholericke humours, is cauſed of all ſuch things as do heate and dry the whole body, and eſpecially the head vnnaturally, that is, ſuch things as do ingender choler, (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exerciſe, watching, abſtinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as Garlicke, Onions, and ſuch like. The ſignes be theſe: the paine is like theirs that haue headach cauſed of burning heate of the Sunne, but they haue a more ſharp and pricking paine, their head is moderatly hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitterneſſe of the mouth, drineſſe of the eyes, noſe, and tongue. Moreouer this euill chanceth moſt of all to floriſhing yeares, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouermuch buſineſſe in hand, and ſuch like. Let the patient abide in a cold and moiſt aire, which may be procured by art, as is taught before in the ſecond chapter, by ſprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by ſtrewing of flowers and branches that are cold and moiſt in operation. Let his whole diet be moiſt, let him eate moiſt meates that be of good iuyce: giue him Lettuce and Purſlaine, and ſmall fiſhes of freſh waters: Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a little Cinamon hath

Cauſa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

hath bene ſodden: Let him altogether abſtaine from wine: Let him be quiet, and vſe long ſleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him; let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the minde. The cure muſt be begun with purging of the cholericke humour ſtraightway, becauſe choler is thin and moueable, and therefore will eaſily purge out. But if it chance that the cholericke humour doth reſt quietly in ſome part of the body, and ſo doth waxe hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgation you muſt miniſter ſuch things as do quench and concoct the heate and burning of choler, that is, ſuch things as do alter it. For digeſtion that we ſpeake of now, is nothing elſe but an alteration of the humour that cauſeth the diſeaſe: therefore ſuch medicines muſt be miniſtred each morning faſting before you do purge, vntil good concoction appeare in the vrine: for by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed and made milde, is made ſo obedient vnto nature, that it will ſoone without any griefe be drawne of the purging medicine to conuenient places that it ſhould auoid by. You ſhall therefore for a preparatiue vſe this or ſuch like medicines: ℞ ſyrupe of Violets, ℥.j ſyrupe of Waterlillies, ℥. ß. diſtilled waters of Endiue, Succorie and Roſes, ana ℥. j. commixe them, and let them be drunke in the morning faſting For this purpoſe alſo you may miniſter Iulep of Roſes & Violets, or *Syrupus Acetoſus*, or the decoction of ſeeds of Cucumbers, Gourds, Purſlaine, Endiue: rootes alſo of Endiue and Succorie, Roſes, Violets, Waterlillies, Lettuce, Damaske proines, Sebeſten, Iuiubes, and ſuch like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infuſion of Wormwood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* miniſtred alone, or a little Scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you ſhall not do amiſſe to take of the purging decoction preſcribed in the former chapter, ℥ iiij. and to diſſolue therein, ℥. iij. of *Electuarium de ſucco roſarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Pſillio*, & ſo miniſter it. It is good alſo to miniſter infuſion of Reubarbe, made after this ſort: ℞. fine Reubarbe, ℥. ij. Spikenard ℈. j. cut them ſmall, and infuſe them in diſtilled waters of Endiue, Doddir, and Bugloſſe, ana ℥. j. pure Ale, ℥. ß. the ſpace of twelue houres: then ſtraine it hard, and put thereto of Electuaries *de ſucco Roſarum* and *Pſillio*, ana ℥. j ß. commixe them and make a purging potion. Alſo you may vſe *Pilulæ aureæ* and *Alephangine*, or pils of Reubarb, or of *Hiera ſimplex*, and ſuch like, or elſe *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes ſolutiue*. For them that are delicate you may vſe this Bole: ℞. of *Diagridium*, ℈. ß. of Maces, Cinamon, and Maſticke, ana gr. ij conſerue of Violets and Waterlillies, ana ℥. j. Sugar ar much as ſufficeth, and make a Bole. Further, it profiteth now and then to vſe cliſters made in this or like ſort: ℞. Mallowes, Althæa, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana M. ß. whole Barley, ℥. j. the foure common ſmall cold ſeeds, that is, Lettuce, Purcelaine, Endiue, and Scarioll, ana ℥. iij. Seeth all theſe in running water to the third part, ſtraine them, take of that decoction ℔. j. of the pulpe of *Caſia fiſtula*, ℥. j. of *Hierapicra* ℥. ß. of oile of Violets, ℥ ij oile of Roſes, ℥. j of *Mel roſarum*, ℥. j of Salt. ℥ j. ß. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. After purging of the cholerick humour, you muſt apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and ſtrengthen the head, whereof you ſhall find ſtore in the ſecond Chapter. If the ſicke cannot ſleepe, annoint the forepart of the head with oyles of Water-

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabarbari.

Bolus purgans.

Cliſter.

Localia.

Sleepe.

lillies, and oyle of Poppie: to them you may for a need adde a little *Oplum*, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legs may be well vsed in time conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach caused of fleame.

Cause. HEadach coming of fleame, is caused of all such thinges as ingender fleame in the head, as a cold and moist aire, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, raw herbes, fruite, idlenesse, and sleeping vpon a full stomacke, and

Signa. such other like. The signes hereof be fulnesse and heauinesse of the head, whitenesse and moistnesse of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall asleepe, he is slow, his senses are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also the signes declared in the third chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sick remaine in the aire that is hote and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the aire be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with Cinamon,

Victus ratio. Frankensence, Cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be rosted, and let him eate spices with it. For his drinke, let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane: to be short, let him

Curatio. vse such diet as is prescribed in the third chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation and digestion of the flegmatick humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut and deuide humours: such be *Mel Rosarum*, *Oximel simplex* and *compositum*, and *Scilliticum*, syrupe of Stæchades distilled waters of Hysope, Betonie, Marioram, Sage, and such like; minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this sort:

Zulapium. ℞. of *Oximel Scilliticum*, ℥.j. of syrupe of Stæchades, ℥. ß. of distilled waters of Hysope, Parcely and Marioram, ana ℥.j commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrupes & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister this

Decoctum extenuans pituitam. or such like decoction ℞. of the roots of Fenell, Parcely and *Asparagus*, ana. ℥.j. rootes of Piony, ℥.ij. seeds of Annise, Fenel, *Siler montanum*, ana. ℥.iij. *Stichados*, Origan, *Serpillum*, Marioram, Calamint, Betonie, Sage, ana M. ß. fine Cinamon, Mace, ana. ℥.j. ß. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and adde Sugar sufficient to make it sweete, clarifie it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of Hysope, and *Oximel simplex*, ana ℥.iij. commixe them all together, and make a potion. When the humours

Purgatio. are extenuate, and made thinne and prepared to be purged, then must such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleame, for the which cause let the sick

Pilulæ. haue these pilles ministred vnto him: ℞ *Pilularum cochiarum*, ℥.j ß. *Pilularum ℈hierâ compositâ*, ℥.j. *Pil. Alephanginarum*, ℥ ß. Agarick made into trochisks, ℈.ij. *Myrobalanorum*, *Chebulorum*, ℈.j. fine Turbith, ℈.ß. Stichados, & Ginger, ana. gr. v. Masticke, gr. vij. seeds of Piony in number iij. *Castorei* g.iiij. with Lauender watet make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged, not once onely, but twice or thrice, because the grosse and clammy humours will not straight follow a suddaine purgation, but they must be drawne out by little and litle with often purging. Also clisters are good, not onely because they emptie out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they pull

Clyster. backe such humours and vapours as do ascend to the head. For clisters there-

fore

fore the decoction before preſcribed is good if you take therof ℥.xij.& diſſolue therein *Benedicta laxatiue*, ℥.ß. *Electuarij Indi maioris*, ℥.iij. Diaphœnicon, ℥.ij. *Mel Roſarum*, ℥.j. oiles of Laurell and Rew, ana ℥.j ß. *Sal gemmæ*, ℥ j. commixe them together, and make a clifter. After the whole bodie is purged, you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as can purge the head, as be gargariſes made in this ſort: ℞. long Pepper and Nutmegs, ana. ℥.ß. ſeed of Stauiſacre and Pellitorie, ana. ℈.ij Muſtard ſeed, Origan, ana. ℈ j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chew it, or with Maſticke or Hony make Trochiskes like Lupines, and let the ſicke chew one of them almoſt halfe an houre. Alſo the head may be purged by the iuyce of Marioram, *Blitum*, coleworts and ſuch like: You may alſo for this purpoſe miniſter gargariſmes made of the diſtilled waters of Hyſope, Betony, Origan, with *Hierapicra* and *Oximel compoſitũ*, or in this ſort: ℞. Pellitorie, long Pepper, ana. ℥.j. ß. ſeed of Stauiſacre, ℥.ß. Marioram, Peniroyall, Hyſope, Origan, Betonie, ana. M. ß. Seeth all theſe in ſufficient quantity of water vnto the third part, ſtraine it, and adde to the licour *Mel Roſarum*, ℥.j. ß. *Oximel ſcilliticum*, ℥.ß. commixe all, and make a gargariſe. Alſo medicines to prouoke ſneeſing, are good in this caſe. You may make them after this ſort: ℞. Marioram, ℥.j. Nigella, ℥.ß. Cloues, white Pepper, Cubebs, ana ℈ j. Nurmegs, Graines, *Caſtoreum*, *Heleborus albus*, ana. ℈. ß. beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke ſneeſing therewith. For them which are rich, you may adde Muske and Amber, ana. gr. ij. It profiteth alſo to hold hot and ſweet odours to the noſe of the patient, or a Pomander artificially made, ſuch a one as we preſcribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further, you may take *Naſalia* (as they call them) things to be put in the noſe, ſharp at one end and great at the other like a ſteeple, after this ſort: ℞. Stauiſacre, Pellitory and white Pepper, ana. ℈.ß. Nigella, Nutmegs, ana. ℈. ji. *Heleborus albus*, ℈.ß. powder them, and with Roſin and Waxe make naſales. After the purging of the head, you may vſe ointments, embrocations, dry quilts, and ſuch like other medicines to diſperſe the remnant of the humor remaining in the head, whereof there be examples ſufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiouſly miniſter inwardly, Cubebs condite, or *Diambra*, *Diamoſcha*, *Aromaticum roſaceum*, *Diatuminum*, *Dianthos*, *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Diacorum*, conſerue of Marioram, Roſemary, Betony, with ſyrupe of Stichados. Or miniſter theſe Lozenges which are ſpecially good ℞. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, *Dianthos*, ana. ℈ j Cubebs, Maces, of each ℥.ß. wood of Aloes, Cloues, and Fenell ſeed, ana. ℈ ß. fine Cinamon, ℈.ij. Stichados, ℈.ß. with Sugar molten in the diſtilled waters of Piony flowers and Lauender make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach cauſed of flegmatick humors. But if ſo be that headach be cauſed of a melancholy humour, then you muſt preſcribe ſuch diet, and vſe ſuch cure as ſhall be declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madneſſe: and therefore it ſhould be ſuperfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for the cure of headach coming of melancholy, vnto the 28 chapter of this booke following.

Gargariſe.

Gargariſme.

Sternutamentum.

Naſalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach coming of melancholy.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach cauſed of windineſſe.

IF headach be cauſed of windineſſe, the diet vſed before was ſuch as did ingender wind; beſides, the nature of the body, & other circumſtances were ſuch as

Cauſa.

Signa. were apt to ingender winde. The signes be these, if there be felt distention and stretching in the head without heauinesse & beating, and if there be a sound and noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windinesse in the head. The diet of the patient, must altogether be such as doth not ingender windinesse. For the cure, if the windinesse be not onely bred in the head, but doth ascend from some part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines as do repell and driue backe: such be vineger, Pomegranate rinds and flowers, Wormewood, Melilot Mints, Plantaine, Walwort, *Bursa pastoris*, Nutmegs, Purslaine, Housleeke, Lawrell leaues, and such like: which being moderately vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsiue things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be Fenugreeke, Linseed, Cammomil, yolkes of egs, Saffron, Hens grease Goose grease, &c. Last of all adde discussiue medicines, as oiles of Dill and Rew, Barley meale, Lupines, Lilly rootes, Nigella &c. It is good therefore first of all to *Victus ratio.* *Cura.* empty the bellie with a strong clister, but that must be made of a decoction that *Clyster.* doth dissolue windines, by seething in water Annise seeds & caraway seeds, Fenel seed, Comin, dry Figs, bran, and such like: herein you must dissolue *Benedicta laxatiua.* ℥ iiij. or *Electuarium Nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphœnicon*, ℥. iiij or *Diacatholicon* or *Hierapicra*, ℥ vij. Such kind of clisters do not onely purge the intestines, and the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthen the affected member, that it do ingender winde no more, whether it be the stomack, the liuer, the splene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heate abound in the head together with the windines, then apply oile of Roses, which is both repulsiue, digestiue & discussiue, & adde to it vineger, which is both repulsiue & discussiue also, & doth extenuate besides. Also Rose water or iuyce of Purslaine, Knotgrasse or Nightshade may be vsed & applied with a litle vineger. If there be cold in ỹ head with the windines, then vse oile of Cammomil or Dil, mixed with a litle vineger or if the griefe increase, apply the iuyce of Rew with vnegar and oile mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the root of flower-de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of Laurel berries & Rew mixed with vineger, is good to be applied. Likewise bitter Almonds beaten with vineger and oile, and applied to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the griefe doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse dry quilts, you may make them at the first of *Milium*, Roses, Willow leaues, Knotgrasse, Nightshade & Purslaine, & so apply them to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may ad to the aforesaid Marioram, *Serpillũ*, Hisope, Rew, tender leaues of Laurell, *Cyperus*, and such like. It is good also to vse odors & smels, as *Castoreũ*, Musk, Amber, & such like. To prouoke sneesing & to minister inwardly to the sick is good, either *Diacuminum* or *Dianisum*, ℥. j. or as much Triacle or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecillity of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not need to vse repulsiue medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussiue medicines, such as are before declared. As for inward medicines, they auaile or profit little in this case.

Localia.

CHAP. IX.

Of the headach caused of the stomacke.

HItherto we haue declared the causes, signes and cures of headach caused principally in it selfe; now it remaineth that we intreate of paine in the head

which

which cometh by conſent. And firſt of that headach which cometh through euill affection of the ſtomacke. And that is cauſed moſt commonly when ſome ſharpe humour aboundeth in the ſtomacke, eſpecially in the mouth of it, from whence the corrupt vapours ariſing do aſcend to the head. It may be known by the gnawing and biting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the deſire to vomit that the patient hath: eſpecially if the mouth of the ſtomacke be affected. Moreouer in this kind of headach if the ſicke faſt, and ſuffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abſtinence the malice of the humour increaſeth. You muſt cure thoſe that are thus grieued, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the ſtomacke, which raiſe vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you muſt with ſpeed purge the noyſome homours that are in the mouth of the ſtomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if ſo be the patient can eaſily vomit: if not, he muſt thruſt his finger or a feather into his throate, and ſo prouoke the ſtomacke to vomit. Note that yellow or pale choler, becauſe of his naturall lightneſſe, doth readily aſcend to the mouth of the ſtomacke: but the humours that be flegmatique, or ſoure, or ſalt, do rather remaine in the middeſt of the ſtomacke then in the mouth of it. It is beſt when ſuch humors are in the bottome of the ſtomacke, for then they will eaſily auoid the ſtomacke, and paſſe into the guts. It is worſt of all when noyſome humours de cleaue ſo faſt to the filmes and tunicles of the ſtomacke, and do ſo furre them, that they can ſcarcely be ſcoured out. Therefore if any humour doth furre the tunicles of the ſtomacke, miniſter *Hierapicra*, which is a ſoueraigne medicine therefore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates, eaſie of digeſtion, and wholſome for the ſtomack. And for as much as lacke of good digeſtion, and weakneſſe of the mouth of the ſtomacke, be the greateſt cauſes of increaſe of noyſome humours in the ſtomacke, it muſt be prouided that good digeſtion be procured, and that the mouth of the ſtomacke may be ſtrengthened by ſuch medicines as be aſtrictiue, and haue vertue to ſtrengthen, whereof you ſhall finde plentie hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were ſuperfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter ſpoken of headach cauſed of the ſtomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, ſo vnderſtand likewiſe if headach be cauſed of the diſeaſe of the liuer or ſplene, or any other member: for the affects of thoſe members being cured, the headach ceaſſeth.

Cauſe. *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Hierapicra.* *Note.*

CHAP. X.

Of headach cauſed by drunkenneſſe.

THe cauſes and ſignes of drunkenneſſe are euident enough, chiefly hote wines and ſtrong drinkes are cauſes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours, and that ſo much the more (as Galen ſaid) if the braine be hote by nature: ſometime alſo hote humours aſcending to the head, do cauſe drunkenneſſe. The cure of drunkenneſſe generally conſiſteth in two points: that is, in euacuation and refrigeration. Therefore if the wine be yet vndigeſt, & do flow in the ſtomacke, cauſe him that hath the headach to vomit, by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digeſtion, you muſt vſe medicines that doe refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which aſcend to the

Cauſe. *Curatio.* *Warme water and a litle ſyr. Acetoſe commixed, cauſeth vomit.*

head: as is oyle of Roſes alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of Iuie, or Coleworts. Alſo the leaues of Coleworts ſteeped in warme water, and bound about the head, do naturally reſiſt drunkenneſſe. Moreouer the broth of Coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpoſe. To preſerue one from drunkenneſſe (as *Aetius* ſaith) let him eate v. or vij. bitter Almonds faſting, or let him drinke Wormwood wine firſt of all. But to take away drunkenneſſe that is preſent, giue the decoction of Centory the leſſe to drinke, or Harts horne, or the ſeed of Veruaine boyled in water. You muſt haue a ſpeciall regard, and procure that the patient do ſleepe and reſt; which being done all day, at night bathe him in a bath of ſweet water, & when thou haſt waſhed him, let him eate meates of good iuyce, but not ouer-hote. Let therefore his food be Priſan broth, ſouppings made of *Alica*, bread dipped in water, reare egges, and ſuch like. For pot herbs Lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and Coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke, let him vſe water onely, if he hath bene accuſtomed thereto, and can well beare it, otherwiſe giue him ſmall drinke, or a little ſmall white wine. After his meate, giue him of a Pomgranate, or a Peare, or a Quince, or Raiſins. To conclude, let all his diet be meates of good iuyce, pleaſant to the ſtomacke, and that driue away vapours. Let him abſtaine from Dates, for their propertie is to cauſe headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours aſcending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and ſtuffed in the thinne pores, and ſo do cauſe headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of Roſes, and vſe firſt in ſteed of it, oyle of Cammomill moderately warme. Afterward apply oyle of Ireos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heate more, commixing with the oyle of Ireos, oyle of Nard, or *oleum coſtinum*: or other oyles and ointments of that ſort.

Praeſeruatio.

Victus ratio.

Dates.

Irium.
Nardinum.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach cauſed by feauers.

IF headach do moleſt thoſe that haue a Feauer, you muſt diligently examine and conſider, whether the ſame began at the firſt beginning of the feauer, or whether it ſprong the feauer increaſing: for if the headach began not with the firſt fit of the feauer, but afterward while the feauer increaſed, and came nigh to the Criſis, then ſeeke not to remedy it, for it portendeth and foretelleth that vomit or a decretorie fluxe of blood at the noſe will follow ſhortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of Predictions, and Galen in his third booke *de Criſibus*, and in his firſt booke *ad Glauconem, cap. vltimo*. If the headach began at the firſt with the feauer, it cometh of vapours or humours diſperſed abroad through the greatneſſe of the feauer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate vp to the head, and partly alſo through weakeneſſe of the braine. Therefore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you muſt let him bloud after the firſt or ſecond fit (if nothing prohibit it) eſpecially in luſtie bodies, and in ſuch as abound with bloud. Alſo you muſt draw the humours a contrary way, & pull them back by ſharpe cliſters, ſuch as ſhall be preſcribed in the Chapter of *Apoplexia*, and by often binding and much frication in the neather parts. Moreouer you may ſet cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You muſt apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell and driue

Cauſa.

Cura.

backe

backe from it, and afterward you muſt vſe diſcuſſiue medicines: laſt of all, ſuch things as do ſtrengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vſe oyle of Roſes, and other ſuch like as are rehearſed before in the 2. Chapter. Vſe them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a little vineger; but in winter ſeaſon, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouermuch watching do trouble the ſicke, vſe irrigations made of Poppie heads, Houſleeke, and ſuch like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke ſleep, in this ſort; ℞. flowers of Violets Waterlillies, and Roſes, ana M. j. hulled barley, ℥. j. heads of Poppie, ℥. ß. Houſleeke, M. ß. ſeeth all theſe in ſufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be conſumed, and make an embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of Henbane or Poppie, with oyle of Roſes, a little vineger and crummes of bread; commixe thē, & apply them to the forepart of of the head, and to the forehead. *Embrocha.*

When the braine is ſufficiently cooled, then apply thoſe things which can heate the head againe, and ſo auoyd and diſperſe the humours that remaine. And therefore you may vſe oyles of Cammomill, Dill, or Ireos, or decoctions of Cammomill, or Althæa, or ſuch like. And if the humours be groſſe and tough, you may boyle with the aforeſaid things *Serpillum*, Peniroyall, Calamint, Mints, or ſuch like. Laſt of all the head muſt be ſtrengthened by oyle of Roſes, and ſuch like, that is, Betony, Cammomill, Melilot, &c. The reſt of the cure of headach cauſed through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be ſought out in the treatiſe of Feuers. *Note.*

CHAP. XII.

Of inueterate headach.

Cephalea both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long and hard to ceaſſe, which vpon light occaſions hath very ſharpe and great fits, ſo that the patient can neither abide noiſe, nor loud ſpeech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor ſauours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but deſireth for the greatneſſe of the paine to ſit or lie quiet in the darke, ſuppoſing that his head were ſtroken with a hammer. Alſo ſome of them do feele thoſe things that are about their head, as though they were bruſed or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This diſeaſe ſometime doth continue painfull alwaies, ſometime it hath fits and intermiſſions, either ordinate or inordinate. For in ſome there is intermiſſion in the fits, as in the falling ſickneſſe, ſo that for a time they ſeeme to be perfectly whole. This diſeaſe doth vexe women more then men, becauſe of their long haire. In ſome of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained: but in ſome, onely the filme that couereth the ſcull is grieued. It is cauſed of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the ſharpneſſe of humours or vapours contained within or without the ſcull, and inflaming the head, or it is cauſed through weakneſſe of the head. The paine that inuadeth the ſicke with grauity and heauineſſe, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours: if it come with pricking, gnawing and ſhooting, it betokeneth ſharpnes of humors or vapours: if it beate like the pulſes, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt diſtenſion and bolning in the head without heauineſſe or beating, it declareth *Signa.* *Cauſa.* *Signa.*

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflãmation in the filmes of the head: and if there be heauineſſe with the diſtenſion, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes And if the paine be felt ſuperficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the ſcull is griefued But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that thoſe that haue paine within the ſcull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, becauſe that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning, of the filmes of the braine. And if ſo be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned with the headach. They alſo are vexed with a feuer, which haue headach cauſed by inflammation As for diet to be vſed in this griefe, you may eaſily preſcribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes thereof: and therefore I omit it here willingly, leſt I ſhould vſe a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuerſity of the cauſe. For if you finde abundance of humours or vapours to be the cauſe, if it be ingendred of plenitude of the whole body, you muſt begin with euacuation of the whole body, And therefore you muſt let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the ſame ſide, if his ſtrength will ſuffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours that do aſcend, for that it is weake, then you muſt pull backe the matter vnto the whole body, and ſo remedie the part affected. Therefore you muſt vſe very ſharpe cliſters, and bindings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts: and ſometime alſo in this caſe you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that, bloud do ſeeme ſtill to abound, you may open a veine in the noſthrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as ſhall be requiſite. Shortly after you muſt purge the body with *Hierapicra*, or other thinges that are preſcribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole body, you may ſafely come to purging of the head, and in the end vſe medicines to ſtrengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargariſmes, and with medicines put into the noſe, as iuyce of Leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or ſuch like, which be rehearſed before in the ſeuenth Chapter. To the head it ſelfe you muſt firſt apply things that do repell and driue backe: ſuch be, oyle made of vnripe Oliues, and oyle of Roſes alone, or applyed with vineger, alſo oyle made of Poppy heads and of Iuie berries, and of greene Mints, and ſuch like, whereof we haue ſpoken before. But note, if the humours that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme; but if the humours abounding be hote and cholericke, then apply thoſe medicines cold. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe medicines that do diſcuſſe and diſperſe humours, as be oyles of Cammomill and Dill, and ſuch like before rehearſed; but if the humors abounding be thicke and tough, boyle Serpillum, or Peniroyall, or Calamint, or Mints in oyle, and thou ſhalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Beſides, theſe things do ſtrengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vſed vntill the cure be finiſhed. Aboue all other things Veruaine doth diſperſe humours, and mightily corroborate the head, eſpecially being greene. Alſo being drie, and boyled in Ale, rootes and all together, with Serpillum, it doth the like, if the head be annointed therewith. Moreouer if you boile Veruaine alone in oyle, & do ſprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it

Note.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vene ſectio.

Reuulſio.

Localia.

Note.

Verbenaca-rectæ.

were

were cauſed of cold, and groſſe and viſcous humours, as *Galen* witneſſeth, *Lib. 2. de Compoſ. medicam ſecundum locos.* Alſo for the ſame it profiteth much to vſe oile, wherein Sowes, called in Latine *Millipidæ*, be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalæa* coming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof coming of other cauſes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migrime.

Hemicrania is a painefull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right half or on the left, and is diſtinguiſhed by the ſeame that runneth along in the skull, from the middle forehead to the hinder part of the head: this griefe in Engliſh is called the Migrime. This paine cometh often by fits, and in ſome the griefe is felt without the skull, in ſome within deepe in the braine, and in ſome other nigh to the temples in the muſcles there. This paine is cauſed by aſcending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the veines, or by the arteries, or by both. Sometime they onely proceed from the part contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thruſt out their excrements and ſuperfluities from them; and ſometime from the parts of the bodie beneath the head, which ſend vp corrupt vapours and humours from themſelues to the braine. The ſignes whereby you ſhould know whether vapours or humours do abound, and whether they be hote, or cold, are to be gatherd out of the former chapters: as alſo to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the ſcull or without, reade the former Chap. of *Cephalæa*. Onely this I adde here, that if in this diſeaſe, the filme that couereth the skul be affected, then is their pain ſo vehement, that they cannot ſuffer to be touched with ones hand: ſo that it ſeemeth the skin it ſelfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they ſhould vſe, & what they ſhould eſchue, may readily be gathered and preſcribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſity of cauſes: but ſpecially let the patient refraine from ſuch things as do ſend abundance of ſharpe vapours vp to the head, as be Garlicke, Onions, Muſtard, Radiſh roots and ſuch like. The cure is diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. And therefore when you will cure the Migrime, conſider diligently firſt whether the patient needeth bloudletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude and abundance of bloud & humors, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the ſame ſide that the griefe is, but if the Migrime be cauſed of abundance of one humour, then purge that humour by conuenient medicines, which are preſcribed in the former Chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to locall and outward medicines, and firſt cauſe the patient, either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is grieued, and ſpecially about the muſcles of his temples, vntill it be red and hote; and this muſt be done before the fit of paine cometh. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his ſecond booke *De Compoſ. medic. ſecundum locos*) you muſt apply medicines which of the old Phyſitians were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vſed for the Migrime: noting this alwaies, that if with the paine there were much heate felt, then you ought to apply ſuch things as would ſomewhat coole. But

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

if there were no euident heate felt, then vse those things that are very hote. But you must commixe with either of these somewhat that is restrictiue, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect. *Vnguentum.* ℞. of oiles of Dill and Ireos, ana ℥. ß. of white Pepper, and *Serpillum*, ana ℈. j. ß. of *Castoreum*, ℈ j. of *Euphorbium*, ℈. ß. of Waxe q ß & make an ointment to be applied vpon the halfe of the forehead, and the muscle of the temples. *Oleum.* Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. ℞ sweete oile Oliue, ℥. j. *Euphorbium*, ℈. j. commixe them and drop one drop into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lesse according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the Migrime engendred of hote vapours or humours, *AEtius* saith that *Euphorbiū* dissolued in vineger, & applied to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid property helpe the Migrime. The same Author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applied to the griefe, as also the flesh of Snailes bruised and applied, doth profite much. The kernels of Peaches bruised and applied vpon the griefe (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith, that the dung of a Goate stamped and commixed with vineger squilliticke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceaseth the paine of the Migrime for euer. Also his counsel is, if there be sodaine paine of the Migrime, take Frankinsence, Mirrhe, & an egge; beate them together, and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the Migrime be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which were prescribed before in the cure of headach coming of heate or cholericke humours. *Note.* Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine Pils, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the Migrime. *Pilulæ.* First if choler abound, ℞ powder of *Hiera simplex Galeniū*, ℥. jj. *pilularum Arabicarū*, ℥ iij. trochiskes of *Myrabolanes citrin.* ℥. j. ß. Reubarbe, ℥ j. Spikenard, ℈. j. commixe them with sirupe of Violets, and reserue the composition. When need requireth minister ℥. j. or ℈ iiij. fiue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten dayes, or once in fifteene daies at all times (Sommer excepted.) But if fleame abound make your Pils thus. ℞. of Agaricke trochiscate. ℥. iiij *pilulæ Arabicæ*, and *Hiera simplex Gal.* ana ℥ j. ß. floures of Stœchados, and trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Chebulorum*, ana ℥. j. with sirupe of Stœchados, and *Oximel*; commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister ℥. j. or ℈. iiij. at each time in forme aboue said. But if melancholy be cause of the Migrime, ℞. of the aforesaid *Pilulæ Arabicæ*, ℥. ij. of powder of Sene and *Epithimum*, ana ℥. ij. ß. of *Hiera simplex Gal.* ℥ j. ß. of trochiskes of *Myrabolanes Indorum*, ℈. iiij. with sirupe of Fumitory and Balme water make Pils, and when neede requireth, minister them in forme aforesaid.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

THat which the Latins call *Vertigo*, is a disease, wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about. There is another disease somewhat like vnto this, which in Latine is called, *Tenebricosa Vertigo*, & that is when

the patient doth thinke that all that he seeth turneth about, and sodainely with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist and darknes. It is commonly of the Physitians called *Scotoma*. *Fuchsius* doth thinke that they erre greatly that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate mouing of windy vapours and spirits, contained in certaine parts of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distempered & euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. The brain it selfe is euill affected, when a grosse and tough humour is contained in it, from whence a vaporous and windy spirit being resolued by weake heate, is moued inordinately about in the braine. The mouth of the stomack doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are carried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this disease, a darkes and mist appeareth before their eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chanceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, and therefore the patient many time fals downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele or any such thing turne about; also if he see whirlepooles in the water turne about: for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like thing, do also turne about in like sort, and so the mouing of the humour and the spirits are troubled vnequall, and inordinate. When this disease doth proceede of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine and heauinesse in the head. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by some other means, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomacke, then they feele before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the hartburne, and a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sickneslle, for that this doth neither take away the senses from the patient, nor causeth the crampe and writhing of the members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as *Galen* saith) is nigh to the falling sickneslle and the Apoplexie, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernitious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sickues and the Apoplexie. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloudy and reddish, he is apt to fall into madneslle, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sickneslle. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becometh most vehement in Winter, or in the beginning of the Spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sickneslle will follow: and many do vse to call it a little Epilepsie. As concerning diet: let the patient remaine in an aire that is temperate, pure, bright, and cleare; and let him eschue grosse and cloudy ayre. Let him eschue windes, especially South windes: let him also auoid the beames of the Sunne and the Moone: as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Victus ratio.

as running waters or things that turne about as wheels,& ſuch like; or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce,and of eaſie digeſtion, and ſuch as engender no windines,as Partrich, Capon, Pheſant,Chicken, veale,ſcaly fiſhes, and ſuch like, that be eaſie of digeſtion. And let him vſe to eate but moderately of them: for ſatiety,as alſo long faſting, is not good for him. He muſt eſchue all things that cauſe vapours to aſcend into the head, as Onions, Garlike, Leekes, and ſuch like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old: ſmall white wine, may be permitted him. After meate it is good for him to vſe ſome reſtrictiue thing to ſtop the vapours that they aſcend not to the head, and that ſpecially if the ſtomacke be cauſe of this diſeaſe. Let his exerciſe be moderate,let him eſchue ſleepe of the day,neither let him ſleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he ſleepeth, nor let him not keepe his head too hote, In his exerciſes,let him not ſtirre his head much: and therefore it is good for him to vſe frictions often, ſpecially in the morning before he riſeth: begin at the vpper parts,and end with the nether. He muſt refraine from perturbations and affections of the minde,ſpecially from anger, feare, and ſadnes,as alſo from loud crying, and ſinging. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a ſtoole once in a day, you muſt helpe nature either by cliſter or ſuppoſitary. For the cure if the fit be preſent, you muſt reuiue the patient againe with ſweete and odoriferous ſmels; & with frictions and ſuch like. At which time alſo if need be, you may vſe a ſuppoſitary or a cliſter. Afterward if the patient be ſtrong,and no other impediment preſent,let him bloud on the *Cephalica* veine,whether it be the beginning of the diſeaſe or otherwiſe. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occaſion. Therefore you muſt draw away the bloud at ſundry times, vntill you haue ſufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloudletting,firſt you muſt purge him with a ſharpe cliſter, whereof you ſhall haue example afterward in the chap. of Apoplexy. Afterward miniſter a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require But forget not firſt to vſe a preparatiue. When the whole body is ſufficiently purged, you muſt vſe locall things to the head, and firſt apply cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head with ſcarification. Afterward vſe to miniſter gargariſmes, & ſternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the noſe iuyce of Chickweed, Beets or *Cytlaminus*. Alſo *Nitrum* beaten with *Nigella* and mixed with old oile,purgeth well by the noſthrils. Alſo odors made of the decoction of Marioram,Hyſope,and flowers of Stæchados,a litle *Caſtoreũ*,Muſke, and vineger being added, is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, ſpecially a naturall bath that is of Alume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you muſt coole it often with oile of Roſes and vineger applied in clothes to it, ſpecially on the forepart of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the diſeaſe do ceaſſe by theſe remedies, then vſe no other. But if it continue ſtill, you muſt cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, ſpecially if the diſeaſe come of hote vapours aſcending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but alſo of *Ætius* and *Paulus Ægineta*. How the arteries ſhould be cut you ſhall learne of the ſaid *Ægineta* in his 6. booke and 4 Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that

Curatio.

Vene ſectio.

Localia.

ſome

ome haue not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous ſpirits do ſometime aſcend by deeper arteries into the braine, and partly for that a windy ſpirit may be engendred by an inequall diſtemper of the braine. And therefore if the diſeaſe be cauſed by any of theſe meanes before rehearſed, the patient ſhall feele ſmall eaſe or none by cutting of the arteries: and therefore be diligent to enquire of the aforeſaid cauſes, before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cautery behind the eares ℞. of Cantharides, their heads, wings and legs, being caſt away ℥.j. ſharp leauen, ℥.ß. with vineger and *Aqua vitæ*, commixe them and apply them. If the *Vertigo* be cauſed by the conſent of the ſtomacke, that is, if humours contained in the mouth of the ſtomacke do ſend vp vapors to the braine, & ſo cauſe the *Vertigo*, it muſt be cured by vomit, which you ſhall prouoke in this ſort. ℞. of Dill a handfull, ſeed of Radiſh and Rapes ana ℥.ij. of radiſh roots, ℥.ß. boile them in ſufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and put thereto *Oximel ſcilliticum*, ℥.j.ß. commixe them and make a potion, and miniſter it bloud warme after meate immediatly: and if this ſuffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*, or with pils that be good for the ſtomacke, called *ſtomachicæ* for that cauſe, or with the decoction of Myrobalanes citrine, or *Chebuli*, or with Manna, or ſirupe of Roſes ſolutiue, according to the diuerſity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vſe commonly after meate to eate ſome reſtrictiue thing, that wil cloſe the mouth of the ſtomacke, & hinder the aſcending of vapors vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon ſine ſpeciebus*, and Quinces, or reſtrictiue Peares, or ſuch like. *Marcellus* ſaith, the iuyce of blacke Beets annointed vpon the temples helpeth the *Vertigo*. And if Sothernwood be boyled in wine, or in *Oximel*, and drunke warme, it is a moſt effectual remedy to cure it perfectly.

Cauterium.

Cure of the Vertigo that cometh of the ſtomacke.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Frenſie.

PHrenitis in Greeke and in Latine, is a diſeaſe, wherein the mind is hurt, and doth onely differ from madneſſe, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feuer is ioyned with the Frenſie, and therefore the Frenſie may be called a continuall madneſſe and fury ioyned with a ſharpe feuer. *Galen* ſaith that the Frenſie is an inflammation of the braine, or of the filmes thereof. *Ætius* ſaith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feuer, cauſing raging and vexation of the minde. There be three kinds of Frenſies (as *Galen* doth witneſſe in his fourth booke *de locis affectis, cap.* 40.) according to the internall ſenſes, which be three in number, that is, imagination, cogitation, and memory, which may ſeuerally be hurt. Two of thoſe kinds be ſimple, and the third is compounded of thoſe two. For ſome be frenticke, which can iudge rightly of thoſe things that they ſee, as touching common ſenſe and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantaſie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being frenticke, are not deceiued in cogitation and reaſon, but onely in imagination they erre. There be other ſome frenticke, which do erre both in ſenſe & cogitation, that is, both in imagination and reaſon, and do therewith alſo loſe their memory. The Frenſie is cauſed either of abundance of bloud, or of choler, occupying the braine or the

Three kinds of frenſies.

Cauſe.

filmes thereof. And if the choler whereof the diſeaſe engendreth be burnt, then the Frenſie is moſt vehement, and more pernitious then any other. Thoſe that *Signa.* be frenticke haue a continuall feuer, & be madde, for the moſt part they cannot ſleepe. Sometime they haue troubleſome ſleepes, ſo that they riſe vp, and leap, & cry out furiouſly: they babble words without order or ſenſe; being asked a queſtion, they anſwer not directly, or at the leaſt raſhly, and that with loud voice, eſpecially if you ſpeake gently to them. Their eyes be bloudſhotten and bleared, they rub them often, ſometime they are dry, and ſometime full of ſharp teares. Their tongue is rough, & bloud wil often drop out of their noſe. Moreouer they pul motes and flockes from the bedding and clothes about thē. Their pulſes be ſmal & weake, and ſomewhat hard and ſinewy: they fetch their breath but ſeldome. Note that they which haue the Frenſy cauſed of bloud, do laugh in their madneſſe. But thoſe that be frenticke through choler, do rage furiouſly, ſo that they cannot be ruled without bands, and ſuch do vſe to forget all things that they do or ſay, ſo that ſome of them, when they require the chamber pot, do forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they re- *Prognoſtica.* member not to reſtore the veſſell againe. As touching the prognoſtication of this diſeaſe, *Galen* and all other learned Phyſitions do confeſſe that it is moſt ſharpe and moſt perillous, and indeede vncurable and deadly, for the moſt part. *Hippocrates* ſaith in his 72. aphoriſme of his fourth booke, that vrine white and *Victus ratio.* cleare in thoſe that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the ſicke be vſed in this ſort. If it be Winter, let him lye in a warme place, if it be Sommer, let his lodging be in a coole place; let the aire & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerſe pictures in the place. And for that ſome be troubled with the light, and ſome with darknes, it is beſt to try them in both, and to lay him in the light which is afraid of darkneſſe, and contrary he that is offended at the light, let him be in a darke place. But if the ſicke perſon do finde no difference in the places, then, if he be ſtrong, let him haue light; if weake, keepe him in a darke place. Let his deareſt friends come to him, and let them ſometime ſpeake gently and ſoftly vnto him, and ſometime rebuke him ſharply. Let his meate at the firſt be Ptiſan broth, and husked Barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulſa*, that is, water & Hony ſodden together, or in hony of Roſes. Boile in his broths Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Mallowes, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you may giue him ſcaly fiſhes, ſuch as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him Pomegranats, & Cherries. Let his drinke be water, wherein a little Cinamon or barly hath bene boiled, you may commixe with it ſirupe of Violets, or of Roſes, or of water Lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but ſeldome, and little at once. When ſignes of concoction appeare in the vrine, and the vehemency of the feuer is ſlaked, if then the ſicke do lacke ſtrength, you may giue him ſmall ale. Moreouer let the ſicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is poſſible; if he be rich let his ſeruants hold him, if poore binde him; for inordinate mouing diminiſheth ſtrength. Alſo a bath of ſweete water is good for him, if the body be drie and rimpled, but he muſt vſe it bloud warme: for ſo it coo- leth and moiſteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drineſſe and ouermuch

watchings

watching; but take heed you vse no bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer, perturbations of the minde do hurt frentike persons exceedingly, and therefore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choler. For the cure, if strength of the patient will suffer, let him bleed forthwith, for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vttermost veine of the arme called *Cephalica*, and if that appeare not, take the middle veine, and draw out as much blond as strength will suffer. But take heede you let him not bleed vntill he swound, as many rashly do; for it is better to take lesse thē you should do, the body being much weakned by vehement motion. You must take good heed, lest the sicke do priuily take away the band off his arme, to loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength do forbid bloudletting, then vse cupping with scarification, behind in the necke or on the backe bone, which be profitable, for that they draw backe the humours that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed make in this sort. ℞. Mallow leaues, Violet leaues, Endiue, and Lettuce, ana M.j. of Barly decorticate, ℥.j. Sebesten, num. 11. seeds of Gourds, Melons, and Cucūbers, ana ℥.iij. seeth al these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it & take of the decoction, ℥.xij. of *Cassia fistula* newly drawne, ℥.j.ß. of *mel Rosarum*, ℥.j. oile of Violets, ℥.iij of Salt, ℥.j.ß. commixe them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly, put to it of *Hierapicra*, or *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, ℥.ß. Binding of the extreme parts of the body profits much to diuert the humors from the head. Also *Mathiolus* doth greatly cōmend *Stubium* with the conserues of Roses, and I my selfe haue proued it in this order to be most excellent as followeth. ℞ g.12. made in very fine powder, and put into claret wine, ℥.iiij. & let it stand houres 30 & euery 6 or 7. houre shake it: and at the 30 houres end, powre it from the powder, & let him drink it with a little sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors from the head, as also to rub the feete with salt and vineger & such like. You must sprinkle the head with oile of Roses, or vineger of Roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed, cannot safely abide actuall cold, nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of Nightshade, & of Plantaine, or the distilled waters of them, or such like herbs. If the euill be very vehement, moistē his face cōtinually with oile of water wherin the tops of Poppy haue bene sodden. You may also vse odours to his nose of Roses, Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Also annoint his nostrils within, and his forehead with the iuyce of the foresaid herbs: for you must endeuour to astony & dul the braine (which burneth extremely) by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch, then you must apply such things as prouoke sleepe, as this ointment following or such like. ℞. *Vnguenti populeon*, ℥ ij. oyle of Violets, ℥.iij. seed of Henbane, & barke of Mandrake roots, ana ℈.ß. of *Opium*, g.ij. of Saffron. g.iij. Vineger a little, white Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment & annoint the temples therewith. Also this embrocation may be vsed bloud warme to the head. ℞. floures of Violets, red Roses, and water Lillies, ana M.j. Barly decorticate, ℥.j. seeds of white Poppy, ℥ ij. seeds of Lettuce, ℥.iij. seeth thē in sufficiēt quantity of water vnto the third part, & make an embrocatiō. You shall make the decoctiō of more force

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Cliſter.
A purging potion.
Localia.
Vnguentum.
Embrochæ.

if you adde leaues of Henbane, Nightshade, Poppy heads, Mandrake apples, or roots, and a little Vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, Poppy heads, or Mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drinke water wherin Poppy or Henbane seed hath bin sodden, or some somnoriferous cõpound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *Philonũ*, or such like; in ministring whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit, but in the declining thereof. Beside, note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines, as well inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease by ouermuch cooling you may turne the Frensie into a Lethargie, whereby you may cause him to sleepe so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleep, for in such as be weake (as *Trallianus* saith) somoniferous potiõs do no smal hurt, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is asswaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day, you must apply discussiue medicines which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease. *Discutientia.* And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, flowers of Cammomill, Dill, Melilot, marsh Mallowes and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining) do apply to the head, Hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the lungs of a Weather hote. But take good heed that no such thing be applyed in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemency thereof, for so you should increase the inflammation & the feuer, & make the sicke in more perill. Moreouer if the cuill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *Serpillum*, that is, wild Thime, or Sauory. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of subtile substance, & will worke his force through the scull. When the frenticke person is recouered, let him eschue drunkennesse, idlenesse, variety and corruption of meates, & specially the burning heate of the sun. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the Frensie, but also a remedy against immoderate watching, & rauing in any sort ingendred by feuers, when the patiẽt is so vexed by them (although they come by cõsent, & be but accidents of the feuer) that it is necessary to remedy them, lest the braine in time be thereby affected.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Lethargus in Greeke & in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the Frensie; for it causeth sluggishnes and an inexpugnable desire of sleeping. some call this disease in Latin *veternus*. They that be take with this disease, do forget all things whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in greeke is forgetfulnesse, and *Argos* *λήθη ἀργὸς.* is slothfull or dul, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dul obliuion, and therfore may be called in Latin *Obliuio iners*. *Causa.* It is cauled of fleame, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleepe. The fleame doth putrifie in the braine, and thereby causeth a feauer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke *de Methodo medendi*. *Signa.* Also they haue alwaies a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, & striketh seldome, and is watery, that is, it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome and weakly, they are continually sluggish and sleepy, and can scarsly by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime

open

open their eyes, if you cry loud to them, and shut them againe forthwith: they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Oftentimes being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessel, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquid: but contrariwise many are costiue. Their vrine is like beasts vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweate all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth lie be light and warme. Let his meats be such as do extenuate, cut and drie, and let them be seasoned with *Apium*, Annise, Comin, Pepper, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. Let the sicke eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and Chickens, Partrich, Thrush and such like. For pot-herbes let him vse *Asparagus*, Fenell, Parcely, and such like. Also giue him broth made with Barley or Oatmeale, or *Alica* with *Oxymel* or Peniroyall. Let his drinke be *Hydromel*, that is, water and hony sodden together, Meade, or watery, thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme parts for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else do let) it is good forthwith to let bloud. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much bloud as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let bloud, thē must the bowels be scoured with sharp clisters, whereof you shall finde examples in the chapter of *Apoplexia*. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of Hysope in hony and water, or with Thime, Peniroyall, *mel Rosarum*, or *Oximel* cōmixed with sirupe of Borage, or infusion of Roses, & waters of Hysope, Betony Marioram, & Borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell fleame, whereof you shall finde examples in the next chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *Oxyrhodinum*, that is, vineger of Roses, & that in the beginning, for the humor is to be repelled & driuen back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also, it is good to vse frictions with Pellitory, Pepper, salt, & vineger, & bindings of the extreme parts. Moreouer, apply to his nosthrils odours which wil awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, Tarte, *Galbanum*, Sulphur, Harts horne, Sothernwood, or Goats horne burnt a little & holden to the nosthrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boyle Thime, Peniroyall, and Origan in vineger, & hold that decoction to the nose of the sicke, that the fume ascending to the braine, may cut and deuide the tough humours. Also annoint the palat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicines, as with Mustard & Hony, *Mithridatū*, *Theriaca*, powder of Pellitory. And you must endeuour to pluck out the fleame that sticketh there with your finger: sometime also you may prouoke sneesing with *Castoreum*, or Pepper, or *Eileborus*: & if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shaue the head, and apply to it bags of salt, or *Milium*, or such like. Or make this decoction following, & let it run on high vpon the forepart of the head. ℞. wild Thime, Hysope, & Sauory, with a little *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile and vineger, and vse it. Moreouer, it profiteth to apply a *Sinapismus*, made of Figges & Mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

of the head cupping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioynt of the neck, partly easily, & partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with *Castoreum*. And (as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunk with Oximel an houre before the fit, is exceeding good: for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life & health. You may minister ℥ j. therof with ℥ j. of Oximel, or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua Mulsa*. Besides, you must often prouoke nature to expell excrements with Clisters, and such things as prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oyle of Rew wherein a little *Castoreum* is mixed: you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuate & cut grosse and clammy humours, as be decoctions of *Apium*, Fennell, Maidenhaire, and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow downe such potions often, & therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the Lethargy it continueth long. If strength do permit, you may minister *Hiera ex Colocynthide*, & prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforenamed. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horseback, or in a litter is profitable, and bathing is exceeding good at that time: but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heate of the bath, at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bath with sharpe Sope, as with wine lies burnt, with Mustard seed, Pellitory, Pepper, Laurell berries, quicke Lime, adding double as much *Nitrum*.

Castoreum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Memory lost.

Memoria deperdita, the losse of memory chanceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused of the Lethargie and other soporiferous diseases. It cometh to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulnesse: which when it chanceth, then a cold distemper is the cause that the memory is perished or grieuously hurt. This coldnesse hath sometimes moistnesse ioyned with it, and sometime drinesse: somtime any one of the former distempers may cause this disease alone: therefore the Physition must diligently discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either externall or internall: if they be internall, either abundance of fleame or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humours abounding, then must it needs come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed, and so turned into oblиuion, or if medicines were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour, with study, & watching, or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but a little cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory, then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *stultitia*, that is, foolishnes or dolтishnes, and both these do come of one disposition: but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if onely a dry distemper occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euill, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sicke. If onely a moist distemper be cause of it, then they are heauy & inclined to sleepe, & their sleepes be long & troublesome. If cold

Cause.

Signa.

be ioyned with moiſture, it engendreth the Lethargy and *Carus*, whereof we wil intreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue loſt their memory you muſt obſerue their ſleeps, whether they be ouer ſleepy, or in a meane, or ſleepe not at all: for ſo ſhall you finde what diſtemper doth moſt abound. Beſides you muſt marke whether they auoide any thing at the noſe, or whether any thing diſtill from the head by their mouth, or whether thoſe parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewiſe coniecture the diſtemper abounding. And if fleame be cauſe of the euill, you ſhall perceiue it not only by immoderate ſleepe, and abundance of excrements deſcending from the braine (as is aforeſaid) but alſo by the diſpoſition of the ſicke, by his age, & his cõplexion, by the time of the yeare, the region, the ſtate of the aire, and the diet that he vſed before. For all thoſe or the moſt part of them encline to cold and moiſture. Likewiſe if melancholy abounding be cauſe of the diſeaſe, you ſhall know it, for that the ſicke is not ſleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all frõ the braine: beſides, the ſtate of his body and all other circumſtances aboue rehearſed incline to cold & drineſſe. His diet muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of the cauſes. But whatſoeuer the cauſe be, let the aire that the ſicke remaineth in, be inclining to heate, and let his lodging be light: let not his windowes be North nor South, for the one cooleth, and the other filleth the head. Let him eſchue much ſleepe, ſpecially in the day time, & vpon a full ſtomacke. But note, if the diſeaſe be cauſed of a cold & moiſt diſtemper, then the whole order of his diet muſt be hote and dry. But if the cauſe be cold and dry, then muſt the diet be altogether ſuch as wil heate & moiſten. As touching the cure, if loſſe of memory be cauſed by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations, or by ſwounding often, and ſo ouermuch drineſſe do hurt the memory, then miniſter no medicins, but onely reſtore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborate, & ſtrength renued, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requiſite for ſuch a diet, you ſhall find it in the Chapter of the feauer hectike. If the memory be loſt by extreme age, then phyſick will nothing auaile. But onely they muſt content themſelues with diet conuenient: but if the memorie faile ſuddenly, the other members of the body being ſafe, then the falling ſickneſs is to be feared, or the palſey, or the Apoplexy. And therefore in ſuch a caſe you muſt prouide diligently by all meanes, that no ſuch thing chãce as is to be feared. You may preuent thoſe diſeaſes by the ſame remedies that you wold vſe in the cure of thẽ being preſent. And if the memory faile by meanes of other diſeaſes, as through the Lethargy or Peſtilence, then medicins for cure thereof are to be vſed. The whole ſcope of curing the diſeaſe, if it come onely of a cold diſtemper of the brain, cõſiſteth in heating. You muſt therefore miniſter medicines that haue vertue to heat as well inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you muſt annoint the head with warme oile, & that in ſommer. In winter annoint it with oile of *Ireos* cõmixed with ſharp vineger, & ſomtime boile wild Thime, & calamint, & ſuch like in the oile, & ſo vſe it. Some do adde to it Pepper, and Laurell berries. Alſo *Caſtoreum* is profitable being commixed with oile and annointed vpon the hinder part of the head. Alſo this ointment is very good. ℞. of *Oleum de lateribus*, and oile of *Caſtoreum*, ana ℥. ß. rootes of *Acorus* and Valerian, ana ℈. j Pellitory and Rew, of each ℈. j ß. with

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

if you adde leaues of Henbane, Nightshade, Poppy heads, Mandrake apples, or roots, and a little Vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, Poppy heads, or Mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drinke water wherin Poppy or Henbane seed hath bin sodden, or some somnoriferous cõpound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *Philonũ*, or such like; in ministring whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit, but in the declining thereof. Beside, note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines, as well inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease by ouermuch cooling you may turne the Frensie into a Lethargie, whereby you may cause him to sleepe so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleep, for in such as be weake (as *Trallianus* saith) somoriferous potiõs do no smal hurt, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is asswaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day, you must apply discussiue medicines which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease, *Dissutientia.* And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, flowers of Cammomill, Dill, Melilot, marsh Mallowes and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining) do apply to the head, Hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the lungs of a Weather hote. But take good heed that no such thing be applyed in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemency thereof, for so you should increase the inflammation & the feuer, & make the sicke in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *Serpillum*, that is, wild Thime, or Sauory. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of subtile substance, & will worke his force through the scull. When the frenticke person is recouered, let him eschue drunkennesse, idlenesse, variety and corruption of meates, & specially the burning heate of the sun. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the Frensie, but also a remedy against immoderate watching, & raging in any sort ingendred by feuers, when the patiẽt is so vexed by them (although they come by cõsent, & be but accidents of the feuer) that it is necessary to remedy them, lest the braine in time be thereby affected.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Lethargus in Greeke & in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the Frensie; for it causeth sluggishnes and an inexpugnable desire of sleeping. some call this disease in Latin *veternus*. They that be takẽ with this disease, do forget all things whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in greeke is forgetfulnesse, and *Argos* is slothfull or dul, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dul obliuion, and therfore may be called in Latin *Obliuio iners*. *Nam apud Græcos.* *Causa.* It is cauled of fleame, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleepe. The fleame doth putrifie in the braine, and thereby causeth a feauer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke *de Methodo medendi*. Also they haue alwaies a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, & striketh seldome, and is watery, that is, it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome and weakly, they are contipually sluggish and sleepy, and can scarsly by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime *Signa.*

open

open their eyes, if you cry loud to them, and shut them againe forthwith: they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Oftentimes being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessel, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquid: but contrariwise many are costiue. Their vrine is like beasts vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweate all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth lie be light and warme. Let his meats be such as do extenuate, cut and drie, and let them be seasoned with *Apium*, Annise, Comin, Pepper, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. Let the sicke eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and Chickens, Partrich, Thrush and such like. For pot-herbes let him vse *Asparagus*, Fenell, Parcely, and such like. Also giue him broth made with Barley or Oatmeale, or *Alica* with *Oxymel* or Peniroyall. Let his drinke be *Hydromel*, that is, water and hony sodden together, Meade, or watery, thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme parts for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else do let) it is good forthwith to let bloud. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much bloud as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let bloud, thē must the bowels be scoured with sharp clisters, whereof you shall finde examples in the chapter of *Apoplexia*. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of Hysope in hony and water, or with Thime, Peniroyall, *mel Rosarum*, or *Oximel* cōmixed with sirupe of Borage, or infusion of Roses, & waters of Hysope, Betony Marioram, & Borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell fleame, whereof you shall finde examples in the next chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *Oxyrhodinum*, that is, vineger of Roses, & that in the beginning, for the humor is to be repelled & driuen back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also, it is good to vse frictions with Pellitory, Pepper, salt, & vineger, & bindings of the extreme parts. Moreouer, apply to his nosthrils odours which wil awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, Tarre, *Galbanum*, Sulphur, Harts horne, Sothernwood, or Goats horne burnt a little & holden to the nosthrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boyle Thime, Peniroyall, and Origan in vineger, & hold that decoction to the nose of the sicke, that the fume ascending to the braine, may cut and deuide the tough humours. Also annoint the palat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicines, as with Mustard & Hony, *Mithridatū*, *Theriaca*, powder of Pellitory. And you must endeuour to pluck out the fleame that sticketh there with your finger: sometime also you may prouoke sneesing with *Castoreum*, or Pepper, or *Eileborus*: & if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shaue the head, and apply to it bags of salt, or *Milium*, or such like. Or make this decoction following, & let it run on high vpon the forepart of the head. ℞. wild Thime, Hysope, & Sauory, with a little *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile and vineger, and vse it. Moreouer, it profiteth to apply a *Sinapismus*, made of Figges & Mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

of the head cupping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioynt of the neck, partly easily,& partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with *Castoreum*. And(as *Trallianus* saith)*Castoreum* drunk with Oximel an houre before the fit,is exceeding good: for(as he saith)he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life & health. You may minister ʒ.j. therof with ʒ.j. of Oximel,or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua Mulsa*. Besides, you must often prouoke nature to expell excrements with Cliſters, and such things as prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oyle of Rew wherein a little *Castoreum* is mixed: you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuate & cut grosse and clammy humours, as be decoctions of *Apium*, Fennell, Maidenhaire, and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow downe such potions often,& therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the Lethargy it continueth long. If strength do permit, you may minister *Hiera ex Colocynthide*, & prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforenamed. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke,or in a litter is profitable,and bathing is exceeding good at that time:but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heate of the bath, at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bath with sharpe Sope, as with wine lies burnt, with Mustard seed, Pellitory, Pepper, Laurell berries, quicke Lime,adding double as much *Nitrum*.

Castoreum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Memory lost.

Memoria deperdita, the losse of memory chanceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused of the Lethargie and other soporiferous diseases. It cometh to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulnesse: which when it chanceth, then a cold distemper is the cause that the memory is perished or grieuously hurt. This coldnesse hath sometimes moistnesse ioyned with it, and sometime drinesse: somtime any one of the former distempers may cause this disease alone:therefore the Physition must diligently discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either externall or internall: if they be internall, either abundance of fleame or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humours abounding, then must it needs come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke,and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed,and is turned into obliuion, or if medicines were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head,which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour,with study,& watching,or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but a little cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory,then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *stultitia*,that is foolishnes or doltishnes,and both these do come of one disposition: but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes,if onely a dry distemper occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euill, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sicke. If onely a moist distemper be cause of it,then they are heauy & inclined to sleepe, & their sleepes be long & troublesome. If co-

Causæ.

Signa.

be ioyned with moiſture, it engendreth the Lethargy and *Carus*, whereof we wil intreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue loſt their memory you muſt obſerue their ſleeps, whether they be ouer ſleepy, or in a meane, or ſleepe not at all: for ſo ſhall you finde what diſtemper doth moſt abound. Beſides you muſt marke whether they auoide any thing at the noſe, or whether any thing diſtill from the head by their mouth, or whether thoſe parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewiſe coniecture the diſtemper abounding. And if fleame be cauſe of the euill, you ſhall perceiue it not only by immoderate ſleepe, and abundance of excrements deſcending from the braine (as is aforeſaid) but alſo by the diſpoſition of the ſicke, by his age, & his cõplexion, by the time of the yeare, the region, the ſtate of the aire, and the diet that he vſed before. For all thoſe or the moſt part of them encline to cold and moiſture. Likewiſe if melancholy abounding be cauſe of the diſeaſe, you ſhall know it, for that the ſicke is not ſleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all frõ the braine: beſides, the ſtate of his body and all other circumſtances aboue rehearſed incline to cold & drineſſe. His diet muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of the cauſes. But whatſoeuer the cauſe be, let the aire that the ſicke remaineth in, be inclining to heate, and let his lodging be light: let not his windowes be North nor South, for the one cooleth, and the other filleth the head. Let him eſchue much ſleepe, ſpecially in the day time, & vpon a full ſtomacke. But note, if the diſeaſe be cauſed of a cold & moiſt diſtemper, then the whole order of his diet muſt be hote and dry. But if the cauſe be cold and dry, then muſt the diet be altogether ſuch as wil heate & moiſten. As touching the cure, if loſſe of memory be cauſed by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations, or by ſwounding often, and ſo ouermuch drineſſe do hurt the memory, then miniſter no medicins, but onely reſtore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborate, & ſtrength renued, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requiſite for ſuch a diet, you ſhall find it in the Chapter of the feauer hectike. If the memory be loſt by extreme age, then phyſick will nothing auaile. But onely they muſt content themſelues with diet conuenient: but if the memorie faile ſuddenly, the other members of the body being ſafe, then the falling ſickneſs is to be feared, or the palſey, or the Apoplexy. And therefore in ſuch a caſe you muſt prouide diligently by all meanes, that no ſuch thing chãce as is to be feared. You may preuent thoſe diſeaſes by the ſame remedies that you wold vſe in the cure of thẽ being preſent. And if the memory faile by meanes of other diſeaſes, as through the Lethargy or Peſtilence, then medicins for cure thereof are to be vſed. The whole ſcope of curing the diſeaſe, if it come onely of a cold diſtemper of the brain, cõſiſteth in heating. You muſt therefore miniſter medicines that haue vertue to heat as well inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you muſt annoint the head with warme oile, & that in ſommer. In winter annoint it with oile of *Ireos* cõmixed with ſharp vineger, & ſomtime boile wild Thime, & calamint, & ſuch like in the oile, & ſo vſe it. Some do adde to it Pepper, and Laurell berries. Alſo *Caſtoreum* is profitable being commixed with oile and annointed vpon the hinder part of the head. Alſo this ointment is very good. ℞. of *Oleum de lateribus*, and oile of *Caſtoreum*, ana ℥. ß. rootes of *Acorus* and Valerian, ana ℈. j Pellitory and Rew, of each ℈. j ß. with

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Waxe ſufficient make an ointment, & annoint the hinder part of the head therwith being ſhauen, & apply this quilt vpon it. ℞. flowers of Roſemarie, Balme, & Lauender, ana M. ß. flowers of Elder, M. j. Stæchas, ℥ iij. Nutmegs, wood of Aloes, and Maces, ana ℈. j. powder them, and ſtitch them in ſilke, and make a quilt. You may make many ſuch like medicines by examples in other chapters. You may miniſter inwardly conſerues of the flowers of Betony, Roſemary, Lauender, Spikenard & Balme, adding to thē Pepper, Cloues, Cinamon, & ſuch like odoraments. If memory be loſt by cold and moiſtnes ioyned together miniſter *Hierapicra*, which wil purge out nothing that is good, but only that which is noyſome. Afterwards let him vſe gargariſes, ſternutations, and whatſoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the noſe. Alſo a *Sinapiſmus* may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be cauſed of fleame abounding, then you muſt firſt prepare and concoct that humour with *mel Roſarum*, *Oximel*, Sirupe of infuſion of Roſes, with decoction of Betony, Mariorā, Hyſope, Thime & ſuch like: after the adminiſtration whereof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of Myrobalanes *Chebulorum*, and Agaricke trochiſcate, to the which you may adde the ſirupe of infuſion of Roſes, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaphenicon*. And if the matter through his groſſenes, wil not ſufficiently purge at once, then you muſt prepare it againe, & after purge it with pils, *Arabitæ*, *Aureæ*, or *Aggregatiuæ*, commixing ſome of them with Agaricke trochiſcate, & ſo make pils with hony of Roſes, or Sirupe of Stæchados. After you may particularly purge the head with gargariſes & ſternutations. After purging it is good to miniſter vnto thē *Caſtoreū* or ſhauing of iuory, ℥. j. with *aqua mulſa*, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *Diãbra*, *Diamoſchus dulce*, or *Mithridatū*, or *Theriaca*, with *aqua mulſa* or white wine. Afterward you may vſe outwardly embrocations, & powre them downe frō on high vpon the head being ſhauen, ſpecially nigh to the ſeame, where the bone is looſeſt or thinneſt. You may make your embrocatiō thus: ℞. of Hyſope, *Serpillū*, & Time, ana M. ß. Betony, Marioram, & flowers of Cammomill, ana pug. ß. flowers of *Stæchados*, ℥ iij. make a decoction, & adde thereto of *Caſtoreū*, ℥. j. of vineger, ℥. j. & make an embrocatiō. It is good alſo to annoint the firſt & ſecond ſpondil in the necke, and hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oyles of Nutmegs, of *Caſtoreum*, of Pepper, or *Oleum coſtiuum*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt, made in this ſort. ℞. Hyſope, Mariorā, & flowers of *Stæchados*, ana ℥. j. *Caſtoreum*, Nutmegs, Spikenard, Maces, ana ℈. j. the barke of Frankinſence, Maſticke, and wood of *Aloes*, ana ℥. j. ß. red Roſes dried the weight of all: beate them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill ceaſſe not by this meanes, then laſt of all, vſe a *Sinapiſmus*. If memory be loſt by abundance of melancholy, you muſt firſt prepare it to expulſion, by ſirupe of Borage and Fumitory mixed together, adding Sirupe of infuſion of Roſes, and waters of Betony, Hops, and Balme, and ſuch like. Afterward miniſter this potion following. ℞. *Myrobalanorum Indorum*, ℥. iij. Sene, & Epithimum, ana ℥. ij. flowers of Hops, Fumitory, & Borage, ana ℥ ij ß. make a decoction in running water, & hauing ſtrained it, diſſolue therein of fine Manna, ℥. ij. of *Diacatholicon*, ℥. vij. or *Diaſene*, ℥ ß. & make a potion. As touching outward medicines, let them rather encline to moiſture then drineſſe. As by adding to the ointmēts before preſcribed oile

Sacculus.

Embrocha.

Sacculus.

Decoctio.

oyels of Cammomill, Dil, & ſweet Almonds. Likewiſe in making embrocations & quilts, you may withdraw ſuch medicines as dry, & adde moiſt things in their ſtead. Hereby a circumſpect Phyſition may not onely haue a reaſonable method to cure each kinde of obliuion, but alſo to remedie any dulnes or weakoes of the memory. For that it commeth of the ſame cauſes that memory loſt doth come, although they be not ſo vehement where the memorie is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

CAros in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin, is a diſeaſe, in which both ſenſe & mouing is altogether take away, and yet their breathing remaineth ſafe. The *Arabians* call this diſeaſe *Subeth*. This diſeaſe differeth from the Lethargie, for that they that haue the Lethargy, will anſwere to a queſtion demanded, and do not lie altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe ſleepe, and if they be ſtirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will ſay nothing, nor once open their eyes. Beſides as *Paulus AEgineta* noteth, a vehement feuer doth vſe to go before *Carus*, & in the Lethargy it followeth rather. Alſo *Carus* vſeth to ſucceede other ſymptomates & accidents. For it cometh often in the fits of feuers, and in the falling ſickneſſe, and in preſſing of the braine, as well when the braine pan is cruſhed together, as alſo if the filmes that couer the foremoſt ventricle of the braine, be thruſt downe. But the Lethargy hath a certaine peculiar conſiſtence of himſelf. Alſo *Carus* doth differ from the Apoplexy, for that in it the breathing is very ſtraight, ſo that the ſicke can with much ado ſcarce breathe at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witneſſeth in his fourth booke *de locis affectis*) hath his breath at liberty. *Carus* is cauſed of a cold, groſſe, & viſcous, flegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may eaſily know the ſignes by that which hath bene rehearſed before. For in this diſeaſe they are altogether in a dead ſleep, and their eyes alwaies ſhut. As for the diet, & the cure of thoſe that haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs that haue the Lethargy: whereof we ſpake before (in the 16. Chapt.) ſauing that in this diſeaſe you muſt vſe things that be of great force to extenuate, cut and deuide the groſſe humours. Alſo you muſt apply Emplaiſters, and other medicines to the ſtomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, for becauſe it is ſtuffed with fleame which doth coole it and moiſten it. Whereof you ſhall finde examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

Carus. *Subeth.* *Cauſa.* *Signa.* *Victus.* *Cura.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or Taking.

CAtoche or *Catalepſis* in Greeke, in Latin may be called *Occupatio, Detentio, & deprehenſio*. The new writers in Phiſicke do call it *Congelatio*: in Engliſh it may be called Congelatio or Taking. It is a ſodaine detention and taking both of minde and body, both ſenſe & mouing being loſt, the ſicke remaining in the ſame figure of body wherein he was taken, whether he ſit or lie, or ſtand, or whether his eyes be open or ſhut. This diſeaſe is a meane betweene the Lethargy and the Frenſy, for it cometh of a melancholy humour for the moſt part, as ſhall be declared afterward. Therefore in reſpect of coldneſſe it agreeth with the Lethargie, and in reſpect of drineſſe with the Frenſy. Here-

Congelatio.

vpon it cometh that they which haue this diſeaſe, are neither like the frenticke altogether, nor like them that haue the Lethargy. This diſeaſe is cauſed ſometime of abundance of bloud flowing to the head and repleniſhing it. But for the moſt part (as *AEtius* witneſſeth) it is cauſed of a cold and dry melancholicke humour, troubling the hinder part of the head and braine. This diſeaſe inuadeth a man ſodainely, and taketh away ſpeech and ſenſe from him; he heareth nothing, he anſwereth nothing, his breath is ſcarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulſe is ſmall and weake, and very thick. His egeſtion and vrine are detained, or elſe they come forth in ſmall quantity: and that is not in reſpect of drineſſe, for the ſicke ſometime doth abound with much moiſture, but for lacke of ſenſe. Their face is ſometime red, and that is when the euill is engendred of bloud; and ſometime it is ſwart, and that is when melancholy cauſeth the diſeaſe. Moreouer the eyes in this diſeaſe remaine immoueable, as though they were froſen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as Galen ſaith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer ſhut, but in this diſeaſe they ſometime remaine open. The diet in this euill muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Let his food be Ptiſan broth, and ſuch like. Let his drinke be *aqua Muiſa* well boyled, or Barley water, or ſmall ale; for ſeeing they fume not into the head, they do much good. It is hurtfull for them to drinke water, for it cauſeth windineſſe, ſwelleth the ſplene, and quencheth not thirſt. As concerning the cure, if the face of the ſicke be ruddy, and bloud ſeeme to abound, if ſtrength permit and yeares, let him forthwith bleede on the outwardmoſt veine of the arme, and let him bleede according to his ſtrength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply thoſe things that coole. For that purpoſe you may boile the ſhelles of Poppy heads in oyle, and annoint the head therewith. But in other that haue their face ſwart, and ſo haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you muſt firſt cleanſe the guts with cliſters, made of flowers of Borage, Bugloſſe, Fumitory, time, Epithimum, rootes of Polypody, leaues of Sene, adding to it oiles of Cammomill, & Dill, and *Caſia*, *Diacatholicon*, *Diaſena*, or *confectio Hamech* in conuenient quantity. Whereof you ſhall finde examples afterward in the chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not ſoluble by this meane, then it is not amiſſe to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Elleborus niger*. The head muſt be annointed with oile wherein wilde Time is ſodden, or with oiles of Lillies or Dill, or ſuch like, and that you muſt do chiefly when the head ſeemeth cold. Moreouer if his vrine appeare groſſe and thicke, you muſt giue him to drinke the decoction of Dill, *Apium*, Calamint, and ſuch like, as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth alſo to annoint all their whole body with oyle of Dill, ſpecially in winter. Alſo they that haue trembling with this diſeaſe may haue, ℥. j. of *Caſtoreum* cõmixed with *aqua mulſa*, & poured into their mouth. The reſt that concerne the cure of this diſeaſe may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the Frenſie and Lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of melancholy following.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Victus.

Cutatio.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead ſleepe.

COma in Greeke, *ſopor*, or *grauis & profundus ſomnus* in Latin. It may be called in Engliſh, deadſleepe. It is a diſeaſe wherein the ſicke cannot awa-

nor keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, & is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kindes hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken and that is called simply *Coma* or *sopor*, or else *Coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eyes, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference between these two kindes. The sleeping *Coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer- *Cause.*
much moistening of the braine, as it chanceth to many drunken persons. Also in feuers, onely hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour parts, and moistening the braine, do cause this euill. Moreouer sometime onely cold occupying the forepart of the braine is cause of this euill. Sometime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnes ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *Coma*, that is, the watching drousines, is caused of fleame mixed with choler, & for the most part it cometh for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open their eye liddes. The party that is vexed with *Signa.*
the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, doth sleepe with his neather iaw open, and as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching *Coma*, speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole body out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the Frensie, and partly such as in the Lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, according *Curatio.*
to the diuersity of the euils. For in the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, you must vse those remedies that are prescribed in the Chapters of *Carus* and the Lethargy: and to speake briefly, after the whole body is purged, if the euil be caused of moistnes, then you must apply such things as will dry the braine, made with sharpe vineger and Roses, and Cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nosthrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of Dill, and Cammomill warmed; and if the cold be great, you may sometime boile in oile, Peniroyall & Dill, and vse it. But if the euill be caused of cold and moisture ioyned together, then must it be cured, as the Lethargy. If it come of weakenesse and lacke of strength, then you may vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kindes of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *Coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines, partly as the Frensie and partly as the Lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleame abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the Lethargy: but if contrariwise choler do abound, then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the Frensie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexy.

APoplexia in Greeke and Latin, is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth sodainely lose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and mouing throughout the whole body, coming sodainely with let and hurt of all

voluntary functions. If this ſtopping of the braine come in one halfe of the body onely, then it is called *Paralyſis* in Greeke, in Engliſh the Palſey, whereof we will ſpeake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is cauſed of a flegmaticke humour that is cold, groſſe, and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour ouermuch crudities, and chiefly drunkenneſſe doth engender Alſo it is cauſed by a fall or a blow which ſhaketh and bruiſeth the braine, and cauſeth humours to flow thither. Alſo very cold aire which doth thicken and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth ſometime cauſe this diſeaſe: it may alſo be cauſed of a groſſe melancholy humour. Concerning ſignes, there goeth before this diſeaſe a full and ſharpe paine of the head, and a ſwelling of the veines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eies, alſo cold of the extreeme parts without cauſe, panting of the whole body, flowneſſe to moue, and gnawing of the teeth while they ſleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, blacke, like ruſt and canker in mettall, and hath a reſidence like meale. They that fall into this diſeaſe, do lacke ſenſe altogether, they lie as they were aſleepe with their eyes ſhut, and do ſnort. The vehemency and greatneſſe of this diſeaſe may be diſcerned by the impediments that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from naturall order, it betokeneth the vehemency of the diſeaſe, and that it is a great and ſtrong Apoplexy. But when there is a little impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but little hurt in the braine, and ſo you may accompt it a ſmall and weake Apoplexy. The worſt and ſtrongeſt Apoplexy is, wherein the breathing is ſo diminiſhed that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almoſt as euill, wherein the breath ſtoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This diſeaſe for the moſt part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmatike complexion, and which do vſe ſuch a diet as increaſeth fleame. But if ſo be it inuade any young perſon, & that in Sommer ſeaſon, it is moſt perillous. This diſeaſe is vncurable, or at the leaſt is ſeldome cured. And therefore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 14. Aphor. of his ſecond booke: It is impoſſible (ſaith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexy, and not eaſie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth ſpeedy death. Beſide, it it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the moſt part it departeth leauing the Palſey behind it, either in the whole body, or in ſome part thereof. Often alſo it corrupteth the memory, whereupon we may conclude that remedies are not to be vſed againſt a ſtrong Apoplexy, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the ſignes aforeſaid, although there be ſmall hope to remedy it, yet (as *Galen* teſtifieth) conuenient remedies being miniſtred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in ſome. Those therefore whoſe cure is not altogether deſperate, if there be ſignes of plenitude & fulnes, & ſtrength permit alſo, muſt be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veins. But you muſt foretell the peril, for bloudletting doth either kill them, or deliuer them: ſo that if after bloudletting (*AEtius* ſaith) both mouing & ſenſe come not vnto him againe, there is no more hope. You muſt not draw away much bloud at once, but rather at ſundry times, and you muſt haue regard to his pulſe, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Beſide, you muſt prouoke him to the ſtoole with ſharpe cliſters in this ſort: ℞. Sage, Origan, Betony, and Rew, ana. M.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Curatio.

Calami

Calamint, Hyſope and Peniroyall, ana M.ß. ſeeds of Fennel, *Seſelis*, and Ammi, ana.ʒ.iij. Centory the leſſe, M.j. rootes of Polypody ʒ.vj fine Agaricke, ʒ.iij. Pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ʒ.ij. boile theſe in ſufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be conſumed: then take of that decoction, ℥.xv. of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana.℥.ß. of *Electuarium Nidum*, ʒ.iij. of *Diaphœnicon*, ʒ.ij. of *mel Roſarum* clarified, ℥.j. ß. of oiles of Laurell, Rew, and *Caſtoreum*, ana.℥.j. of ſalt gemme, ʒ.j.ß. commixe them all, & make a cliſter. Alſo the vſe of ſuppoſitaries in this diſeaſe is very commendable, made of *Coloquintida*, Agaricke, blacke Hellebore, and ſuch like, after this ſort, ℞ of Hony boiled to a height, ℥.ij. of *Coloquintida*, Agarick, and Hellebore, ana.ϑ ij. ſal gemme, ϑ.j. beate them into powder, commixe them with the Hony, and make ſuppoſitaries, vj. fingers long, and hang a threed in them, that you may draw them out when you liſt. You may alſo put into the ſuppoſitaries *Hierapicra* or Pils *Cochiæ*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wild Thime, Calamint, Dil, & ſuch like haue firſt bene boiled. Alſo the extreme parts muſt be bound ſtrongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the roote of Floure-de luce: many cupping glaſſes muſt be faſtened to the ſhoulders: the head muſt be ſhaued, and annointed with oiles of Commomill, Dill and Rew, or with oile wherein the aforenamed herbs haue bene boiled. You muſt apply to the noſthrils ſuch things as by their odour can ſtirre and raiſe vp the ſicke, as be, *Opoponax*, *Caſtoreum*, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*. Alſo you may vſe medicines to prouoke neeſing, made of white Hellebore, *Caſtoreum*, and ſuch other, rehearſed in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vſe embrocations, made of Cammomill, Melilot, Sage, Peniroyall, Marioram, Origan, Calamint, Sauory, and Hyſop, boiled in equall portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to vſe dry medicins to the head, as be *Sinapiſmi*, made after this ſort, ℞. *Olei coſtini*, ℥ j. oiles of *Caſtoreũ* & *Euphorbiũ*, ana.ʒ.iij. Muſtard ſeed, ʒ.ij. *Caſtoreum*, ʒ.j. *Sagapenum*, ʒ.j.ß. *Euphorbium*, ϑ j. Vineger, ʒ.ij. with ſufficient quantity of Waxe, make an Emplaiſter. Alſo you muſt open their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, to prouoke vomit, and to cauſe the groſſe humours that be in the mouth to be caſt out. Alſo their fundament muſt be annointed with ſuch medicines as diſſolue windines, as be Rew, Comin, *Nitrum*, and Hony. When the euill is aſſwaged, you muſt giue him meate of eaſie digeſtion, for the moſt part mixed with hony. If his ſpeech come not yet againe, ſo that his ſtrength permit, you muſt faſten cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head with ſcarification. And in like ſort vnder the ſhort ribs, if you may. Afterward let the ſicke be caried in a wagon or horſlitter. Let his drinke be *Mulſa*, or *Oximel*. Let him drinke no wine. After 21. daies be paſt the ſicke may enter a bath, but as touching medicines requiſit for the reſt of the cure, you ſhal find thē abundantly in the Chap. following. And this may ſuffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if ſo be it be curable.

Cliſter actiu.

Sinapiſmus.

Vomitus.

Victus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palſey.

Paralyſis in Greeke, *Reſolutio* in Latine: in Engliſh the Palſey. It is a diſeaſe wherein the one halfe of the body, either the right ſide or the left, doth loſe

both ſenſe and mouing. Alſo ſometime the Palſey chanceth in one member onely, as for example, in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the Palſey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παραπληγία: and therfore the word *Paralyſis* is a more general name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the Palſey, ſometime ſenſe onely is loſt, and ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both ſenſe and mouing: it is ſpecially called reſolution of the ſinews or Palſey, when mouing is loſt. Why ſometime feeling is loſt onely, and ſometime mouing alone, & ſometime both together, *Galen* declareth at large in his firſt book *de ſymptomatũ cauſis*, cap. 4. & therfore it need not be here rehearſed: notwithſtanding it ſhall not be amiſſe to anſwer briefly to that queſtion. First note, that aſwell the faculty of mouing as of ſenſe floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the ſinewes to the inſtruments of motion and ſenſe; & therefore it muſt needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or ſtopped by any cauſe, that it cannot deſcend to the inſtruments of mouing or ſenſe, that they ſhould loſe mouing or ſenſe according as the ſinewes be affected. And therefore in thoſe members that participate two kinds of ſinewes, as the eyes and the tong do, the former queſtiõ is eaſie to be ſoluted, for that they haue one kinde of ſinewes for motiõ, and another kind for ſenſe, & ſo the one may be hurt, & the other ſafe; or they may be both hurt, and ſo both ſenſe and motion periſh. But in members that haue but one kinde of ſinew, the queſtion is more obſcure to anſwer. In ſuch mẽbers therfore, if (the skin being taken away) the muſcle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the ſinewes be much ſtopped, then hath it loſt both ſenſe and mouing: for it is vnpoſſible that the ſenſe of a muſcle ſhould be loſt, and the motiõ remaine ſtill. The reaſon is, for that leſſe of the animall faculty is requiſite for feeling then for mouing, ſo that there may come ſufficient quantity of that faculty to a muſcle to cauſe feeling in it, & yet not enough to cauſe it to moue alſo: and therefore a naked muſcle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kinde of ſinew, cannot moue and lacke ſenſe; but either it hath ſenſe and lacketh mouing, and then his hurt is but little: or it hath loſt both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the ſinew is altogether ſtopped. But where there is a member that hath ſinewes placed in the muſcles to cauſe mouing, and other ſinewes ſpread in the skin to cauſe feeling, (for the ſinewes that are diſperſed in the muſcles do not ſend out branches to the skin, as ſome ſuppoſe) I ſay it may come to paſſe in that member, that ſometime it may loſe feeling alone, and ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muſcle may loſe his ſenſe of feeling, the ſinew being affected which is diſperſed in it; and yet the ſinew that runneth in the muſcle may be ſafe, and therefore the muſcle may moue. But if the ſinew which is ſpread in the muſcle be affected, and the ſinew that cometh to the skin remaine ſafe, that member cannot moue, and yet it hath ſenſe and feeling left: and that cometh to paſſe becauſe the ſinew of the one is hurt, and the other hath his ſinew ſafe: although they ſpring both from one place, yet they are deuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the ſinewes be affected, as well that that cometh to the muſcle, as that which cometh to the skin

Why in the Palſey ſometime ſenſe alone, ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both together periſh.

skin, then both ſenſe of feeling and mouing alſo periſh and are loſt; and that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both ſpring, is affected & hurt. You may diſcerne that, when you know exactly the common originall and ſpring of euery ſinew, in conſidering diligently whether the braine it ſelfe be affected, or the backe bone, at the head of it, or in any of his ſpondils beſides. This is to be knowne by the Anatomy of ſinewes, and therefore, it behoueth to be well exerciſed therein, for in the Palſey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerſe places. If the braine it ſelfe be affected: I meane not the whole braine, for then is the Apoplexy engendred: but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you ſhal know it, for that the Palſey or reſolution will be alwell on the right or left ſide of the face, as on the right or left ſide of the body. But if the face be ſafe, and one halfe of the body be depriued of ſenſe and mouing, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and firſt ſpondils of the backe bone; but the one halfe onely of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the ſide taken with the Palſey. But if all the inferior members, (the face onely excepted) be reſolued and paralitike, then is the backe bone affected in the ſame place, euen in the beginning and vpper end of it: and then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chance one onely part to be reſolued and taken with the Palſey, you muſt ſearch from whence the ſinewes come that be contained in it, which you may eaſily find, if you be well exerciſed in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected aboue where his firſt beginning is, but lower among the ſpondils, then if the affect & hurt be great, all the inferiour parts beneath thoſe ſpondils affected, be reſolued and taken with the Palſey: but if the hurt be but little, and the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferiour parts of the one ſide, be reſolued. Therefore you muſt firſt learne by Anatomy to finde the place affected, hauing foreknowledge frō what part of the backe bone the members reſolued haue their ſinewes. The Palſey and reſolution of members is engendred of abundance of groſſe and clammy humours, which ſtop the ſinewes and hinder the animal faculty that it cannot come frō the fountaine to the mēbers. It may alſo be cauſed of immoderate cold in ſnow or vehement froſt. Alſo it may be cauſed by an inflammatiō, or a *Scirrus* (which is a hard ſwelling without ſenſe) chancing in the backe bone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other ſinewy parts, whereby the ſinews are cruſhed and preſſed, & ſo ſtopped that the animall facultie cannot paſſe. As alſo the ſinewes may be cruſhed together by ſome externall cauſe, as by binding with a cord, or ſuch like meanes, & ſo cauſe reſolutiō: alſo whē there is luxatiō or fracture in any of the ſpondils of the back, or in other ioynts or bones, there may follow reſolutiō by means of cōpreſſion and cruſhing together of ſinews. Alſo reſolution or Palſey may be cauſed by meanes of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular ſinew. There need not many ſigns to know this diſeaſe by: for any may iudge eaſily, that part or mēber to haue the Palſey which is deſtitute of mouing: to know of what cauſe it proceedeth, you may partly learne by the relatiō of the ſick, & partly by the ſignes rehearſed before in the 7 Chapter, fol. 10. where headach cauſed of fleame is intreated of. The Palſey is no acute & ſharp diſeaſe, but of long continuance, & for the moſt part curable.

To know if the braine be affected.

To know if the marrow of the back cauſe the Palſey.

Of mēbers particularly takē with the Palſey.

Cauſæ.

Prognoſtica.

It chanceth for the moſt part in old folke, and in the Winter time. The Palſey that cometh by a ſinew ſeparate and cut aſunder, is (as *Ægineta* ſaith) vncurable, and ſo is that which cometh by ouerthwart inciſions of the backe, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paralyticke do waxe leſſe, or change his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not cureable. For it declareth thoſe parts not onely to be deſtitute of the animall faculty, but alſo of the naturall, and after a ſort of the vitall alſo. Their diet muſt be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the ſicke therefore remaine in an aire that is hote and dry, and in the firſt three dayes he may vſe altogether abſtinence, or let him content himſelfe with *aqua mulſa*, or a little Ptiſan broth. Afterward giue him meates of good iuyce, light of digeſtion, and let them be roſted: let him eate chiefly birds of the mountaines, and Partrich reare egges, Almonds, and Pine nuts. For potherbs let him vſe Fennel, Parcely, Hyſop, Marioram, Sage, and Sauory. Let him eſchue fiſh, fruite, and all things that be cold and moiſt. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to ſuſtaine as much thirſt as he can poſſibly. Let him drinke *Mulſa*, wherein Sage or Cinamon hath bene boyled, or let him vſe to drinke that which the barbarous Phyſitions at this day call Hippocras, made after this ſort, ℞. of choſen Cinamon, ℥ ij. of Ginger, ℥. ß. of long Pepper, Graines, and Galingale, ana. ℥. j. of Cardamomes, ℥. j. ß. of Nutmegs, and Cloues, and Mace, ana. ℥. j. boile them all in three quarts of running water, vntill a pint and a halfe be conſumed: then ſtraine it hard, and with halfe a pound of Sugar make it pleaſant to drinke. He may drinke no wine at all, vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept ſo long time from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the diſeaſe, and let it be thinne and allayed. Mouing & exerciſe, if he can vſe them, are very good for him. Let him eſchue ſleep in the day. Let his night ſleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and flie perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, ſtate of body, time of the yeare, and ſuch like permit, it is good to begin with bloud letting, ſpecially if there be ſignes of plenitude. But you muſt draw away bloud moderately, leſt the body be cooled ouermuch, and you muſt let bloud on the whole and ſound ſide. Then a few daies after bloudletting you may cleanſe the inteſtines with cliſters made thus, ℞. of Mallowes, Holyhockes, Mercury, Cammomill, Sage and Betony, ana. M. j. of Stæchas, ℥. ß of Rew, and Calamint, ana. M. ß of ſeeds of Fennell, and Ammeos, ana. ℥. ij. boile theſe in ſufficient water vntill the third part be conſumed, then take of that decoction ℔ j. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥ ß. of *Electuarii Nidum*, ℥ iij. of hony Roſes, ℥. ß of oiles of Laurell, Ireos, and Rew, ana. ℥. j. of Salt gemme, ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter. Afterward miniſter vnto him decoctions and ſirupes, which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors and make them apt to be purged, whereof you ſhall find examples before in the 7. Chapter. The humours being thus prepared, miniſter medicines which do purge fleame, beginning with gentle ones, and proceeding by little & litle to ſtronger. Beſides thoſe purgations which are rehearſed in the ſeuenth Chap aforeſaid, you may vſe *Pilulæ Aſſaieret, Arabicæ, facile* with the which you muſt alwaies commixe Agarick. Neither doth it ſuffice to purge the patient once, but you muſt do it ſo often, letting 4. or. 5. daies paſſe betweene each purging. The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much

Victus ratio.

Hippocras.

Curatio.

Venæ ſectio.

Clyſter.

giue vnto him *Theriaca*, or *Mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you must vse sternutations, gargarismes, odoraments, and such other like, as are rehearsed in the 7. Chap. and that specially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you must rather minister such medicines as may corroborate and strengthen it, in this sort, ℞. of *Diambra*, *Pliriſarcoticon*, & *Diamoſthu dulce*, ana. ℈ j. of powder of Swallowes prepared, ʒ. ß. of Coriander seeds prepared, ʒ j. of Sugar Rosat, ʒ. iij. with Sugar dissolued in Rose water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a little of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth also in this disease to take ʒ. j. of *Castoreum*, or of *Opoponax*, or *Sagapenum*, in *aqua mulsa*. Also *Diatrion pipereon* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you must annoint the head with hote medicines, as with *Castoreũ*, Mints, Laurel berries, oile of Ireos boiled with a little vineger, and such like. Therefore if coldnes of the weather do not let it, you may shaue the head, and annoint it all ouer the forehead. If the marrow of the backe be affected at the vpper end, then after the former purgation you must in the nape of the neck, where the marrow of the back springeth forth of the brain, vse oiles, & ointments which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse, but you must begin with the weakest, as with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Spike, Lillies, Ireos, Nard. Nutmegs, S. Iohns wort, & earth-wormes, wherewith you must annoint the nape of the neck, & the resolued side, specially the halfe of the ridge bone: & you must wrap the paralyticke members in warme linnẽ clothes, or in a fox skin, to keep them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of Sage, Marioram, Cammomill, S. Iohns wort, Stæchas, & Rosemary, Afterward you may proceed to stronger medicines, as be oiles *Costiuum*, *Vulpinum*, oiles of Rew, and Bayes, oiles of *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile stones, called *Oleum è lateribus*, or *Oleum Philosophorum*. To these you may adde these ointments, *Vnguentum Aregon*, *Vnguentum Agrippa*, & *Vnguentum Martiaton*: and hote simples may be added also if you will, as be Betony, Sage, Rosemary, Galingale, Cowslips, Rew, Calamint, Pellitory, Pepper, *Castoreum* & *Euphorbium*. Of these you may make an ointment after this sort ℞. of *Vng. Aregon*, & *Martiaton*, ana. ʒ j. of *Vnguentum Agrippa*, ʒ. ß. of oiles of *Costiuum* and *Vulpinum*, ana. ʒ. ß. of oile of earthwormes, ʒ. ß. of oile of *Castor*. ʒ j. ß. of powders of Betony, Pepper, Sage, ana. ℈ j. of *Castoreum*, & *Euphorbium*, ana. ℈. ß. of Galingale, or roots of *Acorus*, ℈. ij. with Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus, ℞. of *Oleum Costiuum*, ʒ ij. of oile of Pepper, ʒ j. ß oile of *Euphorbium*, ʒ. ij. of *aqua vitæ*, ʒ. ij ß. of iuyce of Sage, and Cowslips, ana. ʒ. j ß. of Galingale, ʒ. iij. of Stæchas & Rosemary, ana ʒ ij. of Pellitory and Pepper, ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium*, ʒ. ß. bruse them and boile them vntill the *aqua vitæ* and iuyces be consumed, then straine out the oiles, and put to the Waxe, and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote also after this maner, ℞. of Bay berries, Pellitory, and Pepper, ana ʒ ij. of Galingale, ʒ. j. of Stæchas, Betony, and Elder, ana. ʒ j. ß. of Mustard seed & *Nigella*, ana. ʒ j. of *Euphorbium* & *Castoreum*, ana. ℈. of *Oleum Costiuum*, ʒ. j ß. of oile of Pepper, ʒ. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*, ʒ. iij. with Waxe & Rosin sufficient make a Cerote. Also you may make a quilt thus, ℞. Hysope, Marioram, S. Iohns wort, Sage, Rew, and Bay leaues, ana. ʒ ij. Spike, Mastick, *Castoreum* and Stæchas, ana. ℈. ij. Cloues, Maces, Nutmegs, ana. ℈. ß. red

Capitis purgatio.

Lozenges.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus.

Rose leaues dried, M.ß. beate them all to powder, and make a quilt with them. Also a fomentation may conueniently be made thus: ℞. Sage, Rosemary, S. Iohns wort, Cowslip Hysop, Mariorã, Betony, Peniroyall and Calamint, of each M.ß. boile them in white wine, & adde to the decoction of *Castoreum*, ʒ.ij. of floures of Stœchas, and Lauender, ana. ʒ.j. ß. wherewith you may often bath the members affected, before you vse the aforesaid ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud, & heate, & spirits; and if the members themselues cannot aptly haue cupping glasses applied to thē, apply thē at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the aforesaid ointments & cerotes; so that the members affected be first rubbed and chafed; & if the disease relent not by all these meanes, (as *Ætius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or caterization by fire where the originall of the affect is. Last of all, a hote house or dry bath will profite much, or, if they may conueniently come to them, natural baths which sping from brimstone, Alume and Salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badeniæ*, *Ferinæ*, *Cellences*, & others in England at Bath. But it is good for them before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horslitter. And this may suffice for the cure of the Palsey, occupying one whole side. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely some other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you must search that part of the backe that is affected, and apply such remedies to it, as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, & there apply the former medicines or their like. Yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected. If the Palsey be caused of extreme cold without humours abounding in the body, then the place affected being found out, and the medicines before rehearsed being applied vpon it, you shall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the braine, nor the member that is parilyticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Bloodletting, purging and all other euacuations may be omitted, onely vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the Palsey be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrus* of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bloud being remoued, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the rigde or other bones being out of ioynt or broken, do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if Palsey ensue a wound or vlcer in the head, or backe, or in any particular sinew, it will be cured by their Cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

Fomentum.

Balneum.

Gestatio.

Palsey coming of cold.

Cure of Palsey coming of other causes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Palsey in one member.

Although any expert man may easily gather out of the former chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet lest those that haue lesse skill, should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greek *Spasmus Cynicus*, and in Latin *Conuulsio canina*, or of some

Tortura

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the Palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease, you must let the patient bloud in the veine vnder the tongue, & fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, & giue him *Masticatoria* made after this forme: ℞. seeds of Stauisacre Masticke, the roote of Pellitory, ana. ℥.j. Hysope, Origan, ana. ℥.j ß. of Mustard seed, ℥.ij. powder thē & commixe them with Turpentine & waxe, and make Trochiskes to chew. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the griefe of the patient, that is, to the sinewes that be sprong, you must apply the medicins that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good ℞. *Olibanum*, Masticke, ana. ℥ ij *ligni* Aloes, ℥.j. Cloues, Galingale, Cinamon, Zedoary, Nutmegs, Cububes, ana. ℥.vj. Mirrhe, Aloes, *Labdanum*, *Sarcocolla*, *Castoreum*, ℥.ß. Bay berries, Pine nuttes, ana ℥. vj. Ireos, *Aristolochia rotunda*, *Dictammus*, *Consolidæ maioris*, ana ℥.j. Gum *Elemni*, *Opoponacis*, Beniomē, ana ℥ ij. the iuyce of *Camepitios*, & the iuyce of Cowslips, ana. ℥ iiij. Turpentine, ℥.j. powder all that is to be powdered, and put all in a limbecke of glasse, and distill it with a soft fire: and that which cometh first will be like water, which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keep also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drinke of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine: this is very excellent good. But you must note in this place, that the necke is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the Palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoria*, and collutions of Mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke, and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and liniments Also the Physition may apply cerotes and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the Palsey, sometime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patient his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, oyle of Rew, Nard, Spike, or oile in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringij*, Rew, Commin, or Dill, or such like. All are very good: & you may well commixe with thē Butter, *Castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things in the bladder by the yard with a ciring. First therefore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine by a fine pipe made of siluer for this purpose, called *Cathetera*. Afterward take those medicins that are rehearsed a litle before, and powre them into the bladder with a ciring; this will do maruellous much good. Also medicins prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therefore. The palsey of the yard doth let & hinder the flowing of the vrine, & sperme, & carnall copulation, therfore you must vse the same remedies which are rehearsed for the Palsy in the bladder: but priuatly you must apply to the loynes & the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat, & ye must vse those medicines that haue power to erect the yard.

Curatio.

Note.

Palsey of the tongue.

Palsey of the bladder.

Palsey of the yard.

And *Castoreū* may effectually be ministred, as well for this as for all other Palseyes: the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinkes that be coole. By these examples you may easily finde how to cure other members that be paralytick.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the Falling sickneſſe.

Morbus comitialis.

Epilepſia in Greeke (as *Galen* saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the parts of the whole body, not continually, but that which chanceth at sundry times, with hurt of the minde and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, and also of the minde. The Latines call this disease, *Morbus Comitialis*. There be three differences in this sickneſſe or disease. The first is caused when this sickneſſe cometh onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when groſſe and clammie fleame, or sharpe choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cometh of a groſſe humour, then the disease cometh sodainely, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly it is caused through an euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, that is, when the braine laboureth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sickneſſe is caused, when as the patient feeleth a thing like vnto a cold aire, coming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chanceth very seldome. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the body and minde, sadneſſe, forgetfulneſſe, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulneſſe in it, specially in anger, palenes of the face, inordinate mouing of the tongue, and many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, & they are plucked vp together, they snort, and sometime they cry out, many do tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is foming at the mouth. This disease chanceth moſt to children. *Galen* saith, that if it taketh any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it till he die. The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *lapis Gagatis*, or of Goats horne, will declare and shew thē that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he Goat eaten, or the sauour of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease to vse in their diet, things that will attenuate, cut and deuide. Therefore let the aire wherein the sicke remaineth be hote and dry, specially if the euill be caused of fleame. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoid all kind of pulses, fish, and wine, especially if it be old and thicke. Let his drinke be *Mulsa*, or thin ale: the eating of Capers doth maruellously profite. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lechetie: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from Garlike, Onions, Mustard and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease, you need not much to study for remedies, for with a moderate diet oftentimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant & the nurse. Therefore if the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce, and let her vse exercise before meat: let her eschue carnall copulation, and let her vse for her diet things that be hote and dry, that thereby the milke may be

1 *Causa.*

2

3

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure of infants.

hotter

hotter and thinner. Annoint the head of the infant continually with oile of Dil and Ireos, putting to them the powder of Cypreſſe, Ireos, Maidenhaire, Marioram, and ſuch like, but neuer waſh the head with water whether it be hote or cold. Alſo giue the child clarified hony to licke. Alſo this *Ecligma* is praiſed of many, ℞. fine white Sugar, ℥ ij. oile of ſweet Almonds, as much as is ſufficient to make it of the ſubſtance of a lohoch, & giue it to the childe to lick. Alſo it is good to commixe with it miſcle of the oke, and Vnicorns horne. Alſo hang about the childs necke roote of Piony being greene, for it helpeth maruellouſly. Moreouer they that fal into this diſeaſe after they be paſt childs age, you muſt annoint & make ſtraight thoſe members which are writhed and plucked out of order in them. Afterward you muſt open the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, and with a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, prouoke vomit to bring out fleame. Alſo it is good to quicken the ſenſes with odoraments: alſo *Peucedanum*, or dog Fennell, Rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *Silphinum*. The matter continuing very ſharply, put into their mouth *Caſtoreum*, or *Laſerpitium* with *Oximel*. Alſo when they are raiſed, you muſt caſt in ſharpe clifters. They that begin to recouer (their ſtrength being refreſhed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or ſome other conuenient medicine: and this is the cure of a new and ſharpe Epilepſie, therfore now we will treat how to helpe that which is old. The patient muſt drinke water long time, or very ſmall ale, and that in the beginning of the cure, vnleſſe any thing do forbid it. Let bloud in the veine of the hamme, or the ring finger, and then taree or foure dayes after you muſt comfort the body: and it is good to miniſter preparatiues to extenuate, as ſirupes of Wormewood, of Hyſope, of Stæcados, *Oximel ſcilliticum*, decoction of Hyſope, rootes of Piony, and others rehearſed before. Afterward purge with purgations, that is, with *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, *Pilulæ de Agarico*, and ſuch as purge fleame. Alſo I iudge *Stubium* to be of great force in this kind, being vſed as is declared before in the xv. Chapter, fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the ſuperfluous humours of the head. And alſo I haue knowne this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *Oleum de lateribus*: with it annoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three ſheets of gray paper, and baſt vpon it cotton wooll, and let the patient were it day and night, vj daies. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth cold; then take the other and do likewiſe; do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy preſence, ſet the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden croſſe ouer his body as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euery morning and euening let him take theſe things: the firſt day, of the powder of the ſcull of a man burned, one dramme at once, and the next day of the miſcle of the oke, made in powder, ℥. j. and the third day the powder of Piony roots, ℥ j and after thoſe three dayes, take theſe powders each day, till the patient be healed, which will be in fortie dayes. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then ſeeke medicines to purge it in the Chapter of *Melancholia*, howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke Hellebore, and beate it into fine powder, and to miniſter one dram ot once with *Mulſa*, and a little Pepper to it: alſo you may make Pils thereof, and giue them. And when the ſicke is purged

Ecligma.

Cure of yong folkes.

Cure of Epilepſie in old folkes.

A purging potion of ſtubiū.

enough, bring him to a bath; the third day saften cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many daies after comfort the body, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that, saften cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *Mulsa*, adding to it bitter Almonds brayed, or *Serpillum*, or Calamints, or Mints, or Rew, and do that three daies. Then shaue the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *Peucedanum*, infused in vineger, in which *Serpillum*, or Ireos hath bene sodden. Then againe the body being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*: after those things be done, minister sternutaments, *Masticatoria*, and such things as do purge by the nose; then afterwards if you thinke good minister a clister. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and Emplaisters, which haue vertue to dissolue and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerse places.

Hiera Galeni.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

Spasmos,

Spasmos in Greeke, in Latine *Conuulsio*, in English the Crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawn and pluckt vp against ones will. There be of it three kinds of differences. The first is called in Greeke τέτανος, in Latine *Distentio*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immoueable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora*. In this disease the head and the necke be drawn down to the breast. The third is called in Latin *Tensio ad posteriora*. In this disease the head is drawne down backward to the back & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease you must note that *Hippocrates* appointeth but onely two, that is, fulnes & emptines of the sinewes in the body, and sometime it cometh with biting or stinging of some venimous beast. If the Crampe doth take one that is haile, or by and by afloone as the disease cometh, or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnes; but when the conuulsion cometh after many sweats, vomits, watchings or drinesse, then it is caused of emptinesse. The diet of them that haue conuulsion which cometh of fulnes, must be hot and dry; but in them which haue the conuulsion caused of emptines, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppings and fat broths, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickly be dispersed into all parts of the body, vnlesse a feuer be present: for then iuyce of Ptisan is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleepe. Let them eschue exercises and all things that may empty the body: to be short, let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feuer Hecticke. The cure of Crampe caused of fulnes, must straight begin with letting of bloud, if nothing do prohibite it. It is meet to take away much bloud, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by little and little you must let bloud on the middle veine of the arme. If after bloudletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clister. That part which is drawne must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, & the place must be chafed with oiles of Rew, or Ireos, or some other such like, or they must be couered with wooll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it bread

1

2

3

Causæ.

Victus ratio.

Cure of fulnes

Bloodletting.

Clyster.

broad bladder filled with oile. And if the conuulsion cometh of fleame, then the fleame must first be extenuate and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by minister a purgation to purge fleame. Also apply cupping glasses with scarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legges haue the Crampe, apply it to the Hanches, and to the latter knittings of the ioynts. If the hands be drawne, apply it to the backe and to the ioynts of the shoulders. Moreouer the head must be purged with Masticatories, Gargarismes, and such like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therefore euery day twice or thrice let him descend into water of Brimstone or Alume, or salt water; but let him not tarry in them, lest strength faile him: or if there cannot be vsing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vse a hot house, or dry bath, or water in which are sodden Laurell leaues, Sothernwood, Peniroyall, Wormewood, Rew, Sage, S. Iohns wort, Mariorã, & Betony, and the places that are drawne ought to be couered with skins of Wolues or Foxes: also apply the ointments which are rehearsed in the cure of the Palsey of the vsing of cold things, but minister often hot medicines, such as be *Theriaca* and *Mithridatum*, and such as be hote. But the surest and best of all other is the infusion of *Castoreum* ministred the quantity of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it, but also the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreouer the conuulsion which cometh of emptinesse and drines, is such an euill disease, as it is almost vncurable. Those which are so drawne, you must nourish with hot oile of *Hydreleum*. Also it is good to bring him to a bath, and soft frictions with oile are good, and all their whole cure must alwaies be like the cure of Hecticks. If the conuulsion chanceth by the stroke of some venimous beast, in the beginning of the cure you must labour to draw out the poyson; which you may do by making the wound wider, and by scarifying the place round about, setting vpon it cupping glasses: also you may annoint it with Leeke seed, braied with Salt, or Garlike, or Oynions, & after the fall of the scurfe, you shall keepe the wound xl. or lx. dayes from a scarre: to the which if it make much haste, you shall open the sore againe with ashes of vine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with Horehound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Also nourish the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Also *Theriaca* infused in oile of Roses, and layed to the wound is good, because it doth draw out and purge the poyson from the bottome. Therefore they erre much which say, that *Theriaca*, being outwardly applied, doth driue the poyson inwards.

The crampe coming of fleame.

Capitis purgatio.

Balneum.

The crampe coming of emptinesse and drinesse.

Cura veneni.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

EPhialtes in Greeke, in Latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a disease, whereat one thinketh himselfe in the night to be oppressed with a great weight, & beleeueth that something cometh vpon him, and the patient thinketh himselfe strangled in this disease. It is called in English the Mare. This vice is caused of exceesse of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the stomacke, from whence do ascend vapors grosse and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties of the braine to be dispersed by the sinewes. They that haue this disease can scarce moue, being astonied, and feeling in sleepe imagination of strangling, and as it were the holding of some thing that doth violently inuade them. In

Causa.

this the voice is suppressed: some haue such vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth oppresse them. At the last with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the passage of the spirits being opened, the sicke is by and by raised. It is good to remedie this euill at the first: for if it continue, it induceth and sheweth before some grieuous disease, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling sicknes, or madnes. Let their diet be thin, & such as will not engender windinesse. Let him vse no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but ale. Let him eschue sleeping in the day, & let him not go to bed by and by after meate. Now to be short, let his whole diet be such as is described and set downe for the falling sicknes. For the cure, if the whole body be full, you must begin with bloudletting, and you must cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if ill iuyce be gathered in the body, for lacke of perfect digestion, then purge the body by purgations: and if fleame abound, you may first minister preparatiues to extenuate the fleame, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you must apply outward medicines, whereof you may find examples before. Blacke seeds of Piony doth chiefly helpe them, you may giue thē fifteene seeds braied with water. And nourish the head with oile of Dill made hot: and couer the head with a cap, when they go to bed. Minister within the body those things which strengthen the head, as *Aromaticum rosatum, Diamoschu dulcis, Diamber, Dianthon, Pliriſarcoticon*, and such other like.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.
Vena sectio.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Madnesse.

Mania in Greeke a disease which the Latines call *Insania* and *furor*: that is, madnes and furiousnes. They that haue this disease be wood and vnruly like wilde beasts. It differeth from the Frensie, because in that there is a feuer, but *Mania* cometh without a feuer. It is caused of much bloud flowing vp to the braine: sometime the bloud is temperate, & sometime only the abundance of it doth hurt: sometime of sharpe & cholericke humours, or of a hot distemper of the braine. There goeth before madnesse debilitie of the head, tickling of the eares, & shinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and strange things approch the minde, and heauines with trembling of the head. If time proceede, there is raised in them a rauenous appetite, & a readines to bodily lust, the eyes waxe hollow, and they neither winke nor becken. But madnes caused of bloud onely, there followeth continuall laughing: there cometh before the sight (as the sicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choler is mixed with bloud, then the pricking & feruent mouing of the braine maketh them irefull, mouing, angry and bold. But if the choler wax grosse, & doth pricke and pull the braine and his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde and furious, & therefore they are the worst to cure. Let their diet be thin soupings liquide, making a good stomacke without fulnes, & such things as do engender no bloud, & you must forbid thē altogether drinking of wine. When this disease is caused of abundance of bloud, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud: it is good to cut the vttermost veine of the arme, or if that do not appeare, then cut the middle veine. In women cut the veine on the ancle for that prouoketh menstruis: you must draw out so much bloud as streng-

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure if it come of bloud onely.
Bloudletting.

wi

will suffer. Therefore in letting of bloud you must continually feele the pulses. Moreouer, after the letting of bloud, nourish the head with oiles of Roses and vineger, or iuyce of *Polygonũ*, or *oleum Melinum*, *vnguentum infrigidans Galeni*. Then apply moist wool wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After bloud letting, at night prouoke sleepe: for if after bloudletting, watching do still continue, the sicke will appeare to be more outragious. Therefore minister boldly with iuyce of Ptisan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water: for so sleepe is plenteously enticed. And two daye[illegible]ter minister *Trochiskes de hestear* with *Diacodion*. Also oile of Violets with [illegible]omans milke is good. Likewise an Embrocatiõ made of dry Violets, water Lillies, Willow leaues, and Roses, leaues, of Lettuce, seed of Poppy, and such like, & other medicines rehearsed in the next chapter. Furthermore the bellie must be made soluble with conuenient food, with clisters. These things being done, if there be need, you must draw bloud out of the midst of the forehead: set horse Leeches round abound the head, and specially the forepart of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnes caused of choler mixed with bloud, you must minister purgations of *Hierapicra*, & other medicines that will purge choler. The iuyce of *Elleborus niger* doth maruellous much profite in this griefe, so that you minister but ten or twelue graines at once. But if they dote, & refuse to drinke a purging medicine, then, that you may the easilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meates, or with fat Figs or Dates. Also the onely roote of wild Fennell helpeth them, and the seed drunke with water. The sickneslle declining, bring the sicke into a bath, and apply discussiue medicines to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him seeke in the Chapter following *de Melancholia*.

Externe medicina.

Embrocha.

Cure of it comming of choler mixed with bloud.

Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Melancholy.

MElancholie is an alienation of the mind, troubling reason, and waxing fooliish, so that one is almost beside himselfe. It cometh without a feuer, and is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is caused three kind of wayes: for sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy bloud being in al the veines of the whole body, which also hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the bloud which is in the braine is altered, and the bloud in all the rest of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two wayes: for either it is deriued from other places, & ascendeth vp thither, or else it is engendred in the braine it selfe. Also sometime it is engendred though inflammation, & euill affect about the stomacke & sides: and therfore there be three diuersities of melancholiousnesse, according to the three kinds of causes. The most common signes be fearfulnesse, sadnesse, hatred, and also they that be melancholious haue strange imaginations: for some thinke themselues brute beasts, & do counterfeit their voice & noise: some thinke themselues vessels of earth, or earthen pots, & therefore they withdraw themselues frõ them that they meete, lest they should knocke together. Moreouer they desire death, and do very often behight and determine to kill themselues: and some feare that they should be killed. Many of them do alwaies laugh, and ma-

Causa.

1

2

3

Signa.

nie do weep; some thinke themselues inspired with the holy Ghost, and do prophecy vpon things to come. But these be the peculiar signes of them that haue melancholiousnesse caused through consent of the whole body: for in them the state of the body is slender, blacke, rough and altogether melancholious, caused naturally, or through certaine thoughts, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or suppression of menstruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* caused of vice in the sides, they haue rawnesse & much windinesse, sharpe belkings, burnings, and grieuousnesse of the sides. Also the sides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with inflammation, specially about the beginning of the disease. Also there is costiuenesse of the wombe, little sleepe, troublous and naughtie dreams, swimming of the head, and sound in the eares. Let his diet be such as doth not ingender melancholy. Therefore let them tarrie in an aire hote and moist, and let them vse meates of good iuyce, that be moist and temperate, & let their bread be well baked and wrought, let their flesh be Capons, Hennes, Partriches, or Fesants, stonie fishes, and such like. Let the sicke vse wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eschue wine that is thicke and blacke: let their exercises be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleasant and greene, or vse sailing on water. Also a bath of sweete water, with a moist diet, let the sicke vse often, as one of his remedies: sleepe is wonderfull good for them, as also moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare musicall instruments and singing. But when the whole body aboundeth with melancholicke bloud, it is best to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you must cut the liuer vein on the arme. But when the melancholicke bloud occupieth only the braine, the sicke needeth no bloudletting, vnlesse there be very much bloud; and therefore let the sicke vse often bathings, and moist diet of good iuyce, which is without windines, & let them vse delectations of the minde, and let them be cured by these without any strong remedies; but if the disease hath endured long, it requireth sundry medicines that be strong. Therefore whether the melancholiousnes be caused through vice of the whole body (as is said, the bloud being first drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you must minister medicines that will purge downward. And a few daies after purging and bloudletting, let the sicke drinke daylie in the morning this decoctiō, ℞. flowers of Borage, Bugloss, Violets, ana. M. j. great Raisins the stones picked out, ℥. j. Harts tong, M. j. Fumitory, M. ß. Barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, ana. ℥. iij. roots of Fennell, Parcely, Liquorice, ana. ℥. j. Thime, *Epithimum*, ana. ℥ ß. seeth all these in three pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the white of egges, and adde thereto Sirupe of Fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥. ij. and make a potion. After that sort at these dayes they minister Sirupe of Violets, and Bugloss, putting to them the water of Harts tongue, Hops, Endiue and Borage. But seeing it appeareth that the stomacke cannot beare very much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid herbes, commixed with Sirupes after this sort: ℞. Sirupe of Borage, ℥. j. Sirupe of *Epithimum*, ℥. ß. decoction of Harts tong, Fumitory, & Endiue, ℥. iij. commixe them and make a potion. After this purge the body with *confectio Hamech* &

Victus ratio.

Balneum.

Vena sectio.

Cure if it come of melancholy bloud.

Purgatio.

Decoctum preparans.

Potio.

Diasenę,

Diasenæ, Pilulæ Indæ, Pilulæ è lapide Armenio, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction, ℞. flowers of Borage, Violets, Roses, ana. M. j. Raisins the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*, ana ℥. j. *Myrobalanes citrinæ, Indos, emblicos, bellirices*, ana. ℥. ß. leaues of Sene, Polipody, ana. ℥. vij. Prunes damascene x. seeth them in a iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweet with Sugar, thē minister, ℥ iiij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein, ℥. ij. of *Diasenæ*. Also the infusion of *Epithimū* is maruellously good, being made thus: ℞ *Epithimum*, ℥. ß. infuse it 24. houres in ℥. iiij. of whay made of Goates milke, then straine it, and wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of Sene is good, which may be thus made, ℞. leaues of Sene, ℥. ij. Prunes Damascene *in numero*, xij. bray them, and infuse them in whay of Goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, & let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this power, ℞. *Epithimū*, ℥ ß. *lapis Armenius*, Agaricke, ana. ℥. ij. Scammony preparate, ℥. j. Cloues 20. beate them all into powder, and minister euery weeke, ℥. or ℥. j. ß. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheese: for that is better which is separated from the milke by some decoction, & let them vse it vntill the belly begin to be soluble; you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few dayes after the purgation to vse clisters, & let them be such as this is, ℞. Fumitory, Hops, Thime, ana. M. j. *Epithimū*, M ß. Sene, Polipody, ana. ℥. vj. *Cartami*, ℥. ß. seeds of Annise, Fennel, *Ammeos*, Comin, ana. ℥. ij. seeth all in water vntill the third part. Take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℔. j. *Cassia fistularis* newly drawn, ℥ j. *Diasenæ*, ℥. ß. oiles of Violets & Cammomil, ana. ℥. ß. cómon Salt, ℥. j. ß commixe them all and make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of *Emeroids* or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which will driue away the heauinesse of the minde, restore strength, & ingender gladnesse, as is, conserues of Borage, Endiue, Violets, Roses, *Anthos*, *Letificans Galeni*, *Dianthon*, & such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweet water. Also you must apply strong *Embrochæ* to moistē the head, as this, ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Violets, ana. M. j. ß. Cammomil, *Stachados*, ana. M. j. flowers of water Lillies, M. ß. seeds of Lettuce, ℥. j. seeds of Scariol, ℥. j ß. boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinkle the head being shauen with the iuyce of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles of Violets, water Lillies, and such like. Last of all, the sicke must labour that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the griefe be caused through diseases in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of Peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of Centory. Afterwards also, minister continually decoction of Wormwood: for it is profitable to the stomach, and it letteth ingendring of wind in the bellie, and doth not asswage the belly extremely, but prouoke vrine, causing good digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedy. Also you must minister those things that prouoke vrine, as Annise, *Daucus*, *Asarum*, *Smirnium*, the seed, and roote of wild Fennell, and Germander: let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it

Decoctum purgans Melancholiam.

Dilutum Epithimi.

Pulvis purgatorius.

Clyster.

Embrocha.

Cure if it come of diseases in the sides.

Absinthij decoctum.

Diuretica.

is good that the Phyſition looke to the cure of the ſides. Therfore nouriſh them
Fomenta. with decoction of Rew, Dil, Wormwood, Peniroyall, ſeed of *Agnus caſtus*, Lau-
rell berries, Sauory, Mugwort, and ſuch like. Theſe do eaſe paine & driue away
inflammation, eſpecially if they be ſodden in oile & applied to the grieſe like a
Cataplaſmata plaiſter. Againſt windines in the ſtomacke with pricking, nouriſh the ſtomach
with Comin, Peniroyall, & vineger ſodden together, and make Emplaiſters of
Anniſe ſeeds, *Apium*, Comin, *Smirinum*, and ſuch like, ſodden in oile, & ſuffer the
plaiſter to ly ſtill a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the
plaiſter is taken away, couer the ſides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs
skin, the place being firſt annointed with *oleum Nardinum*. Alſo you muſt apply
Concurbitulæ. cupping glaſſes lightly without ſcarification. To thoſe with whom this diſeaſe
hath taried long, purging by vomits is a preſent remedy. But you may not vſe
ſtrong vomits, for they be malicious to the ſtomacke, and cauſe grieſe in the
belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hote water commixed with *Oximel*. But
if the ſicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a fether or
their finger into the mouth. Alſo the onely vomit made with *Elleborus albus* is
Vomitus. good for them, being made after this ſort, ℞. *Elleborus albus*, ℥. j. cut it in ſmall
peeces, and put them in a great Radiſh roote, and after three dayes take out the
Elleborus, and then ſtampe and wring out the iuyce of the Radiſh; take of the
iuyce ℥. vj. hot water, ℥. iiij. *Oximel*, ℥. j. commixe them & miniſter it all at once
to the ſicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good, ℞. *Stibium*, xx
xij. graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure ſpoonfuls of
Muſcadell, or Malmeſey, and let it ſtand two dayes, and let it be ſhaken three
times on the day, and when you will miniſter it powre it out ſoftly, leauing the
powder ſtil in the bottome of the glaſſe, and giue but the very wine, which is an
excellent thing for this grieſe. There be diuerſe other which I will omit for
time more conuenient.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and ſhaking.

TRemor in Latin, in Engliſh trembling or ſhaking, it is a diſeaſe which is ac-
compliſhed with two ſundry mouings. One is, while the member is con-
ſtrained through heauineſſe & grieſe to creepe downward. The other is, when
the member is caried vpward from his naturall courſe and faculty. This
Cauſe. is cauſed altogether through weakneſſe of the ſinewes, which doth plainly de-
clare old age: but priuately it cometh of other cauſes, that is, of very cold
temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or ſeaſon, eſpecially in
feuers. Moreouer the abundance of a cold, groſſe & clammy humor, and much
vſing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are cauſes thereof.
Signa. There need no ſignes to know neither the euill, nor the cauſes of it, becauſe it
may be knowne partly by ſight, and partly by the patients words and the ſtate
Victus ratio. of the body. Let the diet be ſo ordained that it may be cleane contrary to the
cauſes of the diſeaſe, and let his meate be ſuch as will eaſily be diſtributed, as
broths, then birds that flie, and tender fiſhes. Againſt abundance of groſſe &
clammy humours, it is good to vſe thoſe things which haue power to digeſt,
extenuate, and cut: but he muſt wholly eſchue alll things which do hurt the
ſinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He muſt drinke

allayed with water, or *Hydromel*, or Ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or shake through arts, some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntill they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke *Hydromel* with the decoction of Sage and Betonie. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humors, then minister the cure which is assigned for the Palsie, and the Crampe, coming of fulnesse, (letting of bloud onely excepted.) You must annoint the outward parts of the body with oiles that will heate, and couer it with soft wooll: then fasten cupping glasses without scarification from the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the skin, and so thereby humors may the easier be discussed & driuen away. Also it is good for the sick to drink daily fiue graine of Pepper with ℥. j. ℔. of *Mulsa*. There be moreouer certaine other simple medicins, which being taken do helpe trembling, that is, *Castoreum*, root of *Althea*, decoction of Egrimony, and the braine of an Hare. But what need many words? for the medicins and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the Palsey, are to be vsed as remedies against this disease.

Curatio.

Cucurbitulæ.

Simplices medicinæ.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Eyes.

I Thought good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subnect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities, which by experiēce I haue found incident vnto it: and the multiplicitie of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessity of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath (as it were) packed and bestowed an infinite variety of maruels in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed and distributed into his parts, and according to the dignity of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a greate volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceiue aright of it, & an excellent Oratour might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to pry into all other things, and to find out the nature and order of them, hath bin vnable to vnfold his owne wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when they haue laid hold of it. For mine owne part, I will not promise any absolute worke, but as learned Physitions haue thought of it; (and as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so will I frame and fashion my treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole, and hard, as the ball of a foote, or as the scowred new bason full of cleare water, set in the well of the head, to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantasticall cel by a sinew that is called *Nervus opticus*, with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without. And very fitly is the place where the eye is set, called the *Well of the head*, for the abundance of watery humours and teares, which often dissolue out therof, sometime of sorrow & heauinesse of the heart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of waterie hu-

mours cauſed of frigidity and coldneſſe: and thus haue the Phiſi[illegible] deſcribed the eye. It ſhall not be vnneceſſarie alſo to diſtribute it into his [illegible] and therefore (as *Iohannicus* ſaith) the eye hath ſeuen coates, which they c[illegible]*nica*, foure colours, and three humours. But his opinion concerning the tun[illegible]es, by ſundry Anatomiſts hath bene euicted, making but onely ſixe: yea and ſome there be, that (ſwaruing from the moſt receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their own, as they thinke by reaſon: excluding all thoſe ouer curious diuiſions, (namely *Iris*, *Cornea*, *Aranea*, *Vuea*, and the reſidue,) and imagine but onely two coates, the one whereof they name *Saluatrix*, becauſe it ſaueth and keepeth the humours: and the other they terme *Diſcolorata*, that is hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it ſelfe there is no colour, but that which is cauſed of the Chriſtalline humor, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye ſeemeth of no colour: if it lie deepe within, it deferreth three viſible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they ſay) the diuerſe placing of this chryſtalline humor begetteth the variety of colours in ſundry eyes: which gaue our Anatomiſts matter to deuiſe their diſtributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (indeed) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge ſo intricate a cauſe, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the cauſers of the diuerſity of the colours, though our blinde Anatomiſts do impugne it in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me, rather to cure the malady of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this litle *Prælidium* will not ſeeme altogether vnneceſſary.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Cataract.

Foure kinds of Cataracts curable.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curde, ingendred of the humours of the eye, diſtempered betwixt the tunicles, and ſet before the ſight of the eye and Chriſtalline humours. Of theſe manner of Cataracts there be ſeuen diuerſe ſpices or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable.

1. The firſt kind of the curable Cataract is light, very bright, like white chalke, or as alabaſter well poliſhed: and it is cauſed by a ſtroke in the eye, either with a ſticke or a ſtone, or any other outward violence.

2. The ſecond kind is ſomewhat white, and much like vnto a celeſtiall colour: and this proceedeth from the ſtomach, and is commonly cauſed of vnwholeſome meates, and vnkind nouriſhment, whereof a groſſe fumoſitie reſolueth, and aſcendeth vp into the braine,

3. and from thence falleth downe into the eyes. The third kind is alſo whitiſh, but it turneth into the colour of aſhes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migrime, or ſuch like diſeaſes: and it is cauſed ſometime of great ſorow and heauineſſe, whereof cometh immoderate weeping: and ſometime of much cold, and much watching, and ſuch other like.

4. The fourth ſpice is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of exceſſiue meate and drinke indigeſted, and alſo of great labour, and ſometime of the humour melancholie. Theſe are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be growne and confirmed: and the ſigne or token of their full perfection is, when the patient ſeeth nothing, vnleſſe it be the brightnes of the Sunne by day light, or the

light

light of the Moone by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these maner of Cataracts, haue assayed to cure them with purgations, powders and plaisters, but they haue bene deceiued. For neither inward medicins nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioyne to them *artẽ acuariam*, the art of the needle; which because it is vnknown to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this Treatise. Neuertheless, before you vse the needle, it is requisite that the braine should be purged with *pilulæ Hierosolymitanæ*, which you shall make thus: ℞. Turbith, ℥j. Aloes hepaticke, ℥ ß. Maces, Quibibes, Masticke, and Saffron, ana. ʒ.j. beate them to powder all together, and confect them with the iuyce of Roses, and make pils therof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased party is fasting, about nine of the clocke, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, and plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him hold his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient: for the tractability of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eye-lid, and with your other hãd put in the needle made therfore, on the side fartheſt off from the nose: & subtilly thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes you fingers to and fro, vntil you touch the corrupt water (which is the Cataract) with the point of the needle: and then begin by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, and there keepe it with the point of your needle, the space of three minutes of an houre, & then remoue your needle easily from it. And if it happen that it rise vp againe, bring it backe the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the Cataract, you do not writhe it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place afore named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about, till it haue gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. This done, cause him to shut his eye, and apply therto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to ly in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night, without any other stirring of it. Prouided that he lie in a very dark place: and let his diet be thinne, as rere egges, and white bread. And if he be yong and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his body be weake, let him drink wine well lymphate or small Ale: for truly much nourishment would preiudice the cure by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is very hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. The ninth day being passed, let him rise and wash his eye well with faire cold water, & he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen as he did before, although some of the Cataracts be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second and the fouth kinds: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recouereth his cleareneſſe of sight againe, because it is greatly bruised & troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his old perfection, yet it abideth not long therein, vnlesse it be continued as well by good diet, as also by this Electuarie, which is called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus confected: ℞. Cloues, ʒ.ij. Nutmegs of India,

and Saffron, ana ℥ j.ß. and of good *Castoreum*, ℥ j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and confect that powder with clarified hony, and let the patient receiue of this electuarie in the morning fasting, the quantitie of a Chestnut, or Walnut, and at euening to bedwards as much. And let him vse digestiue nouriſhing meates, which ingender good bloud; but let him beware biefe and Goates flesh, and Eeles, and raw Onions, for they are oftentimes vsed to ripen the Cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hote wines, in the which let him infuse Sage, and Rew. Let him also abstaine from the company of women, neither let him frequent common bathes; for euery strong fume hurteth him greatly. The aforesaid Electuarie of *Diaolibanum* is good to drie teares: it auaileth also against all manner of paine of the Migrime which proceedeth of fleame. After this sort are all the curable Cataracts healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanish latten: for iron or steele are very brittle and frangible. And if the Cataract should proue hard in drawing downe, the point may easily breake, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnesse of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable.

THe first kind of Cataracts vncurable the Physitions call *Gutta serena*, and the signe of the knowing thereof is this: when the pupil of the eye is black and cleare, as though it had no spot, and the eyes are alwayes mouing, and the eye-lids do tremble as if they were full of quicksiluer. This kind of Cataract is caused of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therfore they that haue the, are for the most part borne blind, and therfore they bestow their labor in vaine to assay to cure them: for the nerues optike be oppilate and mortified, so that no medicins can preuaile, although many that haue this kind, do see the light of the Sunne, & the stature of a man euē to their liues end. We cal it *Gutta serena*, becausē it is engendred of water and falleth frō the braine, of the which truly one litle drop corrupteth & dissolueth all the humours of the eyes, & stoppeth the hollow nerues and sinewes, so that the visible spirits may no more passe thorough them. The second Cataract incurable, is that which appeareth in the eye of a green colour, like water standing in moist places, not much moued nor remoued: this is the most dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldnesse of the braine, & by great buffeting and beating about the head, by great fasting, and such other like. The third vncurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eye is dilated and spread so farre, that no circle may be seen within the tunicles of the eyes, & the eye seemeth all blacke, or else all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable distinguished and knowne: which wil forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOw after the description of Cataracts, and the number of them which be curable, and which be not, and the curing and knowledge of the curable,

and

and the cauſes of the vncurable, I will ſpeake of other maladies of the eyes cauſed and occaſioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleame, choler, and melancholy. But firſt I will treate of bloud, through the abundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a redneſſe in the eyes, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this diſeaſe maketh the haire of the eye-lids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire: & if this malady be not cured within one yeare, it will make the eye-lids to turne vp, and make the patient blear-eyd. But before it cometh to that extremitie, it may be cured by this Colliry, which they call *Collirium Ieroſolymitanũ*, which is made in this wiſe: ℞. Tutty of Alexander, ℥. j. and beate it into ſmal powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine (that is) a quart, and put thereto ℥ j. of dry Roſes, and boile it with a ſoking fire, till the wine be halfe waſted, & then cleanſe it through a linnen cloth, to keepe it in a violl glaſſe, and morning and euening put ſome of it into the eye: and if it be taken betimes, the patient ſhall be cured within a weeke or two at the moſt. Neuertheleſſe before you apply this Colliry, it ſhall be good (if the patient be yong) to let him bloud on the veine that is in the midſt of the forehead: or, if he be aged, to purge the braine with theſe pils: ℞ of the beſt Aloes, red Sanders, *Eſula*, and Rewbarbe, ana ℥ ß. Turbith, *Catapulia minor* and Agarick, ana ℥ ij. confect them with the iuyce of Mugwort, and miniſter to the patient according to his ſtrength. And truly theſe pils are not onely good for the itch of the eyes, but alſo for all manner of itch or ſcab, of what humour ſoeuer it be cauſed. There be other diſeaſes alſo of the eye engendred of bloud, as the Ophthalmy and Pannicles: and theſe kinds of infirmities are tied to the ſeaſon of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of Auguſt, and ſo forth to the end of September, and the rather then, becauſe they proceede of the eating of variety of fruites. The Ophthalmy is thus deſcribed. An Ophthalmy is a corrupt bloud ingendred of hote humors, and commonly it ſtandeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blackneſſe of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate ſorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which cauſeth the eyes to ſwell, and make them to bolne, that from that time foorth the patient may take no reſt nor ſleepe: for it euer ſeemeth to him that his eyes are full of grauell, or of thornes or of ſmoake. In this kind of infirmity it is good to vſe this powder, which many (in reſpect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Pulus benedictus*, which is thus made: ℞. white Sarcocoll, and beate it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eye with it, and let him lie with it wide open till the powder be conſumed: and in the meane time make a plaiſter of flaxen herds, and waſh it well in cold water, (which when you haue drained out with you hand, lay it on the patient his eye, which he ſhall ſtill keepe open, and it will procure him to take his reſt very well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeuoured to cure this infirmitie with many impertinent medicines, haue added ſorrow to ſorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and ſo made it vncurable, which by the foreſaid powder might eaſily haue bene healed. And note, that there be ſome, which by the occaſion of the Ophthalmy, are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous and muſty: which proceedeth of euill keeping or becauſe they eate contrary meates. Now if ſuch happen, the braine muſt be purged with theſe

pilles: ℞. Polipody, *Esulæ*, *Myrobalani Citrini*, and Rewbarbe, ana. ℥.j. Mastick, Quibibes, Saffron, Spiknard, *Nux Indica*, Cynamon, ana. ℥.j. confect them with Milke or iuyce of Quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation minister morning and euening of the Electuary of *Diaolibanum solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Pulus Nabetus*, the making wherof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done onely in the morning and euening; put in his eye the powder called *Pulus Alexandrinus* as before, and this do til the patient hath recouered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtful meats.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Cause.

THe Pannicles haue the same cause that the Ophthalmy hath, that is to say, superfluity of bloud. Sometime they are ingendred of euill keeping, and sometimes by great paines in the head, as the Migrim, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples, and so into the browes, maketh the veines to beate, by which paineful beating the eyes are troubled. There be foure kinds of Panticles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatrice there groweth a little pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in Latine *Milium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the likenesse of a spot or freckle of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, and no blacknes, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appeareth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues nor powders, nor Colliries, nor Electuaries, nor yet with cauteries; for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this precious ointment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit: ℞. forty tender crops of the Bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of Rew, powder of Alabaster, ℔ j ß. powder of Fenel seed, ℥.ß. oile of Roses ℔.j. all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white Wine, & to all these put ℥.iiij. of dry flowers of Cammomil, and of Waxe ℥.j. and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire till the Wine be consumed, so farre forth that it seemeth to fry in, and then put thereto the whites of sixe Egs, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth; with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead, downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of Pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which I will expresse, though it be impertinent to this discourse. It is very good against a greene wound, for it both purgeth and cleanseth it. It is good against the tooch-ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be beaten like an Electuary. It is good for them also who are molested in excesse, if their stomack be annointed, & their feet, together with their hands. It auaileth against the Migrime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therewith vpon the temples, as before. The second pannicle must be cured at the very beginning, for if it be incarnate and hardned

There be foure kinds of Pannicles.

1.
2.
3.
4.

vpon the tunicle, it may not by any ſutteltie be remoued (the tunicle ſaued,) and therefore it is not ſafe to aduenture to cure it, when by continuance of time it hath vnited it ſelfe with the ſaluatrice. But at the firſt you ſhall cure it thus: firſt make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery (as ſhall be ſhewed afterward when I ſpeake of Cauteries:) for fire diſſolueth & conſumeth the pannicle, & ſo keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized put into the eye ſome of the powder called *Pulus Nabetus*, which I wil teach afterward; & while he lieth with this powder in this eye, take foure crabs & roſt them vnder the embers very well, and then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, and lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, and bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and ſo renew this plaiſter morning and euening till you haue abſolued your cure. Like as bloud begetteth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: ſo likewiſe many maladies are ingendred of fleame, but the moſt notable are foure: the firſt is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer eyelids ere ſo ſoftened and mollified, that within there grow haires, which pricke the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs briſtles: which haires, though many bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and ſo for a time eaſed them, yet afterward (the haires being hardned with plucking out) do gall them farre worſe then before, and ſo in the end the patient being deſtitute of any other aide, leeſeth his ſight, (the haires fretting and conſuming the ſubſtance of his eye.) But indeed the beſt way, which as yet experience hath found out to cure that maladie, is this: Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and bind them well together at both the ends, then with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with theſe needles take off the leather where theſe haires grow, that the patient may ſhut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fall away, together with the leather which was betweene them: which done, you ſhall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it ſelfe: but if any Pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reaſon of the vehemencie of the paine, it ſhall be cured by *Puluis Nabetus* put into the eye twiſe a day, til ſuch time as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of Sugar Candy of *Alexandria*, which powder is very auaileable againſt many ſickneſſes of the eye. The ſecond infirmity which happeneth to the eye by fleame is when the eyes appeare troubled & full of veines, ſo cloſed with a Pannicle, that the patient cannot well ſee, nor diſcerne any thing, and this ſickneſs is called *Pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: firſt cauſe his head to be ſhaued, & then cauterize him with a round cautery in the ſoft of the head, and with a long cautery in his temples, which ſo done, put into his eyes the powder of Candie once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full ſight, and twiſe in the moneth purge him with the pils called *Pillulæ Ieroſolymitanæ*, & at his going to bed let him receiue of the Electuary called *Diaolibanum ſolarimitanum* til he be whole. The third infirmity cauſed by fleame, is when the eye appeareth carnous or fleſhy, the which carnoſitie (if it be waxen hard by the ſpace of a yeare or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning, cauteries (in that maner that I preſcribed them

Maladies coming of fleam.

1.

2.

3.

before) will heale it, ſo that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnoſity with a ſharpe razor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice; which when you haue done fil the eye ful of powder of Candy, and then cauſe the patient to ſhut his eye, and then lay to it a plaiſter of flaxe of the white of an Eg, and change the plaiſter twiſe on the day xv. daies: and after xv. daies make this plaſter: ℞. a handful of *Cardui Benedicti*. & ſtampe it well; & mingle it with hali the white of an Eg, and ſo make a plaiſter with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twiſe on the day, and after three dayes leaue all plaiſters, and let the patient lie with his eye open, and euery day in the morning put into his eye the powder called *Pulus Benedictus*, and at euening the powder of Candy, till he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abſtaine frō Eeles, Onions, Beef, and all ſuch meates. The fourth malady cauſed of fleame, is when the eye appeareth all bolne, and alwaies ſheadeth teares, ſo that the patient may not open his eyes by reaſon of the heauineſſe of the ey-lids, for there is a fatnes on the vpper eye-lid, which troubleth the eye very much; and this diſeaſe is called the ſcab of the eye, and it proceedeth from ſuperabundance of ſalt fleame: the cure of it is this you ſhall firſt purge the ſtomack and braine of the patient with this receipt: ℞. Turbith, of the beſt Aloes and Rewbarbe ana. ℥.j. then take of the iuyce of the roote of Walwort. ℔.j. and the aforeſaid things being beaten and diſſolued in the ſaid iuyce, let it ſtand all night, and in the morning cleanſe it, and let the patient take thereof a good quantity, and the next day ſubtilly with your Razor pare away the aforeſaid fatneſſe, euen from the one lachrimall to the other: which done lay on a plaiſter of herds and the white of an egge nine daye after (euery day changing the plaiſter twiſe,) and then let the patient lie with his eye open, and put into it of the Colliry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third Pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatneſſe with Sugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eaſed. There is an Electuarie, very auailable againſt theſe teares, which is thus made: ℞. *Olibanum*, *Caſtoreum*, Nutmegs, *Nux Indiæ*, Cloues, Quibibes, ana ℥.j. leaues of Laurell, Spiknard, Saffron, and *Cardomomum*, an. ℥.ij. ſeeds of Dill, Smallage, Baſilicon, Aliſander, Anniſe, Fennell, foure ſeeds of Henbane, white Poppy, Musk, and Campher, ana ℥.j. all theſe muſt be beaten together to powder, ſauing the *Olibanum*, which muſt be boiled with clariſied Hony till it be molten, and then poure it into a faire large woodden platter together with the powder before made, and incorporate them together by often ſtirring, and let it abide in the platter ſtill: and when you will miniſter it, giue as much as a Cheſtnut at the patients going to bed. It deſtroyeth the teares together with the fleame, it warmeth the brain, it driueth away the paine of the Migrime, it openeth the eyes, releueth the eye-lids, and clariſieth the ſight. It is good for them that haue the gout and the palſey, and for them that haue an impediment in their ſpeech.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the maladies in the Eye proceeding of choler.

TWo kinds of griefes are incident to the eyes by choler, the firſt whereof is that which is cauſed by abundance of choler in the ſtomack, from whence

ariſeth

riſeth a corrupt fumoſitie into the braine, which annoyeth the braine, & trou bleth the viſible ſpirits, ſo that the party thus affected ſhall imagine an obiect planted betweene him and the light in manner of a darke ſhadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this malady, for it hath no euident marke either in the eye, or without the eye, but the cauſe of it abideth in the ſtomack, which muſt be taken away by an Electuarie mitigatiue, & preparatiue, which will aſſwage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and ſinewes, whereby the viſible ſpirits may haue free paſſage: you ſhall make it thus: ℞. Rewbarbe, *Eſulæ minoris*, red Sanders, *Mirobaiani citrini*, ana. ℥.iiij the rootes of Fennel, Spinage, Banſci, Parſly, *Apij*, *Sicacellæ*, Simory, and Maiden haire, ana. M.j. Polipody of the Oake, ℥. ij. boile all theſe roots in faire water till half the water be waſted, and then cleanſe it, and take the aforeſaid ſpices well beaten and put them into the aforeſaid licour with two pounds of good Sugar, and make thereof a ſirupe laxatiue. But you ſhall boile it but little the ſecond time, for the ſpices will ſoone loſe their vertue, and then cleanſe it againe the ſecond time, and let the patient take of this wiſe in the weeke. The ſecond infirmity ariſing of choler, is, when there appeareth before the tunicle, as it were a thin cloud in a cleare aire, and this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth only to thoſe that be cholericke. For the cure you ſhall take a Saphire, and breake it in a mortar; and keepe the powder in a veſſell of gold, and once in the day put this powder into the patients eye, and he ſhall be whole in ſhort time. The ſame effect hath the gall of a Hare dried, and beaten into powder, and ſo put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye cauſed of melancholy.

OF the humour of melancholy be engendred in ſundry folks many & diuers ſickneſſes, by reaſon of the oppilation of the ſpirits viſible, which cometh by the diſtemperature of the braine which is diſquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In theſe diſeaſes therefore it ſeemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aire, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or foure faces, when he beholdeth but one: but theſe infirmities happen moſt commonly to aged perſons which are melancholick, ſuperfluity of melancholy dimming their eye ſight. There muſt not therefore any medicines be put into the eye of the patient, but make this Electuary mitigatiue & apparatiue, which will opẽ the oppilations of the nerues which did before foreclooſe the way to the viſible ſpirits. The Electuarie is thus confected: ℞. the iuyce of Liquorice, Eyebright, *Sileris montani*, ana. ℔ ß the ſeeds of Rew, Baſilicon, Nettles that come from beyond the ſeas, or Cecilian, or Fenel, of Aliſander, of *Apium*, of Caraway ſeed, ana. ℥ ij. Maſtick, Cloues, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Quibibes, *Gummi*, Almonds, *Cerache pomi gummorũ*, *Aragunton*, & ſaffron, ana. ℥ ß. kernels of quince apples, ℥ j all theſe muſt be beaten together into ſmall powder well ſearced, and then you muſt confect them with good Sugar, & make an Electuary of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening till it be healed. It auaileth alſo againſt that dimneſſe of the eyes which cometh by thought, and of much beauineſſe, & maketh them to ſee more clearly, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *Clarificatiũ oculorum*. There is alſo another infirmity which cometh of melan-

choly, and that is when the paine ſodainly aſcendeth into the eyes, and grieueth ſo extremely, that it ſeemeth to the patient that his eyes would ſtart out: they appeare alſo moſt commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of malady, do loſe their ſight altogether, and many (though there be ſome) which do ſee notwithſtanding but very feebly. But the ſeaſonable applying of remedies, preuenteth either diſcommodity. After this ſort then you ſhall encounter with this euil. You ſhal firſt purge the ſtomack & the braine with theſe pils: ℞. Aloes, *Mirobalani Citrini*, Turbith, Sanders, Citrine and Rewbarbe, ana. ℥.ſ. Scammony, Mirrhe, Saffron, Balſamum, Maſtick, *Lignum Aloes*, *Olibanum*, white Agarick, *Nux India*, iuyce of Liquorice, ſeed of Apium, Lettuce, Succory, Baſilicon, ana. ℥.j. Beate all theſe to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of Roſes, and make pils of them, and giue the patient after his powder. The ſtomack and the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaiſter: ℞. foure Apples or Crabs, and roſt them vnder the embers till they be ſoft, then core them and pare them, and bruſe them well in a mortar; and to foure of them put halfe the white of an Egge, and ſo bray them together till they be well incorporate, and ſo lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you ſhal finde that it wil do much good; for it both aſſwageth the ſwelling, leſſeneth the paine, refreſheth the ſight, and with all theſe fixeth alſo the eye in his place. There is another infirmity alſo which proceedeth by the abundance of melancholy, and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, ſometime it breedeth in the corner of the eie to the eare-ward, and ſo ſpreadeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & reſiſted betime: ſometime it alſo happeneth that another vngle ariſeth in the other corner, & if they meet, it maketh the cure more vncertaine; yet by heedfull skill and diſcretion, it may be healed by the hand. Take therefore a twich of ſiluer, and therewith lift vp ſubtilly the vngle from the tunicle, proceeding to the lachrimall where it grew, and there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten dayes together, remouing it twiſe on the day, and at the end of ten dayes waſh his eye with hot water, and put into it *Puluis Nabetus* before named, till the eye be ſufficiently cleared. Let him abſtaine from ſuch meats as do feed melancholy. It happeneth alſo ſomtime that the ſuperfluous abundance of melãcholy ſeated in the braine begetteth a drineſſe in the eye-lids, which afterward turneth to itching and burning. But this diſeaſe is cured by letting the patient bloud on the middle veine in the forehead, and after with vſing this Colliry: ℞. forty tender crops of the Bramble, and ſtampe them ſmall, then put them in a new earthen veſſell together with a quart of good white Wine, and ſo boile them till halfe be conſumed, and then cleanſe it and preſerue it in a glaſſe to your vſe, and twiſe in the day put ſome of it into your patients eye, till it be whole. Of the like ſuperfluity of melancholy groweth ſometime a corrupt humor without the eye vpon the lid, the which bolneth all the one ſide of the face with extreme paine, but with no offence to the ſight of the eye. The ſignes of this diſeaſe are theſe: it maketh the eye-lids hard and red, and keepeth the eye ſo ſhut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you ſhall take fine floure of old wheate, and yolkes of egs, ana. ℥.j of Saffron, ℥.j. and ſtampe them well together with womans milke till it be as an ointment: then make a plaiſter of it, and apply it ſo, that none ex-

Signa.
Curatio.

ter into the eye. You may also vse this: R. a Lilly root and Crabs, and rost them in the embers til they be soft, then taking away the core and the pils of the crabs stampe them both of like quantity with the whites of egs, and so vse it. On the step of the wound where the sore was, lay this ointment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare: R. *Aloes*, Hens grease, oile of bitter Almonds, and white Waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment, & apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *vnguentum Alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine, and helpeth the other medicines in their operation. It happeneth many times in this infirmity, that the patient his eye-lids, for want of prouident skil do reuerse, which is a great blemish. In this case you must subtilly with the Razour deuide the eye-lid from the wound, and part them with a little roule made of fine linnen cloth, dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid and the sore xv. dayes together, changing it daily, and then make the ointment of Hens grease and white Waxe, and lay of it vpon the roule, & it wil consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse when the reuersement of the eye-lids is caused of superfluity of bloud. Of the melancholicke humour there is also ingendred in many men a sickues which groweth betweene the nose and the eye, and it appeareth like a peece of a lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwaies filth. This sore is called *Vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shal only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a Razour cut vp the sore by the roote, and cauterize it with a hot iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *Vnguentum subtile*, that is, Hens grease and white Waxe, and annoint the place with it till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the Eye by outward causes, as by blowes with stickes, staues, or stones.

THe onely thing generally that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an eg and flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three especial properties: The first is to asswage the paine: The second to purifie & cleare the sight: The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours, which otherwise would fall into the eye. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of xv. dayes together, annointing in the meane time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alabaster, which as I told you before, was an adiuuant and aide to all medicins Now after the fifteen dayes be expired, if you shall perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid egges of white hens, and put them in a mortar, labouring them with a pestil till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and so reserue it in a glasse, and twise in the day and once in the night put a little of it into the eye, and it will knit together, and make so nude againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this maner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncurable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there

will grow a Cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the Cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of Waxe and Comin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and Wormewood: but both those and all such like hote ointments are passing euil, because they consume & waste the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of watery eies and of corrupt humors like teares, which the Phisitians call *fistules*, to discerne betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluence of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out at the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellowes, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iro, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter: which indeed they haue done, but they haue destroyed the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take, to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a razour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelid and the nose, so directly that the lid be not touched: and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, and into the same put in the graine of a Fitch, binding it on with a little pillow of linnen and so let it lie till the next day: then remouing the Fitch, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a little of some powder corrasiue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen herds, and the white of an egge (the patient alwayes shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane Swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised: and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a sponge, as much as a Fitch, in the hole where the powder made, and it will purge the drinesse of the wound: and when you shall perceiue it throughly dried, leaue the sponge, and bind nothing to it else but faire dry lint of linnen til the patient be whole. Now concerning the teares they issue out of the eye-lid: both the vpper and the neather: but there is difference betweene the causes of their issuing from both places for they which proceed from the neather eye-lid, come from the heart, by reason of sorow drede or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the vpper eye-lid, proceed from the braine, by reason of corruption & abundance of humours, and their course ceasseth not, vnlesse the matter be purged with Electuaries and Cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the diseases which come by skipping in of stones, or chips by chance into the Eyes.

THese diseases happen specially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights and Smithes: for it any chiue, chip or dust skip into the eye, and throughnegligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle Saluatrice, and can you not cure the eye, but by remouing and drawing the said chiue,

ou ſhall do with your needle,deuiding it cunningly from the tunicle And if it appen that there be any pit in the place where it lay, by reaſon that it abode ong therein, then put into the eye the ſtreins of egs ordered as I declared be- ore, twiſe in the day,and once in the night: and vpon the eye lay a plaiſter of laxe and the white of an eg, & within three dayes it will heale the partie diſea- ed. And after this ſort you ſhall alſo remoue the haw in the eye. But you ſhall n drawing out the haw, bind two needles faſt together at the top, and ſo take he haw betweene the two points,& ſo eaſily rolling the needles,bring it away. ometime it hapneth that the eye is ſtong with a bee or waſpe, or ſome other enimous thing,or blaſted with an infected aire:and if any of theſe happen,the ye is much diſquieted and grieued, ſo that the patient may take no reſt,and it olneth vp that he may not ſee. The onely cure for ſuch and the like accidents this,as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handful of *Carduus Benedictus* ampe it ſmall, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and there- ith make a plaiſter laying it on flaxen herds,binding it hard to the eye,where ſhall lie till it be dried, and then apply another: and ſo conſequently vſe it till our patient be throughly whole. Theſe qualities this herbe hath: it aſſwageth welling, and eaſeth the paine, deſtroyeth the venime, and putteth away bloud om the eyes. This is alſo a preſent remedie for the eyes that are bloudſhed, hen they burne as though there were grauell in them. And thus much for the ſpeciall diſcourſes of ſundry diſeaſes,which do moſt commonly bend to that ttle member, the eye,together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

DAine in the eares is cauſed in ſome through cold taken by iourneying in cold winds. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed of cold bathes and medicinable wa- rs. Alſo it chanceth to many through diſtemper: Sometime of inflamma- on. And like as inflammation by ſtretching out of the parts that be inflamed, gendreth paine, euen ſo a windie vapour, or a humour groſſe and clammie, r lacke of paſſage cauſeth paine. Alſo humours that be byting,and like whay d matter, do cauſe paine in the eares. Paine in the eares cauſed of cold, is one knowne by the patients words, & becauſe there is continuall great paine ithout heauineſſe,or diſtenſion,or burning, the paine which is cauſed of hote ſtemper is knowne, in that there is felt paine and heate without heauineſſe or olning. But if heauineſſe,diſtenſion,and bearing heate and paine be felt in the ead, then the paine in the eare is cauſed of inflammation. Onely diſtention ithout heauineſſe declareth a windy vapour which cannot find paſſage out. If ere be heauineſſe in the head and the hearing,the paine is cauſed of groſſe & ammie humors. If the paine be cauſed onely of cold,it wil ſoone be cured by ote remedies, that is,with oile of Rew, Laurell,Nard,Dill,Lillies, of *Euphor-* *ium*, and Spike. Alſo if you ſeeth Rew,or common oile of Pepper, or *Caſto-* *reum*, it is a good remedy. Alſo oile wherein Garlicke is ſodden,or an Onion, opped into the eares,is marueilous good. There are ſome that do cut out the re of a great Onion, then they fill it with oile, & they heate it meanly in hot mbers,and powre it into the eares,when it is ſtrongly ſtrained. Alſo a very litle

Cauſe.

Signa.

Cure of cold.

Euphorbium commixed with much old oyle, is much commended of Galen. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually powre in oile that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, & againe powre in more. The white of an eg mitigateth the paine very much: also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of an hot distemper, then oile of Roses is maruellous good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare, and vineger and oile of Roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of Nightshade, or this: ℞. oile of Roses, ℥ j. iuyce of Nightshade, ℥ ij. vineger of Roses ℥ j. ß. commixe them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscous humours, you must vse medicins which do deuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and cleanse without erosion, as is, *Irisillirica*, all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter Almonds, the roote of *Nitisalba*, Centorie the lesse, *Polium* and Cinamon. Also oile of Almonds, and other which do purge, cleanse, wipe, and vnstop the passes without griefe. Therefore of those you may make medicines and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of Leeks dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of Leekes mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica* veine that is on the same side: and with clisters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *Oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose grease, or hennes grease, with oile of Roses. But if the inflammation be vehement, then to ceasse paine drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good, ℞. iuyce of Senegreene, ℥ ij. oyle of Roses ℥ ß. vineger, ℥ j. ß. commixe them all, and drop it into the sore eare. Apply those things outwardly which ceasse paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be very vehement, it is necessary to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily: and it is no small danger, lest that the sinew by which the vertue of hearing is dispersed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a little *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantity, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicines ought to be tempered (being first finely beaten) must be *Sapa*: for it doth ceasse paine much more then sweete wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be some that commixe *Opium* with oyle of Roses, or Violets, after this sort: ℞. of *Opium*, ϑ j. oile of Roses and Violets, ana. ℥ j. ß. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolued in womans milke, and dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But when the paine waxeth old, and turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall droppe into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of Linesced onely, with oyle of Roses or Cammomill mixed with it.

Of water.

Of heate.

Vena sectio.

Sapa.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Of ſound and noiſe in the eares.

NOiſe and tinckling in the eare, for the moſt part, is ingendred of a windie vapour, or of groſſe and clammy humours. Alſo many times it is cauſed through an exquiſite tardineſſe of the ſenſe of hearing. It is alſo cauſed by weakneſſe of the members: when it chanceth in the recouering of a diſeaſe, ſome humor is taken into the ſinewes of the eares. Alſo it is cauſed of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill charge through outward cauſes, it is ſoone knowne by the patients words. Now becauſe the noiſe cometh by little and little, or at one time, or ſuddenly on a heape, that is alſo conuenient to know the diſeaſe by. For if the ſounding do come, and then reſt for a certaine ſpace, it is euident that a windy vapour is ſhut in and cannot get out, and ſo cauſeth ſounding, and ſpecially when the ſicke hath eaten windy meates. But if ſuch ſound in the eares do not come ſuddenly, but by little and little, and there is felt withall a heauineſſe and weight: then it declareth the euil to be cauſed of groſſe and viſcous humours. For the cure, if the ſound in the eares be cauſed of groſſe and viſcous humours, or of vapours, in the beginning purge the head with *Pilulæ Cochiæ* and ſuch like. But firſt miniſter before them potions and medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and deuide. Then you muſt vſe maſticatories and ſternutaments. Moreouer you muſt drop into the eares oile of bitter Almonds, or oile in which *Caſtoreum* is brayed. Alſo let the eare be inclined to the vapour of water wherein *Stœchas*, Wormwood, Marioram, Mints and Origan haue bene ſodden. Iuyce of Rew ſodden in the rind of a Pomgranate is marueilous good. Alſo *Sacculi* made of Betony, *Stachados*, Cammomil, Marioram, and other things a litle before rehearſed, are very good if they be applied to the eare warme. If the ſound in the eare be cauſed through ſharpneſſe of the ſenſe of hearing, which is knowne, if when the patient is hungrie it increaſeth, and when he is full the noiſe is leſſe; then you muſt vſe thoſe things which do aſtonie the ſenſes: but you muſt take good heed thereof, and therefore begin with the eaſieſt, and if need be, proceed afterward to ſtronger. Oile of Roſes is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. Galen in this caſe praiſeth the iuyce of *Mandragora* and Poppie. But if noiſe in the eares chance in feuers, there need no remedie for it; for commonly it goeth away ſtraight. But if it remaine after a diſeaſe or a paine in the head, then you muſt nouriſh the eares with decoction of Wormewood, powring in vineger & oile of Roſes, or iuyce of Radiſh with oile of Roſes, or the beſt Aloes tempered with *Mulſa*: and if this helpe not, vſe blacke Hellebore brayed with vineger.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Of windy vapours.

Of groſſe humours.

Cure of it come of groſſe humors or vapors

Sacculi.

If it come of ſharpeneſſe of hearing.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Deafneſſe and ſlow hearing.

auditus Grauitas

THe eare is ſo afflicted, that it cauſeth not onely dulneſſe of hearing, but alſo deafnes that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafneſſe beginneth at ones birth, and ſometime it chanceth after we be borne; which doth chance, either through cholericke humors flying vpward, or through crude and groſſe humors ſtoppping the hearing. If deafneſſe come of cholericke humours ſpecially after feuers, then it is wont with ſudden incurſions to runne to the braine.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Also the face and all the state of the body will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humors, there is heauinesse of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humors. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deafe, yet if it haue long continued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholerick humors flying vpward, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be engendred of crude & grosse humors, this dull hearing is cured by bloudletting, or only by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilulæ Cochiæ*, and other such like. But minister before Oximel, and other medicines that haue power to deuide grosse and clammy humors. The whole body being purged, you must draw fleame out of the head by Masticatories, Sternutaments, and *Errhinis*. Furthermore, they must be dried, and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it selfe, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that deuide and cut grosse and viscous humors, wherof there be many declared in the Chapter against sound in the eares. But priuatly inyce of Rew with Hony, or *Castoreum* with oile of Dill is good. Also you must vse foments, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reed, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot Wormwood, Mints, Marioram, Origan, Stæchas, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that cometh from thence may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good: ℞. oile of *Castoreum*, ℥.ß. Comin seed, ʒ.ij. powder of *Castoreum*, ʒ.j. and put in the oile, & wind it vp in wet papers, & put it vnder the hot embers, and when it is rosted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapor of Vineger taken with a reed, as is taught before, is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether thin, and meats of light digestion.

If of cholerick humors.

If of grosse humors.

Victus ratio.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Impostumes breeding in the Eares.

Parotides in Greek, be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hot blood, which is either mixed with choler, or fleame, or melancholy. And sometime it is caused of humors compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the body by sickenesse, and specially by feuers. *Parotides* which are caused through fulnesse and plentie of hote bloud, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholericke bloud, they seeme much like *Erisipelas*, and they vexe the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is cauled of melancholy bloud, they be not red, nor they vexe not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be engendred of flegmatick bloud, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a maner, as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting of bloud: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore, we vse not in *Parotides* (as we do in other inflammations) to apply in the beginning things that represse, but contrariwise things that do draw. And if they

Causa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

be

be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually foments. To mitigate the paine, you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and ceasing paine, meet to ripe and digest, as is, decoctions made of Wheate or Barly, or the meale of Linseed, with *Mulsa* or Fenugreeke, or *Althæa*, or Camniomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with Butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also Swines grease with butter melted with a litle Wax put to it, that it may be a soft cerote, may be wel applied. But in them that be meeke, that is, in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not such plenty of humours that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with foments of brine, and plaisters and medicines altogether discussiue as is *Diactrilon*. If the *Parotides* cannot be dissolued, you must vse medicines to ripe and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheate meale with the decoction of figs and oile. Also the medicine that is made of meale and floure and leuen. When the *Parotides* be riped, either cut the skinne with a knife, that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with Garlicke and such like; or to proue how to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twise dayly, and nourishing it vntill the paine be somewhat released, and the more parts of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is Calues suet, Goates suet, the marrow of a Hart, *Bdellium*, *Styrax*, *Ammoniacum*, and such other like.

Cure of them that be meeke.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

Ozenæ in Greeke, be vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauor. Through sharp and rotten humours which flow to the nostrils, filthinesse is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nostrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nostrils. You shall adde strength to the head, after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine and bind, as is oile of Roses, Alume, vnripe gals, willow leaues, vineger, and such like: this must be continually laid & annointed on the head nine daies. Whē with those things the head is made strong, then go about to cure the nostrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsiue and discussiue. Therefore those things that repell and driue back, be things sharp and sowre, which also are reckoned with restrictiue things. Discussiue things must be hot and dry of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozenæ* you must drop in the iuice of Calamint, or blow in the powder thereof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nosthrils. A while after minister Sternutaments to bring them to scurfs, which will fall off in three or 4. daies. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease & butter, & *tum.*

Causa.

Curatio.

Sternutamentum.

oile of Roſes. The vlcers in the noſthrils may be annointed with iuice of a Pomgranate boyled in a brazen veſſel vnto the half, or a whole Pomgranate ſodden in ſweete Wine brayed, and dropped in. Alſo this is good: ℞. dry Alume, ℥ j ß. Mirrhe, ℥ j. the rind of a Pomgranate, Sumach, ſalt Gemme, Saffron, Frankenſence, ana. ℥ ß. beate them, and blow into the noſe of the powder. If that after the vlcers, there remaine paine, vſe this ointment: ℞. oile of Roſes, Mirtels, ana. ℥ j. burnt Lead, Litarge, ana. ℈ ij. Ceruſe, Bolearmeny, *Balauſtium*, ana. ℈ j. white Wax as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment, & annoint the place.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the noſe.

Cauſæ. FLuxe of bloud at the noſe, is cauſed partly outwardly, and partly inwardly.

Externæ. Outward cauſes be falling from a high place, a ſtripe, vehement exerciſe, and tarying in the Sunne.

Internæ. Inward cauſes is plenty of bloud, or thinneſſe of the ſame.

Signa. You may know if it come through plenty of bloud by heauy pain in the head, much bloud in the face, and redneſſe of the eyes.

Victus ratio. Let the diet be thinne, and ſuch that it may coole and make thicke the bloud. Therfore let the aire be cold, and the meate of good iuyce, and eaſie to digeſt. If the bloud be very hot, let the ſick eate Lettuce, Endiue, Peares, Quinces, Chickens roſted, or boiled with Veriuyce.

Potus. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of Cinamon, by which throughout my booke I meane water in which a little Cinamon is ſodden, leſt water through his coldnes might hurt a weak ſtomack. Let the patient ſpeake little, and let him eſchue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Alſo it is good to haue the lower parts of the head higheſt.

Curatio. For the cure, you muſt take heed that in bleeding at the noſe, the lower parts lie higheſt, and the head downward. The cure muſt be begun with thoſe remedies which turne the bloud to other parts of the body. Firſt therfore if the body be full, and age will ſuffer it,

Venæ ſectio. and if the ſicke be not reſolued, you muſt cut the veine in the arme, right againſt the flowing of bloud at the noſe. When you haue drawne out a little, then let it alone an houre, then draw out ſome againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patients ſtrength will ſuffer it. Moreouer, friction and rubbing of the inferiour parts, as the armes, hands, thighs, ſhare and feet, is very profitable: and it is maruellouſly good to put the feet into warme water, euer rubbing them vp and downe. Alſo ſtrong binding of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull back. Alſo great cupping glaſſes faſtned to the ſides, do retaine bloud breaking out at the noſe.

Cucurbitulæ. If the bloud flow from the right noſtrill, faſten the cupping glaſſe vpon the liuer, if at the left noſthrill, vpon the ſplene. If the bloud come from both the noſthrils, faſten cupping glaſſes to both places. Alſo faſten them to the ſhoulders with ſcarification. Thoſe being done, miniſter both within the body and without, things which coole and reſtraine. Outwardly apply to the forehead

Epithema. an *Epithema* of iuyce of Plantaine, Lettuce, Sorrell, Shepheards purſe, Knotgraſſe, or make it with the waters of them diſtilled. A linnen cloth wet in cold vineger is maruellous good, being applied to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Alſo nouriſh the forehead with ſponges of cold water. Alſo it is good to vſe this *Epithema*, applied to the forehead and the liuer: ℞. water of

Roſes

Roſes, Nightſhade, Sorrell, ana ℥. iij. powders of *Diatrion ſantalon*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana ℥ j Bolearmenie, luory burnt, *Lapis hæmatites*, ana ℥ ß. commixe them all, and make an *Epithema*. Alſo you muſt put into the noſe, medicines to ſtop bloud, for the which this is very good: ℞ Frankenſence, ℥. ij. Aloes, ℥ j. powder them, and mixe therewith the white of an eg, vntill it be as thick as Hony, then commixe the ſoft haires of a Hare with it, and apply it to the noſe. Alſo you may writhe a linnen cloth (dipped therein) in the noſthrils. Alſo Mints brayed, and put into the noſthrils, is thought to be exceeding good. Alſo a ſponge wet in ſtrong and ſharpe vineger, may be put into the noſe that bleedeth. Alſo this medicine is good. ℞ Eg-ſhels, ℥. ij. vnripe Gals, ℥. j. being brayed, put them in a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, & put it into the noſthrils. Alſo it is good to ſtop the eares ſtrongly with linnen and waxe, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Alſo iuyce of the leaues of Nettle, hauing linnen dipt into it, and put into the noſe, ſtoppeth bleeding at the noſe. Alſo iuyce of Horſetaile, or the leaues brayed & applyed are good. The fleſh of Snailes brayed with vineger, or with their ſhels burnt and brayed are good being applied to the forehead & noſe with vineger. But aboue al, the bloud which cometh out of the patients noſe is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot, and then beaten; take of it ℥. iij. Bole armoniack, ℥. j. Champhore, ℈. j. with the white of an egge and a little vineger, make it thicke like hony, and lay it to the forehead, and put it into the noſe. Neceſſity requiring, it is lawfull to put to two graines or three of *Opium*. Aſſes dung dried and made into powder is wonderfully good; and alſo hogs dung hath the like propertie. Within the body miniſter thoſe things which do coole and reſtraine, as be ſirupes of Roſes, Sorrell and *Nymphæa*, Trochisks of *Terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and ſuch like medicines. Moreouer, if in the meane ſeaſon any bloud flow into the belly or other places of the body, if it be much and plenteous, you muſt auoid it by medicines which will diſſolue and bring forth the cloddy matter.

Aliud Epithema.

An excellent medicine to ſtop bloud.

Optima medicina.

CHAP. XLV.

Of diſtillation, rheume, and hoarceneſſe.

Catarros in Greeke, is called *Diſtillatio* in Latin, and in Engliſh Rheume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Granedo* is when the humour falleth into the noſe, and cauſeth the poſe. *Raucedo* is when the humour chanceth to diſtill to the ſharpe arterie. The cauſe of flowing of the humour, is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold temper, which chanceth ſpecially to them which go ſuddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and ſtuffed, the coldneſſe of humours which be in the braine wringing hard, like as a ſponge dipped in water is wroong with ones hand: it cauſeth the flowing of humours to the lower parts. So oftentimes heate going about in the head, diſſoluing the humours in the braine, ingendreth diſtillation. Moreouer, all things that repleate the head without meaſure, do cauſe flowing of humours into the inferiour parts: alſo wine immoderately drunke, and hot baths, raw meate remaining in the ſtomacke, and vaporous things in the head. The ſignes if the fluxe of humours come of heate, are theſe, the head is hote, and a ſharpe and

Diſtillatio.
Granedo.
Raucedo.
Cauſa.
Cold.
Heate.
Repletion of the head.
Signa.

Calor. thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is red, and for the most part there followeth a Feuer. Contrariwise, they that haue the flure caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched forth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoidea*, are shut vp, so that the voice cannot passe downeward by the nostrils. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humor distilleth out of the nose. Let them eschue aire that is very hote or very cold, especially from a bath, and from South and North winds, and all things that can binde or dissolue humors in the braine. Let him vse meats of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that tend plenty of vapours to the braine, as be Onions, Garlick, Mustard seed, Radish, and very hot odoraments. Moreouer they which haue the distillation, must eate lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *Aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon, or Barley: let them eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure, when the head is vexed with a hot distemper, you must vse those remedies which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedie of the head is to sprinkle and poure vpon the head plenty of hote water, that is able to driue out the hote vapors ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme baths of sweet water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them in sommer to be annointed with oyle of Roses. If a cold distemper vexe the head, it must be annointed with hot and thinne oyles, as oiles of *Ireos*, Rew, and such like. Oyle of *Ireos* is not onely vsed as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applied, which are spoken of in the chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humor distill from the head, together with a Feuer, and if there be fulnesse of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine: but if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may draw the humors that do abound in the head downeward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *Pilulæ aureæ*, *Alephanginæ*, *Azarum*, and such like. Also you must turne the humors from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastening of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heate of choler, as is sirupe of Violets, *Nymphææ*, of Poppy, & their conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the chapter of headach, may be applied. Also a plaister of *Terra lemnia*, or Bolearmoniak, and iuyce of Plantain, made and laid vpon the head being shauen, is good. If it be a cold humour which distilleth, you shall emptie with those things which purge fleame: for which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with Masticatories, Gargarismes, and such like. Moreouer, apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus: ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, Betony, Origan, ana. M ß Cinamon, Cloues, ana. ʒ. j. Maces, ʒ. j. ß. Nutmegs, ʒ. ij. *Gallæ Moschatæ*, ʒ. j. powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a Sacculus, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is very good also to annoint the head with hot oiles, as are the oiles of *Ireos*, Dill and Rew. All things do stop distillation, which haue vertue to dry, especially *Nigella* parched, and Cumin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth,

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Humor frigidus.

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

and

and knit, is a preſent remedy, if the patient do ſmell to it. For the ſame purpoſe it is good to miniſter ſuffiments, as is this: ℞. Frankenſence, Maſtick ana ʒ. j. wood of Aloes, ℈. j. ß. Cinamon, Cloues, ana. ℈. ij. *Gallæ moſchatæ*, ʒ. j. ß. Laurel leaues, yellow Sanders, ana. ʒ. j. Musk, Amber, ana. gr. j. being brayed, commix them with *Storax liquida*, as much as ſufficeth, and make trochisks: wherof put one vpon coales: ℞. Sage, Marioram, Roſemary, ana. ʒ. j. Maces, Cloues, Cinamon, ana. ℈. ij. wood of Aloes, ℈. j. Frankenſence, ʒ j. ß. beate them all, and commixe them, and make a groſſe powder to ſtrew vpon the coales. As for hoarſeneſſe, it is cured almoſt with the ſame medicines that the cough is.

Trochiskes of perfume.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of paine in the teeth.

TOothach (as Galen ſaith) amongſt other paines that are not mortall, is the moſt cruel & grieuous of them all. It is cauſed ſometime of hote or cold diſtemper. Alſo many times through flowing of humors out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their ſharpneſſe either do gnaw about them, or elſe with their abundance they ingender like griefe in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleſhy parts. Paine in the teeth is ſomtime without inflammation of the gums, ſometime in the ſinew wherin the roots be planted. If the paine come through diſtemper of the bare quality, it will not be grieuous. Hot diſtemper is knowne by the temper of the whole body, becauſe that likewiſe is hot Alſo the face is red, and the diet vſed before was hot. Cold is knowne by the contrary iudgements. If the paine be cauſed of flowing of ſome humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth, but alſo in other parts which it paſſeth by. A hot humour ingendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be ſuch as may defend that the paine come not, and let it be ſuch as is not very hot nor cold. Alſo eſchue all ſharp, ſowre, and viſcous things. Alſo often vſing of milke doth maruellouſly hurt the teeth: labour diligently to purify the teeth. The meats muſt be of good iuyce, & eaſie to digeſt. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to waſh the teeth with warme wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oiles, of Cammomill, Rew, *Ireos*, & ſuch like. Alſo to waſh the mouth, ſeeth in vineger, Origã, Calamint, Hyſope, Penitoyal, Sauory, the root of Veruain, & ſuch like. If the teeth do ake thorough heate, you muſt ſeeth in vineger Purſlaine, Pellitory, Singreene the leſſe, & licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you muſt vſe the ſeeds of Lettuce, Endiue, and Poppy ſodden in vineger. Without you muſt annoint againſt the grief with cold oiles, as of Roſes, Water-lillies, & ſuch like. Moreouer if the paine be cauſed through flowing of humors, if age, time of the yeare, & other things will ſuffer it, & if the body alſo be ful of bloud, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* vein or *media* on the ſame ſide that the griefis. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or faſten cuping glaſſes to the ſhoulders. If one only corrupt humour doth abound, thẽ vſe conuenient medicins to purge that humor. For the ſame purpoſe cliſters are very good. The whole body being emptied, you muſt miniſter thoſe medicins that do repreſſe & ſtop, as iuice of Plãtaine, Roſes, Purſlaine, both the endiues: either take the decoctiõ of the aforeſaid things, or their waters diſtilled & mixed with a little vineger. It is only good to waſh the aking with hot ſharp

Cauſa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

If it come of heat.

If of flowing of humours.

vineger, with vnripe Gals: or this, R. the roote of Henbane, ℥ j. Pellitory. ℥ ß. Staue sacre, ℥ j. Gallingale. ℥ ß. Camphere, ℈ ij. Allume. ℥ j. Hony. ℥ ij. let all be bruised, and boile all in vinger, ℔ j Rose water, ℥ vj wash the teeth with this each morning: it will preserue the teeth, & keepe thē from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, thē vse specially this medicine: ℞. Pepper, Pellitory, Melilot, ana. ℥ j. Staue sacre ℥ ß. bruise thē, & put the powder into a linnen cloth, & lay it on the aking teeth, & keepe it there a quarter of an houre, & it will ceasse the paine Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is very good.

If it come of cold.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of teeth that be blacke and loose.

Causa. SOMETIME the teeth be swart and blacke throughout their substance, not vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humors the teeth be loose, sometime through a stripe or fall, sometime through flowing of moistnesse, which looseth the sinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth loose; or else gnawing and weaknesse of the gummes in the which the teeth are set, causeth them to be loose. The cure of vicious humors must be begun with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be swart or rusty, you must deuide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *Licium*, Frankensence, Mints, Gals, Masticke, Mirrhe, *Nigella*, & such like. Among many other this is very good: ℞. *Nigella*, Mirrhe, Frākensence, ana. ℥ j. Masticke white Pepper. ana. ℈ ij. *Pistolochiæ*. ℈ j. roch Allume. ℥ j beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therewith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine, and annoint them therwith. The corrupt humours being consumed, vse Dentifrices which haue vertue to scoure and drie, as is this, ℞. *Nitrum*, roch Allume, Harts horne burnt, ana. ℥ j. Mirrhe ℈ j. the roote of *Ireos Illiricæ*, Frākensence, drie Mints, ana. ℥ j. ß. common Salt burnt, *Pistolochiæ* ana. ℥ j. Pumish, *Testarum sepiæ*, ana. ℥ j. ß. Pepper, Pellitory, drie Peniroyal ana ℥ ß beate them, and searce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth daily. For teeth that be loose you may apply such medicines, as restraine and strengthen loose gummes, and fasten thē. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of restrictiue things do profite, as is this, ℞. red Roses, Mints, Plantaine, ana. M. ß the barks of Cipresse nuts. ℥ j. seeds of Mirtels, Sumach. ana. ℥ ß. Pomgranate rinds, Gals. ana. ℥ ij. *Acatia*. ℈ ij seeth them all in red restrictiue wine & with that often wash the mouth. The mouth being washed, it is lawful to vse this *Dentifricium*. ℞. Gals, the rinde of sweet Pomegranates, ana. ℥ j *Balaustium*, Sumach, Mirrhe ana ℈ j. red Roses, *Sanguis draconis*, *Caliculorum glandium*. ana. ℥ j Frankensence, Harts horne burnt. ana. ℥ j ß. powder all, & searce them, and rub the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good: ℞. *Balaustium*, Nutmegs, ana ℥ iij. roch Allume. ℥ j ß. powder them, and mixe thē with Hony ℥ ij ß. and incorporate thē well together: and with this annoint the teeth twise or thrise in the day.

Curatio.

Dentifricium optimum.

Loose teeth.

Collutio oris.

Dentifricium.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of vlcers in the mouth.

Aphtæ. THE vlcers which are bred in the vpper part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heate, in Greeke are called *Aphthæ*, and of the barbarous

sort

sort *Acola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and these be most perillous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infants and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the child cannot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to them that be of perfect age, aswell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humours to the mouth, as also through sharpnesse of those things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are easie, because they be knowne by sight and feeling. If you touch it, the places will seeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is swelling. They which be red, do shew bloud to haue the maistery. Yellownesse signifieth bitter choler: whiteneſſe, fleame: blackneſſe, melancholy. They which chance to children may easily be cured by those things that do meanly restraine. And you must giue them chiefly in their meats some Quinces, and other sharpe things, as Peares and Mespilers. viz. Medlars, or open arses. Sometime also you must commixe with their meate some Lettuce, Endiue and Purslaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuyce of Purslaine, Lettuce, and Nightshade, the powder of Allume, & wash the mouth with a fine cloth, or with a Sering: and if the child can take no meate, then the nurse must vse the same kinde of diet. Also the decoction of Galles, *Balaustium*, Sanders, Sumach, *Acatia* and such like, commixed with *Rob de ribes*, or *Diamoron* applied as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age, only the nature of the body is to be considered, whether it be soft, or moist, or hard, or drie. For in hard and strong bodies you must minister strong medicines: in weake and soft bodies, gentle medicins. For the diet therefore in such ages, they must eschue all things that be sharpe & salt, and that ingender corrupt iuyce. For the cure in fulnesse of the body, if nothing do let it, first cut the *Cephalica* veine, & the those veins vnder the tongue. If the body be full of ill iuyce, you must minister a purgation against the corrupt humours. The body being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to restraine and stop. Moderate remedies against vlcers be these; *Sumach*, Roses, *Balaustium* dissolued in wine or *Mulsa* But if the exulcerations begin to putrifie, this decoction is very profitable, ℞. Fellerd leaues of Sage, Hylope, Rew, Peniroyall, Cammomill, Woodbind, Knotgrosse, *Bursa pastoris*, Brier leaues, ana. M. ß. wash them cleane, and boile them all in ℔. ij. ß. of good Ale or Beere, and put therin three or foure spoonfuls of Hony, Allume ʒ. ij. let it seeth to the consumption of halfe, then straine it, & wash the mouth therewith foure or fiue times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *Vnguentum Egyptiacum*, mixt with *Mel Rosarum*, or such like.

Signa.

Curatio infantium.

Cure of them that be of perfect age.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a stinking mouth.

Causa.

THERE is a grieuous and stinking sauor of the mouth caused for the most part through putrifaction of the gummes or teeth, or through meate sticking still in the teeth. Many times it cometh through hote distemper of the skinne of the mouth: sometime also through corrupt and rotten humours sticking in the mouth of the stomacke. It chanceth also many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If stinking of the mouth chance through putrifaction either of the gummes, or

Signa. teeth, or of meate sticking in the teeth: it is soone knowne either by sight, or by the patients tale. If it be causèd of a hote distemper of the mouth, then heate is felt in the mouth, and thirst troubleth him. If through vice of the stomacke, then the breath of the mouth is more grieuous and stinking before meate then after meate. Vlcerations of the lungs are knowne by extenuation of the body,

Victus ratio. and by coughing. In the diet the patient must auoid all things that do readily ingender corruption in the mouth or stomacke, as is, milk, fish, almost all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and such like. Let the meats therefore which they vse be of good iuyce, and easie to digest: but they must vse meats rather rost then sodden. In the end of dinner & supper they may eate Peares, Quinces, & such like, especially, if the stinking sauor come frō the mouth of the stomacke. Let them eschue sleeping by and by after meate. If stinch of the mouth come through corruption of the gummes or teeth, if there be fulnesse of the bodie, first draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, & then fasten cupping glasses to the neck; but if the body be full of euill iuyce, purge the humour that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The body being purged, vse outward medicines, specially collutions and washings, which in this case seeme to be maruellous good, as this is, ℞. Red roses, Plantain, Knotgrasse, ana. M. j. ß. Gals. Pomegranat floures, Cipres nuts, ana ʒ. ij rinds of Pomegranates, ʒ ß. Roch allume. ʒ j. seeth these in iust quantity of water to the third part, & in the iuyce of the decoction being strained, cōmixe *Mel rosarum*, *Diacarion*, an. ʒ. ß *Diamoron*, ʒ.

Collutio oris. iij. commixe them all & make a collution, with the which wash the gums and the teeth euery morning & euening. Also oftē washing with water mixed with vinegerin the morning, and by and by after meate, is good. If the stinke in the mouth be without exulceration, minister the roote of *Ireos* steeped in old odoriferous wine, and wash the teeth often withall. Also it is good to bold it in the mouth. Also Mirrhe steeped in pure wine minister to wash thē teeth. Also it is very good to chew Pellitorie, *Tamariscus* & Rew. Likewise collution of vineger squilliticke, or decoction of Sage, or onely wine. Also decoction of Mints in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often washed with it. This causeth

For sweete breath. sweet breath, and maketh the teeth white, ℞. white salt, Pumises, Origan, ana. ʒ. ij roote of *Ireos*, ʒ j. flowres of *S*quinance, ʒ. ß. beate them al, & commixe thē, and rub the teeth therewith. If stinke of the mouth come of a hot distemper, cure it with contrary medicines. But if it come of a corrupt humour in the mouth of the stomack, it is healed by those things which do purge that humor.

Vomitus. Those things which be contained in the mouth of the stomacke may well be brought out by a vomit. How ye shall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, minister medicins which do strengthen the stomacke, as is, *Aromaticum rosaceum*, *Diamber*, *Hydromalum*, & such like medicins, which be good in all causes, as be Cloues, Masticke, Mace, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Roses, all the Saunders, Nutmegs, *Quibibes*, *Ireos*, and other of the like sort.

These suffice. And how many euils soeuer there be of the head, whose cure is not expresly named by me in this booke, yet you may find out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.

The

The ſecond Booke.

CHAP. I.

Againſt the inflammation of the Columella.

THERE chanceth in the throate many dangerous inflammations (as *Hippocrates* writeth in his *Prognoſtica*) and firſt of this *Columella* appeareth a certain fleſhy peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one do gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be ſeene. In old time it was called *Gurgulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is cauſed through bloud and other humours which deſcend out of the head. The diſeaſe may be known by ſight: and there chanceth in it difficulty in ſwallowing, paine, ſwelling, redneſſe of the *Columella*, & feuer. The diet in a maner, muſt be ſuch as is ordained in other inflammations, & ſpecially, quietnes, reſt, ſilence, & hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at ſupper. For the cure, if there be fulneſſe of the body, you muſt begin with bloudletting, and firſt you muſt cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, & afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Alſo the belly muſt be purged by cliſters, ſo that by that meanes, not onely the belly may be ſoluble, but alſo that the flowing of humours to the griefe, may be taken away. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe you may faſten cupping glaſſes to the ſhoulders: neither muſt we let paſſe the remedies which are good to repreſſe and ſtop fluxe of humours For as they do in all other diſeaſes cauſed of the fluxe of humours, ſo in this behalfe, for their firſt remedies they ſtop the fluxe of humours. Therefore ſuch remedies muſt be of a reſtrictiue nature & faculty. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, miniſter things which reſtraine moderately, as theſe be which be called ſoure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it ſharpe things, for both be reſtrictiue: but ſoure be weake, and ſharp things ſtrong, as *Galen* doth ſay in his fourth booke of the vertues of ſimple medicines, cap. 6. and 7. Therefore vſe collutions made of thoſe things, as if they ſhould be moderate: ſeeth Dates ſometime in water alone, and ſometime with a little hony put to them. Likewiſe made decoctions of Roſes, Vine buds, Brambles, Cipreſſe, the firſt buds of Pomegranate flowres, *Siligna* roote of Mulberie, ſoure Apple, and *Sorbus*. Thoſe be ſtronger then theſe, which be made of the decoction of Mirtles, and their berries. Alſo of ſharpe Quinces, & yong buds of Oake, or the maſt of Oak: alſo of Medlars, & a fruit called *Cornus*: the beſt collutiõs are made of Gals, *Sumach*, *Acatia*, & the floures of both Pomegranats, and their ſhels. Among

Gurgulio.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena ſectio.

Cucurbitulæ.

Gargariſmus. compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, ℞. the diſtilled waters of Roſes, Plantaine, Sorrell, *Prunella*, *Solani* ana ℥ ij. *Diamoron*, *ſucci medicati Cribers* ana. ℥. ß *Succi medicati Oxyacantha.* ℥ ij ß vineger, wherein *Sumach* is ſteeped ℥. j. iuyce of Pomegranates, ℥. ß. commixe them together, and with it waſh the mouth. Another of the ſame vertue. ℞ red Roſes, Brambles, ana. M. j. Pomgranate flowres & the ſhels, Gals, maſt of Oake, ana. ℥ iij. *Sumach*, *Hypociſtchidis*, *Acatia*, ana ℥. ij. ſeeds of Sorrel and Quinces, ana. ℥. j. ſeeth them in ℔ j. of well water, vntill halfe remaine; the decoction being ſtrained, put to it of *Diamoron* ℥. j. *ſucci medicati Cribes*, *Diacation*, ana ℥. j. ß vineger, ℥. vj. commixe them all, and make a gargariſme. You muſt vſe theſe medicines in the beginning of the diſeaſe, and ſpecially when the griefe hath not the greateſt cauſe: nor when the body of the ſicke is much ſtopped with humours, nor when the aggrieued place is weake through the nature of the impoſtume. But if it chance ſo (as it doth often in the beginning, and often ſomewhat after) that is, the third day, you muſt commixe ſome of the diſcuſſiue medicines, as is Linſeed, Fenugreek, Mallowes, roote of *Ireos*, and Hony. Moreouer, of what ſort ſoeuer the medicines be, miniſter them warme, for thoſe that labour of inflammation, may ſuffer no cold. After the vigour of it you may ſafely miniſter diſcuſſiues, vntill the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you muſt miniſter mollifying medicines: that is, Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, Mallowes, *Althea*, *Tragacanthum*, & ſuch like: of the which you may make gargariſmes. After that vſe diſcuſſiues, as is, Hyſope, Figs, Licorice decoct together. If if it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, and doth not breake alone by collutions of *Mulſa* and *Oximel Scilliticum*, then open it with ſome inſtrument. After the breaking and burſting out of the matter, let him vſe medicines cleanſing abſterſiue, and glutinatiue, eſpecially the iuyce of Eupatorie, and ſuch like.

Alia.

CHAP. II.

Of a looſe Columella.

OFtentimes it chanceth that a looſe *Columella* doth hang vpon the rootes of the tongue and iawes. Of ſome it is called the *Vuula*. Wherefore in the beginning you muſt vſe ſuch kind of cure as the inflammation therof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head muſt be purged by medicines ſpoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you muſt make collutions, and gargariſmes of ſuch things as do reſtraine and drie after this ſort, ℞. red Roſes, Sorrell, Eupatory, ana. M. j. *Gallacum*. ℥ ij. Allume. ℥. j. Mirrhe, Frankenſence, ana. ℥. ß. Flax ſeed, ℥. ß. ſeeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction ſtrained, of good Hony, ℥. ß. and make a gargariſme. Alſo powders do profit, being blowne in with an inſtument for the purpoſe: as

Gargariſmus. this is, ℞. drie Roſes, Galls, roch Allume, ana. ℥. j ß. Pepper, Ginger, ana ℥ ß. Mirrhe, ℥. j. powder it and fearce it, and put it vp as before. Alſo take greene Nuts, and drie them, and Date ſtones burned ſufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, and vſe them as the other. Alſo vnripe Galles, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥ j. do likewiſe. If the *Columella* muſt needs be cut, it is good to empty the bellie firſt, leſt the ſicke be ſtrangled. When the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, leſt the bloud run inward. And afterward waſh

his

his mouth with the decoction of Sumach, *Acatia*, Galles, putting to it Rose-water and Vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsils.

TONSILLAE be inflammations of those thing which lie betweene the mouth and the throate; some do call them *Amygdala* (that is) Almonds. Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hote and moist. *Causa.* They are most vexed with this euill, which haue abundance of bloud: and children and infants which do sucke, through drawing of the mike. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, & through much greedy deuouring of meats, especially if they be eager and sharpe. They that be so afflicted haue difficulty in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. *Signa.* Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feauer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as *Victus ratio.* it is in other inflammations. Let his meat be soupings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you *Curatio.* must beware in the beginning, that you put no Hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in peril of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme on the same side. *Vena sectio.* And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositarie, and by annointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be somewhat ceased. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministred warme. Outwardly it is best to nourish it wit Sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of Barley meale, seeds of flaxe, Fenugreeke, & such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse, it is good to put Hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnesse which is in it do increase fluxe. Also at this time hoter gargarismes do profite. Outwardly you must put about the neck, soft wool dipped in oyle: and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammation be increased, & biting & gnawing come thereby, you must vse gentler, as is iuyce of Prisan: also gargarise with warme Milke. When the inflamation and paine ceaseth, annoint with the aforesaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the parts of the tonsils which are swelled, may be thrust, whereby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to do, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therefore if by that means any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministring gentle gargarismes without any annointing. If that by ministring the remedies aforesaid, the griefe *Signes of suppuration.* be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening. When you looke for suppuration and rotting, you must helpe that it may quickly come to passe: therefore then you must minister

hoter gargarismes, as is, *Aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Figs, Hysope and seed of *Althæa*. Outwardly lay plaisters of Barley meale and Fenugreeke, with decoction of Figs, *Althæa* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminish, and the swelling and inflammation will be made softer, so that it will giue place to the finger: then you must minister sharpe collutions, that they may breake the botch. In meates he must take great gobbets of bread steeped in water, and likewise his meate must be eaten by lumps: for vehement rolling of it vp and downe about the tonsils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with some fine instrument for the purpose. And after it is broken, let the sicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better run out. And let him gargarise *Aqua mulsa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of Lentils & Roses. And with these you must tarrie, vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Vlcers of the tonsils.

Signa. THese beginne malignant Vlcers of the tonsils, sometime with a fluxe of them going before: sometime they are caused of an accustomed inflammation, being augmented. They chance often to children, and also to them of perfect age, especially to those which do abound with vicious humours. They *Cause.* chance to children after the *Aphtæ* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto scurfs which are burnt with iron. Also there chanceth to the sicke drinesse in swallowing, and often choking, especially when rednesse is vnder the chin. If gnawing and sharpnesse of humors hath gone before, there followeth pu- *Curatio.* trefaction. You must proceede in the cure speedily: and if he be of perfect age and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maids, whom at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menstruis, the disease doth often infest, then in them you must cut the *Saphena* veine, letting bloud but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the heart faile, lest after it, vertue be destroyed by ouermuch fluxe of menstruis. Furthermore the belly must be emptied by clisters, suppositaries, and by annointing of the tuell. And you must labour by all meanes to turne the humour from the agrieued place: for the which purpose fasten cupping glasses nigh to the loynes, and vse to bind the extremities, and the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vse gargarismes, declared before in the chapter of *Columella*, and in the chapter following. After the beginning of the sicknesse, minister *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Mulsa*, then also decoction of *Ireos*, and other things rehearsed in the abouesaid places. We must take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonsils with our finger, nor so much as to touch it softly. For the vnskilfull, to whom with great errour men do seeke in doubtfull matters, they do annoy it vehemently, also they do thrust the agrieued place, and pull away the scab or roue, which they ought not to do, before they see the roue lifted, and scarce cleauing to the sore. For if we intend to pull away the scabbe, whiles it stitcketh fast, the vlceration will pierce more deepe, and inflammations will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venimous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blow in drie remedies, and to annoint

noint liquid things with a feather. Dogs dung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better, if the dog be fed onely with bones two dayes before: it helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnsauorinesse being ministred in meates. Also the ashes of Swallowes burnt, and the ashes of Centory *minor* burnt, with hony mixed, is good. After the irritations and chafings made by medicines, you must appease it with decoction of liquorice, and with a Gargarisme, which is made of Masticke, Mirrhe, *Tragacanthum*, *Amylum*, and Saffron, ministring also while the vlcer feedeth, milk mixed with *Terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in clensing and purging the vlcers. Many infants do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled, because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward foments, and emplaisters, with taking heed lest he do coole it. For the cure will prosper, if the matter that is holden within, can be drawne outward. Therefore alwaies after the taking of the plaisters away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft wooll, sprinkled with *Oleum Nardinum*. To conclude, when the scurfs are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedy following: ℞. flowers of red Roses, ℥.iij. Saffron, ℥.j. ß. *Baulaustiæ*, ℥ ß. Mirrhe, ʒ.j. Pine nuts made cleane, ℥ ij. *Amyli*, ℥ j. Sumach, Roch allume, ana. ℥.j ß. beate them, commixe them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day. *Gargarisme.*

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancy.

Angina in Latin, Squinancie in English, but in Greek *Synanche*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of Squinancies; one is, when the iawes be inflamed, (by the iawes I meane the place where the ends of the wesand and the *trachæa arteria* do agree.) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed, yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the parts about the throate be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head and the necke be loosened to the former part of the necke: whereby the place appeareth hollow, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancy is caused through abundance of hote bloud, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehearsed. It is knowne by these signes: the breath is drawne very hardly, and not without the necke be holden right, and there is difficultie in swallowing. Also in some, a feuer, rednesse of the face and necke. There chanceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yaweth with open mouth and draweth breath. Therfore in the beginning euery Squinancy requireth a hasty and speedy remedy. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take away the bloud by little and little, at many times, and not all at once, for the bloud being taken away altogether on heapes, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking cometh vpon him. And moreouer also by the refrigeration and fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth inevitable peril. Take heed also

Gen. 4.
1
2
3
4
Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.
Vena humerorum sectio.

that there be little deduction of the veine, for thereof cometh much failing of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, leſt the bloud be as it were ſtrained, and the groſſer part remaineth within ſtill, which is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. It is profitable to them to haue the bloud drawne out againe the next day, vnleſſe the ſwelling of the diſeaſe let it or faintnes of the heart. If the ſick be a woman, cut the veine on the ankles, ſpecially if the menſtruis be ſtopped; and the bloud muſt be drawne out moderately. If by theſe ſhe be but little eaſed, then it is good to cut thoſe veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the firſt or the ſecond day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloudletting, the belly muſt be emptied with a ſharp cliſter, ſuch as is deſcribed in the chapter of *Apoplexia*. After vniuerſal euacuations, you muſt faſten on cupping glaſſes: and if there be ſwelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chin, it is good to faſten cupping glaſſes to the ſwelling, and with ſcarification to draw out much bloud: alſo to ſtrew ſalt vpon the ſcarifying and to rub it. And if there appeare no ſwelling outward, you muſt faſten a cupping glaſſe behind in the necke, neare to the ſhutting of the firſt ioynt; and you muſt vſe it with conſtant attraction, pulling away the glaſſe often. Alſo the humors muſt be turned away, leſt they flow to the place which is aggrieued and inflamed. For the which purpoſe you muſt bath the feet with hote water. Alſo bind and rub the hands and feet ſtrongly. The necke muſt be couered with wooll that is moiſt, or that is dipped in warme oile: alſo by and by (at the beginning) you muſt vſe gargariſes, which do neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet only diſcuſſe. For thoſe which do altogether repell and driue back, they bring perill of choking, by thruſting humours to the lungs. Thoſe which be only diſcuſſiue, they draw more then is meet, by reaſon of their heate. Therefore when the beginning is with much inflammation, you muſt miniſter thoſe things which do reſtraine gently, as is decoction of Roſes, Lintels, & Dates, or elſe reſtrictiue gargariſmes, declared before in the chap. *de Columellæ inflammatione*, commixing ſome diſcuſſiue medicins with it. Of that ſort are Roſes, or Sumach ſodden with *Aqua mulſa*, and decoction of Sebeſten. When the diſeaſe is at his ſtrength, and ſtandeth, you muſt vſe thoſe things which haue diſcuſſiue vertue onely in them, as is decoction of Fenugreeke, Figs, Raiſins, Licorice; or ſtronger things, as the root of *Irees*, Hyſope, *Nigella*, Sothernwood with *Oximel*. Therefore it ſhall be lawfull at this time to vſe a gargariſme made thus: ℞. of Licorice ſcraped, ℥.j. Raiſons, ℥.ß. dry figs in number ſix, Fenugreek, ℥.ij Hyſope, Sothernwood, ana. M.ß. ſeeth them in one pound of Wel water, til half be conſumed: then put into the licour of that decoction being ſtrained, of *Mel roſarum* ℥ j.ß. *Oximel ſimplex*, ℥.j. commixe them all, and make a gargariſme. Alſo dogs dung ſuch as is found amongſt herbs, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely ſearced, and mixed with Hony, is a moſt excellent medicine, being miniſtred like a *Loboch*, that they may ſwallow it very ſoftly. Likewiſe the aſhes of Swallowes burnt is very effectuall, being ſo mixed with Hony. Moreouer, to the necke without you muſt apply thoſe plaiſters, in them which be vexed with inflammation, which can concoct & diſcuſſe, as is this: ℞ the meale of Linſeed, Fenugreeke and Barley, ana. ℥.j. ſeeds of *Althæa*, ℥ iij. Mallowes, flowers of Cammomill and Melilot, ana. M.j. ſeeth them in water vntill they waxe ſoft, then ſtampe them

Venarum linguæ ſectio.

Clyſter.

Cucurbitulæ.

Auerſio humorum.

Gargariſmus.

Cataplaſmata

them in a mortar, and make a ſoft plaſter, or put to it oiles of Cammomill and Lillies, ana. ℥.j ß. and being boiled againe, make an emplaiſter. Neither ſhall it be vnprofitable if the necke be annointed with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Lillies, or fomented with decoction of Fenugreeke, Melilot and Cammomill. They which are vexed with the Squinācy, let them vſe three daies *Aqua mulſa* for their drinke: afterward iuyce of Ptiſan by it ſelfe or with ſome ſweete potion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, diſcuſſe nouriſh and to coole. When the inflammation is ſomewhat ſlacked, and the ſicke beginneth to ſwallow better, giue to him the yolks of rere eggs, and ſuppings made of *Alica*. To conclude, the eating of the ſicke and his meats muſt be according to his ſtrength, therfore he muſt eſchue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe muſt eſpecially be eſchued, as well in the Squinancy as in all other inflammations. For in ſleepe (as Hippocrates ſaith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the grieued place, doth increaſe more. *Potus.* *Cibus.*

CHAP. VI.

Of the Cough

THere be diuers cauſes of the cough. For as *Galen* ſaith, *lib. 1. cap. 2. de ſimpto. cauſis*, cold diſtemper of the inſtruments of breathing cauſeth the cough. Alſo a humour diſtilling from the head to the *Trachea* arteria, and ſharpneſſe onely of the vpper skinne of *trachea arteria* going about within, doth prouoke the cough. Alſo wormes troubling the ſtomack, and raiſing vp ſome quality, ſending it to the iawes, doth cauſe the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in the lungs and the breaſt, is the cauſe of inflammation in the lungs, diſeaſe in the ſides, conſumption, and the cough. Thoſe which be outward ſignes, and may cauſe the cough, be ſmoke, duſt, and whatſoeuer doth exaſperate the *trathea arteria*. The ſignes of coughing cauſed onely through cold diſtemper of the inſtruments of reſpiration and breathing, are, that thoſe that be ſo afflicted, they ſpit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor conſtraining: but it is ſo ſmal, that not only it may be ſuppreſſed by holding the breath, but alſo vnleſſe it be very great, it may be healed: becauſe through ſtopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold, do waxe hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, becauſe the cold thereby is increaſed, and made more ſtrong: therefore if they breathe and fetch their winde eaſily, and be alſo in a warme houſe, they cough little or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirſty: they are grieued with cold things, and are beſt with hote things: the coughs which chance with tickling of the parts on either ſide of the palate, they do openly ſhew a flowing humour, coming from the head to *trachea arteria*, and to the lungs, which you may wel know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do ſpit out nothing, it declareth it to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulſion of breath, it is caried no further by reaſon of his thinneſſe, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuers, according to the diuerſity of cauſes: for if the cough be cauſed of cold diſtemper, occupying the inſtruments of breathing, you muſt eſchew aire, wind, and alſo cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be cauſed through hu- *Cauſa.* 1 2 3 4 5 6 *Signa.* *Victus ratio.*

mors distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the chapter of Distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the cough, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachæa arteria*.

Cure of the cough caused of cold distemper.

The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therfore let the neck be wrapped about with warme wooll, and let him breath seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuersant in a hot house, and let them breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hote ointments, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies and Dill. If a humour that is thin and sharp flowing out of the head to the *trachæa arteria* and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shall be healed specially by meats of good iuyce, and by medicines which do coole, thicken, temper and stop sharpnesse and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of Violets, of *Nymphæa*, of Poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, *Pilulæ Bechicæ*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good.

Cure of the cough caused of thinne and sharpe humors

Ecligma.

℞. *Diatragacantha*, *Diapenidion sine speciebus*, ana. ℥. vj. iuice of Licorice. ℥. ij. *Pilulæ Bechicæ*, ℥. j. *storax calamita*, ℥. ß. Mirrhe, dry Roses, ana. ℥. j. *Tragacanthæ*, Pine nuts, ℥. ß. sirupe of Violets, as much as shall suffise to commixe them and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of Distillations. But if a grieuous & viscous humor be cause of the cough, we shal cure it by those things which do deuide & extenuate. Therfore then we must minister to the sicke sirupe of Licorice, Hisope, Horehound, Calamint, & such like, or else this decoction:

Cure of the cough caused of grosse and viscous humors.

Decoctio.

℞. roots of *Ireos*, Parsly, Licorice, ana. ℥. j. rootes of *Ella Campana*, ℥ ß. dry figs in number seuen, of Raisins, the stones picked out, ℥. j seeds of Nettle, Anise, and Fennell, ana. ℥. ij. Hysope, Maidenhaire, Scabios, of iust quantity, till the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuyce of that decoction put sirupe of Hisope and Horehound, ana. ℥. ij. ß. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the body with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammy humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of Agaricke is very good which is made after this sort:

Purgatio.

Infusio Agarici.

℞. of elect Agarick, ℥ ij. Ginger, ℈. j. salt Gemme, ℥. iij. beate them and infuse them one night in ℥. ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of Wormewood, & Fennel, ana, ℥. j. in the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium Indi maioris*, ℥. ij. ß. *Uximel scillitium*, ℥ ß. & make a potion. The body being purged, let him haue a loch somtime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort:

Ecligma.

℞. *Loch è pino*, *loch sani & experti loch è scilla*, ana. ℥ iij. *Diaireos Salomonis*, ℥. j. powder of *Diapenidion cũ speciebus*, ℥ j. powder of the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. iuyce of Licorice, ℥ j ß. sirupe of Horehound, as much as shall suffice to commixe them. Moreouer, the breast must be annointed outwardly with hot oiles, of Lillies, *Ireos*, & sweet Almonds, putting to them grease and other things, after this sort:

Vnguentum.

℞ oiles of Lillies and sweet Almonds, ana ℥ iij. of Hens grease, ℥ j. ß. fresh butter, ℥ ij. the muscelage of Fenugreeke, and roote of *Altbæa*, ana. ℥. ß *Storax*, ℥ ß. powder of the roote of *Enula* and *Ireos*, ana. ℥. j. Saffron, ℈ j. white Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The residue that is requisite for the cure of the cough,

are

are to be ſought in the Chapter of Diſtillation.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Aſthma.

THE *Aſthma* is cauſed when as groſſe & clammy humors be gotten in abundantly into the griſtles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be ſome ſwelling in it, like vnto a botch. Alſo they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleate and filled with diſtillations. Theſe euils are eaſie to be knowne aſunder. For diſtillation doth alſo chance in haile folke by and by through as manifeſt a cauſe, in a manner, altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of diſtillation following it. If there be ſwelling of the lungs like a botch, there muſt needs follow a feauer, and ſo within few daies, after, the inflammation being rotted, the matter of it is caſt out with the cough. If there be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, ſuch do not feele any great griefe, neither are they much troubled with difficultie of breathing: but they are much troubled when they eate or drink, becauſe they cannot ſwallow but with great griefe. Thoſe which be properly Aſthmatick, or Orthopnicks, they haue no feauer at all, and there chanceth to them heauineſſe of ſenſe, and they do not ſpit out matter with their ſpittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and drie: therefore he muſt eſchue aire cold and moiſt. He muſt eate the fleſh of Partriches, Birds of the mountaines, Hens, Capons, and ſuch like. He muſt eſchue, fiſhes, fruite, pulſe, and all other things that can engender groſſe and clammy humours. Let him vſe often Hyſope, Parcely, and Fennell. Vniuerſally, let him drinke a ſmall quantity at once which hath a botch riſen: but much drinke muſt be vſed of thoſe whoſe griſtles and flappes of the lungs are ſtopped with groſſe and clammy humours, which are not eaſie to be caſt out with the ſpittle becauſe of their thickneſſe, and therefore they neede much moiſtning, that it may come out the eaſier. He muſt vſe exerciſe before meate, but not ſodainly by and by, becauſe many by this meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breaſt do profite. Perturbations of the minde, eſpecially wrath and lamentation, are to be eſchued. But for the cure of the aforeſaid euils generally, you muſt labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth theſe euils, may be aboliſhed and conſumed. But for the cure of theſe euils particularly, if the euill be engendred of groſſe and clammie humours, you muſt cure it by extenuating and cleanſing medicines. If it come of ſwelling like a botch, you muſt cure it by extenuating and drying medicines. Againſt groſſe and vicious humours, thoſe medicines be good, which do extenuate and ſcoure without vehement heate; for groſſe and vicious humours do waxe more tough and clammy as well with vehement heate as they do with cold, ſo that afterward they can ſcarce be deuided and pluckt away. Therefore *Oximel ſquilliticum*, or *Squilla* roſted and brayed with Hony, is eſpecially to be miniſtred vnto them. Alſo ſirupes of Liquorice, Horehound, and Hiſope. Alſo the decoction rehearſed in the laſt chapter before is good for purging. If neceſſity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine, and draw out ſo much bloud as ſtrength will ſuffer. But if the body be not full, (the humor being preparate to purging by the premiſſes) you muſt miniſter

Cauſa.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Note.

often stronger medicines, which may driue out the grosse and clāmy humors. Therfore pilles of Agaricke, and *Pilula Cochiæ*, also *Diaturbith* with Rewbarbe *Antidotum Indi*, and *Diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of Agaricke described before in the last chapter. Also the belly must *Clyster.* be washed with strong clisters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of Radish and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first booke of Melancholiousnesse. But in the meane season, while purgations be ministred, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and exrenuate humors contained in the breast by little and little: and he must take *Aristolochia rotunda*, the roots of *Enula* & *Ireos*, Nettle seed, Hysope, *Nigella*, Calamint, and such like, wherewith you may make decoctions or Loches. For which purpose also those *Ecligmata*, which are rehearsed in the chapter of the Cough, are good. Also *Trochisci Bechici albi* be most excellent. Outwardly you must lay to the breast, plaisters made of Figs, Barly meale, or rather meale of Fitches, hauing Rosin, Honey, and Waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast, of *Ireos*, Dill, Rew, and such like, as is this: ℞. oiles of Dil and Rew. *Vnguentum.* ana ℥. ß. the grease of Hens & Ducks, ana ℥. ij. the roots of *Ireos*, *Enula*, & *Draconty maioris*, ana. ℥. j. seed of flaxe, ℈ ij. Storax, ℥ iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. But the brest must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and draw out matter and wate- *Rubefacientia* ry humours, as those be which are named *Rubefacientia*. For this purpose the breast must be rubbed with Nettles, brayed or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euill, and where all medicines are ministred in vaine, we must flie to burnings, as *Ætius* teacheth in *lib.* 8. *cap.* 57. how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like *Cure of Abscessus.* a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and dry, (as is said before) you must note that it is cured with Aromatick things, because they do extenuate, drie, and heate. Therefore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes compounded of these things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, *Antidotum è moscha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Pleurisie.

PLEVRISIE, to speake exquisitely and properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is called *Causa.* *Lateralis dolor*. Neither is it rashly added, to speake exquisitely and properly: for through many torments, and through meats grosse and flegmaticke, there do engender humours that be cold, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which oftentimes do place themselues by and by in the void place of the breast, or in the lungs it selfe, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ little from the cure of *Asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The Pleurisie which is an inflāmation of the vpper skin

which

which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hote bloud, flowing naturally to the aforesaid vppet skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle be redde and bloudy, it signifieth bloud to haue dominion: if it be yellow and subpale, choler hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleame ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choler to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two daies the sicke must be content with the iuyce of Ptisan for his meate. Afterward make him Almond milke with the decoction of Ptisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a Chicken or Cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschue all things that be sharpe & restrictiue. Let his drinke be water wherein Cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschue cold water as a pernitious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieued. Let him auoide wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the mind. In the beginning of the cure, the Phisition must diligently consider, whether the body of the sicke be grieued with abundance of humours or not: so that he must know at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the body be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the Pleurisie and inflammation, the paine must be mitigated and discussed with foments and medicines that do heate. But if the body do abound with euill humours, or be full of bloud, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heate, for they moue fluxe of humours to the aggrieued place: for the place to the which things that do heate are laid, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore then you must not vse hote foments which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the body must be emptied by bloud letting, and you must cut the inner veine of the arme, which they call the liuer veine, or the splene veine, on the arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For bloudletting on the same side, doth not onely draw bloud away from the aggrieued part, but also it purgeth it quickly, which is greatly requisite in the Pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After bloudletting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrements of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie clister. ℞. Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercurie, Spinage, of both the garden Endiues, ana. M. j. whole Barley, ℥ j. Seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction, ℔ j. *Casia fistula* newly drawne, ℥ j. ß. of the oyles of Cammomill and Violets, ana. ℥ j. ß. fresh Butter, ℥ ß. common Salt, ℥ j. and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the body is emptied, you must apply outwardly foments that do heat and mitigate paine, such as *Sacculi* be, which are made of the floures of Cammomill, Dill, Melilot, *Tapsus barbatus*, seed of Flaxe, Fenugreek, *Milium*, & Bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbs aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuices. Also you may wel apply a great soft Sponge being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, & applied to the griefe warme. You must couer the foments with clothes, lest their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an Apple, take out the core of it, &

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Clyster.

Sacculi.

fill the bole with *Olibanum*, and roſt it till it be ſoft: then take off the skinne of the Apple, and mixe the ſoft of the Apple and the *Olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, and ſwallow it all at once, which doth remoue the paine very much. This plaiſter alſo is good for this purpoſe: ℞. floures of Cammomil, *Tapſus barbatus*, & Dil, ana. M. ß. Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, ana. ʒ. iij. Anniſe ſeed, ʒ. j. Barley meale, M. ß. bray them, & put thē in water, till they be as thicke as Hony: after put to oyles of Dill and Cammomill, ana. ʒ. j. ß boile thē againe, and adde to it the yolkes of two Egs, of Saffron, ϑ. j. and make an emplaiſter.

Emplaſtrum.

Cucurbitula.

After the ſeuenth day, if the paine do continue ſtill after one ſort, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the ſide, and ſcarifie the skinne: for a manifeſt commodity doth enſue to them that haue the pleuriſie, by applying of cupping glaſſes. The cuts of the ſcarified places muſt be ſtrewed with Salt, if the patient can abide it; if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oyle and ſprinkled with Salt. The next day after the ſcarifying is done, it is good to faſten on a cupping glaſſe againe, that the mattery bloud may be drawne out of the little wounds. This ſecond extraction is better then the firſt: for at the ſecond time the bloud is not drawne away, but the matter. Alſo the Phiſition may not neglect to miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as are good to make the fleame come vp eaſily, as is, *Diapenidion*, *Diatragacanthes*, conſerues of Violets, *Trochiſci pectorales*, putting to them other Loches rehearſed before in the chap. of the Cough. Outwardly you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to diſcuſſe, as is, Fenugreek, Dil, Melilot, Hyſope, and ſuch like. And if there do appeare tokēs that it wil rot, & turne into matter, you muſt further it with this or the like ointment: ℞. oyles of Cammomill, of ſweet Almonds, and of Lillies, ana ʒ. iij. Butter without Salt, Hens greaſe, ana ʒ ij. the muſcilage of Fenugreeke, Lineſeed, and the rootes of *Althæa* ana. ʒ. j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you muſt miniſter thoſe things that do cleanſe and purifie matter and filth, as is, *Aqua mellis* or decoction of Barley, or Sugar roſet. The filth being cleanſed, you may miniſter glutinatiue medicines, which ſhall be ſufficiently declared in the chapter of the Ptiſicke afterward.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

Cauſa.

Peripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a ſharp feuer. This diſeaſe for the moſt part is cauſed of ſtrong diſtillations falling to the lungs, or elſe of the Squinancie, or the *Aſthma*, or the Pleuriſie, or of other diſeaſes. Alſo ſometime onely inflammation is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. They which haue this euill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vpon the heart doth bring choking, they haue a ſharpe and burning feuer, and alſo fulneſſe and ſtretching out of the breaſt without paine. But if the skinnes which be ioyned all the length of the breaſt within be inflammate, then they feele paine at the breaſt. All the face, and the aggrieued place lookered, the noſe is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples do beate, the eyes do ſwell, the tongue is drie, the appetite is loſt, the breath is hote, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a drie cough, it is frothy and cholericke, or bloudy and red, which be the worſt tokens. If the ſicke ſhall die, he ſhall watch much and

Signa.

haue

haue fearfull short sleepes, the hands and feete shall be cold, the nailes shall be crooked and swart, and he shal die the fourth or the seuenth day at the furthest. But if the sicke shall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing forth of many cholerick and frothy humors: and sometime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy, is driuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sicke is deliuered from al the griefe by and by. And if it do flow into the lungs, and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Ptisicke. For their diet you must minister to them soupings made of the iuyce of Ptisan, mixed with Hony, Origan, or Hysope. They haue more need of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the pleurisie. Also *Alica*, or *Aqua mulsa* is good for them. Let them drinke little, for moistnes hurteth the lungs. You may minister for preseruing of strength (specially if choking constraineth you) *mulsa* alone, and with Pine nuts, or *mulsa* wherein Hysope is sodden, the powder of dry *Ireos* to *aqua mulsa* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia*, must in a manner be the same which the Pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recouer. For the cure, you must eschue letting of bloud in such as haue fallen to this euill out of other diseases, especially if they haue bene long in this case, or if they were let bloud before. You must mollifie the bellie with clisters, if he be costiue, or apply cupping glasses to the breast and sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *Peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, then let him bloud, if strength and other things will suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme; and if strength will suffer it, draw bloud on both the armes, and first but a little, in no case vntill his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the bloudletting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloudletting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the whole brest, and the sides, and you must get out as much bloud as strength in them will suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharpe clisters, made of the decoctions of Hysope, *Ireos* and Rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Sal gemme*, & other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those Ecligmaes, ointments, and emplaisters, which are declared before in the chapter against the Pleurisie, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you must minister *loch è scylla*, *loch è pulmone vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of *Ireos* and *Enula*. And you must make a cerote of oile of Rew & *Nardinũ*, putting to it the marrow of a Hart, of *Ireos*, Hysope, and Horehound beaten very fine and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breast, and the sides.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of bloud.

Causa externa.

SPitting of bloud is caused many times of an outward manifest cause, as of falling from a high place, or a stroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehement striking, or leaping, or if any heauie things haue fallen vpon the breast,

nis Sputus Sine Hamoptoe ℞ Succi plantaginis
Sorth: ℥ij aut ℥ss Mellis Virginei Depurati ℈j. Laudi
Vaccini Recentis ℥ss: M. f. Haustus Mane Bibendus per 8 dies. aliquando bis in die Exhibeatur

or else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of bloud may be caused through heate. Also sometime spitting of bloud is caused of inward and secret causes, as fulnesse and abundance of naughtie bloud, gnawing asunder the veines and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing asunder of those veines, is caused of sharpe humors, either falling from the head to the lungs, or else engendred in the lungs it selfe. Moreouer the bloud that is spit out, sometime cometh from the breast and the lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth, or gummes, or the iawes, or from the stomack, vnto the which doth fall bloud out of the veines and members adioyning, that is to say, from the liuer and the spleene. The outward causes are knowne thus: if the spitting of bloud be caused of abundance of bloud, then the bloud commeth out gushing all at once, and after it is out, the sicke is better & lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hote baths, & had dwelt in a hote region, vsing hote diet in hotee season. If spitting of bloud be caused through gnawing and eating asunder the veines, then the bloud is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by little and little with the cough; and they are alwaies worse. Also if the bloud which is spitted, be frothy and palish, and cometh forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the bloud cometh out of the lungs. If flegmaticke bloud be spitted out with easie coughings and reaching, then the bloud cometh from the *Trachea arteria*. If bloud be spitted forth being black & clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the agrieued place, then it is a token that it commeth from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheate called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuyces of Pomgranates or Peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doues, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuice of soure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse Quinces, Peares, restrictiue Apples, Medlars and Mulberies, and such like rehearsed before in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke red wine, or in stead of it, water wherein steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the bloud come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictiue things applied cold to the palate of the mouth by collutions and gargarises, do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seek in the beginning of this second booke, the first chap. But if there do flow much bloud from the head, then you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humour doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clyster, and emptie the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs, very much with a medicine that will heate and extenuate and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry and discusse, as is that which is made of the dung of wilde doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing.

Interna.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

After-

Afterward couer them meanly, and nouriſh them with ſoure ſuppings. When they go to ſleepe, miniſter to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole body (the head being excepted onely) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night miniſter to him *Theriaca*. And if through theſe the diſtillation be not ſtopped, then the third day in the morning miniſter a little honey ſodden, and rub all the body, and ſuffer him to reſt. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, miniſter againe much hony, and lay to the head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the hinder part of the head. *Cucurbitula.* Laſt of all, miniſter thoſe things which are able to purge the humours that are flowne into the lungs. But if it be a very ſharpe humour which diſtilleth out of the head, you muſt beware of bloudletting, & you muſt rather vſe purgations, and you muſt vſe the nouriſhments and remedies hereafter declared, and alſo before in the chapter againſt diſtillations. They which do ſpit bloud coming from the lungs, by reaſon of breaking of ſome veines in it, or by burſting open of their heads, thoſe you muſt firſt of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noiſe, and that they ſpeake but little, and in a manner not at all. Let them ſit in open aire, hauing a ſtedfaſt bed, and of a good height. For ſuch you muſt by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you muſt draw bloud twiſe or thriſe a little at once, for ſuch haue no need of much bloudletting. *Cure of ſpitting of bloud from the lungs* Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, that is to ſay, that the bloud may be drawne another way, you muſt rub the extremities, and vſe to binde them hard with broad linnen clothes. Theſe ſo done you muſt miniſter to him a drinke made of vineger and water infuſed and warmed, and let him drinke *Potio.* it, ſo that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the fleſh, it may (being thereby diſſolued) be caſt out; neither doth any thing let, but that you may miniſter this potion twiſe or thriſe in three houres. After thoſe you may miniſter both within the body and without, medicines which be reſtrictiue, and haue power to ſtop the pores. For things taken outwardly, it profiteth to eate Purſlaine, albeit that his iuyce drunken is of more effect; the iuyce of Knotgraſſe, ſharpe *Emplaſtica.* Grapes, decoction of Sumach, Gals, the ſhels of Acornes, the root of Bramble, *Balauſtia*, ſeed of Sorrell, the rootes of Horſetaile and ſuch like, which are declared in the chapter againſt bleeding at the noſe. But theſe are better and of more effect, then the aforeſaid things, that is to ſay, *terra lemnia* beaten into very fine powder and miniſtred with the iuyce of Pomgranates, or of Knotgraſſe, or *Lapis hæmatitis*, at once, ℈.j. in the like iuyce. Among compounds you muſt *Ecligma.* vſe this *lohoch*: ℞. of old cõſerues of Roſes, of *Robderibes*, ana. ℥ j. of *Diatragacãthum frigidum*, & *Diacotoneon ſimplex* ana. ℥.ß. of the powders of Coraſl, *Lapis hæmatitis* and *terra lemnia*, ana. ℈.ij. Bolearmoniack, ℥.j. Dragons bloud, ℥.ß. Pomgranat floures, ℥ j Frankenſence, the root of *Conſolida maior*, ana. ℥.j ß. ſirupe of Mirtles, as much as is ſufficiẽt to commixe them, & make an *Ecligma*. Afterward you muſt ſprinkle the breaſt outwardly with reſtrictiue wine, and the oyles of Roſes, Quinces & Mirtles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (eſpecially being ſommer) and the ſpitting thereof coming without a cough, and the ſicke not being weake, but ſtrong and fleſhy; then you may take vineger for wine, & apply it to with ſponges. It is good to put to the aforeſaid oiles, Bole armoniacke, *Terra lemnia*, Coral, and ſuch like, and to make an ointment

or else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of bloud may be caused through heate. Also sometime spitting of bloud is caused of inward and secret causes, as fulnesse and abundance of naughtie bloud, gnawing asunder the veines and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing asunder of those veines, is caused of sharpe humors, either falling from the head to the lungs, or else engendred in the lungs it selfe. Moreouer the bloud that is spit out, sometime cometh from the breast and the lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth, or gummes, or the iawes, or from the stomack, vnto the which doth fall bloud out of the veines and members adioyning, that is to say, from the liuer and the spleene. The outward causes are knowne thus: if the spitting of bloud be caused of abundance of bloud, then the bloud commeth out gushing all at once, and after it is out, the sicke is better & lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hote baths, & had dwelt in a hote region, vsing hote diet in hotee season. If spitting of bloud be caused through gnawing and eating asunder the veines, then the bloud is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by little and little with the cough; and they are alwaies worse. Also if the bloud which is spitted, be frothy and palish, and cometh forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the bloud cometh out of the lungs. If flegmaticke bloud be spitted out with easie coughings and reaching, then the bloud cometh from the *Trachea arteria*. If bloud be spitted forth being black & clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the agrieued place, then it is a token that it commeth from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheate called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuyces of Pomgranates or Peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doues, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuice of soure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse Quinces, Peares, restrictiue Apples, Medlars and Mulberies, and such like rehearsed before in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke red wine, or in stead of it, water wherein steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the bloud come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictiue things applied cold to the palate of the mouth by collutions and gargarises, do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seek in the beginning of this second booke, the first chap. But if there do flow much bloud from the head, then you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humour doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clyster, and emptie the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs, very much with a medicine that will heate and extenuate and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry and discusse, as is that which is made of the dung of wilde doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing.

Interna.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

After-

Afterward couer them meanly, and nouriſh them with ſoure ſuppings. When they go to ſleepe, miniſter to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole body (the head being excepted onely) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night miniſter to him *Theriaca*. And if through theſe the diſtillation be not ſtopped, then the third day in the morning miniſter a little honey ſodden, and rub all the body, and ſuffer him to reſt. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, miniſter againe much hony, and lay to the head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the hinder part of the head. *Cucurbitulæ.* Laſt of all, miniſter thoſe things which are able to purge the humours that are flowne into the lungs. But if it be a very ſharpe humour which diſtilleth out of the head, you muſt beware of bloudletting, & you muſt rather vſe purgations, and you muſt vſe the nouriſhments and remedies hereafter declared, and alſo before in the chapter againſt diſtillations. They which do ſpit bloud coming from the lungs, by reaſon of breaking of ſome veines in it, or by burſting open of their heads, thoſe you muſt firſt of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noiſe, and that they ſpeake but little, and in a manner not at all. Let them ſit in open aire, hauing a ſtedfaſt bed, and of a good height. For ſuch you muſt by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and *Cure of ſpitting of bloud from the lungs* you muſt draw bloud twiſe or thriſe a little at once, for ſuch haue no need of much bloudletting. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, that is to ſay, that the bloud may be drawne another way, you muſt rub the extremities, and vſe to binde them hard with broad linnen clothes. Theſe ſo done you muſt miniſter to him a drinke made of vineger and water infuſed and warmed, and let him drinke *Potio.* it, ſo that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the fleſh, it may (being thereby diſſolued) be caſt out; neither doth any thing let, but that you may miniſter this potion twiſe or thriſe in three houres. After thoſe you may miniſter both within the body and without, medicines which be reſtrictiue, and haue power to ſtop the pores. For things taken outwardly, it profiteth to eate Purſlaine, albeit that his iuyce drunken is of more effect; the iuyce of Knotgraſſe, ſharpe *Emplaſtica.* Grapes, decoction of Sumach Gals, the ſhels of Acornes, the root of Bramble, *Balauſtia*, ſeed of Sorrell, the rootes of Horſetaile and ſuch like, which are declared in the chapter againſt bleeding at the noſe. But theſe are better and of more effect, then the aforeſaid things, that is to ſay, *terra lemnia* beaten into very fine powder and miniſtred with the iuyce of Pomgranates, or of Knotgraſſe, or *Lapis hæmatitis*, at once, ℈.j. in the like iuyce. Among compounds you muſt *Ecligma.* vſe this *lchoch*: ℞. of old cõſerues of Roſes, of *Robderibes*, ana. ℥ j. of *Diatragacãthum frigidum*, & *Diacotoneon ſimplex* ana. ℥.ß. of the powders of Corall, *Lapis hæmatitis* and *terra lemnia*, ana. ℈.ij. Bolearmoniack, ℥.j. Dragons bloud, ℥.ß. Pomgranat floures, ℥ j Frankenſence, the root of *Conſolida maior*, ana. ℥.j.ß. ſirupe of Mirtles, as much as is ſufficiẽt to commixe them, & make an *Ecligma*. Afterward you muſt ſprinkle the breaſt outwardly with reſtrictiue wine, and the oyles of Roſes, Quinces & Mirtles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (eſpecially being ſommer) and the ſpitting thereof coming without a cough, and the ſicke not being weake, but ſtrong and fleſhy; then you may take vineger for wine, & apply it to with ſponges. It is good to put to the aforeſaid oiles, Bole armoniacke, *Terra lemnia*, Corall, and ſuch like, and to make an ointment

thereof with Waxe. Alſo apply thereunto a ſoft plaiſter made of Dates, *Acatia*, the roote of *Conſolida maior*, the barks of Pomgranats, and the meale of Lentils. Alſo a cerote made of the meate of Pomgranats, Frankenſence, red Corall, *Balauſtia*. Bole armoniack, *Terra lemnia*, and ſuch like, is of good effect. But you muſt ſpecially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the veſſels it may grow together again, before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growne together, there is but litle hope of the conglutination of the wombe: for it keepeth it ſtretched out many daies, and you muſt waſh away as well the matter, as the watery bloud out of the vlcer, after that the inflammation is gone. *Note.* But here the Reader muſt be admoniſhed, that he take heed that he do not apply outwardly againſt that place where the bloud runneth out, neither reſtrictiue things, nor cold things without reſtriction: vnleſſe the matter be firſt turned another way, and drawne from that place: for elſe it would driue the bloud inward, and ſtop the veines full that be within. Therfore firſt alwaies you muſt draw the bloud to the contrary part, and after that apply reſtrictiue things outwardly. *Curs of ſpitting of bloud cauſed of ſharp humors.* Thoſe which ſpit bloud through eroſion & gnawing of ſharpe humours, you muſt firſt of all miniſter thoſe things vnto them which haue vertue to purge ſharpe humous diſtilling into the lungs, ſuch as be ſpoken of before in the chapter of diſtillation. After that, miniſter thoſe things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and ſharpe humours, and ſo haue vertue to ſtop the diſtillatiõ, as is ſirupe of Violets, Roſes, Mirtles, Hyromel, *Diacydoniorum*, and ſuch like. For the ſame purpoſe ſometime miniſter ſirupes of Poppy and other ſomnoriferous medicines. The diſtillation being ceaſſed, you muſt reſtore the gnawne parts with meates of good iuyce, & with medicines that do ingender fleſh. Moreouer they which vomit bloud muſt vſe the ſame diet and cure which is before rehearſed, that is, if the bloud flow from the liuer, cut the veine on the arme: but if the bloud be caried from the ſplene into the belly, *Cure of vomiting bloud.* cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the litle finger and the ring finger, and miniſter to them reſtrictiue meates & drinkes, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may eaſily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to thoſe parts that ſhed bloud. And for bloud congealed in the ſtomacke like a hillocke, let him drink creame, and eſpecially of a Hart, or let it be auoided with Sauory mixed with vineger or with *Aloes*. Thoſe which ſpit bloud from the palate of their mouth, they muſt gargariſe with reſtrictiue things, and apply to the forehead, and to the head thoſe things which are applied vnto the noſe when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the fluxe of bloud is ſtopped, then the ſtrength muſt be cheriſhed and reſtored againe: and ſpecially he muſt beware of the often vſing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, and of Venus.

CHAP. XI.

Of ſpitting of matter.

EMpyema in Greeke, ſignifieth a mattery ſpitting: In Latin it is called *Suppuratio*. *Cauſe.* It is cauſed when an impoſtume or botch (being in the vpper skinne which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or elſe in ſome other vpper skinne of

the

the breſt) is broken all at onee, & ſhed & powred into the empty place of the breaſt, which is betweene the lungs and the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is cauſed ſomtime throgh burſting out of bloud (an vlcer not being brought to his ſcar, and perfect ſhutting vp.) Alſo ſometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts, falling thither, which is wont often to change into the Squinancy. The ſignes be theſe, heauineſſe is felt in the bottome of the breaſt, *Signa* a ſtrong cough and a drie without paine, and alſo ſometime with moiſtneſſ[illegible] whereby they ſeeme to be eaſed. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers faint, inordinate and hard to be iudged. When the impoſtume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehement with quaking: and they are troubled in their ſpeech. Being broken, there appeareth ſomewhat to flow into the breaſts bottome, according to the often changing of their lying, and ſpecially when they change lying from one ſide to another, then ſurely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certaine noiſe of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Alſo the matter that cometh out is ſometimes cleare, ſometimes thicke and dreggy. Some impoſtumes do burſt out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the breaſt, and theſe be moſt perillous. Some impoſtumes do flow out downeward vnto the panch, and the bowels, and alſo the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feauer hecticke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Thoſe that be vexed *Victus ratio.* with this diſeaſe of ſpitting of matter, let them remaine in a drie aire, let them vſe meates of good iuice, eaſie to digeſt, broths of cockes, the fleſh of hens, chickens, birds of mountaines. Alſo vſe decoctions and broths of cicers, with herbes (as is) Hyſope, and Parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa*, and thin white wine. For the cure in this diſeaſe, except diligent ſpeed be made by and by, the *Curatio.* gathering together of matter cauſeth the Puſicke, the lungs drawing vlceration. Therefore firſt you muſt helpe the concoction of the impoſtume with foments, by ſponges or bladders, with cataplaſmes or emplaſters, made of the meales of Barly, Fenugreeke & Lineſeed, of Figs, Doues dung, Mallowes, *Althea*, and a little Roſin. Alſo you muſt apply to it Cerots, made of butter, *Ireos*, Laurel berries, Rew & other things which can ripe and diſſolue the impoſtume, whereof thou ſhalt finde many in the chapter of *Aſthma* before: and if the euill be not diſſolued, you muſt apply to it, things that will breake the botch. The breaking of the botch is procured by lying on the whole ſide, eating of ſalt meats, & theſe pils giuen vnto him when he intendeth to ſleep. ℞. of the powder of *Hierapicra Galeni*, ℥.j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℈.j. with the iuyce of Wormwood as much as is ſufficient to commixe them, and make pils, wherof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it ſhall come to paſſe, that the ſicke ſhall couet to ſpit often, and ſo by ouermuch ſpitting the impoſtume may breake. The rupture being made you muſt take diligent heed, whither the matter runneth, and you muſt helpe his auoiding: for if it creepe into the belly, you muſt miniſter moſt of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you muſt miniſter moſt thoſe things which prouoke vrine. If the matter come out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be miniſtred then ptiſan, mixed with good hony. Alſo abſterſiue & ſcouring things do profite, which are partly declared in the chapter againſt the Pleuriſie, and part of them ſhall be ſpoken

of in the next chapter. But you may commodiously commixe with their meat those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flow. As for the purging & driuing out of the matter, *Aqua mulsa* decoct with *Ireos* and much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoctiō of Hysope, *Ireos*, Horehound and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the chapter of *Asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease, shall be spoken of in the next chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptisicke.

Cause.

PTHISIS, in Greek, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the lungs till there followeth spitting of bloud withall. It is caused for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour, flowing from the head into the lungs. Also it is caused through the bloud and matter that remaineth after the bursting out of it in them that haue the pleurisie, the *Perepneumonia*, or *Empiema*.

Signa.

They which labor of this disease, are known by wasting of the whole body and the flesh. Also the nosthrils be sharpe, their temples be slidden downe, their eies be hollow, and their shoulders sticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer hecticke, they breath difficultly, their cheeke bals waxe swart, their nailes do crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the bellie is troubled, and thirst doth vexe them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they do spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauour. As for vlcers of the lungs, they are very hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and cleansed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & so the euill returneth, as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreouer the strength of medicins cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the liuer. Neuertheless although the causes before rehearsed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you must prescribe to those that be ptisicke, a conuenient diet, after this sort. Let them dwell in a dry aire, temperate between heat and coldnes; let their meate be Ptisan, Almond milk, rere egs, flesh of the birds of mountaines, of Partrich, of Phesants, of Owsils, of blacke birds, of Hens, of Capons, of Calues, of sucking Kiddes. Also scaly fishes in stony waters, Crabs of the fresh riuer. But among all meates, milke is best for them that be ptisick, specially womans milke, after that Asses milk, & Goats milk, which would be sucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hote. But you must beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and specially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the stomacke. But if they be very much feuerous, specially of a rotten feuer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruites, it is good to eate Raisins, sweet Almonds, Pine nuttes, Figs, Dates, Pistax. Let them eschue exercises and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke easily before meate, and after meate they must altogether rest: let them vse to sleepe

Looke Hippocrates in his Aphorisme 5. the 14. and the 13. & the 11.

The causes why the cure is hard.

Victus ratio.

on

on nights meanly: let them eschue wrath and sadnesse, vnmeasurable watching, hunger, thirst, lecherie, hot houses and whatsoeuer may emptie the body. Let his drinke be but small and thin, or if his feuer be vehement, let him drinke water wherein a little Cinamon hath bene sodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whose making is declared in the first booke, in the chapter against the Palsey. If the euill be caused through the flowing of a sharpe humor out of the head, you must begin the cure by remouing of the distillation, which we haue taught before in his proper chapter. Therefore now we will shew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured. And first for the cure thereof we must minister those things which haue an abstersiue and scouring vertue, and that which will cause that the matter may easily be brought vpward: for the which purpose *Hydromel* is specially good, & also decoction of Barley with Sugar and hony, also decoction of *Ireos*, Figs, Maidenhaire, Hysope, Horehound and Licorice. If there come a feuer, you may cõmixe with the aforesaid things, the foure great cold seedes. Outwardly you must apply emplaisters, and cataplasmes, made of Lineseed, Fenugreeke, and such like declared in the last chapter *de Empiemate*. Also for the same purpose you may seeke many remedies in the chap. against the *Asthma* The lungs being cleansed and purged from matter, you must minister those medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vlcer. For this purpose conserue of Roses is commended almost of all Phisitions, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but also to cleanse and scoure: but the newer it is, the more it scoureth: & the older it is, the more it glutinateth. Also these are maruellous good, Bole armoniack, Dragõs bloud, Amber, Corall, Purslaine seed, and such like which haue vertue to scoure and ioyne together. Also these things are good, *Loch de pulmone vulpis, loch è pino*, cõserues of *Consolida maior*, & Maidenhaire. Therefore of these you must make this compound medicine: ℞. conserues of *Consolida maior*, & of Maidenhaire, ana ʒ. ß. conserues of Roses, ʒ j *Loch è pulmone vulpis*, ʒ. j. ß. *Loch è pino*, ʒ. ij. powder of *Diatragacanthũ frigidũ*. ʒ iij Bole armoniack, ʒ. j. ß. sirupe of Poppy as much as will suffice to commixe it, and make a loch. Also this powder daily ministred causeth much ease: ℞ of the seeds of white Poppy, ʒ. ß. gumme Arabicke, *Amylum*, and gum Tragacant, ana. ʒ j ß. seeds of Cucumbers, Citrons, Gourds, Melons, Quinces, ana. ʒ iij. burnt Iuory, iuice of Licorice, ana. ʒ. j. ß. *Penidies*, as much in weight as all the rest, & make a powder, of the which minister daily euery morning, ʒ. ij with sirupe of Poppy or Roses. At that time also that the vlcer is closed, you must annoint the brest without, with oyle of Quinces, Mirtels or Roses, adding therto sometime Sumach, *Hipocistidis*, Pomgranat rinds, *Acatia*, Galles, and such like. In the end the bodie being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore it with a conuenient diet, vsing all those meats which be of good iuyce, easie to digest, and nourish much, at which time also you may minister this medicine. ℞. of the pulpe of a Capon, ʒ j cockes stones, Pine nuts, Pistax, sweete Almonds, ana. ʒ ß of the powder of the *Antidoti de gemmis*, ʒ. ß. powder of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Dianthon*, & *Aromaticum rosarum*, ana. ℈. j. white Sanders and Cinnamon, ana. ʒ. ß. Maces, ℈ j. white Sugar of the finest, ℔. j. dissolue the Sugar in water of Bugloss, and Roses, and make lozenges, or an electuary, of the which minister euery day.

Curatio.

Ecligma.

Pulvis.

Morsuli refectory.

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the heart.

Palpitatio & tremor cordis in Latine, is in Engliſh panting and trembling of the heart; it is a corrupt motion of the heart, or a ſtretching out of it againſt nature. The new ſort of Phiſitions do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is cauſed of all ſuch things as do trouble and affect the heart aboue nature, as is, euery diſtemper, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the heart, or elſe of ſwelling contrary to nature, and ſuch like. The diſeaſe is eaſily knowne, by the words of the patient, who doth eaſily feele the beating and panting: and alſo you may know it by the pulſe. For in a hote diſtemper there cometh a feuer, & the pulſe is ſwift and great; in a cold diſtemper the contrary. If plenty of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the heart do cauſe beating thereof, then the pulſe is ſoft and feeble. The diet muſt be ordained diuerſly according to the diuerſity of cauſes: for in a hot diſtemper of the heart, the aire ought to be meanely cold, but in a cold diſtemper it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuerſally whatſoeuer the cauſe be, you muſt eſchue any thing that doth trouble or reſolue the vitals ſpirits, as be ouermuch heat, anger, hunger, watching, lecherie, vnmeaſurable cold, meate of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humour contained in the vpper skin that goeth about the heart do ingender panting of the heart, let their whole diet be extenuatiue: let their drinke in a hot diſtemper be thinne and ſmall, or a iulep of Violets or Roſes, or decoction of Bugloſſe. In a cold diſtemper they may drinke pure wine, or other ſtrong drinke. Thoſe that be vexed with beating of the heart cauſed of cold diſtemper, they muſt haue remedy by cold medicins, which can correct the hot diſtemper, and adde ſtrength to the heart: as theſe be among ſimples, Roſes, Violets, floures of water Lillies, Sanders, Corall, Camphire, and ſuch like. Among compounds be theſe, *Diamargariton frigidũ*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, conſerues of Roſes, of Violets, of Bugloſſe, & their plants iuices & ſirupes. Therefore of the aforeſaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaiſters, ſpecially Epithemes, *Sacculi*, and other like, whatſoeuer is able to alter the hote diſtemper of the liuer. And firſt among ointments, this is good: ℞. the oyles of Roſes, Violets, and *Nimphea*, ana. ℥. ij. of red Corall, red Sanders, and red Roſes, ana. ℈. j. Camphire, gr. ij white Waxe as much as is ſufficient, & make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the hart & the backe bone. Among Epithemes let this eſpecially be laid to the hart: ℞. the waters of Roſes, Sorrell, and Bugloſſe, ana. ℥. iij. water of Balme, ℥ j. powder of the cordial medicine, ℥ j. red Sanders, red Corall ana. ℥ ß. Puſlaine, gr. iij. Saffron gr. iiij. commixe all togither and make an Epitheme. Alſo among the ſorts of dry bags this is beſt. ℞. floures of Bugloſſe, Violets, red Roſes, ana. M. ß. all the Sanders, of ech. ℥ j. red Corall and white, of each, ℥ j. ß of Pearls, ℈. j. being firſt powdred, put them in ſilke and make a *Sacculus*. But thoſe that be agrieued with a cold diſtemper of the heart, to ſuch among ſimple medicines, theſe be profitable (that is) Amber, Muſk, Saffron, wood of Aloes, *Storax*, Cloues, Maces, Zedoary, Balmes, and ſuch like: among compounds theſe are good: the electuary *Pliriſarcoticon*,

Diamber,

Diamber, *Dianthos*, *Aromaticum rosarum*, and such like, of the which may be made kinds of medicines, like as we did against hote distemper of the heart. For ointments may be made after this sort: ℞. the oiles of Lillies, of Spike and of Saffron, ana. ℥.ij.ß. *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, ana ℈.j. wood of Aloes, ℈ ß. Maces, ℈ j. Saffron, gr.iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you may make this Epitheme thus: ℞. waters of Balme, Mariorã, Bugloſſe, ana. ℥.iiij. powders of the electuaries, *Diamber* & *Diamoschæ*, ana. ℥.ß. Maces, wood of Aloes, ana. ℈.j. Amber, gr.j. of the best wine, ℥.j. commixe them together, and make an Epitheme. An example of *Sacculus* is thus, ℞. floures of Balme, and Bugloſſe, ana M.j.ß choſen Cinamon, Cloues, Maces, ana. ℥ j. wood of Aloes, ℈.j barke of the Citrine Apple, ℥ j.ß Saffron, ℈ j. Amber, gr.j. Bray all together, and make a *Sacculus* of silke to lay to the heart. And if there be panting of the hart ingendred through some humor contained in the vpper skin that compasseth the heart, it must be cured (as Galen witnesseth) with that which will extenuate, and by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therefore you must cut the inner veine of the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one must minister and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicines that haue vertue to extenuate and strengthen the heart, by applying of ointments, and Epithemes, and *Sacculi*, and such like. Of the which things to make priuate examples, we thinke it in vaine, seeing it is easie to any man, by examples now declared here and in other places, to make medicines for this purpose of whatsoeuer sort he will.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

Sacculus.

Cure of panting of the heart caused of an humor.

CHAP. XIIII.
Of Sounding.

Sincope is a swift failing of the strength (as Galen saith:) it is caused through much excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through vnmeasurable emptying of the belly or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often washings. Also through abundant sweats, and all other immoderate vacuations: also of feare, dread, and such like perturbations of the minde. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humors, through great inflammation or through vicious and thinne humors, or else by taking breath in a stinking aire. The *Sincope* is knowne by these tokens, the pulse is rare and obscure, the extreme parts, as the hands and feete be cold, sweate about the face, the taking away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palsey of the whole body. Moreouer of these there cometh desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the body. And moreouer there chanceth sometime with the sounding of the heart, a vice (that is) when the heart is vehemently distempered. Also sometime it chanceth to the stomacke, (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing, be in it: that kind of *Sincope* is called *Stomachica*. They which fall in a sound through plentie of raw humors contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of greater bignesse then it should naturally be: also their colour changeth whiter, then it was wont to be: and to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the Dropsie. Also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker, like lead, but the pul-

Causa.

Signa.

Sincope cordis.

Sincope stomachica.

ſes of the ſinewes be leaſt of all other, moreouer they be obſcure and vnequall. Thoſe which are vexed with ſounding through abundance of ſharpe humours, they feele continually pulling, twitching and gnawing in the mouth of the ſtomacke. They which through thin vices (which do ſwiftly exhalate & flie vp) do ſuffer ſounding, in them their face appeareth by and by as though it were dead: their noſe is ſharpe, their eyes be hollow, and ſuch like. The other cauſes of *Syncope* are knowne by the talke of them that ſtand by without any great buſineſſe. It is eaſie to know that the cure muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of the cauſes. If ſounding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of bloud, or through any other vnmeaſurable or ſudden emptying, you muſt ſprinkle their face with cold things, or with Roſe water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this caſe. The extreme parts of the body muſt be bound vehemently with bands, and muſt be rubbed a little with ſharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you muſt rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Alſo cupping glaſſes are to be faſtned lightly, diuerſely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the bloud, burſteth out. Moreouer the mouth muſt be opened, by putting in your finger, or a wedge, or ſome other thing: but the paſſage of hearing, and of the noſe-thrils would be thruſt together, that the aire that is breathed in, might ſtirre and comfort the ſpirits. Alſo it is good by and by for to comfort the ſpirits with ſundrie odoraments: for as Hippocrates ſaith in his booke *de Alimento*, there is nothing that calleth the ſtrength againe ſooner then odours. Therefore it is good to apply to the noſe of the ſicke, chickens roſted & parted aſunder in the middeſt. Alſo Roſes, Violets, Quinces, Citrons, and ſuch like be good. You muſt miniſter wine to him that is thinne, and alaied. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chāber be very full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherewith they be couered be ſoft; & ſtrew the floores with leaues of Mirtles, Vines, Okes, Briers, & Roſes themſelues, and ſprinkle it with water. In vnmeaſurable ſweats annoint the ſweating parts with oyle of Mirtles, Roſes and Quinces: but ſpecially the necke, the breaſt, the places vnder the arme holes, and the ſhare. For this purpoſe alſo it is good to annoint with *Amylum*, and powders of Frankenſence, mixed with the white of an egge, & other reſtrictiue medicines. Alſo you muſt hold to his noſe diuerſe odoraments, as Roſes, Sanders, Quinces, floures of water Lillies, & Camphir: but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If ſounding be cauſed through paine, you muſt diligently enquire the cauſe: for if it come of an outward cauſe, the ceaſſing of the paine cureth the ſoūding. But if the paine be cauſed of no outward cauſe, you muſt find out ſome inward cauſe which cauſeth paine. If fulneſſe with retching & ſtretching out do cauſe the paine, by & by, if ſtrength will ſuffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nigheſt to the aggrieued part; but if ſtrength be feeble, then you muſt only pull it backe, or you muſt driue it vpward, or downeward, or both waies, or vſe frictions. But whereas the paine is cauſed of vicious humours, you muſt rather purge it. If both the aforeſaid cauſes come together, then you muſt vſe euacuations both waies: but bloudleting muſt firſt be vſed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be faſtened, & do ſticke faſt in ſome onely place,

Cure of ſounding through vnmeaſurable emptying.

Stoppers of great ſweats.

Cure of ſounding cauſed of paine.

you

you muſt begin your cure with diſſoluing and diſcuſſiue medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be ſought in their owne proper chapters, and eſpecially in the chapter againſt the Cholicke. Thoſe which do ſound through great ſorrow, feare, & other perturbations of the minde, they are fully cured by vſing of their contraries. Neither let paſſe to miniſter vnto them that do ſound for great ſorow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may cõfort the ſpirits. They which be troubled with ſounding through plenty of crude humors, they may neither ſuffer letting of bloud nor purging. Therefore you muſt cure ſuch by frictions. And you muſt by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, and you muſt rub the legs firſt from the vpper part, and ſo downeward with linner clothes, not very ſoft, but ſomewhat ſharpe: afterward likewiſe the armes from the ſhoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries & veines be ſufficiently heat, & that ye doubt that ſome wearineſſe will come to the ſenſes through ouermuch rubbing, you muſt vſe oyle ſolutiue and looſing, as is oyle of Dill, and Cammomill: and you muſt beware eſpecially of reſtrictiue things. And when you haue annointed the parts of the bodie, and rubbed them well, then you muſt come to the backe, & that you muſt likewiſe firſt rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you muſt go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & ſo againe to the backe, and ſo you muſt do all, and that in a bright chamber without moiſture, whoſe aire muſt be temperate. Moreouer *Mulſa*, wherein Hiſope is ſodden is moſt meet for them: and you muſt beware that you miniſter not to them, neither meate nor broths, nor water, nor to ſuffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *Mulſa* the three firſt daies, and to rub him by courſe continually, granting him onely but time to ſleepe, which muſt be in a meane. But if their pulſe be very ſmall and feeble, or alſo beſides that, wonderfully vnequal, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you muſt do as is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulſe be indifferently ſtrong and great, and be not cut off, nor thruſt together, then you muſt conſider the ſtate of the belly, & if it auoid not ordure ſufficiently of it ſelfe, you may boldly poure in ſomewhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *Aqua mulſa*, that the ſuperfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midriſe vnto the backe, by that thing they are well caſt out. And if a heape of ſuperfluities do violently prouoke the bellly aboue reaſon, firſt you muſt ſeeth your *Mulſa* more higher, for ſo it doth make the bellie leſſe ſoluble, and it nouriſheth more. After this, if the ſuperfluities do deſcend more largely, the belly may not be ſtopped ſo, but you muſt miniſter for *Aqua mulſa*, the iuice of Ptiſan. And if they continue ſtil to flow, nouriſh him with ſoupings of *Alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulſes in the meane ſeaſon: for ſometime they are changed to imbecility, or vnequalneſſe, or ſmalneſſe. At which time it is good to miniſter bread infuſed in wine, & that, if neither the bellie nor the liuer be troubled with an impoſtume, for if they be vexed with it (the body being ſtuffed with crude & raw iuices) the ſicke is deſperate of all health. Therefore in ſuch a caſe of the ſick, thou ſheweſt thy ſelf without blame, if thou ſay before that he will die, and vſe no better medicines. But if there be at any time found abundance of clammie humors, by & by miniſter

Cure of ſounding by affection of the mind.

Cure of ſounding through abundance of crude humors.

Phelgmon.

Oximel in steed of *Mulsa*. Therefore if it be sommer, and the sicke vsed to cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold; but if it be winter, minister it hote. Also these things are very euill for them, aswell bathings, as also the open aire, as often as it is ouer hote, or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be presently vexed with sounding, where the belly and the liuer be without impostumation, thou shalt minister a little bread, and that with some wine, because it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the body: and thou shalt come straight to frictiõs and rubbings, & thou shalt do according to the order before prescribed. But if it be sommer, or the region naturally hote and burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hote, thou shalt allay the wine with cold water: but if there be no such thing, with hote. But the drinke that shall be giuen the second and third time, thou shalt minister it altogether hote. For in the whole cure, where we vse frictions, heate is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to those which haue sounding caused of choler, which troubleth the mouth of the stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to minister to all that haue *Sincope*, wine that is hote by nature, yellowish in colour, thinne in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, and not to tarry in the stomacke. They that are vexed with sounding through vice of thinne humours, those you must emptie by little & little, and continually, because they cannot suffer much emptying at once: those also must we nourish by little and little, and often: the outward part of the skinne must be thickned: and you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictiue. Also you must annoint them with restrictiue medicines and ointments, and you must giue them meates that do not readily disperse and flow. Therefore giue neither *Aqua mulsa*, nor *Ptisan*, but bread and soupings of *Alica*, and soure fruits, which will not easily be corrupted. You shall also giue sometime to them Egges, specially their yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of Cockes which be nourished with Milke. Also Swines braine, but let it either be diligently rosted, or well sodden in water with Leeks, or Dill To conclude, you must labour by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thicke, to thicken the skin, and to stop the exhalations. Watery wine is necessary to them after meate in the beginnning of sickneſſe. And if all follow your minde, you may also after other things giue him nourishment by flesh, especially after the fourth day (the iuyces coming now to concoction.) If sounding come through vehement inflammation, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feete must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane from meate and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *Sincope* through vicious humours gnawing the mouth of the stomacke, they must be cured by prouoking of vomite: or if that take no place to moue the belly, do other things which be expounded in the chapter of paine in the stomacke. They that begin: to sound in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, and you must not moisten them with much powring in of water. They that be already in a sound, they must be caried out very quickly, and the rest of the body must be couered

Cure of sounding now present.

Cure of sincope caused of thin humours.

Cure of sounding through inflammation.

Cure of sounding through humors in the stomach.

red with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a ſponge dipped in cold water, or ſprinkle it with Roſe water. Alſo the face, the ſtomacke, and feet muſt be rubbed. Alſo the mouth muſt be opened by putting in of quilles or ones finger. And you muſt go about by all meanes, that the humours that cauſe the ſwouning, may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull off their haires; and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

THe want of milke, doth chance through drie diſtemper of the paps, or of the whole body. Alſo through ſmall quantitie of good bloud, or becauſe the child is ſo weake, that he cannot ſucke well of the paps: for looke, the more that he draweth out by ſucking of them, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens whereby the diuerſitie of cauſes are knowne, are euident enough by things before ſpoken, but yet I will rehearſe them againe. A drie diſtemper is knowne by the diſpoſition of the whole body, and by leanneſſe and drineſſe of the body, and paps, and ſuch like. Small quantity of good bloud, is knowne by the ill ſtate of the body and by the euill colour of it: alſo by vnmeaſurable euacuations out of the body before, that is to ſay, by menſtruis, by fluxes, by extreme exerciſes, by hunger, and ſuch like. For the cure of lacking of milke, which is cauſed of a dry diſtemper, we will teach nothing in this place, becauſe it may eaſily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and ſhall alſo be declared afterward in the chap. againſt the feuer Hectick. Therefore here we will only treat of the cure of lacke of milke, cauſed of the litle quantity of good bloud. In this cure, firſt you muſt behold the bloud, for either there is leſſe then there ought to be, or it is worſe then it ſhould be. Therefore when there is leſſe then there ſhould be, a diet muſt be aſſigned with moiſt and heate meanly: for whatſoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, or elſe doth drie or coole, thoſe partly by corrupting the bloud that remaineth, and partly by diminiſhing of it, do forbid the milke to come. Therefore it is good to giue them pure bread, Milke, Veale, Chickens, Partridges, Birds, rere egs, fiſhes ſcaly and ſtony, Raiſins, ſweet Almonds, Lettuce, Bugloſſe, Balme, Gourds & ſuch like. They muſt drinke wine that is thinne and waterie: they muſt eſchue immoderate exerciſes, anger, ſorrow, and all things that may diminiſh the bloud. But if the bloud be worſe, (as if it be cholericke) firſt purging of the cholerick humours is requiſite, and then vſe the diet before preſcribed: but if it be flegmaticke bloud, it requireth medicines that do heate in the firſt or ſecond degree, but they may not drie vp, for ſuch by heating of the flegmaticke humors do turne them into bloud: but among ſuch (which are not onely medicines, but alſo nouriſhments) the ſtrongeſt be, Rockat, Fennell, Dill, Parſly, and thoſe things greene, before they be dried; for being dried, they do heate and drie more then they ought to do. And thoſe things which do drie, they make the humor which feedeth the bloud, the more groſſe, and more ſmall in quantitie. The bloud ought to be meanly hote, and not groſſe, that the milke may be engendred thereof. Moreouer, thoſe things that do meanly heate, and haue

Cauſe.

Signa.

Cure of lacke of milke in a dry diſtemper.

Litle bloud.

Victus ratio.

Euill bloud.

no great drineſſe ioyned with it, they haue vertue to engender milke: among which beſide thoſe which are ſpoken of before, is *Seſamum* boiled in wine. Alſo freſh butter, the weight of one ounce drunke with wine. Alſo ſweet Almonds, *Piſtax*, Pine nuts beaten, and eaten with butter. Alſo this thing is ſpecially praiſed, ℞. Rice, ten times waſhed and dried again, and beat it to powder, then ſeeth it in good milke vpon burning coales; while it doth ſeeth, put too as much white Sugar as is ſufficient, and make a pottage. It is made the better, if you ad to it ſweet Almonds, *Piſtax*, Pine nuts, Barley meale, Cicers, and ſuch like: but you muſt labor alſo, that by gentle rubbing of the breaſt, and by hot medicines which haue an attractiue vertue, the milk may be drawne & enticed to the paps.

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

Cauſa. *Signa.* *Curatio.*

IT chanceth ſometime that through abundance of milke, the paps are ſo filled and ſwollen, and ſo ſtretched out with it, that they are ſcarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is cauſed through abundance of good bloud. The euill is knowne by ſight and feeling. You muſt helpe this by and by, for elſe it is to be feared, leſt the paps be taken with inflammation. Therfore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vſe thoſe things which do lightly repreſſe and driue backe, leſt that the bloud be thruſt into the lungs by a certaine violence. For this purpoſe it is good to apply a ſoft ſponge dipped in warme *Poſca*, and to bind it with bands to the paps, or apply Dates brayed with bread and *Poſca*. Alſo it is good to apply an Emplaiſter made of oile of Roſes, of Sanders, Corianders, *Pſillium*, Purſlaine, Beane meale, Lintels, iuyce of Plantaine, and of Vineger, after this ſort: ℞. of Beane meale and of Lintels, ana. ℥. j. ſeed of Purſlaine, ℥. j. ſeed of Flaxe and *Althæa*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. of Plantaine, M. j. ſeed of Coriander, ℥. ij. boile them all together in water, vntill it come to the thickneſſe of Hony, after that, put to it oile of Roſes, ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and adde thereto the yolkes of two egges, and make an Emplaiſter: or make a Cerate after this ſort: ℞. of the oile of Roſes and Mirtels, ana. ℥. j. ß. the meales of Beanes and Lintels, ana ℥. j. ß. of Mints and Rew, ana. ℥. ß. with Waxe and Venice Turpentine, as much as is ſufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the paps. Alſo wilde Rapes do profit maruellouſly, being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, the leaues of *Cherua* annointed with the iuyce of greene Parſly, is very profitable. Moreouer, the ſtone *Pyrites* powdred, and applied with oile of Roſes and Vineger, doth ſhew a maruellous effect againſt abundance of milk. And let their whole diet be ſuch, that thereby but little bloud may be engendred. Therfore hunger in this euill aboue all other things is maruellous good.

Poſca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water.

Emplaſtrum.

Cerat.

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

Cauſa.

MAny times the milke curdeth in the paps, and turneth into the forme of cheeſe curds. It is cauſed through abundance of milke (that is) when it is kept long time together on heapes in the paps, and is not ſucked out. It is cauſed alſo of a hote diſtemper, when that through ouermuch heate the thinne

part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth together, and turneth into curds. Also the like may chance of cold, which may cause milke to curde and congeale as wel as other licours. Also somtime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammy enough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curds. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is knowne by and by, both by touching and by the patients words. *Signa.* The diet in this euill is diuerse, according to the diuersitie of causes. *Victus ratio.* For in a hote distemper of the paps, let the diet decline to cold things; but in a cold distemper, contrariwise to hote things. If this euill come through grosnesse of the milke, she must vse altogether an extenuating diet. *Curatio.* For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the paps, in them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be easily sucked out by little and little. Let the paps be outwardly annointed with iuyce of greene Parsley, Mints, Fenugreeke, and other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a Hare beaten with water, if it be annointed, is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of milke. Also Lintels sodden in Brine, is maruellous good, if the paps be washed with the decoction, and annointed with the Lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke and *Althæa* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heate doth cause the milke to curde in the paps, then annoint them with iuyce of Purslaine and garden Nightshade. Also apply oile of Roses with Vineger. Also Mouse-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *Cimolia*, annointed with vineger, or with water and oile of Roses, doth good. Moreouer Lintels sodden in vineger, and applied as is aforesaid, is good against cold distemper of the paps. Vse decoctions of Cammomill, Fenell, Dill, Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, and therewith foment the paps. Also annoint them with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, Lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with vineger annointed, but you may put to it Mints or Parsly, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good: ℞ of Hony, ℥. ß. of *Storax calamitæ*, ʒ. iij. of Oxes gall, ʒ ij. of oile of Cammomill, ℥ ij Mirrhe and Frankensence, ana. ℥ ij. ß. commixe them together, and make an Emplaster to lay on the paps.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the inflammation of the Paps.

IT is caused sometime (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hote bloud flowing to the paps. *Cause.* Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to suppuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne asunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chanceth onely to such. *Curatio.* For the cure in the first cause, you must see bloud drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vnlesse the menstruis be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ankle. *Venæ sectio.* After this you must come to restrictiue medicines, which may not be strong, lest that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the body: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therefore for that pur-

pose it is very good to take oile of Roses, with the iuice or water of Nightshade, Vineger, and the decoction of Cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the paps. Also an emplaister made of Barley meale, Line-seed, Sanders, Bole armoniack, Grease, and oile of Roses are good. And if the Patition doth see that repercussiue medicines do not much good, he must straight proceede to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply Dates brayed with bread and *Posca*. Also apply crums of bread with Mirrhe, Saffron, and Mints, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the Chapter of Impostumes in the breasts, heareafter.

Emplastrum.

THE III. BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Of weakenesse of the stomach.

Causa.

WEAKNES of the stomacke, is sometime caused through distemper of the effectrix and working qualitie, without any flowing of humors. For, as *Galen* saith *in lib. 3. de simp. causis, cap. 10* All vehement distemper doth ouerthrow and cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humor being contained in the bosome and large space of the stomacke, which hath power and vertue either to beate or coole, to moisten or drie, or two of those qualities mixed together: sometime it is caused of an humor stuffed and drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomacke. Vehement thirst, abhorring of meate, and vnsauory belkings, do betoken distemper onely of a hote quality. Contrariwise, little thirst, vnmeasurable appetite, and soure belkings, betoken distemper of a cold quality. And to be short, if the stomacke be grieued with hot or cold distemper, it changeth the meates that be eaten into the nature of the distemper: so that the meates may be perceiued to be changed into the sauor of rosting or sowerfulnesse, without the commixing of any humour. Moreouer, if the distemper be hote, you shall see the patient by and by eased with taking of medicines, or meates or drinkes that be cold. But if the distemper be cold, the patient feeleth ease in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moist distemper, the patient feeleth no thirst, or very little; he hath abundance of spittle, and doth desire moist meats. In a drie distemper there is drinesse of the tongue, extenuation of the body, litle spittle, and vehement thirst. Moreouer, vomiting and desire thereto, heauinesse of the stomacke, and belking, specially after meate, betokeneth abundance of naughty and corrupt humors. And if yellow choler do abound, there followeth bitternesse of the mouth, vomiting vp of choler, thirst, belkings, with sauour rosted, and gnawing of the stomacke: but

Signa.

if

if fleame do abound, it doth cauſe no gnawing in the ſtomacke, vnleſſe it be ſalt fleame: there are preſent ſowre belkings, no thirſt, and ſtretching out of the ſtomacke. If melancholy abound, it cauſeth ſadneſſe and feare, ſtinking belkings, and ſpittings, and ſauour of fiſh, ſleepe with fits of ſtrange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calues of the legs. Euery diſtemper is corrected and amended by his contrary. Therefore you muſt coole a hot diſtemper, and heate a cold diſtemper; alſo moiſten a dry, and dry a moiſt diſtemper: likewiſe muſt you do in compound diſtempers, either heate and dry, or heate and moiſten; or elſe coole and moiſten, or coole and drie. *Curatio.*

Thoſe that be vexed with hot diſtemper of the ſtomack, are cured with a cooling diet, but ſpecially if they take cold things with vineger. Therefore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *Poſca*. For fleſh, let him vſe Chickens, Partrich, veale ſodden with vineger or verivyce. For pot-herbs, Lettuce or Purſlaine are very good. Alſo apples and ſharpe peares. The ſicke muſt drinke ſmall Ale or Beere, if he hath been vſed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of Cinamon, or wine that is thin, and waterie. You muſt apply and lay vpon the ſtomacke outwardly ſuch medicines as do meanely reſtraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold diſtemper of the ſtomacke, muſt be healed with the contraries to the aforeſaid things, as with the decoction of Anniſe ſeede, Rew, and Parſley ſeede. Let the meates which they eate be condite and dreſſed with Cinamon, *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Pepper, and ſuch like odoraments. Alſo giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *Diacalaminthes*, and *Theriaca*. Annoint the ſtomacke outwardly with thoſe ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vſe to drinke wine that is old and ſomewhat aſtringent. A moiſt diſtemper is helped with meates that do dry, without any ſtrong heate or coldneſſe. Moreouer, vſing of leſſe drinke then he is accuſtomed to do. A drie diſtemper muſt be cured as the feuer Hecticke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth book. But if ſome humor hauing power to heate or coole, do cauſe weakeneſſe of the ſtomacke, you muſt marke and conſider diligently whether that humor do ſwim in the boſome and largeneſſe of the ſtomacke, or whether it be ſtuffed in the filmes and cotes of the ſtomack. If the humor be contained, in the boſome of the ſtomacke, and be a cholericke humour, it muſt be purged ſtraight by vomite: warme water or thinne *mulſa* drunke, doth cauſe an eaſie vomit. It wil be better if you do miniſter before it things that do moiſtē, as is the broth of Priſan, or elſe the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be ſtuffed in the filmes of the ſtomack, purge him with *hierapicra*; for as *Galē* ſaith there can no better medicine be found againſt vicious humours, being ſtuffed in the filmes of the ſtomacke. The humor being purged, let them vſe the ſame diet, that they do which are vexed with a hot diſtemper, as is taught before. Miniſter within the body conſerues which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. Alſo miniſter electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the ſtomack things that do coole and meanly reſtraine, as is oile of Roſes, oile of Quinces, putting to Sanders, Balauſtie, Corall and Purſlaine; but yet vſe things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the diſtemper. For ouermuch vſe of cold things doth not onely not profit, but alſo ofentimes cauſeth an incurable diſeaſe, becauſe of the great heate that is requiſite for concoction

Cure of hote diſtemper.

Poſca is a ſauce made with vineger and water.

Cold diſtemper.

Moiſt diſtemper.

A drie diſtemper.

Cure of weakenes of the ſtomacke cauſed of an humour.

Choler.

Victus ratio.

and digestion. If humors being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the breadth of the stomach, he must vse *Oximel*, wherein hath bin sodden medicins which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is Hysope, the root of *Irees*, Origan, Sauory & Horehound. But if the flegmatick humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomach, then first you must minister those things which do cut and diuide clammy humors and grosse fleame, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleame, looke before in the first Booke, chap. 12. Also *Hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humors. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate; & let him vse Electuaries that do heat, as *Diatrion piperiō*, *Diagalanges*, *Diacinamomū*, *Diamber*, Ginger condite, *Diacorus*, & such like. Apply outwardly to the stomach such things as do heate, as is oile of *Nardinum*, oile of Mints, oile of wormwood, & oile of Mastick, & other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also Cerotes are commended, which the Physitions cōmonly call *Scutum Stomachale*, such as is this. ℞ chosen Cinamon, Cloues, long Pepper, ana. ℥.j. *Gallie Moschate*, Maces, ana. ℥.ß. *Calamus aromaticus*, Frankinsence, ana ℥ j. ß. wood of Aloes, ℈.j. sowne Mints, ℥.ij. Masticke, *Laudanum*, ana. ℥.ij. oiles of Masticke and Nard, ana. ℥.ß. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as will suffice: make a Cerote to lay vpon the stomach, & couer it with purple silke: or vse this medicine: ℞ Mastick beaten to powder, ℥.j.ß. then strew it vpon leather being cut like a buckler, & poure vpon it *Oleum Nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and strew vpon it chosen Cinamon, Nutmegs, & Cloues ana. ℥.j beaten into powder, and apply it to the stomach. To be short, these and other things which do strengthen & heat the stomach, are to be applied, as is, mints, wormwood, frankinsence, Mastick, Cinamon, Galingale, Ginger, Maces, wood of Aloes, *Calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our seuenth booke of making medicines, of which, one may make diuers kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

Fleame.

Diet.

Scutum stomachi.

Alinde.

Medicines which strengthen and heat the stomacke.

CHAP II.

Of yelking and vomiting.

Cause Nausee

Dispositiō to vomit (called *Nausea*) which is a naughty & wicked motion of the expulsiue vertue of the stomach, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold: which humor either swimmeth in the concauitie and hollownesse of the stomach, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleauing like birdlime, and can scarce be drawne away: or the humor being more watry, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach, like water in a sponge. And such humors are oftentimes ingendred through distemper of the stomach, as wel hot as cold: somtimes such humors do flow from the whole body, as from other parts (being first euill affected) into the stomach, as it were the excrements; so from the liuer or the spleene, or the head, or from the whole body. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue it by the signes declared in the last chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *Nausea*, that is, disposition to vomit, then for the most part vomiting followeth, and the stomach corrupting the meates, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, & changeth it into his nature; but if a tough humor be drowned in the

Signa.

cotes

cotes of the ſtomach, it cauſeth diſpoſition to vomit, but yet ſuch a diſpoſition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and ſtraine himſelfe as though he could vomit: but if that humor be watery and wheyiſh, then it cauſeth vomiting, not onely before meate, but alſo after meate, and eſpecially if that humor ſwimme in the breadth of the ſtomach: for if it be ſtuffed, and cleaue to the top of the ſtomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate: but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the ſtomach) be euill affected, the ſicke himſelfe doth firſt feele the griefe of the member that is diſeaſed: for either he feeleth heate, or cold, or heauineſſe nigh about the place that is diſeaſed, or elſe he cannot ſuffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales and puſhes in the skin, and alſo by the vrine you may diſcerne it. For the cure, you muſt diligently conſider which griefe it is, whether it be a diſeaſe cauſed onely of the ſtomach, or of the whole body, or of ſome other member. For if humours do flow into the ſtomach from ſome other member, or from the whole body, you muſt firſt take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diſeaſed, but yet you may not neglect the ſtomach altogether: for vnleſſe the whole body be firſt purged of vicious humours, he laboureth in vaine that goeth about to reſiſt the flowing of humours into ſome one place. So alſo he that doth cure the member that is firſt diſeaſed, he cutteth off (as it were) the fountaine of all flowings into the ſtomach. If you will know how thoſe members are to be cured, that do ſend excrements into the ſtomach, you muſt learne that in their proper chapters before or after. But if humours be engendred in the ſtomach cauſing diſpoſition to vomite, you muſt marke whether thoſe humours be thinne, cholericke and wheyiſh, and be contained in the hollowneſſe of the ſtomach: for then you muſt giue him very thinne iuyce of Ptiſan or hote water, and the ſicke muſt prouoke vomite with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throat. But if the humours be ſtuffed within vpon the top of the ſtomach, you muſt miniſter one dramme of Aloes to drinke being diſſolued in water. For againſt hote humours that be in the ſtomach, Aloes is the beſt medicine, ſo that often it hath healed euill ſtomachs in one day. After the humours be purged, and other medicines miniſtred, which do ſtop or make temperate the ſharpneſſe of choler, then you muſt cure the hote diſtemper of the ſtomach, as is taught in the laſt Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, groſſe and tough humours, which do ſwimme in the breadth of the ſtomach, you muſt cure them after that ſort that is taught of vs in the former chapter, and then you muſt get away the cold diſtemper of the ſtomach, as is before taught. Now for vomiting, you muſt note, that in the beginning it ought not to be ſtopped, if the ſicke be the better for it, according to *Hippocrates* ſaying: In vomiting which cometh by it ſelfe, if ſuch things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be ſuffered: but if not, then contrariwiſe it is euill. Therefore you may not ſtop that vomite which is decretorie, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the ſtomach, or when humours be engendred in the ſtomach through diſtemper. But then you muſt rather helpe the motion of the expulſiue vertue in a

Curatio Nauſea.

Of vomiting.

1. *Aph.* 2.

hote cause, by ministring hote water with oile of Violets to drink: but in a cold cause, minister Oximel & other things before rehearsed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, & do begin to weaken the strength of the sick, then you must goe about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke lie vpward in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease: that is, let the house be cold if the disease be hote: and contrariwise let it be hote if the disease be cold, let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, & let thē be felt with warme hands, and also bind them strongly with bands: also put the feete and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good sauour to the nose for to smel, as Roses, Quinces, Peniroiall, Mints, Fennell, Spikenard. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with oyles of Wormwood and Roses. Emplasters made of Dates, Quinces, and Wormwood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as Mints, Darnell meale, Frankensence, Masticke, be good being laid vpon the stomacke. Also you must stampe well Dates that haue been steeped in old wine, afterward you must put to it Mastick & Frankēsence, each of them finely poudred by it selfe afore, & then bray them together To this place also you must call the remedies that are spoken of heereafter, partly in the chapter of *Cholera*, and partly in the chapter of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the stomack, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomack with great flame, vntill the place waxe red, and you must giue the patient meate while the glasse hangeth on still.

Cure of immoderate vomiting.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

THirst, as *Galen* witnesseth *in libr. 1. de simpl. med. facultate, cap.* 30 is caused two maner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heate. The stomack is heat many & sundry waies, that is, either through hote distemper of the bare quality simple or compound, or through hote and cholericke humours engendred in the stomach, or else flowing to it. Also through abundant drinking of old wine. The stomacke is dried either through the dry distemper that is in it, or through salt humours, or drinking of salt water. Also oftentimes it is dried through consent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuers Hectick. The diuersity of causes may easily be knowne by the patients words, and by those signes which wee haue spoken of in the second Chapter next before. The cause being knowne, you must remedy each of them according to their causes diuersly. Therefore you must remedy thirst coming of heate, by ministring things that do coole. Also both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or watery wine being drunken, are good. Also Cucumber seed chewed, or if it be hulled and beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly against thirst engendred through heate of the stomacke. Likewise Lettuce seed chewed & drunk profiteth. Also Purslaine seed likewise. The best thing to quench thirst is this, ℞. of the seedes of sowne Cucumbers husked, ℥.j *Diatragacanthæ* ℥.ß. Gumme tragacanth beaten to powder, and searced, ℥. ij. beate the seedes, and put those powders to the whites of egs being raw, and beating them all together, make pills, & dry them in the shadow. Of these pils, minister one at once to be holden vnder the tong, that it may dissolue by litle and litle, and so be swallowed. They that haue bad

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Pilles to hold vnder the tong

burning

burning and heate in the ſtomacke long time, the iuyce of the ſweet roote being drunke, doth helpe them, and alſo the roote it ſelfe with water and the iuice of Purſlaine. But thoſe which are vexed with thirſt caused of heat & drineſſe, as it chanceth in all burning and very drie feuers, and to thoſe which labor in ſommer, or in great heate, ſuch are beſt healed with *Oxicratum*, that is, a drinke made with vineger and water ſodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (beſides the coolneſſe that it hath) is moiſteſt of any thing: for nothing (as *Galen* ſaith in the place before rehearſed) is moiſter then water. Alſo the thirſt which is engendred in feuers, may be mitigated in ſprinkling the head with the coldeſt oiles, as oile of Roſes being ſprinkled aloft on the forepart of the head. Alſo the beſt remedy for drineſſe is ſleepe, where heate and moiſture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of Dropſie, in which plenty of ſalt humors be heaped in the ſtomacke and belly, or in thoſe which haue their ſtomacke ſtuffed with ſalt fleame, then vineger is the beſt remedy: It is alſo good for them to ſoupe the iuice of Quinces or Peares, or veriuyce with water. If humors cholericke or ſalt ſwimming in the ſtomack, or drowned and ſtuffed in it, do prouoke thirſt, then you muſt miniſter medicines which can purge out thoſe humors. Afterward you muſt vſe medicines which do reſtraine and comfort the ſtomacke and ſtrengthen it. Examples whereof you muſt ſeeke before. They which thirſt through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water, and other things rehearſed in *lib. 1. cap. 14.*

Oxicratum ſeu Poſca.

CHAP. IIII.

Of paine in the ſtomacke.

PAine of the ſtomacke is cauſed when naughty, venimous, and gnawing humors be kept in the ſtomack, whereby it chanceth that through intollerable gnawing, they cauſe ſwowning, which they call *Stomachica*. This diſeaſe is knowne by continuall pricking and gnawing of the mouth of the ſtomacke, In this euill you muſt giue him meates that do coole, and which may bring ſtrength to the ſtomacke, as is Lettuce and Purſlaine taken with vineger. Alſo Pomegranates, and Orenges, Peares, ſharpe Grapes, and ſuch like. Alſo bread being ſteeped in very cold water is good. Alſo let his other meates be ſuch as will eaſily digeſt, and yet not eaſie to corrupt, as be, Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, & ſuch like ſodden with veriuice. Alſo fiſhes bred among ſtones, ſodden with vineger, Limons, and the ſharpe iuyce of Cytrons. Likewiſe let the ſicke drinke water wherein hath been ſodden a little Cinamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you muſt prouoke vomit by the remedies aforeſaid. Then after that alſo he muſt purge downward, by taking *Hierapicra*. Which things being done, you muſt vſe remedies to ſtrengthen the ſtomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the ſecond chapter, and in other places alſo.

Doloris ſtomachi cauſa.

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. V.

Of Inflammation of the ſtomacke.

INflammation of the ſtomacke is cauſed no otherwiſe then the inflammation of other parts of the bodie: that is to ſay, through the flowing together of

Cauſe.

Signa. abundance of hote bloud. Signes hereof is exceeding great paine continually, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applied to it. Moreouer, there is ſwelling and burning, which you may feele. Alſo a feuer, heauineſſe, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) *Victus ratio.* muſt be thinne, ſmall and exquiſite. Therefore he muſt vſe iuyce of Priſan, and he muſt abſtaine from fleſh and wine, and from other hote meats. Let the ſicke drinke water, wherein hath been ſodden a little Cinamon, or iuyce of foure Pomegranates, or of ſome other fruit that is cold and reſtringent. Let him ſleep little, and let him not talke much. Let him eſchue ſadneſſe as much as hee can, *Curatio.* and let him remaine in an aire meanly cold. You muſt begin the cure with letting of bloud, if there be fulneſſe of the whole body, and ſtrength of the ſicke. You muſt cut the inward veine of the arme, and you muſt draw bloud according to the ſtrength of the patient. After this you muſt apply outwardly thoſe things that do repreſſe and reſtraine, ſpecially vpon the place where the paine and ſwelling do moſt appeare. For the ſtomack (ſpecially the mouth of it) hath euer need of the commixing of thoſe things that do reſtraine, but moſt of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore thoſe which do attempt the cure with looſening remedies onely, without the commixing of thoſe things that do ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, they cauſe perill of death; therefore alwayes whether it be an oile that the inflamed mẽber be nouriſhed withall, or a ſoft plaiſter laid vpon that member, you muſt commixe ſome reſtringent thing with them. Therefore for this purpoſe it is good to apply to it oile, wherein wormwood or quinces hath been ſodden, commixed together with maſtick. Alſo the iuyce of Quinces or Pears, putting to it red Roſes, Barley meale, Sanders, Bole armoniak, & ſuch like. Alſo you may vſe this Cerot: ℞. Barly meale, ℥ ß. white *Cerotum.* Sanders & red Roſes, ana. ℥ ij. Bole armoniak, ℥ j. ß. Aloes, Maſtick, ana. ℥ j. Wormwood, Nutmegs, *Balauſtiæ*, ana. ℥ ß. oiles of Maſticke and Roſes, ana, ℥ j. ß. with waxe and Turpentine as much as is ſufficient, make a Cerote to lay vpon the ſtomack. But if there be need of great reſtriction (as it chanceth then when the ſtomacke is ſo weake that it cannot hold, and retaine meate) you may commix with the ſaid things veriuice or iuice of wormwood, or *Hypociſchides*, and *Sumach*, and ſuch like. All theſe things (if the inflammation be vehement) muſt be applied to the griefe cold. And if the belly do ſend forth nothing, you muſt prouoke it with eaſie cliſters. Nor he worketh not vnwiſely, that doth miniſter ℥ ß. of *Caſſia fiſtula* diſſolued in Endiue water, after that the burning heate is ſomewhat abated. Alſo at that time you may commixe with the reſtrictiue medicines, which you apply outwardly, many things that do diſcuſſe and diſſolue, as is Fenugreek meale, flowers of Cammomil, and *Althæa*, and Lineſeede: you muſt neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time when there floweth no more to the griefe, and that cannot be driuen backe which is contained in the diſeaſed member) you muſt not I ſay at that time, neither vſe onely looſening medicines, or only diſſoluing medicines: but alwaies you muſt commixe with them reſtrictiue things, which haue power to preſerue & keep the ſtrength of the ſtomacke: therefore at that time you muſt vſe this em- *Emplaſtrum.* plaiſter: ℞ the meale of Lineſeed and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥ ß. ſeed of Dill, ℥ ß. flowers of Camomill and Melilot, ana. ℥ ß. wormwood, Balauſtie, red Roſes,

ana.

ana. ℥.ij. *Hypocistidis*, ℈ ij. oiles of Cammomill, Lillies, Roſes, Maſticke, ana. ℥.ß. Hens greaſe, and Gooſe greaſe, ana. ℥.ij. commix them all together, and make an emplaiſter: but before it be applyed, it is not in vaine to annoynt the ſtomacke with this ointment: ℞. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and Quinces, ana. ℥.iij. powder of the roote of *Althæa*, wormewood, Lineſeed, ana. ℈.j. wax ſufficient, and make an ointment. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

ABhorring of meate, or loſing of appetite, doth chance either through loſing of the ſence of ſucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as *Galen* witneſſeth, *lib. 1. de Sympt. cauſis cap. 7.* or becauſe there is no ſucking out, or becauſe the body is not emptied. Alſo ſometime it chanceth through ſome hote diſtemper, ſpecially of the ſtomacke, which diſtemper doth diſſolue the hard and ſound members by looſing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moiſt members, it ſtretcheth out vnmeaſurably by ſhedding. Sometime it is cauſed through abundance of vicious humours contained in the ſtomacke, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowells: alſo through ouermuch bloud letting. Alſo the ſicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, alſo in inflammations of the ſtomack, the liuer and the matrice, and for many other cauſes which need not to be rehearſed heere. *Cauſæ.*

The ſignes which betoken a hote diſtemper, are rehearſed before in the firſt Chapter. Thoſe which abhorre meate, through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the ſtomack, and with appetite to vomite, & with thirſt. Thoſe that haue humours that be rotten, they haue ſometime a feauer. But thoſe which haue loathing of meate through groſſe and clammy humors, they neither feele gnawing of the ſtomacke nor thirſt. But commonly to all, there cometh diſpoſition to vomit. If loathing of meate doth come about the beginning of the diſeaſe, or about the rigour and ſtrength of it, which the patients ſtrength may yet ſuffer, it cauſeth no perill, for the ſicke neede but little nouriſhment. But if loſſe of appetite do come in the declination of the whole diſeaſe, or in long weakeneſſe, or in lacke of ſtrength, or of vnmeaſurable purging, it is not without perill and danger. This euill is increaſed of age. For children are vnluckily troubled with this diſeaſe, that is to ſay, ſuch as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nouriſhment. Therefore if children haue this diſeaſe, great exceſſe aboue nature is ſignified by it. *Signa.*

For cure of this diſeaſe, if the loſſe of appetite be cauſed through weakeneſſe of the ſtomach, you muſt marke what diſtemper doth weaken the ſtrength, and you muſt cure it by contraries to that diſtemper, as is before taught. If the preſence of vicious humors do cauſe loathing of meate, if thoſe humors be thinne and gnawing, you muſt firſt beginne before any other thing be miniſtred, to purge the humours contained in the ſtomacke by vomite. And if the patient doth vomite vneaſily, miniſter vnto him ſcupings, and other nouriſhments which do moiſten, that they may driue thoſe humours downe into the belly, and driue them out beneath, or purge the wombe with *Hiera picra*. Then we *Curatio.*

must bring the body to a good temper, with such things as be meete for that purpose. Those that do abhorre meate through grosse and clammie humours, you shall cure them by extenuating and cutting the humours, as well with Oxymel, as also with those medicine that are made of this and other sawces, as with Capers, Oliues, Mustard seed, and such like declared in the first Chapter. If loathing of meate happen through imflammation, or stopping any other part of the body, then you must go about the curing of that member or part. And you must go about to prouoke appetite againe, only by odoraments, either by odour and swelling of wine infused, or decoction of Quinces or Peares. Also you shall go about the same thing with soft annointings with oiles, as oiles of Roses, Masticke, and such like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the body. Also insessions to be applied to the loines and share. Also let meates be prepared of diuerse and sundry kinds, and after the daintiest fashion, that besides their sweetnesse they may entice and prouoke their appetite: first of the best kind of corne, and such as doth nourish much, as is *Alica* washed with the decoction of Dates and Damascene prunes, rere egges, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no strong sauour: swines feete much consumed in seething. For if he onely taste such meates, they nourish the body sufficiently. Whatsoeuer you minister, ought to be of such sort, that it may easily be deuoured and swallowed. For those things that require much chewing, do cause vnpleasantnesse, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the stomacke besides the ointments, emplaisters made of Dates, Quinces, Wormewood, and such like. Also Cerates made of the same things; examples whereof you must seeke before.

Alica is made of wheate steeped in water, beaten and dried in the Sunne, and then broken grossely.

CHAP. VII.

Of a doglike appetite.

A Doglike appetite is contrary to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meate, and when they cannot refraine their appetite, they deuoure in meate without measure: then they being heauy with the multitude of meate, and their stomack not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting. Then afterward they fill themselues with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogs. It is caused through cold distemper of the stomacke, or through vicious and sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomacke. For cold vicious humors do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meate. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole body, which doth follow either the violence of heate, or the weakenesse of the vertue retentiue. Cold distemper of the stomacke is knowne by euill digestion, windinesse, rumbling, and many egestions or seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by soure belkings, and much egestion, and very thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skin: then the egestions sent out by the belly, be lesse in quantity then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions the drier: But if that dissipation come through

Cause.

Signa.

through weakneſſe of the retentiue vertue, which cannot maſter the meates: then there is much deiection and caſting out of thoſe things that are eaten. For the cure, cold diſtemper muſt be healed as is taught in the firſt chapter of this booke. If doglike and vnmeaſurable appetite be cauſed of ſharpe humors ſtuffed in the mouth of the ſtomacke, and as it were water ſoked into a ſponge, you muſt miniſter in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni*. For this doth not onely heate, but alſo it doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the ſtomacke, humors that be ſtuffed in it, and it cauſeth them to auoid downward: and yet it addeth ſtrength to the ſtomacke, that afterward it will not eaſily receiue any hurtfull humour. Therefore that is the beſt remedie for vicious humours ſtuffed in the ſtomacke, to bring them forth. It is miniſtred the weight of ℥. iiij. with wine infuſed with warm water. If a child doth labour of this diſeaſe, which cannot drinke the medicine for bitterneſſe, make ℥.j or ij. of it in pilles, and annoint it outwardly with honey, and let them ſwallow them downe. Seeing that for the moſt part, this euill chanceth of ſharpe and ſoure fleame, you muſt vſe ſuch meates and medicines, as haue power to cut, deuide ſcoure, and heate, as be, Garlicke, Leekes, Time, Sauory, Origan, Peniroyall, and ſuch like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you muſt let them vſe this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor wel leauened, with the which alſo you muſt mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, Anniſe ſeed, Caraway ſeed, Commin, Parſley, and ſuch like. Let his meates be fat and oylie. Alſo ſoupings are good, that do deſtroy appetite, as be pottage made with much hony, and much oyle, or Gooſegreaſe, Hens greaſe, or Swines greaſe. Let his pot-herbes be Mallowes. Alſo giue him the braines and fatteſt partes of birdes, and of fiſhes likewiſe, and thoſe things that do altogether deſtroy appetite, and cauſe fulneſſe, and that do nouriſh but little, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plentie of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and ſuch wine that doth heate greatly, as thoſe do that be yellow in colour, thin in ſubſtance, ſweete in ſmelling, and without reſtriction. For this doth heate the ſtomach, and deſtroy ſharpneſſe of humours, ſo that often ſuch wine with oylie and fat meates, ſuffiſeth for the perfect cure. As Hippocrates ſaith, Drinking of wine eaſeth hunger. And you muſt giue wine, as well to them that be faſting, as to them alſo which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet athirſt. But you muſt giue it to them that be faſting, hote, or warme at the leaſt. He muſt abſtaine from all ſoure and reſtrictiue meates and drinkes, but ſpecially from fruite. Let their banketting meates be *Piſtacium*, Almonds, Pine nuttes, and Oliues with honey. Miniſter alſo vnto them milke, as well alone, as alſo with wine called *Paſſum*, or with honey: ſo that neuertheleſſe you muſt take heed that you giue it not to thoſe, that are wont to haue it waxe ſowre in their ſtomach, for to thoſe it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digeſted, it doth not only ſtop the appetite, but it ſoftneth the belly being ſtopped, and ſtops his fluxes. Alſo you muſt make potions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, Marchpanes and Rice ſodden with milke. Alſo he muſt waſh now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you muſt vſe as long as the ſicke is diſeaſed, and till he be cleane whole. If the doglike appetite come

Curatio. Cure if it be of ſharp humors.

Victus ratio.

2. Aph. 21.

Cure if it come of immoderate dissipation.

through vnmeasurable scattering abroad, opening and dissipation, therin such a disease it is good to thicken the skinne, and make it grosser with oyle made with vnripe Oliues, or oiles of Roses, or of Mirtles, or any other wherein any restrictiue thing hath bene sodden with a soft fire. Let the sicke remaine in an aire that is cold and perspirable. Let him eschue hote aire and hote bathes. Also let him eschue wine and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that do heate. Let his drinke be cold water or decoction of Cinamon. Put the sicke in a cold bath if nothing do let it, as slenderneſse and leanneſse of the body, or the coldneſse of some member of the body, as the breast or some other. You must giue vnto them meates that be stable, durable, and hard to corrupt, as be Periwincles, and all kinde of shel fish, if they be sodden with water twice changed. Also Swines flesh being in full strength, and specially the belly. Also fat Beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do swimme in the stomach, and be hard to be digested and distributed. For there be some that haue this disease, which by reason of a sharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, do digest and consume Beefe and other things hard of digestion, with lesse lesse labour then fishes of stony places, & such like things which be easie of digestion. Of egges those are good for them which be sodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without hony. Also Rice sodden with butter, and vnleauened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, and so much you must abate of the grosse meates that you are wont to giue, and you must minish the restrictiue things also that you lay without. For sometime the vehemency of the appetite being abated, when the body is filled with crude and grosse humours, it turneth into some other worse disease. Amõg restrictiue medicins besides those things which are aforesaid, you must vse this ointment: ℞. oiles of Mirtles, and Quinces, ana. ℥ ß. oile of Roses, ℥ j. iuyce of Plantaine, ℥ ij. red Sanders, Mastick, Bistorta, red Roses, ana. ℥ j. Bole armoniacke, ℈ ij. *Hipocistchidos*, *Acatia*, *sanguis Draconis*, ana. ℈ j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment.

Vnguentum adstringens.

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

Βδλιμος.
Causa.

Βλιμος in Greeke, is nothing else but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is caused through coldnes of the stomacke, and for want and weakeneſse of strength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iourneyes, specially when there is snow, causeth this disease. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure. For afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldnes of the extreme parts, & want of spirit and breath. You must apply remedies for this disease by and by, because there be that in desert places, or in bathes, being suddenly taken with this disease, do perish for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you must recomfort them with Vineger, or Peniroiall, giuen them to smell vnto, or earth whatsoeuer it be, sprinkled with Vineger, or Apples, or Peares, or such other like fruite which is next hand. Also new bread holden to the nose, doth helpe, and cheese of good sauour. Also Porke rosted or sodden, and vniuersally all that doth nourish much: but espe-

Signa.

Curatio.

cially

cially that which hath sauor of rosted meate, and is well seasoned, and hath a sufficient sauour. For by such odours & sauours, they that haue this disease, are for the most part refreshed, seeing there is nothing (as we said before in the second booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refresh and renew the strength sooner then odours. Moreouer you must bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you must put the tippes of their hands and feete in verie hote water, and you must raise them and stirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as also by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is somewhat come againe to himselfe, you shall minister vnto him bread infused in wine, or some such thing, which doth restore strength very quickly, as be, reare egges, Alica with wine. The next remedy they must looke for by meate, which if they cannot take when it is offered them, you must put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to swallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raised quickly. For this purpose are good also the Antidotes which are compounded of diuers sweet odours, as is, *Aromaticum Rosarum, Diamber, Dianthon, Diamoschi, Alipta moschata*, and such other like. And if this disease chance to come in feauers (which is seldome seene) or if it doth rush in suddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may minister meate without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and strength of the feauer, the sicke must be refreshed by the odoraments aforesaid, and specially by those things which haue corne in them, as is *Polenta*, wet with water, or hote bread that sendeth forth a burning sauour. Also you must vse frictions and rubbings of the extreme parts, and apply plaisters made of Dates, or Quinces sodden in wine: and this must you do vntill the declining of the fit, that you may safely giue him meate. And if the sicke be neuer the better through these things, you must venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. Therefore minister iuice of Ptisan, or one morsell or other wet in wine that is white and thin: for they being refreshed, and as it were suddenly called backe, do afterward come to the declining of the fit. We must eschue altogether in them that haue this disease, long delay from meate and hunger: for you shall giue him euery houre very little meate, for it taketh away great famine and the fainting, whereby the sicke is eased. And that it is lawfull to nourish and giue meate to the sicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *lib.* 10 *method. cap.* 3.

Polenta is barly steeped in water one night, then fryed, and then ground.

CHAP IX.

Of euill digestion.

RAwnesse of the stomacke or ill digestion is, when as the meate is not altogether changed. The causes of it are, distemper in the stomacke, inflammations, hardnesse, impostumes, and such other like. Sometime the meates remaine raw and vndigested, although the stomacke be not diseased: either through immoderate deuouring of meates and drinkes at one time, or through the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themselues, or through eating of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them: or through some vicious superfluitie growing: or through short sleeping, as *Galen* saith, *Libro tertio de symptomatum causis, capite primo.* The diuersity of causes be

Causa.

Signa. knowne partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him: and partly by certaine tokens. By the tale of the ſicke, and of them that be about him, you may know whether meates and drinkes haue bene taken immoderately, or out of due ſeaſon, or inordinately. Alſo you may know of them the ſhortnes of ſleeping: you may know if the meates themſelues were of euill qualities by his belkings and ſauours like things roaſted and burned. For in them that be hote and cholericke, the belking or corruptions ſauor like meate roſted or burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the corruptions are ſowre or ſharpe. Likewile you muſt iudge of excrements that be flegmaticke and cold, they cauſe ſowre corruptions: but thoſe that be hote and mixed with bitter choler, do cauſe ſauour like burned meate. Likewiſe iudge of the ſtomacke being any otherwiſe euill at eaſe: for if the diſeaſe be cold, it cauſeth ſharpe and ſowre permutations: but if it be hote, it cauſeth a burning ſauor. When perfect crudity and rawneſſe is engendred without corruption, in ſuch ſort, that the meates do remaine altogether euen as they were eaten: by this you may know that the ſtomacke is ouercome, either *Victus ratio.* through great quantity of meates, or through vehement cold taken in a hote thirſt. Therefore if you would not haue this crudity, and euill digeſtion, you muſt beware of all the aforeſaid things, that is, that you neither offend in the quantity, nor quality, nor order, nor due ſeaſon of the taking of your meate: and that you eate thoſe things onely, which you are able to digeſt, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you muſt eſpecially take diligent heed to the meaſure and quantity of your meate, and you muſt refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your ſtrength is able to ſuffer. Alſo you muſt beware of euill order, that is, that you do not firſt eate Quinces or Pomgranates, or ſome ſuch like things, and afterward to eate pot-herbs out of oile or ſauce made with ſalted fiſh, or other things which do ſoften the belly. Alſo you muſt eſchue eating out of due ſeaſon, that is, that you do not eate before ſome moderate exerciſe, or before yeſterdaies meate be well deſcended, and alſo not before your accuſtomed houre. Alſo you muſt eſchue all things be hard by nature to digeſt, as is fleſh that is hard by nature, as is Beefe and Harts fleſh: alſo eſchue all old fleſh. Alſo you muſt beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in ſalt, and ſtale kept. Amongſt pot-hearbes, thoſe that be very hote or very cold, or alſo thoſe that ingender wind, be hurtfull. Eſchue fiſhes which are hard, and dried by long keeping. Alſo abſtaine from meates that be corrupt, or that do ſtinke, or ſmell ill fauouredly. Refraine from ſweete fruite, or that which doth engender windineſſe, or that which is corrupt. Alſo eſchue iunkates which be hard of digeſtion. Alſo you muſt eſchue meates that be ſtrange and vnaccuſtomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vſe to commixe in their tarts and fine cakes; but you muſt eate your meate in due time, not greedily, nor in gobbets: nor ſwallow it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and diſturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and cauſeth each peece to ſwim from other. After meate eaten, you muſt eſchue vnequall and troublous motions. Alſo eſchue heate and cold, for thoſe things do ſtop the digeſtion of meate. But calefaction and chafing of the ſides, and

rubbing

rubbing of the feete, do helpe digestion. And if there be heauinesse about the stomach, so that through it a certaine painefulnesse be spread throughout the whole body, then lay your hand being stretched forth, vpon the mouth of the stomach, or apply to it a fleshie infant; for as *Galen* saith, it is much better, and more natural, thē the heat which is procured by fomēts. For which cause some do lay little whelpes while they rest vpon their stomach, which doth increase the abundance of heate that digesteth the meate. Also you must procure sleep in the night equall and without disturbance. For this, you must prepare to lie straight, and let your head be bolstered vp high, and in your lying you must incline towards the left side. And if you cannot sleepe, you must lie without turning or stirring of your bodie, and keepe it still in one forme of lying; for often stirrings and tossings do disturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie, and the bowells likewise. The cure must be diuerse, according to the diuersitie of the causes: for hote distemper of the stomach requireth one kind of curing, and cold distemper requireth another. Also inflammation of the stomach requireth another kind of cure, and hardnesse or impostumations another kinde; and all those cures you shall seeke out in the proper Chapters: for here it sufficeth to say thus much. When there cometh an vnpleasant belking, declaring manifestly that there is corruption of meates, without prolonging, you must prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you must constraine all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the stomach, they cause tormenting, and wrestling, and heauinesse of the head: and sometimes they send forth choler vpward and downeward, or they cause fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore such as cannot digest but hardly, we must accustome them long time before, that they may vomite easily, for that is best in many perills. And if any be hard to vomite by nature, & be ill disposed to drinke cold things, in any case it is not inconuenient to giue him a cup of pure cold water to drinke: for the stomach being strengthened, it soone thrusteth out those things that sticke in it, and sendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the sicke be kept in quiet and rest, and vse rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his sides, vntill the rumbling and windinesse breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come forth with a gentler quality. And then it is good to rise vp, that first the belly may send out the corrupt things by siege, and afterward let the sicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, because of the troubled vapours which be ascended into the head through corruption. After this he must apply his mind to daily businesse without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the belly must be prouoked to auoid those things that remaine yet. Afterward you must bidde him rest, and you must powre vpon and nourish the feete with warme water: and the face being washed with pure cold water, let him rest in his bedde, and procure him to sleepe by all meanes. After which let him vse a little walking, and then a bath. After bathing let him take meate moderately, and that which the body is able to digest. But yet you may not ouerpasse medicines that do helpe digestion, as is, Pepper, especially long Pepper, which doth onely helpe digestion. But if you haue it not at that present, you may vse white Pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke Pepper, Also for the same, *Diacatoneon*

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Long Pepper helpeth digestion.

is good, and *Diospoliticum*. Also there be other things to be applied as well inwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomach, which are rehearsed in the former chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do pierce quickely, as is, Caraway seeds, Fennell seeds, *Apium*, Lonage seed, Pasley seed, *Ammeos*, Pepper, Ginger, and such like) must be giuen two houres before meate: but after meate you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therfore let them be vsed most before meate after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse in the stomach.

Cause. THe stomach is windie, through the windines that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomach, or else through meates dissolued into vapors through want and debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth cause no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor dissolue meate. Vehement heate for the most part (ouercoming those things that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the meates, if it be but of little force and strength (that is, doth somewhat dissolue them, but not altogether consume them) thereof must needs engender windines, as *Galen* teacheth, *li. 3. de sympt. caus. cap. 7.* They that are thus diseased, haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomach: also sometime swelling, and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomach, and of the stomach it selfe: also emptie belkings do come, sometimes lightning a little, and a stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downward. Also this euill sometimes is all ouer the breast, and sometime behinde, about the backebone and backe, and rusheth among the ioynts, and often it occupieth both places. Besides these things there is vehement paine in drawing of breath, because of the pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downeward, and by windinesse breking out either by belking, or by the belly. Also rumbling & noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomach be caused of flegmaticke meates, you must minister an extenuating diet, and such medicines as do diuide and purge fleame, which we taught in the first chapter of this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weakenesse of heate, he must vse meates easie of digestion and of good iuice. Also he must eate but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meate, you must minister wine that is pure and vnmixed; but yet he must eschue much drinke as a deadly enemie. Also let him eschue fruit, and eating of moist oiles. Also let him vse hote baths in great vessels, for those do mitigate, soften, and dissolue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleep: and when sleep cometh it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously. And as for medicins let them

Signa.

Curatio.

them vse this decoction: ℞. Calamint, Mints, wilde Mints, Cammomill, Origan, Penitoiall, ana. M.j. Wormwood M.ß. seeds of Annise, Apium, Comin, Daucus, Parsley, Fennell, ana. ℥.iij. seeds of Nettles, Carawayes, ana. ℥.ij. of the roote of Enula Campana, ℥.ij. seethe these in a iust quantity of water, till the third part be consumed: then straine them, and put to sufficient sugar to make the iuyce of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor, of sirupe of Calamint, ℥.iij. and make a potion, whereof let the sicke drinke euery day in the morning, ℥.iiij. Or let him vse this powder. ℞. the powders of *Dianysum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthes*, ana. ℈.ij. seeds of Annise, Daucus, and Fennell, ana. ℈.j. Quibibes, Cloues, ana. ℈.ij. Ginger, ℈. Pepper, ℥.j. Sugar, ℔.ß. commix them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but a little before, must first vomite. Also you must minister suppositaries made of things that entice windinesse after this sort. ℞. Hony sodden, ℥.ij. seedes of Rew, Comin, and Fennell, ana. ℈.i. seeds of Carawayes and Annise, ana. ℥.ß. Salt, ℈.ij. commixe them together and make suppositaries. If the wombe be very costiue, you must cast in a clister made thus. ℞. of the decoction aboue taught, ℔.i. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥.vij. oiles of Wormwood, Rew and Dill, ana. ℥.i. Goose grease and Hennes grease without Salt, ana. ℥.ii.ß. common Salt, ℥ i. commixe all together, and make a clister. In this disease you must annoint the stomach outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a little bunch of Wooll, and wet it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the stomach. And vpon the bunch of Wooll being wound vp together, strew Comin beaten, or seed of Apium or Dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it plaisters made of Lineseed, Barley meale, Darnell meale, Comin, Dill seed, or Apium, or Fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or apply this Cerate. ℞. oiles of Rew, Dill, Nard, and Laurell, ana. ℥.j. meale of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.i. ß seedes of Apium, Carawaies, and *Nigella Romana*, ana. ℥.i. Laurell berries, and Centorie, ana. ℥.j. ß. Gumme ammoniacke, and *Opoponax*, ana. ℥.ij. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Also a great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell euery where, being applyed with great flame, is a remedy in this disease. Also *Castoreum* drunke with *Posca*, and applied outwardly with oile of Dill, is good.

Decoctum.

Tritura.

Glandes.

Clyster.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

YElking is a motion of the stomach, and it is as it were a crampe of the stomach, raised of the expulsiue vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euil and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted, causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the mouth of the stomach, and corruption of the food causeth yelking, which causeth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in feuers, specially when the stomach or some other bowell is enflamed. The outward causes are easily knowne by the telling of the sicke, and them that be about him. Fulnesse is knowne by heauinesse, & emptinesse of those things that

Singultus.

Causa.

6. Aphor. 13.

Signa.

went before. You must know if the meate be corrupt, by the burnt sauor of it: but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking, and pulling. Therefore when yelking is engendred of coldnesse, you must lay vpon the stomach, wooll dipped in the oile wherin hath been sodden, Rew, Comin, & wormwood. Also oile of Masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children warme linnen clothes being applied to, do help often. They that be of ful age, minister to them wine to drinke, or Apium sodden in *Aqua Mulsa*, or Comin beaten, or Asarum, or Peniroiall, each of these by himselfe or else mixed with other. Also squilliticke vineger is good to soupe. Also giue them, ℥ j. of *Castoreum* with Posca, as well against yelking caused of cold, as also it it be caused through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomach with old oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreouer, holding of the breath which doth increase heate, is a present remedy for them that do yelke through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best remedie. If there be grosse humours, they must be extenuate and cut with *Oximel scilliticum*, and Calamint, and Horehound their decoction, and such like before rehearsed. Afterward you must apply those things which may draw the abundance of humours a contrary way, and turne them cleane aside. For which purpose those things are good which do purge downeward, and specially cliſters, bindings, and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glasses with much flame, fastned to the breast, to the stomach, and to the backe. Also these things are good for them, long and quicke walking, bearings about, & chiefly riding. Also it is good for them to sneese, as *Hippocrates* saith. For when the yelking is caused of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Also handsome calling loud, with much clamor, & with holding of the breath, is good for them. Moreouer, the stomach must be strengthned by medicines ministred as well inwardly as outwardly: Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, Emplasters, and Cerates before taught. Yelking that is caused of emptinesse, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient food, and by those things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly spoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Hecticke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke & the backe with moistening oile, as is oiles of Violets, and of sweet Almonds. But if yelking be caused of gnawing things, first we finde that vomiting is a sufficient remedie for it: then also stupefaction of feeling, and such things as do alter the gnawing. The senses be astonied and stupefact by cooling things, for which purpose you must minister *Philonium*, or pilles of Hounds tong, which do profite marueilously in this disease; you must vse them thus. You must make of one dram, sixe pilles, whereof let the sicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which do stop, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be these, iuyce of Endiue drunke, Cucumber seed husked and beaten, being drunke, Lettuce seede likewise taken. Also iuyce of Purslaine drunke, and Purslaine it selfe taken in meate. Also Sebesten decoction taken in drinke, but specially aboue all, Asses milke is good. Or if you haue not that, Cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the same purpose minister conserues of Roses, or of Violets, or of water Lillies,

Cure of yelking of cold.

Cure of yelking of fulnes.

Auersion.

6. Aphor. 13.

Cure of hicket caused of emptinesse.

Cure of yelking through mordacitie.

Pilule de cynoglossa.

Diar-

Diarrhodon, Diatrion ſantalon, Iulep of Violets, of *Nimphea*, that is, water Lillies, and ſuch like. Theſe Trochiskes do ſtop, extenuate, and drie vp: R. *Paſtillus. Coſtus*, Saffron, Spikenard, greene Roſes, Maſticke, ana ʒ.ß. *Aſarum, Aloes*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Opium*, ʒ j. with iuice of *Pſillium*, make Tochiskes, of the which giue, ʒ.ß or ʒ j. Note that *Opium*, and the Roſes, and the iuyce of *Pſillium* be of a cold operation: the Spikenard doth diſcuſſe, diſſolue, and corroborate: the *Aſarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the *Aloes* do purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the ſiege: the Saffron digeſteth and ſtrengthneth the parts, for by his temperament of heate he cauſeth digeſtion, and by his reſtrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth ſtrength: the *Coſtus* doth ſufficiently heate, and moderately reſtraine, which you may perceiue by his taſte. *Galen* commendeth this medicine very much. *Li. 8. de Comp. Med ſecundum locos. cap. 3.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Choler.

Cholera in Latin, is an immoderate perturbation of the ſtomach, cauſed by vomite both vpward and downeward. The barbarous ſort call this diſeaſe *Cholerica paſſio*: they that haue this diſeaſe be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It is cauſed through much crudity and rawneſſe of the ſtomach, and ill digeſtion, which many times engendreth of great wickednes of the meates, and ſometime through abundance of vicious humours alſo. The ſignes whereby this euill is knowne, be very manifeſt: for they auoyd both vpward and downeward: alſo there followeth thirſt and ſwet, and ſhort pulſe, and drawing vp and ſtretching out of the muſcles of the hands and feete, and ſpecially of the calfe of the legges. Therefore ſeeing this euill is moſt ſharpe and doth cauſe verie grieuous ſwownings, if it endure long, you muſt do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phiſitian if he ſee this diſeaſe to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to ſtop that which is ſent forth: for ſeeing they be vnprofitable and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therfore if the patient haue diſpoſition to vomite, and be troubled with vndigeſted meates remaining in the ſtomach you muſt giue him warme water, and then he muſt vomite by his finger or a feather put into his mouth. But you may not prouoke vomite by miniſtring of *Aqua mulſa*, nor with water mixed with oile: becauſe theſe things do increaſe the fluxes, and cauſe mordacitie and writhings: alſo you muſt helpe the matter that purgeth downeward: for a ſtrange poyſon (as it were) being within, doth gnaw the ſtomach and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole body: you muſt miniſter vnto him the eaſieſt purging medicines, as is, *Aloes, Caſſia fiſtularis*, decoction of *Mirobalanes*, and ſuch like. After that the ſuperfluous things be brought forth, then he muſt reſt, and it is good to nouriſh the ſides with oiles of Maſticke, or Nard, or Wormewood, and to cauſe ſleepe. You muſt commixe ſometime with the aforeſaid other things which can ſtrengthen the ſtomach, which be afore taught, and with them you muſt make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction and digeſtion, vſe baths of ſweet water, and meates of good iuyce, among which is

Cholerici. Cauſæ. Signa. Curatio.

broth of chickens with Veriuice, the fleſh of ſmall birds of the mountains, rere egges and ſuch like. In drinke let him vſe iuice of Pomegranates, or ſirupe of Roſes, or water wherein burning ſteele hath beene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath cauſed ſlenderneſſe and leanneſſe throughout the body, and ſpecially if the belly or ſtomach do reſt after the remouing from his place, and that the pulſe be leſſe, and thicker, then you muſt bind the extreme and vttermoſt parts with bands, & you muſt make them faſt by much oile. Alſo apply to the ſtomach Cataplaſmes and Emplaſters made of reſtrictiue and ſtrengthening things, as thoſe be which are made of Dates, *Hipociſchidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, Bolearmoniacke, Frankinſence, *Balauſtiæ*, Roſes, and fruit of Mirtels. Alſo it is an effectuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of Crabbes be laid vpon the ſtomach, or this Cerate, Ry. of the oiles of Roſes, Mirtles, & Quinces, an. ℥.j. Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Acatia, ana. ℥.ij. *Hipociſchidos*, ℥ j ß. Sanders white and red, an ℥.j. *Balauſtiæ*, Dragons bloud, ana ℥.ß. Bolearmoniacke, ℥ j. Waxe and Roſin as much as is ſufficient, make a Cerate to lay vpon the ſtomach couered with ſilke. In drinking giue him the meaſure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to ſoupe off, that is, ℥ j.ß but you muſt beware that it be not ouercold, for that being giuen ſuddenly is vomited vp againe; and ſometime with his ſtupor and coldneſſe, it hurteth very extremely the naturall heate, or it cauſeth inflammation of the ſtomach; or of ſome of the bowels. And you may ſometime drop into the water a little of the iuice of ſharpe Pomegranats, or of Roſes, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if thoſe things that be voided forth be very ſharpe, and that thirſt and burning do trouble the patient, then miniſter Cucumber ſeed, with three *Cyathes* of water. Alſo you may make it commodiouſly with *Amylum*. Then alſo miniſter Endiue or Lettuce, or both ſodden in *Poſca*. Afterward procure ſleepe and reſt by all meanes: but if the fluxe wil not be ſtopped, and the pulſe decay betweene this and that, and that cold and ſwet do take him, and alſo ſometime yelking, you muſt come to wine that is meanely reſtrictiue, which is not very ſtrong, but yet ſweet and not odoriferous; and put into it, warme if it may be, or elſe cold, crummes of bread, or *Alica*, and ſo by little and little at ſundry times let them ſoupe it vp. But yet they muſt eſchue much quantitie of wine, and by all meanes you muſt go about to bring them to ſleep, by ſtrewing the pauement of the houſe with Roſes, Vine leaues, Brier, and ſuch like afore taught. Alſo apply odoraments to the noſe, as Roſes, Quinces, and ſuch like: alſo annoint ſoporiferous and ſleepy ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the ſtoole ſtill, caſt in by a cliſter *Amylum* with decoction of Poppy heads, for it doth both reſtraine and coole, and cauſe ſleepe. To ſtop vomits, it is good to eate and deuoure the iuice of Medlars, Quinces, Pomegranates and Peares: If with theſe remedies and others that be taught before in the ſecond chapter of this Booke, the ſick cannot keep and brooke his meate, you muſt apply without vpon the ſtomach a very great cupping glaſſe lightly. Againſt the contraction and drawing vp of the muſcles you muſt wind about the muſcles, linnen clothes ſoked in warme oile and apply moiſt Cerates and ointments wherein is put ſome *Caſtoreum*, and oile of *Ireos*. You ſhall find examples enough of thoſe in the chapter of the Palſey before

Scetum ſtomachi.

A cyathe is ℥ j ß.

Conſtriction of vomites.

Againſt contraction in the muſcles.

fore in the first Booke. When the disease decreaseth, you must refresh and restore the patient againe with good meates, as Chickens, Doues, Hennes, Partrich, wood Culuer, and Owsils, or Blacke birds, and such like.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Diarrhœa.

Diarrhœa in Latin, is a copious and great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weakenesse of the instruments that belong and do serue to digestion, also through abundance of nourishment & meat that is moist and viscous, and through corruption of the same meate. Moreouer, gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from aboue to the belly, & also weakenesse of the retentiue vertue. *Cause.* The signes whereby the causes are knowne are very manifest. *Signe.* For if this fluxe *Diarrhœa* be caused through the weakenesse of the instruments that serue for digestion, as is the stomach, the bowels, the liuer, and the spleene: you must seeke the signes of these out of their owne chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meats & drinks, you may know it partly by the patients tale, & partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing & heate: also the patient feeleth bitternesse of the mouth, thirst, thinne state of the bodie, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrary to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions will appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moist. If the fluxe be engendred through fulnesse of the whole body, or if it be indicatorie, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen li. de plenitudine & crisibus.* And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weakenesse of the instruments, the distemper which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the first chapter of this Booke. *Curatio.* If this fluxe of the wombe be caused through other causes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the bodie superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that they can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer and watch, til nature hath bestowed all her care and charge: or else also it is good to helpe natures motion; but for to go about to striue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humors which are stopped, being caried vpward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or lethargie, or impostumation behind the eares not without danger. Therefore in the beginning you may not stop the flure which floweth profitably for the health of the body, but after that the flure hath endured long, not onely carrying foorth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the body, & consuming the strength, then you must labour to stop it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applied outwardly vpon the belly. Therefore if there come foorth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straightways. *Note.* For the cholericke matter that is gathered toge-

ther, and heaped in the ſtomach, and in the bowell called *Ieiunum*, if it be withholden and kept there ſtill, it hurteth greatly: for it both ouerturneth the ſtomach, and cauſeth inflammations of the bowells; it kindleth thirſt, and reſtoreth feauers, and cauſeth the euills aforeſaid, and generally cauſeth a worſe diſeaſe. Therefore if there be abundance of clolericke humours in the bodie, nature muſt be expelled with eaſie purging medicines, as is, infuſion of Rewbarbe, *Caſſia fiſtularis*, the barkes of Mirobalanes citrine, or Manna. After that giue Cowes milke, or Goats milke warme, being new milked, or ſeeth it at the fire and ſtirre it continually till it be conſumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hote iron, or ſteele gads in the milke often, but while it doth ſeeth you muſt take the ſcum or foame off it: for ſurely you can finde no quicker remedy againſt fluxes of choler. And becauſe the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feauer, is wont to turne into a burning ſauour, or alſo ſharpe or ſoure, and ſo cauſeth more hurt then good: therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with this fluxe, you ſhall eſchue miniſtring of milke to him dreſſed after that ſort. But you muſt powre the fourth part of water to the milk, and ſeeth it vntill it be halfe conſumed, and then miniſter it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you muſt caſt in cliſters made of the decoction of Barley, with Sugar Roſet, oile of Roſes, Yolkes of Egges, and ſuch like. At the length, when the clolericke humors be voided out, you muſt miniſter inwardly ſuch medicins as do reſtraine and ſtrengthen, as be, conſerues of Roſes, *Diacotoneon* without ſpices, *Diatrion ſantalon*, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, *Hydromalon*, and ſuch like. And what kind of medicins they muſt be that ought to be applied outwardly, we will ſhew you a litle hereafter. Alſo the fundament muſt be fomented and nouriſhed with a decoction made of ſome reſtrictiue things. If the flux *Diarrhea* be engendred through flegmaticke humours that be groſſe and tough, or through corruption of them, then you muſt beginne your cure, as you did before, with eaſie purging. Therfore then you muſt miniſter the infuſion of Agaricke with *Mirobalanes emblici*, or ſome ſuch like medicine, which is able to bring foorth the aforeſaid humours. Alſo cliſters are good, ſpecially if there be abundance of clammie humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of Centorie, and oile of Rew, and ſuch like. Miniſter within the belly *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, greene Ginger, and other medicines which haue power to beate and drie. Alſo apply outwardly thoſe things which do adde ſtrength. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be cauſed through the weakeneſſe of the vertue retentiue, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe medicines, which are applied againſt other vnmeaſurable fluxes of the wombe. Therefore apply irrigations and ſprinklings of oile *Omphacine*, or oile of Roſes, or oile of the bloſſoms of Apples, with ſome ſoure or ſharpe wine: but oile of Mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement reſtriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be ſtrong, you may ſeeth in that irrigation, Galles, Pomegranate rinds, and *Balauſtia*. If the fluxe endure ſtill, apply Cataplaſmes, Emplaiſters, and Cerates, made of reſtrictiue & drying things, wherof we wil make mention in the next chapter. Alſo this Cerate is effectuous to be made. Take ſeuen Mulberies, or Blacke berries which be ſoure & whitiſh for lacke of ripeneſſe, bray them well

Cure of Diarrhea of choler.

Cure of Diarrhea of flegmaticke humours.

Cure of Diarrhea of the weakneſſe of the vertue retentiue.

and

and adde to it oile of Roſes, ℥.ij. Waxe, ℥.j. and make a Cerate. After the voiding of ſuperfluous and hurtfull humours, theſe things heale the fluxe of the wombe, being miniſtred in drinke, that is, Comin, decoction of Maidenhaire, the roote of white Thorne, likewiſe one ℥. weight of the ſeed of *Apium* miniſtred: for it prouoketh vrine, & turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Alſo vnripe Mulberies being yet ſoure, if they be dried many dayes in the Sun and ſo kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth, they reſtraine and ſtop the wombe maruellouſly. Alſo they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vſe *Sumach*, which ſometime is ſodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being vnripe and ſharpe, do bind the belly more, if they be dried as is aforeſaid, and miniſtred in drinke. Among compound medicines theſe are maruellous good, that is, Trochiskes of *Spodium*, of *Terra lemnia*, *Diacotoneon*, *Diatrion ſantalon*, Triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges, is good: ℞. the powder of *Diatrion ſantalon*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana ℈ ij. red Coral, choſen Frankinſence, red Roſes, ana. ℥.ß. *Spodium*, ℥.j. ſeeds of Sorel, *Sumach*, ana ℈.j. *Balauſtiæ*, *Acatiæ*, ana. ℥.ß. Maſticke, ℈ ß. Bolearmoniacke, ℥ j. fine white Sugar, ℔.ß. diſſolue it in the diſtilled waters of Plantaine and Roſes, and make Lozenges. Alſo this Loch is good: ℞ of old conſerues of Roſes, of *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, *Rob de ribes*, *Rob de Barberies*, ana. ℥.ß. *Hydromel*, ℥.iij. *Diamoron*, ℥.v. with powder of *Diatrion ſantalon*, ℈ ij. red Coral, ℈ j. *Spodium*, *Balauſtiæ*, ana. ℥.ß. Bolearmoniack, ℥.i. ſirupe of Mirtles as much as ſhall ſuffice, & make a Loch. Moreouer you ſhall euer haue this water ready made: ℞. *Sumach*, one quarter, raine water, ℔.iii. in which ſteepe the *Sumach* a day and a night, then boile them, and ſtraine the *Sumach* well and ſtrongly: and in that water ſeeth Rice, or milke, or other meates, or at leaſt way, powre ſome portion of this water to them. If the fluxe *Diarrhœa* be cauſed through flowing of humors from ſome other member of the body, you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper chapters. As for example, if the humours flow from the head into the ſtomach, you muſt returne to thoſe things which are ſpoken of before in the chapters againſt diſtillation or rheume, and ſo do likewiſe with other parts of the bodie.

Morſuli.

Ecligma.

A precious water.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

LIENTERIA in Greek, is a certaine lightnes, or ſmoothnes of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a ſcarre without on the skin of the body. In this diſeaſe the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it ſlide away before it be changed and perfectly digeſted, euen in the ſame forme and likenes that it was eaten. Therefore in Latin it may well be called *leuitas*, or *leuor inteſtinorum*, and in Engliſh, lightnes or ſmoothnes of the bowels. It is cauſed ſometimes through a grieuous flux *Dyſenteria* by name going before, which cauſeth deepe exulceration of the bowels: then ſcarres that be hard cloſing together and ſmooth do follow: which ſcarres by reaſon of the hard cloſing, will not ſuffer the meates to be diſtributed about the bodie, becauſe the mouths of the veins which are wont to draw nouriſhment from the bowels to themſelues, are now ſtopped. And becauſe of the ſmoothneſſe (as is aforeſaid) the bowels

Cauſe.

ſuffer the meats to ſlide out before they be perfectly digeſted. Alſo this diſeaſe is cauſed many times through weakneſſe and debility of the vertue that ſhould keepe and hold the meates in the ſtomach. For this vertue being weake and ſickly, the food or meates be neither digeſted nor diſtributed: but they are caſt forth crude, moiſt, and nothing changed, (the belly being alwayes ſoluble.) Alſo ſometime it engendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Alſo ſometime when dropſie water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therefore of what cauſe ſoeuer this fluxe is engendred, the ſicke doth taſte or feele no meate, and it cauſeth euill ſtate or plight of the body. Therfore there chanceth to the patient continuall ſeiges, crude and raw, in colour pale or whitiſh, vnequall and very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Alſo he feeleth a burning which ſpreadeth all ouer the ſides, loathing of meate followeth it. It is a good and friendly ſigne in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them ſharpe and ſowre belkings; for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide ſome while in the ſtomach vntill it beginne to be changed.

Signa.

6. Aphor. 1.

When this diſeaſe chanceth, it is eaſie to perceiue, that you muſt refreſh and recreate the vertues retentiue and digeſtiue, as well of the ſtomach as of the bowels by all meanes, and that may chiefly be done by miniſtring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to reſtore and refreſh ſtrength. Therefore the fleſh of birds of mountaines are good: alſo Chickens roſted, in whoſe bellies alſo muſt be put *Sumach* or Maſticke, and other things which ſhall be rehearſed in the next chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be little in quantity, and eaſie of digeſtion. And if his ſeiges be ſharpe & cholerick, make him meate with Rice and *Alica*, and ſuch like, with the which ſeeth ſome reſtrictiue things, as Peares, Quinces, Medlars, and ſuch other like. Alſo milke ſodden is good for them, but if their ſeige be flegmaticke, you muſt miniſter vnto them contrarie meats. Alſo commixe ſomewhat that is pleaſant and acceptable to the ſtomach, as is Anniſe ſeed, Comin or *Daucus*. In cholericke ſeiges let their drinke be Ale: but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old & hote. And generally let him drinke but little, for much drinke is not onely in this fluxe *Lienteria*, but alſo in all other fluxes of the wombe, moſt hurtfull.

Victus ratio.

For curing of this diſeaſe, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weakneſſe of the vertue of the ſtomach, you muſt turne to the chapter of weaknes of the ſtomach, and there ſeeke the cure. But to be ſhort, you muſt miniſter both within and without to the body theſe things that do reſtraine, and that can ſtrengthen as well the ſtomach as alſo the bowels. Therfore miniſter ſirups of Wormwood, and Mints, and other electuaries which do ſtrengthen the ſtomach. And you muſt apply thoſe things outwardly, which be rehearſed before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*, & ſhalbe taught in the next chapter following. But this medicin is ſpecially good: ℞. oiles of Maſticke, Wormwood, Mints, and Mirtles, ana ℥ ij. powders of Cinamon choſen, Cloues and Galingale, ana ℈ j. *Balauſtia* and red Roſes, ana ℈ ß. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment: or vſe this Cerate: ℞. oiles of Maſticke, Wormwood, & of Quinces, ana ℥ j. oile of Mints ℥ ß. *Calamus aromaticus*, Cloues, Frankinſence, an. ℥ j. wood of Aloes, ℈ ß. red Roſes, white Sanders and red, ana ℥ ß Maſtick, Comin, ana ℥ j. *Hypociſchidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, ana ℥ j ß. *Gallia Moſchata*, ℈ j. with Waxe and Turpentine

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the ſtomacke.

Vnguentum.

Cerotum.

as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Moreouer, to those that you coniecture haue a scarre, the eating of sharpe things is profitable; for it causeth a certaine refrication and rubbing open againe of the scarre: also it reuiueth againe the naturall heate, and doth somewhat refresh the digestiue vertue. Therfore in this case (as *Galen* witnesseth *in cap. 95. Artis Medicæ*) they be good which do scoure and wipe away sufficiently, and restraine a little: therefore alwayes commixe scouring things with restrictiue medicines. In all other causes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you must vse the same kind of cure which you do vse to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhœa* or *Dysenteria*.

If Lienteria be caused of a scarre.

CHAP XV.

Of the fluxe Dysenteria.

DYSENTERIA in Greek properly is nothing else but an exulceratiō of the bowels. The Latins call this disease *Tormina*, because through it the bowels are tormented & fretted very much with paine. We said before, properly, because the Greeks reckon foure kinds of bloudy *Dysenteria*, as witnesseth *Galen, lib 3. de Symptomatum causis*. The first is, when bloud is sent forth by circuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is, when watery bloud, like vnto the water wherein bloudy flesh being new killed, hath beene washed and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weakenesse of the liuer. The third is, when there is sent foorth an humour more shining and blacker then that which is naturall, being commixt of bloud and melancholy. And of these, we do not speak here, but we speak only of the fourth kind, in the which many times by little and little, and betweene whiles somtimes is cast out pure bloud; also sometime clodded bloud, or shauing of the bowels, cometh out with pure bloud. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinckled with drops of bloud. This fourth kind, as it is said, is caused through exulceration of the bowels, which sometime chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughtie medicins, as is, Scammony, and such like. Also through eating of fruit, through cruditie and rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe and soure meates, or through sharpe & gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenasmus* sometime, and sometime by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fatty, by reason of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted. But when the superficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloudie. And when the exulceration hath pierced deeper, then also is sent forth filthinesse, hauing as it were little peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stopped, it eateth and feedeth in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to runne from dead bodies. When the small guts are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauell, the excrements are cholericke, hauing the colour of a leeke, and altogether garnished with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure of dung. The patient feeleth griefe and frettings, and gnawing, and loosing, so that the sicke is not

Foure kinds of Dysenteria.

1

2

3

4

Causa.

Signes of exulceration of the small bowells.

farre from fainting and failing of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst, and be feauerous, and the ordure cometh forth crude and raw, and the bowell called *Ieiunum* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it do chance, the egestions do appeare more crude and raw, hauing blacke bloud wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow choler, and much thirst, and also disposition to vomite, do trouble the sicke. And sometime they vomite and abhorre meats. Also there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, and sometime also malignant feuers do engender. And they that are so diseased, be waxen ill coloured, and do sweate out euen till fainting and failing of heart. Their strength doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowells, then the ordure that cometh forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and cometh out with windinesse, and frothinesse sometime. Also fatnesse is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth aloft: as *Galen* sheweth largely *in lib. 6. De male affectis locis*. For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper and small bowels, you must go about the cure by medicins giuen in at the mouth: but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in clisters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, from whencesoeuer the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet and rest, and little meate. Therefore if a feauer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in stead of it, minister milke sodden, as we taught before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*. For this first cleanseth and purgeth downeward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, and last of all it stoppeth & bindeth the womb. But you must giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milk. Also pottage prepared of milk, hath both the nature of medicine, and also causeth good nourishment, as is, Rice with milke, *Amylum* and egs mixed with milke. Also soupings or pottage made of *Alica*, and *Milium*, *Sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meats of dry bread, powring to it *Posca*, or iuice of Dates, or Quinces, or of Peares, or of *Sumach*. Also minister Chits wel rosted with Plantaine, or sodden with Quinces brayed: the vsing of oiles is not necessary nor needfull, but you shall minister, to taste vpon, Endiue both wild and tame sodden, and Plantaine, and Coleworts twise sodden. Giue him also the yolks of egs rosted. Flesh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, because they be of a stronger nourishment, and do striue against digestion: but yet you must giue it to them that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specially chuse birds, as is, Partrich, & wood Culuers, & birds of mountains. Among foure footed beasts, Goats flesh and Hares flesh are good: but you must forbid him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beasts. From the beginning let him vse for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houses couered with lead: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *Dysenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you must vse running water, wherein burning steele hath beene quenched. But if the stomach be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, giue him wine, also let it be restringent, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that haue the *Dysenteria*. For this cure you must vse such remedies as do restraine, stop

Signes of exulceration of the great bowels.

Diet.

Lenticula.

Potus.

Curatio.

stop, drie vp, and prouoke vrine, and that do cary the flure some other way. Restrictiue things be these; Sorell seed, *Sumach*, Gauls, Pomegranat rindes dried, Brier root, *Laudanum*, *Acatia*, *Hypocischis*, *Balaustium*, Willow leaues, Comfery roots, leaues and seed, *Rheum Ponticum* if it may be gotten, roote of *Althea*, Horsetaile, Corall, Masticke, Hares creame, Dragons bloud, the Barke of Frankinsence, *Terra lemnia*, roote of *Verbascus*, Plantaine seed, white Daisies, a kind of Mallows called *Alcea*, *Oxis*, *Sanicula*, *Ophrys*, *Ophioglossum*, Knotgrasse, Shepheards purse, Walwort, *Pedelion*, *Numularia*, Dragons the male, sharpe Mulberies, kernels of Grapes, the barke of Maces, & such like. These things do stop and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and sharpnesse of humors, as is *Amylum*, Gum tragacanth, tallow of Goates, Kids, Swine, Geese and Hens. These do drie vp, Hares creame, Harts horne burnt, the shels of Crabs of running water, and Sage. Things to prouoke vrine, you shall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you must minister clisters first, such as haue power to scoure and cleanse, as is this: ℞. of the decoction of whole Barly, ℔ j. *Mel rosarum* strained, ℥ j. Sugar roset, ℥ ß. yolks of egs in number two, oile of Roses, ℥ iij. commixe all together, and make a clister. Abstersion and cleansing being first done, cast in those things that do glutinate and ioyne together, as is this: ℞. red Roses, Plantaine, leaues of Comfery, Knotgrasse, Primroses, ana. M. ß. *Balaustiæ*, ℥ j. Rice burned, ℥ j. roote of Comfery, ℥ ß. seethe all together in water wherein Steele hath been quenched, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction, ℥ xij. iuice of Plantaine, ℥ ij. *Acatia*, *Hypocischidis*, ana ℈ ij. Bole armoniacke. *Sanguis draconis*, ana. ℈ j. Goates tallow, ℥ j oiles of Roses, Mirtels, Quinces, ana, ℥ j. commixe all together, and make a clister. Sometime it doth not onely require things to stop the vehemencie of the paine, but also medicines that be stupefactiue. Therefore then it is good to vse this clister. ℞. of Goats milke, or of Cowes milke, ℔ i. fresh Butter, ℥ j. Goates grease, ℥ ß. Gum tragacanth, ana. ℥ j. yolks of egs in number iij. pils of Hounds tong, ℥ j. oile of Roses, ℥ iij. commixe all together, and make a clister. If there be need of more vehement stupefaction, you must augmẽt the weight of the pils, or else you must adde to the aforesaid weight of pils, three or foure graines of *Opium*, or more or lesse, according to the vehemencie of the paine, and the state of the body. If the exulceration be in the small and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therefore the decoction of restrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it sirupe of Roses, and Mirtels, and so minister it: and also other medicines which are taught in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*, are good. Also you may conueniently minister this potion. ℞. of the decoction of the root of Comfery, or of some other restrictiue thing, ℥ iij. sirupe of Roses, ℥ j. sirupe of Mirtels, ℥ ß. powder of the Trochisks of *Spodium*, Plantaine seed, Bole armoniacke, ana ℈ ij commixe all together, and make a potion. Besides those things that are rehearsed in the chapters of *Diarrhœa* and *Lienteria*, you must apply outwardly vpon the belly this Cerate. ℞. of the oiles of Masticke, Roses, Mirtels and Quinces ana ℥ j meale of Barley and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥ j. of red Roses Plantaine, ana. ℥ j. *Balaustiæ*, *Sanguis draconis*, ana ℥ ß. Bole armoniack, ℥ j *Hypocischidis*, *Acatiæ*, Masticke,

Obtundentia.

Resiccantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.

Clister adstringens.

Clister glutinans.

Clister doloremleniens.

Potio.

Optimum Ceratum.

ana. ℥. ij. with Waxe and Rosin, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. By the examples aforesaid, you may make many other remedies, which we ouerpasse heere.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Tenasmus.

TENASMVS, is a continuall desire to go to the stoole or siege, which the patient cannot deferre nor eschue, and yet he auoydeth nothing, except it be a little bloud, or filthy matter like sneuill. It is causéd oftentimes through outward cold, or through humors sharpe and cholericke, or of salt fleame, or impostumation, or of inflammation ingendred in the straight gut. Also many times the stopping of hard dung in the blind gut may cause *Tenasmus*. The Phisition may easily know if it be causéd of outward cold, by the tale of the sicke, because either he hath sitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath tarried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoydeth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile, his egestion is matter & corruption, and he feeleth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation causeth swelling of the right bowel, & grieuous paine together with a feuer: abundance of dung causeth feeling of grieuous distention, and stretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers, according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if the *Tenasmus* be causéd of cold, you must minister pure and vnmixed wine hote, and you must sprinkle, foment and nourish the share, and the parts about the priuie members with hote oiles and foments, as are, oiles of Rew and Lillies: also branne sodden in wine, and put in a bagge, may well be applied to the fundament. Also it is good to throw in clisters made of the decoction of wild Mints, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, Sothernwood, seed of Annise, Fennell, and such like, putting to it oiles of Dill, Cammomill, and Lillies. Also it is maruellous good if you take a very old Tile which is blacke with smoake, and bray it with the geare that is contained in it, then commixe it together with seething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, & apply it to the fundament by & by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenasmus* be causéd through cholericke humours withholden, and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you must cast in clisters which haue vertue and power to scoure, wash and cleanse, as is this: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of Barley, ℔. j. Sugar roset, ℥ j. ß. *Mel Rosarum*, ℥ j. yolks of egges two, oile of Roses, ℥. iij. commixe them, and make a clister: he must eschue all sharpe things, and he must vse things meanly cold and moist, and all those things which do stop and temperate the sharpnesse of choler. If *Tenasmus* be causéd of flegmaticke humors, it shall be healed like that which is causéd of cold, onely adding to, and commixing with the clisters, such medicines as haue vertue to purge fleame, as is *Electuarium uidum*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenasmus* be engendred of inflammation, cast in broth of Ptisan, wherein hath been sodden a few red Roses: or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, minister this clister: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of Plantaine, ℥ v. oile of Roses, ℥ ij. the white of one egge, commixe them together and make a clister. Outwardly you must sprinckle and annoint the place betweene

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Tenasmus of cold.

Tenasmus of cholericke humours.

Clister abstergens.

Tenasmus of flegmaticke humours.

Tenasmus of inflammation.

Clister.

tweene the priuy members and the fundament with oile of Rew, and Mirtels: or apply this foment: ℞. red Roſes, Plantaine, ana. M. j. *Balauſtie*, ℥. iij. *Sidiorum*, ℥ j. Mirtell berries, ℥ ij. leaues of Brier, ℥ j. ſeeth all together in ſufficient water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then wet a ſponge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreouer, when there is need of ſuppuration, rotting or diſſoluing, apply foments made of the decoction of the roote of *Althæa*, of Fenugreeke, Cammomill, Melilot, and Bran. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of an vlcer or botch, firſt caſt in the things which haue an abſterſiue and cleanſing vertue, and then afterward things that do glutinate and ioyne together muſt be vſed, euen as you did in the fluxe *Dyſenteria*. Alſo this ointment put into the fundament, is good: ℞. oile of Roſes, ℥ j. ſ. the muſcilage of gumme *Tragacantha*, ana. ℥. iij. Ceruſe, burnt Lead, ana. ℥. ß *Aloes*, Frankinſence, ana. ℈. j. Waxe, as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherein dip linnen clothes, and put them into the tuell. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforeſaid things, *Opium*, ℈. j. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed through multitude and abundance of dung, then in the beginning the dung muſt be brought out by little and little with ſoluble and gentle cliſters, as this is: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Mercurie, Beets, leaues of blacke Violets, ana. M. j. ſeeds of Fenugreeke and Lineſeed, ana, ℥. ß. boile them all in ſufficient quantitie of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction, ℔. j *medullæ Caſſiæ fiſtularis*, ℥ j. ſ. communi oile, ℥. iij. Salt beaten, ℥. j. and make a cliſter. But of this one thing you muſt ſpecially beware, that in this caſe you do miniſter no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and deſtruction to the patient, by reaſon of drawing of moe excrements from the whole bodie thither.

Fomentum.

Diſcuſſiues.

Cure of Tenaſmus cauſed of an vlcer.

Vnguentum.

Tenaſmus of multitude of dung.

Cliſter lenitiue.

Note.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Cholicke.

THe Cholicke, or paine which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks, is cauſed many waies: but it hath foure ſpeciall cauſes. For ſometime it is engendred through groſſe and flegmaticke humours fallen downe within the thinne skinne of the gut *Colon*. Alſo ſometime through windineſſe, which hath no roome to get out. Alſo it is cauſed through inflammation of the groſſe & thicke gut ſtretching out and troubling or vexing. Alſo it is wont to engender through ſharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the aforeſaid bowell vehemently. Thoſe that haue the cholicke engendred of a groſſe and flegmaticke humour, they be grieued and vexed aloft, all ouer the *Abdomen*, that is, the place which is vnder the mouth of the ſtomach: ſpecially they are grieued where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele paine as though the gut were braied or bored through. Alſo they be fretted, & haue diſpoſition to vomite, belkings, ſundry and ſtrange vomitings, and ſpecially of ſteame. Alſo the wombe is letted and ſtopped, and ſendeth forth nothing, not ſo much as wind. Alſo the dung which ſometime cometh forth, doth looke like Oxes dung, and it is light and full of wind. And there goeth before theſe things continuall vſing of meates that be very cold and of a groſſe iuyce, alſo filling with meates, ill digeſtion, and crudities, idleneſſe, and ſuch as be adioyning to theſe.

Cauſe.

Signes of a groſſe humor.

Signes of windineſſe. Thoſe that haue the cholicke cauſed of windineſſe, they feele extenſion, ſtretching forth and bolning. They that haue the cholicke cauſed through inflammation, they feele inward burning and heate, & no ſmall feuer: alſo retention both of the vrine and ordure. Alſo they are troubled with thirſt, burning heate, diſpoſition to vomite, and vomiting ſpecially of choler without any ceaſing of the euill at all. And this is the moſt grieuous and worſt kind of cholick, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca paſſio*. Thoſe that haue the cholicke engendred of ſharpe and gnawing humours, they be troubled and vexed with burning thirſt and watching, yea and ſmall feuers; the vrine is made ſharpe, and cholericke humours are throwne out oftentimes, going to the ſtoole doth raiſe greater paine or torment. Alſo meates and drinkes that be hot, being receiued do prouoke it grieuouſly. The diet and cure of this diſeaſe is diuers, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes. Therefore when groſſe and clammie humors do cauſe the cholicke, the whole diet muſt be extenuate and made thinne. Therfore let the bread which the ſicke ſhall eate, be new and wel baked in an ouen or fornace. Fleſh is good, ſpecially of birds, as Hens, Partrich, wood Culuers, Turtles, Blackebirds, and Doues: he muſt eſchue all kinde of fowles which do ſwim or liue in waters, all thoſe things which do abound with many ſuperfluities. Among foure footed beaſts, the fleſh of Calues & Kids are good. He muſt eſchue al kind of pulſe, which do maruelous hurt in this diſeaſe. For pot-herbs you muſt vſe Fennell, *Apium*, *Aſperage*, and ſuch like. Alſo it will not hurt to take Garlicke and Onions raw. To be ſhort, let his food be eaſie of digeſtion, and engendring good iuyce. Let him eſchue fulneſſe and cruditie: he muſt drinke wine that is ſomewhat reſtrictiue, white, thin, ſhining, of meane age, temperately allayed, and let him drinke but little. For the cure of the cholicke cauſed of groſſe humors, you muſt cure it ſo, that you do not heate vehemently with no medicines, for ſuch remedies do ſpread abroad, puffe vp, and make windy all cold and groſſe humors, which puffing vp and ſpreading in the bowels, doth cauſe more vehement paine. Therefore it is good to diuide, cut, and digeſt thoſe humors without vehement paine or heat, & by vſing of thoſe things which do not puffe vp and make windie. Therefore in his ſharpe & extreme paine make irrigations of the oiles of Rew, Cammomill, and Dill. Alſo make foments and *Sacculi* of *Althea*, of Mil, and Bran. Alſo cliſters made with the oiles aforeſaid, and with the decoction of the aforeſaid herbs are maruellous good, or with the decoction of the root of wilde Cucumbers, putting to it Comin or Rew, with Gooſe greaſe or Hens greaſe, after this fort: ℞. Mallows, *Althea*, Cammomill, Mercurie, Dill, ana. M. j. Origan, Calamint, Peniroyall, ana. M. ß. ſeeds of Flaxe, Fenugreeke, Comin, Louage, ana. ℥. iij. ſeeth all together with well water of iuſt quantitie, vntill the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction being ſtrained, ℔. 1. *Hiera picra*, ℥ ß. *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥ v. of *Electuarium nidum*, ℥. j. ß of *Mel roſarum* ſtrained, ℥ ß. oiles of Cammomill, Dill, & Rew, ana. ℥. j the yolkes of egs in number two, common ſalt, ℥ j. commixe all together, and make a cliſter. Alſo the putting in of ſuppoſitaries, & annointing of the fundament made by iuice of *Cyclaminum*, with Hony and Saltpeter, or Centorie with Hony and Saltpeter do profit. Example of a ſuppoſitarie is this: ℞ of Hony ſodden, ℥ j. ß. powder of *Hiera picra*, ℥ ß

Signes of inflammation.

Signes of ſharpe and gnawing humours.

Diet for the cholicke cauſed of flegmaticke & tough humours.

Cure of cholicke cauſed of groſſe humors.

Clyſter.

Colaxin-

Colocinthidos, ℈.j. Salt Gemme, ℈.ß. commixe them, & make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easily, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath been prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hote oile, if it may be had. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althæa*, Peniroiall, Laurell leaues, Fenugreeke, Cammomill, Motherwort, Dill, & such like. The most conuenient medicine against the cholicke, is wine wherein wormwood hath bin infused or sodden, if they need drinking after a bath: it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also the decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being cõmixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke, doth destroy the disease vtterly: and it is better then al medicins. It is ministred to the sicke, ℥.j. in three *Cyathes* of *aqua mulsa*. And if the paine do not ceasse and rest, you must minister *Diatrion piperion*, or *Theriaca*. If that the paine be vehement, it is good to vse medicines that do meanly ease, make soluble, and mitigate, alwel put in beneath, as also giuen to drink. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact & astony strongly, because they do somwhat ease & mitigate, but they make the disease lõger by making the humors more grosse, & thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windines, you must cast in clisters that do dissolue wind, as this is, ℞. Sothernwood, Origan, Peniroial, Calamint, Cammomil, ana. M.j. Rew, Mints, wild Mints, ana. M.ß. seeds of Anise, Fenel, Carawaies, Comin, Dill, Louage, & Daucus, ana. ℥ ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: thẽ take of the licour of that decoction strained, ℔.j. *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥.ß. *Castoreum*, ℥.j. powder of *Diacuminum*. ℥.ij oiles of Rew and Dil, ana. ℥.i.ß. commõ Salt, ℥.j.ß commix them together, & make a clister. Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the confection of Bayberries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue & driue away windinesse. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of one hazel Nut of the said decoction or electuary of Laurell berries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, fomẽts & irrigations, of such things as do disperse & scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforenamed things, *Nigella*, *Amylum*, Parsley, bitter Almonds, blacke Pepper, wild Mints, Bay berries, Wormewood, Nettle seed, Gladon, Marioram, Cinamon and others: of these therefore you may make cataplasmes, foments, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as *Galen* witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doth marueilously as it were by enchantment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, also from vsing of milke and other things that do coole, and from meates and drinkes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmingled and pure, and let him vse a diet which doth heate, and cut, or diuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowells, you must open the veine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water, do rule and beare sway, you must draw bloud from the veines of the anckle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things, and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigatiue and easing paine, also Cata-

Glans.
Vomitus.
Insession.
Vinum absynthytes.
Castoreum.
Cure of the cholicke caused of windinesse.
Clister.
Compositio ex baccis lauri.
Note.
Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of inflammation.

plasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of feuers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to put in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humors without any mordacity and gnawing: as is broth of *Ptisan*, or the decoction of Fenugreeke, Lineseed, Cammomill, and *Althæa*, with fresh Goose grease, or Hennes grease, and oile of Roses. This clister is specially good: ℞. leaues of Violets, both the tame Endiues, leaues of *Althæa*, Cammomill, ana. M.j ß. seeds of Fenugreeke, Flaxe, ana. ʒ. ß. boile these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour of that decoctiō being strained, ʒ.xiij *Cassia fistula*, ʒ.j. *Hierapicra*, ʒ. vj. oile of Roses, ʒ ij. oile of Dill, ʒ.j. Goose grease, and Hens grease, ana ʒ.iii. yolks of egs, in number two, commixe them all, and make a clister. Moreouer you must not only purge the hurtfull & corrupt humors, but also you must temper and moderate them. Therefore ye must vse baths of sweete water, for they do mitigate, and also prouoke sleep: for which purpose minister sirupe of Violets, and Roses, and such like, which are able to temperate and stoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. And also he must vse souping meates, as *Ptisan*, and broths of fishes of stonie places. He must abstaine from all hote and sharpe things, whether they be meates, or medicines, or cataplasmes, or foments, or irrigations that be hote: as also he must abstaine from drinking of wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and moist. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then you must come to the vsing of stupefactiue things. For in this disease they do not only pleasure and profit by astonying of the sense and feeling, but also because they make the thin humors more thicke and grosse, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among stupefactiue things *Philonium* is special good, of the which you may minister for the most part one whole dram. Also pils of houds tongue are maruellous good, if, as is afore taught, you do make sixe pils of ʒ i, and minister one of them to be swallowed before they go to bed. But there be very many things which do helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and substance: among the which, white dung of a Wolfe taken with water or thin white wine, is not the worst. That dung is better which hangeth on hearbs or bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said dung of the wolfe easeth the cholicke being bound to the Ilions. Greene Mints, as *Aetius* affirmeth, sodden a while, and drunke three daies, healeth cholickes.

Diet.
Cure of cholicke caused of sharpe and gnawing humours.
Clister.
Victus ratio.
Stupefacientia.
Philonium.
Pilulæ de Cynoglossa.
Lib. 9. cap. 31.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliaca passio.

THe *Iliaca passio*, is a disease causing most grieuous and deadly paine in the small guts. The Latines do call this disease *Volvulus* and *Convolvulus*. The barbarous do call it *Iliaca passio*. This disease is caused through continual corruption & crudity of meats, but specially of fat meats, which, if they be without corruption, & being withholden, they engender obstructions in the small guts. Also it is engendred of certaine stripes & blows in certaine places in which the small guts do lie: also through vehement cold, restraining and withholding of the

Causa.

the excrements. Moreouer, through abundant drinking of cold things, specially, if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chanceth to them whose bowels be fallen into the coddes together with the dung: and being violently thrust backe from thence againe, and through that it is inflamed. Also it is caused through drinking of deadly medicins, & through hard dung being impact about the thin bowel. For the most part this disease is engendred either through inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie dung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance very often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehement paine, & some swelling of the thin & small guts stretcheth out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, loosenesse, vaine and empty belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowells, perfect stopping and letting of the dung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore hee vomiteth vp flegme and choler; he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficulty & hardnesse of breathing. Moreuer to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnesse of making water, yea the fundament is so bound and close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime dung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries and foments, as is declared in the chapter of the Cholicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *Iliaca passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, and through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach, you must prouoke vomite with things aforesaid. But if there do remaine no raw and vndigest meates in the stomach, you must go about by all means to draw out beneath aswell windinesse, as also the dung: and that must be done by clisters, suppositaries & annointings with great diligence in each of them. Therefore you must cast in this clister. ℞. Mercury, Rew, leaues of *Althæa*, Centory, ana M.j. Hysop, Calamint, Wormwood, ana. M.j. ß. root of *Althæa*. ℥ j. root of wild Cucumber, ℥.j. ß. seeds of Flaxe and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥ iij. seedes of Commin, ℥ ii. boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained ℥ xiiij. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥.j. fresh Butter, *mel Rosarum* strained, ana. ℥.ß oiles of Rew, and Dill ana. ℥ j ß. common Salt, ℥.j. commixe them together and make a clister, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient that hee do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the cholicke, putting to them seeds of Rew, Commin, and stalkes of Coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Cyclaminum*, or Hony with *Nitrum* or Saltpeter. The foments and cataplasmes wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the chapter of the Cholicke. Also foments made of Wooll wet in oile, wherein Comin, Dill, Rew, & Cresses haue bin sod-

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it come of cruditie.

Clyster.

Glandes.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

den, be very good. Also emplaisters made of Linseed, Fenugreek, Barly meale, Darnell meale, Rew, Comin, seeds of Dill, and *Apium* are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seethe in the water *Althea*, Rew and Dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somewhat far off, and then also to the places that are grieued, making deep scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the dung be drawne out first by such things as are before rehearsed. It is maruellous good if they vomit by drinking Dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Illiaca passio* engendred through taking of some venimous medicin, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraine them to vomit. After that you must giue them hote oile in drinke, or fat broth, that they may vomit againe. After within a few dayes giue him *Theriaca* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a little Scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliaca passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must beginne with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts, scarifying thē. Also cast in clisters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Fenugreeke, Linseed, with Oile and Butter. Also apply outwardly those things that are good against inflammations, & do eale paine, you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliaca passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the cods, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowels that are fallen downe to the share, and keep it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, and with bands and trusses applied, conuenient for it.

Cucurbitula.
Purgatio.
Cure of Iliaca passio caused of poison.
Cure if it be of inflammation
Cure if it be of the falling of the bowels into the coddes.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Wormes.

THere be three kinds of wormes. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therefore *Lati*. The third are called *Ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *Teretes*, according to their thicknesse they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, & they go into the stomach, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nosethrills. And this kind of wormes is peculiar to infants, & children, & boies & girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad & long like a gird or band. They be of incredible length (as *Plinie* witnesseth) *lib.2.ca.33*. Sometime they are seene three hundred foot long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* & *Aetius* witnesse) is nothing else, but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guts within, into a certaine liuing body, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of wormes called *Ascarides*, be thin and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the aforesaid kinds be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, and flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue

Teretes.
Lati.
Ascarides.
Causa.

round

round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the ſtomach, thinne and ſmall coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and ſleepe with mouing of the ſtomach: and alſo they do ariſe vp vnreaſonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noyſe and crying out, and fall aſleep againe: but ſome do both put forth their tongue, and ſhut their eies, and be quiet, and keep ſilence, and do fret and fume with them which raiſe them, becauſe they cannot watch, they be ſo weake. Some haue their eyes ſprinkled with bloud, and a pulſe that is vnequall, obſcure, failing and running backe Alſo to many there chanceth loſſe of appetite. Children, while they do ſleepe, chew their tongue, and alſo faſhioning of their mouth as though they ſucked or receiued meate. Alſo to ſome there chanceth gnaſhing of the teeth. But theſe things are done by litle and litle, and betweene whiles. To ſome they runne forth into the ſtomach, and do cauſe gnawing and diſpoſition to vomit, and the patients refuſe meate: & if they be compelled to eate, they ſcarce can ſwallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the bellie doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The reſt of the body it doth conſume and make leane without reaſon, neyther faſting going before, nor vnmeaſurable purging being made. Alſo it chanceth ſometime the face to be made verie red, ſpecially about the balles of the cheekes: but this colour turneth againe into ſwartneſſe. Some do ſpeake fooliſh things in their ſleep, like frantieke perſons. Some change the place that they lie downe in, and tumble and caſt themſelues from place to place: they increaſe feuers in them without order, with vehement coldneſſe of the extreme parts, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But all theſe ſignes & tokens all together which we haue now rehearſed, muſt not euery one of them be looked for in euery body: but the chiefeſt of them, & ſomtime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the ſtomach, and an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meate. For the worme that is in the guts, deuoureth the meate that is eaten, ſo that he hath need of more ſtraightway, & except he eate ſtraightway, the bowels are gnawne. They that are thus diſeaſed, there follows tendernes & weaknes of the body with inequality. The moſt ſure & infallible ſigne is, if certain things like Cucumber ſeeds be auoided out with the egeſtiō of excrements. *Aſcarides* do raiſe a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the ſtoole continually. They that be troubled with this diſeaſe, for the moſt part, be the better after egeſtion & eaſing themſelues. Let their diet be hot & dry, ſpecially if the patient lacke a feuer, & let them vſe meates of good iuice, and which will be ſoone diſperſed throughout the whole body: & ſuch as do not increaſe the cauſe that engendreth worms. Therfore all meates are to be eſchued which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer, they that are troubled with wormes, muſt be nouriſhed and fed liberally, and may not ſuffer hunger; becauſe the wormes except they haue meate to feede on, they then by and by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, ſpecially when they are not altogether empty. Let them drink no ſtrong drieke. For the cure, it is not to be ſpared: & ſomtime if there be a feuer with it, you muſt haue reſpect to that, & to the wormes alſo: and ſomtime you need to be carefull but a little for the feuer, and you muſt be diligent notwith-

Signs of round wormes. Teretes.

Signes of broad wormes. Lati.

Signes of Aſcarides.

Curatio.

ſtanding tō get the wormes out of the body. Therefore when many [illegible] ſpied and knowne this, it cometh to paſſe for lacke of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawne & eaten of them, and ſo being pulled & gnawne they die. The cure as well of the round wormes as of the flat wormes conſiſteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the bodie being firſt killed. They are killed ſpecially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not preſent) theſe ſimples are good: Wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the Sea, Sothernwood, Calamint, Horehound, Dittain, Hyſope, Rew, leaues of Perſica, Coriander ſeeds, Hartſ-horne, Lupines, Mints, Peniroial, Origan, Centorie, Ferne, Gentian, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, Garlicke, ſeed of Coleworts, and roote of *Enula campana*. To theſe if a feuer be preſent, you muſt adioyne the ſeeds of both the Endiues, and alſo the iuyce of their herbes. Among all other, the moſt commendable remedy is *Aloes*. Therefore if infants will hardly take *Aloes*, becauſe it is ſo bitter, you muſt keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and ſeparated, you muſt caſt it in againſt their willes, with a certaine pipe ſtrengthened with a long ſplent. Of theſe aforeſaid ſimples now rehearſed, there may be made diuers compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, & ointments. Among other things, this powder is only good: ℞. of wormeſeed, ʒ.ij of Centory, Wormewood, Hartſ-horne burnt, ana. ʒ.j. Calamint, Peniroial, Origan, ana. ʒ.ß. Sothernwood, Mints, Lupines, leaues of *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, ana ϑ.j. *Aloes*, ϑ.ij. commix thē all together, & make a powder, of the which miniſter the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and ſtate of the body of the ſicke, in Milk or Hony, or ſirupe of Liquorice: for thoſe things which do kill the worms, muſt be miniſtred with ſweet liquors, that thereby the wormes may taſte of the medicine the ſooner, being allured by the ſweetneſſe of it that is miniſtred with it. You muſt annoint the nauell outwardly with Bulls gall, or with this ointment: ℞. oile of bitter Almonds, and of Wormewood, ana. ʒ.j. Bulls gall, ʒ.ß. Centory, wormwood, Lupines, ana. ϑ.ij. leaues of Perſica, Hartſ-horne burnt, *Aloes*, Sothern wood, ana. ϑ.j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the ſtomach this cerate: ℞. *Aloes*, wormwood, meale of Lupines, ana ʒ.ij *Nigella*, Mints, Origan, Peniroiall, Horehoūd an ʒ.j. Centory, Calamint, ana. ʒ.ß. oiles of wormewood, and bitter Almonds, ana. ʒ.ij. *oleum Coſtinum*, ʒ.j. Buls gall, ʒ.ß. with waxe and Roſin, as much as ſhall ſuffice, make a cerate: By examples of theſe you may eaſily make emplaiſters and cataplaſmes, ſo that I need not to rehearſe here any example of each of them. Moreouer, it is good to caſt in beneath abundance of *Mulſa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the ſweetnes of the Hony, may creepe downeward. But when the worms are killed with the aforeſaid medicins, you muſt driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both deſtroyeth appetite, and hurteth digeſtion, and being lifted vpward, it cauſeth ſwimmings, and other euills. The wormes being killed, are driuen out for the moſt part by ſuppoſitaries and purgations, but ſpecially by *Hierapicra*, and *pillulæ peſtilentiales*, or *ruſi*, which haue a maruellous efficacie in killing and bringing out of wormes. But thoſe that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe alſo, you muſt cure by thickning

Simples to kill wormes.

Aloes.

Compoſita.

Pului.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Pillulæ. Ruſi.

Cure if fluxe of the wombe be ioyned with wormes.

of

of the fluxe, and by changing the digestion into a better state, as well with meates, as also with cataplasmes: for the more that the flux preuaileth, so much the more the engendring of wormes is increased: and againe, the fluxe ceasing, the wormes do rest and pause. Therefore you must diligently labour to stop & restraine the wombe, & to adde stedfastnes and strength to it. Therefore minister iuice of Plantaine, or else let him take dried Plantaine: for both haue like efficacie, as wel against the fluxe, as also against wormes: Also make cataplasmes, cerates and ointments of raw Barley meale, Pomegranate rindes, *Hypocistchidos*, & such like restrictiue things: but adde vnto thē those things which be good to kill wormes. Restrictiue medicines are good to be applied outwardly for this cause, because they do corroborate and strengthen againe the stomach, being hurt through often vsing of bitter medicines. Also it is lawful in this case to minister earth wormes being dried, and beaten to powder with *Hydromel*. The worms called *Ascarides*, being in children that be infants, they must be brought out with suppositaries made of hony and salt. In them that be elder, they must be brought out with clisters, made either with sharp brine, or with decoction of wormewood, Centory, Calamint, Lupines, Peniroiall, and other aboue rehearsed, putting to oiles. After ministration of clysters, annoint the straight gut, or fundament with these simples (that is) *Acatia*, *Hypocistchides*, iuice of *Sumach*, or some other restrictiue medicine. For the flesh being constrained by restrictiue things, it loseth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth & shutteth out the *Ascarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children, and for those that be of greater age, and is most effectuous. Take old flesh that is powdred, cut off the fat, and fashion it long and round, like a suppositarie fit for the fundament, and thrust it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can suffer it; then loosen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that sticke on it. After that you shall powre in the things aforesaid, and also annoint it as is aforesaid.

Cure of worms called Ascarides.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemorhoides.

THe Hemorhoides is an vnfolding and spreading abroad of the veines in the tuel. Of these some be blind, which do swell, and do send out none, or very little blood: some be open, which be set wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth blood. The Hemorhoides are caused through dreggie and melancholy blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer sendeth to those veines. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind Hemorhoids may be seene with eies, and they cause vehement paine, specially in auoiding the dung. But the open Hemorhoides do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind Hemorhoides appeare, and do raise great tormenting in the fundament, if the body be full of humours, cut the veine of the hamme or of the ancle bones. Also you must make the belly soluble abundantly, lest the drie dung, while it is sent foorth, do engender paine. Also you must apply where vehement paine is, those things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread steeped in milke, and sodden with yolkes of egges, and

Cæca. *Aperta.* *Causa.* *Signa.* *Curatio cæcarum.*

applied like a plaister. Also it profiteth to sit in a bath, made of t... of Mallowes, Violet leaues, Melilot, Penugreek, Cammomil, leaues of ... Linseed, flowers of Rose campion, and such like. And if the patient cannot ... that, wet wooll or a sponge in the said decoction, and apply it to the griefe. And if these aforesaid things do no good, you must get bloud out of them. Therefore put into the tuell, wooll annointed with iuyce of *Cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with Oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of Centory, Doues dung, Staue sacre, Figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it: and also the pulpe of *Colocynthidis* stieped in oile of bitter Almõds. Among many other, this emplaister is very good: ℞ of Doues dung, ℥ ß. seed of Staue sacre, Lupines, ana. ℥ i. ß. bitter Almonds, ℥ i. pulpe of *Coloquintida*, ℥ ß iuices of *Cyclaminum* & onions, ana. ℥ i. commixe thẽ all together, & make it like a plaister, putting to it, if need be, oile of bitter Almonds. But to take away the pain presently, vse this following. ℞. Elderne leaues, M. i. boile them in water, vntill they be very tender, then take a peece of Scarlet, as much as a mans hand, or greater, & wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, and when it is cold, lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus fiue or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same Scarlet, lay the herbes very hote also: this doth mollifie the hemorhoides, and ceasseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long Suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *Cyclaminum*. Also Blood suckers, or Horse leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the Hemorhoides to open them; and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the Hemorhoides be open, and do auoid out bloud meanely at certaine times, they may not be stopped: for the bursting out of such bloud, doth cause men that haue this disease, to be free from many other diseases. Which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where hee saith in *Epidemijs* these words: They which haue the Hemorhoides, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the lungs, nor a feeding vlcer, nor with felons, or cats haire, nor with *Terminthis*, nor with leprie, nor with morphew. But if the Hemorhoides do throw out bloud immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patients do consume and waste away with this euill, and their strength is decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but in this case, it is to doubt, lest the dropsie should follow, the liuer being cooled throgh immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but little bloud, and that do ingender but little superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as, is *Alica* and Rice. Of pot-herbes, Endiue, Succorie, Purslaine, and such like. Commixe his meate with *Sumach*, and iuyce of vnripe Grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate, thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuyce of Quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrictiue. For the cure, if there be abundance of humors in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must

To open the Hemorhoides.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio apertarum.

6. Epid. par. 3. Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

study

ſtudy to auert and turne away the bloud, by faſtning of cupping glaſſes to the ſides, & to the liuer. For the which purpoſe it is good to bind the hands & the feet with bands, and to vſe hard and ſharpe frictions and rubbings. Moreouer, you muſt miniſter within the body thoſe things which do reſtraine, as are ſirupes of Roſes, of Mirtles, of Quinces, red Corall, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of Amber, of *Spodium*, of *Terra lemnia*, & other which be rehearſed in the chap. of ſpitting of blood. Alſo apply thoſe things outwardly, which can ſtop blood that floweth. Among which, as *Aetius* witneſſeth, *lib.* 14. *cap* 5. is Aloes laid on with *Poſca*. The ſame effect alſo hath ſcales of iron, or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good, which is deſcribed of *Galen*, *lib.* 5. *Therap. method.* ℞. of Frankinſence one part, of Aloes one part and a halfe, commixe them with the white of an egge, vntil it come to the thickneſſe of hony, & lay it vpon the ſoft haires of an Hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Alſo ointments, baths, inſeſſions, foments and other ſuch like medicines, made of things hauing a reſtrictiue vertue, do profit, whereof you ſhall find many examples before in the chapters of *Diarrhœa*, *Lienteria*, *Dyſenteria* and *Tenaſmus*. And if you ſhall vſe little bagges, it is beſt before you apply them, to boile them in wine that is red and reſtrictiue, or at the leaſt to ſprinckle them with it. Examples of other medicines ſeeke before.

Medicamentum Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the Tuell.

IT chanceth ſometime, that reſolution or weakeneſſe of the ouerthwart muſcles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cauſe the tuell to fall out. Wherefore ſeeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforeſaid muſcles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you muſt diligently conſider whether it be free from inflammation or no: for if it be not inflamed at all, it muſt by and by be thruſt and put to his former place by compulſion: and becauſe it muſt not fall out againe, after that it is thruſt in, and put vp into his owne place, you muſt apply reſtrictiue medicines outward to it. Therefore firſt you muſt annoint it about with oile of roſes being warmed, or ſcoure the tuel with reſtrictiue wine and then being put vp againe into his place, you muſt bind him vp. And that you muſt do by and by, as ſoone as the ſicke hath beene at the ſtoole, leſt that when neceſſity conſtraineth them to go to the ſtoole again, the tuel ſhould fall out againe. You muſt apply a Liniment of *Acatia* and *Hypociſtchidos* with wine. Alſo you muſt ſeethe in water til it be red, Gals, *Balauſtiæ*, ſhels of Maſte, Pomegranate rindes, Daiſies, Sumach, ſhales of Quinces, and ſuch like, and afterward of that decoction make inſeſſions and waſhings. But after that the tuel is waſhed with wine, or with ſome reſtrictiue decoction, then it is lawful to ſtrew vpon it, and to apply to it dry medicines. For which purpoſe you muſt apply Bolearmoniacke, Frankinſence, *Sanguis draconis*, Gals, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Hypociſtchidos*, Hartſ-horne, & ſuch other reſtrictiue medicines, as we haue rehearſed oftē before. But if the tuel through inflammation be ſo ſwollen, that it cannot be thruſt vp againe, if the body be full of humors, you muſt firſt cut a veine, & prouoke vomite. And alſo you muſt apply to the tuel by and by in the beginning, thoſe

Cauſa.

Curatio.

things that do restraine and stop or appease: but if there be no abundance of humors in the body, let the sicke vse infessions of the decoction of Camomill, Mallowes, *Althæa*, Linseed, Fenugreecke, and such like; or let him descend into hot water, and tary in it for a time. Also it is lawful to apply a spunge or woolle wet in the decoction. Moreouer, you must annoint the tuel with oiles of Camomil and Dil, vntil it may be put vp: for they because of their dissoluing vertue, do readily take away the swelling, and do also cause that it may be put vp againe, without any difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you must vse the aforesaid restrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the Fundament.

Cause. CLefts of the fundament, be chaps which are made in the muscle that shutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made throgh a North wind on the lips. They are caused through flowing of sharpe humors, or through inflammation, or through extension of the swelling of the tuell. This euil is apparent to the eyes, and therefore we need to shew no signes to declare it by. *Signa.* For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of sharpe humors, then they first of all must be purged and tempered. *Curatio.* But if it be caused through swelling of the fundament caused of inflammation, you must likewise vse at the beginning purging medicines. Also the belly all the time of the cure must be kept soluble with meates that do moisten, and fat meates, lest dry dung should hinder and tary the conglutination. Of such qualities be Mallowes, Spinach, milke of sweet Almonds, soft Egs, fat Broth, and such other like. But to the chaps themselues you must vse this ointment: *Vnguentum.* ℞. of the oiles of Roses and Mirtles, ana. ℥.j. Frankinsence, Mastick, Litarge, *Sanguis draconis*, an. ℈.j. *Aloes*, burnt Lead, Ceruse, *Balaustie*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℈.ß. white Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Or thus: *Aliud.* ℞. oile of Roses, ℥.j.ß. Gals, Mirrhe, *Terra Lemnia*, ana ℈.j. roote of Comfery, Roch alume, burnt Lead, ana. ℈.ß. the yolk of an Egge being rosted, Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. With these ointments you must annoint the clefts thrise on a day, but wash them first with decoction of Roses, Gals, and *Sidiorum*. And if burning & inflammation do vexe the diseased place, you must annoint it with *Vnguentum album Camphoratum*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the Liuer.

Cause. WEakenesse of the Liuer is caused of distemper, either hote, cold, moist, or dry. Hote distemper doth rost, and as it were, burne vp as well the humors which were before in the Liuer, as also those humors which are caried to the Liuer by the veines *Mesenterij*. But cold distemper doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the Liuer, grosse and tough, and hard to be moued; and the humours that be caried to the Liuer, it leaueth them halfe digested. Drie distemper doth make the humors drier and thicker. Moist distemper doth make the humors thin and more watery. Therefore they which haue weake faculty and strength of the Liuer, are called

Hepatici,

Hepatici, as *Galen* saith. Hot distemper vexing the Liuer, there are *colliquations*, first of the humors, & after that of the Liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse, is auoyded by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate, and casteth vp choler. Moreouer, thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is rough, and the pulse is swift. When there is cold distemper, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie: the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine daies abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stinking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thickneſse, but are like putrifact blood which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded blood, nor blacke blood, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse bloud coming nigh to melancholy. And also diuerse and many colours of the excrements do signifie cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feauer: the face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempers, if there come drineſse, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke will be more thirstie. But if moistneſse come to either of them, the egestions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. *Signa.*

For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the griefe by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hote distemper, and heate a cold distemper. Likewise you must moisten a drie distemper, and drie a moisture. But in the cure, this must also be considered, that in all medicines for the Liuer, as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applyed to it outwardly, you commixe some restrictiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the Liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hote distemper, for his diet, let him vse broth of Prisan, and other meats that do meanly coole, as Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Sowthistle, and Water and Bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also Chickens, Partrich, birds of mountaines, and Veale, these being sodden in Veruein or Limons. Of fruites, let the sicke eate Raisins, Limons, and sweete Almonds. He must eschue wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weakneſse of the stomach, for then you must minister thin and watry wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuyce of Pomegranates, and *Syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *Oxisaccarum*, with decoction of Barly or Endiue. Also they must eschue all meates and drinkes dressed with Hony, and that be very hote, and haue vertue to cut and diuide. For the cure, minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of Roses, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatrion santalon*, & other such like Antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. ℞. the powders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, and of *Diatrion santalon*, ana ℥ j. ß. seeds of both the tame Endiues, red Roses, ana ʒ ij. Raisins, ℥ j. white Sanders, Withwind flowers of Squinant, ana ʒ j. Sugar, ℥ vi. dissolue it in the stilled waters of Withwind and Endiue that hath the broad leaues, and make lozenges. And also the Antidote *Philonium* only once ministred, sometime hath marsellously healed all hot distemper of the liuer. Apply outwardly foments made of Roses, Cammomil & Quinces: or seeth wormewood or Dates in the aforesaid oiles of Roses, Cammomill and Quinces, and then wet wooll or a spunge in them, & lay that right against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment: ℞ oiles of Roses, of Quinces, and of water Lillies, ana ℥ i. white Sanders and red, red Roses, ana ʒ j. scraping

Curatio.

Note.

Diet in a hote distemper.

Orbiculi.

Vnguentum.

of Iuory, ℈.j.ß. seeds of both the tame Endiues, ana. ℈.j. Vineger ℥.ß. Purslaine seed, gra. ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also

Epithema. Epithemes in this disease are wont to profit not a little: which may be made thus, or after this sort: ℞. the distilled waters of sowen Endiue, with the broad leaues of Lettuce, of Sorrell, of Roses, of water Lillies, ana. ℥ iij. iuyce of Sengreen, ℥ j. Vineger, ℥ j. red Roses, red Sanders, shauing of Iuorie, ana. ℥ j. powders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatrion santalon*, ana ℥ ß. seed of Purslaine ℈ ß. commixe them all, & make an Epitheme You must apply Epithemes, in sommer cold, and in winter warme.

Cure of cold distemper. When there is cold distemper of the liuer, you must vse medicines that do heate, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meates easie of digestion, and heating. For pot herbs let him take Sauory, Hysope, Fennell, Parsley, Sothernwood, Sage, and such like. And let his meates be dressed with aromaticke things, as Cinamon, Cloues, and such others. He must drinke wine that is thin, yellow and odoriferous. He must eschue eating of fish, and cold fruits, and idlenesse, and in conclusion whatsoeuer doth make cold.

Decoctum. Within the body he must take this decoction. ℞. roots of *Apium*, of Fennell, & of Parsley, ana. ℥ j. Agrimony, Hysope, Mints, Wormwood, Succory, Withwind, Origan, Calamint, *Asarum*, an. M. j seeds of Annise, Fennell, *Daucus*, Comin, Carawayes, ana. ℥ ij. Squinant, ℥ j ß. Masticke ℥ j. flowres of Cãmomil, red Roses, ana. M. j. Cinamon chosen, ℥. j ß. seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine, and one pound of running water vnto the third part, then straine it, and put to the liquor of sirupe of Agrimony, ℥. ij. sirupe of Wormwood, ℥ j commixe all together, and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner, ℥ iij ß. at a time. For the same purpose you may minister hote antidotes, as *Diacinamomum*, *Dianisum*, conserue of Sage, Galingale condite, roots of Pimpernell couered with Sugar and such like.

Vnguentum. You must annoint him outwardly with hote oiles, as be, oiles of Narde, Cammomill, Wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment. ℞. of the oiles of Wormwood & Narde, ana. ℥ i. ß. iuyce of Agrimony, ℥. ii. Cinamon, Cloues, wood of Aloes, an. ℈. ii. Spicknard, Squinant, and Masticke, ana. ℈. i Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment.

Ceratum. You may also apply this Cerate: ℞. of the meale of Fenugreeke, and of Lupines, ana. ℥. ii. roote of *Ireos*, and *Asarum*, ana. ℥. i. of Agrimonie, Wormwood, Melilot, & Squinant, ana. ℥. ß. *Gallia Moschata*, ℈. i. seed of Annise and Fenoel, ana ℈. ß. Masticke, ℈. ii. Mirrhe and Frankinsence, ana. ℈. i. oiles of Masticke, Narde, Roses, and Dill, ana. ℥ i. Waxe and Rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the liuer.

Epithema. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. ℞. seedes of Annise, Fennell, Ammeos, ana ℥ i. ß. Cinamon, Cloues, Squinant, ana. ℥ i. seethe all in a pound and halfe of Malmesey, till halfe be consumed, then straine it, and commixe with the liquor of that decoction, waters of Wormwood and Agrimonie, ana. ℥. ii. powders of *Diacinamomum* & *Diagalanges*, ana ℥ ij. Withwind, ℈. ii. Vineger, ℥ iii commixe all together, and make an Epitheme.

Cure of a moist distemper. In a moist distemper of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie, as flesh of birds rosted, thinne wine, those things that do prouoke sweat, as drie baths, or hote houses, and also baths coming of their owne accord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschue all kinde

of

of fishes, and fruits that haue power to moisten. You must minister within the body, sirupe of Wormewood, *Dialaccha*, and *Diacureuma*. You must apply outwardly those things which do dry without any great heat: of the which we will speake afterward in the chapter of the Dropsie *Anasarca*. Drie distemper of the liuer must be cured like the other, by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words, it is good for him to vse a diet that doth moisten, and baths of sweete water, and other things which do moisten, whereof we will speake abundantly in their places. But this must not be forgotten, which we also admonished you of before, to commixe alway with your moistning things, those things which adde strength to the liuer. But among those things which seeme to be good, by the property of their whole substance, the best is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and ℥.j. thereof ministred with sweet wine alayed with water. For this by often proofe is knowne to be good against all distempers of the liuer. For as we said, by the properties of his whole substance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating and cooling.

Cure of a drie distemper.

Lupinum iecur.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of obstructions of the Liuer.

OBstructions of the Liuer are caused of vapours, and grosse windinesse, hard to digest. But sometime it is cauled of grosse and vicious humors in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which veines nourishment is sent to the liuer from the stomach and the bowels. If abundance of grosse and vaporous windinesse be heaped vp together, which cannot find free passage out, and so doth engender obstruction, there ariseth then not onely griefe and heauinesse about the right side, but also feeling and perceiuing of distenſiō & stretching out. If obstruction be ingendred through grosse and viscous humors, there followeth heauinesse with feeling of paine, sometime easie, and sometime vehement: also sometime without a feuer, and sometime with a feuer. For grosse and viscous humors, being many, do cause obstruction & stopping more then other, and specially when the patient doth vse vehement mouing after meate. And if they be sharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obstruction is made more vehement: when the body is stopped, they suffer both stretching out, and also pricking. You must giue vnto them which haue this disease hote meates, and that haue vertue to take away obstruction and stopping, as be Leeks with *Oximel*, *Sperage*, Fennell, Parsley, Capers and other like things, either sodden in pottage and meate, or taken with some heating sauce which taketh away obstructiōs. You must eschue all meats & nourishments engendring grosse iuice. Also refraine baths and exercises after meats. He must vse for drinke, wine that is thin and old. Besides his diet, it is requisite for to vse very quickly medicins, that do attenuate and take away obstructions: for obstructions waxing old do not only engender putrifaction in the liuer, but also in all the whole body, and kindleth a feuer. Among simple medicins, these that follow do take away obstructions notably and without griefe, that is, wolues liuer, Fumitory, Agrimony, Cammomill, Galingale, Dragons root, *Asarum*, Annise, *Apium*, Worm-

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Simples taking away obstructions of the liuer.

wood, *Cassia*, *Iroot*, Licorice, *Rhaponticum*, Lupines, Capars, *Auena*, with wild Parsley, *Pistacium*, bitter Almonds, Spikenard, Stæchados, Gentian, roote of Plantaine, also the seede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, Succorie, *Alkakengi*, both the Endiues, Sperage, and *Bruscus*. Of these also you may make diuerse compound medicines, and specially decoctions, putting to it *Oximel simplex*, *Scilliticum*, *Syrupus acetosus*, *compositus*: syrupes of Wormwood, of Hysope, of Calamint, of Horehound, & such other like. For the same purpose it is lawfull to minister Trochiskes of Agrimonie, of Wormewood, of Rubarbe and such like. Also these Antidotes, *Dialaccha*, *Diacurcuma*, are good, and such other like. Among other simples before rehearsed, *Pistacium* is notable good to take away obstructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but also pleasant, if you steepe *Pistacia*, tenne or twelue houres by night in Malmesey, and minister them in the morning, the digestions being ended. You must apply outwardly, epithemes, ointments, emplaisters, and cerates, which be declared in the former chapter, of the cure of cold distemper of the liuer. And these aforesaid medicines do suffice, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you must vse both bloud-letting & purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You must purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of Agaricke, and with other Antidotes, which do purge grosse and thin humors by the belly. You must purge them specially by the belly, when the hollow part of the liuer is vexed. But you must purge by vrine, whē the round embossed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by bloud-letting and purgations, then you must minister those medicins, which are before rehearsed. And specially this Electuarie: ℞. of the roote of Ireos, *Chamæpiteos*, of seeds of Annise & *Apium*, ana ℥.ij. of *Asarum*, ℥.ij. ß. of Cinamon, Ginger, Carawayes, Cammomill, ana ℥.j. of *Stæchados*, Gentian, and Horehound, ana ℥.ij. with *Oximel scilliticum* as much as is sufficient, make an Electuary. This doth maruellously take away obstructions, not so much those that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as those that sticke in the outside of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

Antidotum liquidum.

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

Cause. Signa.

THere is inflammation ingendred in the liuer as well as in other members, and through the same causes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauinesse all ouer the right side coming vp to the necke, and downe to the bastard ribbes. Also there is swelling of the right side, specially, if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a sharpe feuer, a small and drie cough, an insatiable thirst, abhorring of meates, hardnes and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue first red and afterward blacke: vomits as well of pure choler as also like yolkes of egs, and afterward also rustie; the bellie is costiue. Also the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iaundise: also he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine rauing, and do voide foorth sharpe vrine. The inflammation that chanceth through causes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, doth cause abhorring of meate, disposition to vomite,

vomits of choler, and vnquenchable thirſt. The inflammation that ingendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, cauſeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing of breath then the other, and doth raiſe a greater cough, and it doth ſtretch out paine vnto the right part of the necke, ſo that it ſeemeth to plucke it off. Alſo it chanceth ſometime, that the muſcles leaning vpon the liuer be inflamed: therefore many being deceiued, do thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is neceſſary to tell the differences betweene theſe. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round ſwelling, faſhioned like the liuer, which will alſo be faſhioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater when the bodie is turned downe on the left ſide, and againe leſſer, when it is turned to the right ſide. For the liuer going vnder the baſtard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the ſight, nor to the feeling. Againe, the thinne skinne, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a naturall faſhion. If the muſcles be inflamed, the skinne is ſtretched out round about, ſo that if one would pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot eaſily. Moreouer, there appeareth a ſwelling according to the placing of the muſcles that lie vpon the liuer, long in faſhion, and manifeſt to ſight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be inflamed, you muſt by and by let him bloud, if age and ſtrength will permit it. Therfore (as *Galen* witneſſeth) you muſt both pull backe and purge the bloud that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: becauſe the veine in the right arme is right againſt the liuer, and hath a large paſſage, hauing ſocietie with the veine which is called *Vena eaua*. If this veine doth not appeare, you muſt cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you muſt cut the vpper veine, you muſt draw out abundant, and ſufficient bloud, if his ſtrength will ſuffer it. After bloud-letting within a little ſpace, make the belly ſoluble, with a ſimple and eaſie clyſter, ſpecially if it do not void by it ſelfe. The next day after the bloud-letting, faſten on a cupping glaſſe, with ſcarification, and againe likewiſe faſten it on within a day after; for many haue felt more eaſe the ſecond time of the applying, then at the firſt time. Alſo you muſt vſe foments of Wooll wet in oile, cataplaſmes, cerates, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this only is to be obſerued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue and diſcuſſiue, you alwayes commixe ſome reſtrictiue medicines. Therefore make a foment of oiles of Quinces, or of Maſtick, or Roſes, or Mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a ſpunge wet in the decoctiõ of Wormwood, Melilot, red Roſes, Cammomill, Dill, Plantaine, tame Endiue, and other like. Alſo make Cataplaſmes or Emplaiſters of Lineſeed, and Fenugreeke, Barley meale, Quinces, Melilot, flowers of Wormewood, and ſuch like. Or this emplaſter: ℞. Barly meale, ℥.ß meate of Quinces beaten, ℥ iij. Wormewood, flowers of Melilot, Squinant, ana ℥ ij. Lineſeede ℥ j. oiles of Roſes, Quinces, Cammomill, Wormewood, ana. ℥.ß. Vineger ℥ j. commixe all together, and make an emplaiſter. Alſo this Cerate is good ℞. of the meate of Dates, ℥.iij. of Mirrhe, ſteeped in old reſtrictiue wine, Storax, and Maſticke, ana. ℥.ij. flowers of Melilot, Wormewood, Cammomill, ana. ℥.i ß. Saffron, ℥.ß. oiles of Quinces, of Maſticke, and of Roſes, ana. ℥.i. with Waxe and Roſen as much as is ſufficient, and make a cerate to apply to the liuer.

Curatio.
Vena ſectio.
Clyſter.
Fomenta.
Cataplaſmata Emplaſtrum.
Ceratum.

and make a cerate to apply to the Liuer. For the same purpose you may make
Epithemata. Epithemes of the decoction of Roses, Plantaine, Wormewood, Cammomill,
Note. or of their waters distilled. And in making of all these things, you must take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the restrictiue things may preuaile, and exceede the things that mollifie and loosen. And contrariwise, when the vehemencie of the heate is somewhat slaked, the mollifying things must exceed restrictiue things. Moreouer, you must beware, that you do not apply the aforesaid things when they are cold, but first warme them a little. Moreouer, in inflammation of the Liuer, when there is great and vehement paine, you must also minister drinke medicines, that do ease paine: but so, that you do eschue continuall vse of them: you must vse drinking of simples most. Therefore minister Groundswell sodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of Liquorice with hot water. Also iuice of Endiues doth profit no lesse then the other, putting to them a little honie: for besides that it cooleth, and addeth strength to the Liuer, it also purgeth the mouthes of the veines of the liuer. But the belly must also be prouoked by eating of Nettles or Mercury sodden. Also in the declination of the disease, the belly must be emptied by clisters, for which purpose Polipody & *Epithimum* with *Mulsa* are put in: and that especially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we said before) must be purged by the guts: but the round and outward part of the liuer, must be purged by vrine. Moreouer in in-
Victus ratio. flammation of the liuer there is need of an exquisite diet (as *Galen* witnesseth) *lib.* 13. *Therap. method.* The liuer it selfe requireth meate chiefly that can withstand obstructions. Such be all those that be of thin substance, and which do scoure without gnawing, as is *Ptisan*, *Mulsa*, and such like: Therefore the best food for them that are thus diseased, is *Ptisan* broth, wherein *Apium* hath been sodden. Also you may minister broth of Chicken, wherein Parsley hath been sodden: but drinke *Mulsa* or Barly broth, or decoction of the tame Endiues.
Cure of inflammation turning to suppuration. And if that inflammation do beginne to change to suppuration and rotting, then all the aforesaid signes will increase, as paines, feuers, rauings, carefulnesse, and abhorring of meate. Then you must helpe the permutation and rotting, that it may quickely be done, lest other members in continuance of time
Cataplasmata do rot with it also. Therefore you shall helpe it to rot with this cataplasme: ℞ of the roote of *Althea*, ℥ j. ß. Fenugreecke, and Lineseed, ana. ℥ ij. leaues of *Althea* and Mallowes, ana. M. ij. drie Figs, in number vj. boile these in water till they waxe soft, then bruse them, and make a cataplasme. Neither shall you do
Emplastrum. amisse, if you apply an emplaister, that can helpe it to change into matter, as this is: ℞ of Barly meale, and Fenugreeke, ana. ℥ iiij. of the roote of *Althea*, ℥ ß. of the roote of white Lillies, ℥ j. ß. Lineseed ℥ j. floures of Cammomill, and Melilot, ana. M. ß. boile all in water vnto a iust thickenesse, then commixe of oile of Cammomil, ℥ j. of oile of Lillies, ℥ j. ß. boile them againe, and make an emplaister. Of these said things you may also make a cerate, by putting to them Butter, *Labdanum*, Rosin and Waxe. When the suppuration and rotting is fully come to perfection, then the paines do ceasse, and all the fits do ap-
Ruptura. peare gentler and meeker. In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth increase more againe, therefore then also you must helpe the rupture or

breaking

breaking of it, by vſing of Goates dung and Doues dung, Nettle ſeed, Muſtard ſeed, and other things that do draw to the ſuperficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of Poley, Fumitory, roote of *Chamedrios*, and ſuch like. When it is broken, you muſt miniſter water of honey, or decoction of Cicers, and other like things which haue an abſterſiue and ſcouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoyde by the veines, you muſt commixe things that do prouoke vrine, as be, *Siſarum*, *Aſarum*, *Caſſia*, and Cinamon. But if it auoyd by the belly, commixe thoſe things which do purge gently, as be Goates whey, *Tamarinds* and *Caſſia fiſtularis*. Alſo it is lawfull then to vſe cliſters made of the decoction of Barley. When cleanſing and ſcouring of it is done, miniſter medicines which can glutinate and ioyne it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of diſtemper of the Spleene.

Like as other parts of the bodie haue eight kinds of diſtempers, ſo many hath the Spleene, and moſt often it ſuffereth cold and moiſt diſtemper. Each particular cauſe is not to be declared heere: for there be ſome cauſes that be in other diſtempers of other members of the body, therefore you ſhal ſeek them in *Galen ex capitibus* 1. 2. *&* 3. *lib. De Morborum cauſis*. The ſureſt and ſhorteſt ſignes of diſtemper of the Spleene are knowne by thoſe things that be eaten and drunken, and by thoſe things which are applyed outwardly vpon the skinne, neare to the left ſide. For if cold diſtemper do vexe the Spleene, all meates and drinkes which do coole notably, do ſoone and manifeſtly hurt the Spleene. Alſo all cold things applyed outwardly do hurt it: and therefore they ſignifie cold diſtemper of it: but contrariwiſe all hote things do eaſe it. And if the diſtemper of the Spleene be hote, it is not vexed with cold meats or drinks, or with cold things being applied outwardly. And if the heat increaſe, there is not onely no ſwelling in it, but alſo it ſuffereth contraction, and ſhrinking vp, ſpecially if a feuer be preſent. But meates and drinks that be hote, and thoſe things that adde heate, being applyed outwardly, do increaſe hote diſtempers, and make them outragious. Alſo all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewiſe alſo you may gather the ſignes of drie diſtemper, ſpecially when it is not euident, by the proper nature of it for lacke of greatneſſe. Alſo thoſe things that be applyed outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardly, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they do drie vp the Spleene. When the Spleene is vexed with moiſt diſtemper, and ſo continuing a while, it cauſeth it to increaſe ſo much, that it toucheth both the ſtomach and the liuer. Alſo the kind of paine together with theſe aforeſaid ſignes do declare the diſtemper that vexeth. For in a hote and cold diſtemper, they haue ſmall paine or none at all, neither haue they any alſo in a moiſt diſtemper; but leaſt of all in a drie diſtemper. By theſe aforeſaid ſignes you may make coniecture of compound diſtempers of the Spleene. For in a maner altogether, when a hote diſtemper is vehement, a drie diſtemper followeth. But in ſo much as humors flowing into the ſpleen do cauſe ſwelling, you muſt haue diligent conſideration of them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hoter, although there be no feuer preſent. Alſo the eies & the vrine

Cauſe.

Signes of diſtemper of the ſpleen in bare qualities.

Cold diſtẽper.

Hote diſtẽper.

Dry diſtẽper.

Moiſt diſtemper.

Signes of diſtemper of the ſpleen through humours.

Choler. be coloured by choler: the ſicke will alwayes accuſe drineſſe, and complaine of thirſt, and choler troubling his mouth. Hee abhorreth meate, is troubled with watching, and deſireth cold things, and with all that his tongue is yellowiſhed. He hath Tertian fits, and the manners of the ſicke are wrathfull, and they will chafe out of meaſure. If melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the reſt of the body, and he hath vnnaturall appetite to meate, the patient is ſad and heauy, and other ſignes of choler be preſent with theſe. Alſo fits do vexe him the fourth day.

Melancholie.

Fleame. When a flegmaticke humour floweth into the Spleene, his choler ſhall be like fleame. The ſicke doth not thirſt, he deſireth meate, vnleſſe the humour be ſalt fleame: for then the ſicke abhorre meate, and be more deſirous of drinke, for they are thirſtie. Alſo fits do vexe them euerie day. And their vrines are white, and they themſelues be ſlow and ſluggiſh. Some of them that haue cold diſtemper with it, haue a great and a hard Spleene. And if it be a ſanguine humour that floweth into the Spleene, it is poſſible for it to change the colour both of the tongue, and of the skinne. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the ſicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more ſicke then the reſt, although they haue not like ſwelling of the Spleene. The veines of the whole body do appeare full of blood, and the vrine is yellow.

Blood.

Note. Theſe ſignes we haue declared at large out of *Aetius*, becauſe they are common, and may almoſt be applyed to all diſtempers of other medicines, cauſed through flowing of humours. Generally diſtemper of the bare qualitie of the Spleene is almoſt without ſwelling. You muſt cure and correct them both by meates and drinkes, as alſo by ſimple medicines and foments, oiles and ointments, and ſuch other like, which be contrary to the diſtemper. Therefore you ſhall heale hote diſtemper of the Spleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates and drinkes that do coole, and by annointings, with oiles of Roſes, and *Oleum melinum*, and other things which be rehearſed before in the 23. chapter of this booke: likewiſe cold diſtemper of the Spleene, by thoſe things which do moderately heate. In a moiſt diſtemper of the Spleene, beſides thoſe things which are rehearſed before in the 23. chapter, theſe things do profit: roote of fiue-leaued graſſe, drie Plantaine, the floure and ſome of Salt, *Ammoniacum*, iuyce of Willow, and ſuch like, if you make of them an ointment or cerate by putting to ſufficient Vineger, ſuch as we wil a little after deſcribe. Alſo frictions are moſt conuenient for this, which haue a diſcuſſiue vertue. Dry diſtemper of the Spleene is cured by ſweete bathes and hote waters, alſo annointings with ſweete oile, and meates moiſting without coldneſſe, as is Piſan iuice. If diſtemper of the Spleene be cauſed through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be ſanguine, you muſt let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *Lienaris vena*; or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger, and the eare finger: then applie both inwardly and outwardly medicines which do adde ſtrength to the Spleene, as is the barke of the roote of Capers, of Harts-tongue, *Ceterach*, Maidenhaire, *Ireos*, Calamint, and ſuch like, which alſo are able to adde ſtrength and ſtabilitie to the liuer: of which we will ſpeake abundantly in the chapters following. If other humours flow to the Spleene, firſt you muſt auoide the

Cure of diſtemper of the bare qualitie of the ſpleene.

Hote.

Cold.

Moiſt.

Drie.

Cure of diſtemper by flowing of a humor.

ſuper-

superfluous humours by purging them with medicines: then all the rest of the same you must correct the distemper that is left, and also apply things that strengthen the Spleene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

THe Spleene like as other members, is vexed with inflammation as oft as hote bloud doth flow thither vnnaturally. It is knowne by heauinesse and swelling of the left side, which will not giue place to the feeling: also by paine and stretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abundance of humours do rush in thither, it is knowne by the greatnesse and swiftnesse of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with inflammation of the Spleene be simple, and giue them those things that wil easily digest for their meat, as is Ptisan iuice, bread wet in other things which be often rehearsed of vs before in the inflammation of the members. And if the inflammation endure long, you may also giue them birds flesh, and fishes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinamon, or watery wine. Let the cure be begunne by cutting of the veine of the Spleene, or the veine which is betweene the little finger and the ring finger, if there be no cause to forbid it. Let the belly be often washed with clisters, but specially if you may not let him bloud. Then lay vpon the Spleene restrictiue medicines, which can appease the fury of that that floweth, and keep the strength of the liuer and Spleene; but yet you may not onely apply restrictiue things, but you must commixe with them those things which do extenuate, cut, and loosen without euident heate, lest grosse matter be stopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you must apply moist wooll wet in wine that is old, sharpe and thinne, and mixed with sweete oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of Roses, or *Oleum melinum*, or oile of Cammomill, with Vineger: you may commixe them together after this sort: ℞. oile of Roses and Quinces, ana. ℥ij oile of Cammomill, ℥.j. the best Vineger, ℥. ß. commixe them all together for a foment and irrigation. And if the aforesaid oiles be not at hand, seeth Brier leaues and Quinces in oile, and adde to also some extenuating things, as is Wormewood and Peniroiall. And you must beware also that you apply nothing vpon the Spleene cold, but whatsoeuer medicine you applie to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After foments and irrigations, you must passe to cataplasmes: in the making of which you may adde the meale of Darnell and Barley, with drie Figges, Linesede, and oile wherein Wormewood and Peniroyall be sodden. But you must beware that the place be not kept bare after irrigations and cataplasmes, but as soone as those be taken away, by and by apply such cerates or emplaisters as be described in the chapter of Inflammation of the Liuer. For both the Liuer and the Spleene require one kind of medicines, but the Spleene requireth so much the stronger medicins, as it is of grosser nourishment. Therefore you shall seeke examples of medicines meete for this place out of the chapter of Inflammation of the Liuer: obseruing onelie this thing, that you alway commixe Vineger and some-

Cause. Signa. Diet. Potus. Curatio. Venæ sectio. Cliſter. Fomenta. Note.

what that is acceptable to the Spleene, and that doth peculiarly defend his strength. And if the inflammation of the Spleene tendeth toward suppuration and rotting, which doth seldome chance, you must helpe to further the suppuration, lest other members putrifie, by cataplasmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue spoken in the inflammation of the liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardnesse of the Spleene.

INflammation of the Spleene, if it be not rightly cured, draweth together a hard swelling of the Spleene. The cause of this disease is a certaine humor, which cleaueth stubburnly to the Spleene: but it is when hardnes ingendreth without inflammation into ouermuch swelling. This euil is easily knowne by touching, of what cause soeuer it be. His diet must be extenuating: therefore he must eate meate which is easie of digestion, and doth ingender good iuyce and thin. He must eschue all hard flesh, which doth ingender grosse iuyce, and which doth striue against digestion. He must drinke wine that is thinne in substance, yellowish in colour, not very old, and being without all restriction. Also he must put much trust in exercises, which it is good to vse before meate, the body not abounding with superfluities. Also it is manifest that vociferation, and crying out, oportunately done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euil. For the cure, you must vse very strong things, as wel outwardly as also inwardly. Therefore within the bodie minister most strong potions, for those they may suffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barkes of the rootes of Capers, Harts tongue, the roote and herbe of *Tamariscus*, sodden in Vineger or *Oximel*. Also iuyce of Centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter Lupines taken with Rew and Pepper. *Anagallis* the female, ℈.j. with *Posca* or *Oximel*, profiteth maruellously to drinke it. Also the most conuenient remedie for the hardnesse of the Spleene, is, iron quenched often in water, or wine, or *Posca*. For that water, or wine, or *Posca* ministred in the beginning is pleasant and most profitable, and is giuen many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the feuer, minister water or *Posca*: but to them that haue tender flesh, and lacke a feuer, minister wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be some instrument that is laid with steele. Also the scales of iron may profitably be ministred to strong and rude men. For this doth melt the Spleene notably, for it hath a consuming vertue. But yet lest it should hurt the stomach, it is good to commixe with it some strengthening medicines, as is, Harts tongue, tops of Wormewood, *Cassia*, Annise seed, *Serpillum montanum*, or such other like. Apply outwardly this foment: ℞. Centorie, Vineger, and when they be sodden, wet a sponge in the decoction, and apply it hote to the Spleene. Moreouer, this ointment sheweth a maruellous effect: ℞. of the oiles of Capers, Lillies and *Ireos*, ana. ℥. j. marrow of oxes shankes, ℥.ij. muscilage of the roote of *Althea*, Fenugreeke and Lineseed, ana ℥.j. Badgers grease, Hennes grease, Goose grease, ana. ℥.ij. the barke of the roote of Capers, *Tamariscus*, *Costus*, Centorie, ana. ℥ j. Gumme Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.ß. the gums being first dissolued in Vineger, with

Cauſa.
Signa.
Victus ratio.
Curatio.
Fomentum.
Vnguentum.

Waxe

Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also emplaisters, and cerates do profit much being made after this sort: ℞. of the oiles of Lillies, *Irees*, and of Capers, ana. ℥. j. Barley meale, Fenugreek, Lineseed ana. ℥ j. the barke of the roote of Capers, Harts-tongue, ana. ℥ j ß. roote of *Althea*, ℥ j. *Bdellium*, Ammoniacke, *Galbanum*, an. ℥ j ß. *Opoponax*, Mirrhe, Frankincence, ana. ℥ ß. with Rosin, Turpentine, and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Moreoue, the Phisitian must look diligently to the disease, & as he seeth cause, sometime adde, and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie, or attenuate, or dissolue, or which adde strength. In conclusion, cupping glasses fastned with scarification, is not a little profitable. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene.

IT chanceth sometime not only through weakenesse of the attractiue vertue which is in the Spleene, but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dreggie humor of Melancholie is deriued from the Liuer vnto the Spleen, there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure and naughtie bloud is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the body is corrupt, and inclineth to blackenesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased, haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be known by those causes which we spake of in the chapter of the obstruction of the Liuer. This euill is knowne by heauines which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know, specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may find great plentie rehearsed in the chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines. But the Spleene hath need of stronger medicines, for as much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humors, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer, this onely obserued, that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that do adde strength to the Spleene. The humours being prepared, then they must be purged by such medicines as do purge grosse and dreggie humours, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicins both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former chapter, and in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. For those places will shew you medicines abundantly. *Cause.* *Signa.* *Diet.* *Cure.* *Præparatio humorum.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Iaundeis.

THe Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of melancholy all ouer the body. Somtimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skinne, the liuer being safe, as in the *crisis* of diseases. Many times the Iaundeis is caused, and doth chance when the bloud is corrupted, without a feuer, or some outward occasion, and is made colericke, as it chanceth by *Ictterus, auri-go, arcuatum, regium.* *Causa.*

biting of venimous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stung of a [illegible] had all his bodie spotted like the colour of Leekes. Also it may chance through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the liuer, such corruption of humours may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with paleneſſe. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead: and also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the Spleene. Also it is caused many times through weakeneſſe of the bladder that receiueth the choler, which doth not draw, as it was wont to do, the cholericke humor from the liuer vnto him, and therefore leaueth the bloud vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessells, whose mouthes are derived from the gall to the liuer, and do not therefore draw the cholericke humour. Also many times through obstruction of the passages, which go to the bowells. But that we may discerne well the causes of the Iaundeis, you must of ne-
Signa. ceſſitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholericke deiections do inuade, and there be heauineſſe in their right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the liuer: by whose violence the bloud is changed into choler, and carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauineſſe and griefe, the euill is engendred onely through hote distemper of the liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauineſſe about the right side, white excrements be auoyded: in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come foorth without that heauineſſe, you may iudge their strength to be weake, either the attractiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholericke humor from the liuer, or weakeneſſe of the expulsiue vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humours be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholy sent to the skinne together
Black humors. with the bloud, they be vexed also grieuously: for there followeth it sadneſſe without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoide blacke vrine, but their dung is like the colour of coperous or shoomakers bleach, and their wombe is much costiue. But those that haue the Iaundeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they do not so mue abhorre meats, they auoide white egestions, their vrines be coloured like Saffron, and they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the Iaundeis, there chanceth sluggishneſſe to moue, and a contrary mind to sweete meates. Also itch of the whole bodie followeth. The whites of the eyes and the parts of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes, do betoken it by
Cure of Iaundeis comming through crisis of a feuer. their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifie an abundant humour. The Iaundeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis* when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussiue oiles, and all

things that ratifie the skinne, as be, oiles of Cammomill, of Dill, of *Irees*, or such like. Also Rosemary sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the laundeis caused through biting of a venimous beast, are to be cured almost as those be which are bitten with a mad dog, of the which we will speake in another place. To those that haue the laundeis through hot distemper of the liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the liuer: therefore that which wee haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the laundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiueth the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed, bloud-letting, & purging. In them therfore that blood doth much abound, together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines, or stretching out about the liuer or the spleene, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him bloud, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, and that if the liuer be affected euill: but if the spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme: you must draw out the blood now and then, lest if you should draw it out on heapes, the strength of the sick should faile him. And if we be prohibited from bloud-letting, we may conueniently minister a clister. For a clister may wel be cast in after bloud-letting; for the auoiding out of the dung, maketh easie breath: and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowells it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humours that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort: ℞. both the Endiues, Horehound, Agrimonie, Maidenhaire, Origan, Wormewood, ana. M.j. seeds of Annise, Fennell, Parsley, Sperage, an. ℥.ij. ß. Licorice, *Apium*, Fennell, the rootes of them, ana ℥.j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them, and take of the licour of that decoction, ℥. xiij. *Cassia fistula*, ℥j. *Hierapicra*, ℥.ß *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, ℥.ij. oiles of Dill and *Irees*, ana ℥.j. ß Salt, ℥ j. commixe them all and make a clister. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease, yet so, that the humors be first attenuated, and made thinne by broths, potions, and also medicines. Therefore hee must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, and pot herbes prouoking vrine, specially Endiue, Sperage, Louage, Fennell, and such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of goats. For his sauce Vineger is good, wherein *Aristolochia* hath beene steeped. He must abstaine from fruits, but let his banket be Almonds, a few at once, and Cicer a little rosted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a little. Wine white and thinne, and not verie old, is good. For medicines let him haue those that be taught in the chapter of the obstruction of the Liuer, and also in the first Booke the eleuenth chapter. Aboue other specially *Apium*, Parsley, Maidenhaire, Calamint, Veruaine, roote of Chickeweed, or Mather, *Aristolochia*, *Serpillum*, S. Iohns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being prepared and extenuate, at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the laundeis; for through the drinesse of their stomacke, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of Rubarbe descri-

Of venimous biting.

Cure of Laundeis of hote distemper of the liuer or inflammation.

Cure of the Laundeis through obstruction.

Vena sectio.

Clyster.

Victus ratio.

Purgatio.

bed in the first booke the 11. chapter. Also *Hierapicra*, *Electuarium de* [illegible] *sarum*, *de Psyllio* and *Diaphœnicon*. And if you profit him nothing with the [illegible] purgation, you must returne againe to those things which haue vertue to take away obstructions & stopping: & after three daies you must purge him more vehemently againe. If the laundeis be engẽdred through disease of the spleen, you must turne to the chapter of melancholiousnesse, & the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. The bellie being purged, you must againe minister medicines which do purge the intrailes. For which purpose the roote of *Cyclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrailes, but also it is most meete to shut out the choler by sweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you must helpe the exclusion of the sweat by couerings and warmings in bed. You may giue of it, ℥.ii. or iii. with *Aqua mulsa*. Also iuice of the barke of Radish doth notably wel, if it be mixed with sweet wine vnlaied, or *Vinum mulsum*, so that ℥.ii. of the iuyce be tempered with ℥.i. of wine. Also earthwormes drie, giuen three dayes with *Vinum mulsum*, do send out the laundeis by the vrine. Also you may giue very profitably iuyce of Endiue and Succory to them that haue feuers, by it selfe, and to them that lacke feuers, with wine. Also iuyce of *Cuscuta* profiteth maruellously. Also Cammomill is most profitable, which is called *Leucanthemum*, and also *Buphthalmum*. But all the medicines ministred in drinke, let them be ministred in a bath, if it can be, when the patient sitteth in a great hot vessell. Also you must be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet that recomforteth and refresheth strength, by the which the vertue expulsiue may be repayred: and if any member be hurt, let it be strengthened, and let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Also it is good for him to vse exercises, gestations, annointings and sweating out. For this purpose drie hote houses are good: in the which annoint the body with oyle wherein *Serpillum* or Rosemarie hath beene sodden. And if any of the laundeis be left about the face and the eyes, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoyding after his accustomed manner, you must vse infusions into the nose: for which purpose iuyce of *Cyclaminum* is powred in: also *Nigella* with Vineger, iuyce of the roote of Beetes and *Anagallu*. Also let the sicke, sitting in a bath, draw into his nostrils very sharpe Vineger, and let him keepe it a while, pressing his nostrils together, and it will purge maruellously.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill state of the body.

Definitio. *Cachexia* in Greeke is nothing else but an euill and naughtie state and disposition of the body. For it is in such case that it is spread abroad in waterinesse, and all the whole body is loose and waxeth soft. This disease for the most part is engendred of a long sicknes. Also it followeth when some intraile is hardned, specially after the hardnesse of the Liuer and the Spleene. Also it chanceth often in a continuall *Dysenteria*, & the disease called *Cœliacus morbus*. Also through letting of some accustomed excretion. The whole body is made whitish, and weake, so that his legges are scarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digestions be letted, his appetite remaining still: but afterward

Causa.

Signa.

Cinctura Hiera (i Sarza) Rat. sib. Syr: Hiera Simplicis ℥i: Vini albi Calliti ℥iii. M: Utend in ieiu

and therefolloweth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is seldome and weake. Also their belly sendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are specially taken with this disease, which do soone perish through weakenesse of the vitall facultie, and because the iuice doth breathe out of them readily through thinnesse of the skin: But they that be of full age, do seldome fall into this disease, and do soone get it away againe. If this disease do endure long it turneth into the Dropsie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. Let his diet altogether be thinne and drie: therefore let their meats be simple, and which will easily digest, and that can ingender the best bloud. Let them eschue all fruits also that ingender grosse and viscous humours, and that be hard to digest. Wine is good for them which is white, thinne, and odoriferous. For the cure, if the disease happen by letting of accustomed excretion, you must stirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therfore you must vse bloud-letting, if nothing do let it, which you must draw out by little and little at sundry times, vnto the third or fourth day, in them that fell into this disease through retention of the hemorhoides or menstruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of vicious humours, bloud-letting is hurtfull. Therefore rather purge them with some conuenient purgation. The body being purged, let him vse chiefly waters that spring by themselues of Alume, and Salt-peter, and afterwards sulphurous waters Also let them exercise diuers deambulations, gestations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exercises. After let them vse annointings with oile, wherein is put somewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *Nitrum* and salts. To cure the wearinesse, apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Also a potion of Wormewood helpeth them maruellously, and *Dropaces* applied. Also if the liuer be affected, or some other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before prescribed. If the euill turne into the Dropsie, you shall find it next.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropsie.

THere be three kinds of Dropsie. The first is called in Greeke, *Ascites*: the second *Tympanites*: and the third *Anasarca*, *Hyposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leucophlegmatia*. *Ascites*, is when much wateric humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *Peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites*, is when much windinesse & superfluous breath is gathered in the aforesaid places of the belly. *Anasarca*, is when the humor is dispersed throughout the whole bodie, that all the flesh appeareth altogether moist and wet like a sponge or paper. The Dropsie is caused through great coldnesse of the liuer, or through other parts very notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the same affect. The liuer is affected by the Splene being cold, and by the stomacke and the bowells, also by the lungs, the reines and the midriffe. Also it chanceth through vnmeasurable auoyding of the Hemorrhoides, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menstruis, or through some other great affection of the wombe. For in all these the liuer hath no vnnaturall swelling, and yet the body is taken with the Dropsie, onely through refrigeration of the Liuer, affected in the beginning. But afterward sometime it also waxeth hard, which

Ascites.

Tympanites.

Anasarca.

Causa.

is euident to be seene in them, which through vntimely drinking of ... ter haue their liuer cooled on heapes, so that the Dropsie followeth by ... by, before the liuer be lifted vp into a knotty swelling. Many haue fallen into the dropsie after the gout & through the vexing paine of the huckle bones. Most commonly those which feele not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the Iaundeis, the Dropsie followeth it. And it followeth *Cœliacus morbus*, and *Dysenteria*. Commonly euery Dropsie causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtie colour. Also they abhorre meate, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also for the most part there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the Dropsie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*. Among the said three kinds of dropsies, *Tympanites* is the most perillous; *Ascites* lesse perillous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of Dropsies: that their meate be easie of digestion, and sufficiently coact and drie. For that meate that is loose and moist, is apt to be turned into watrinesse. Therefore let his bread be very well baked, and let it haue Salt, *Ammi*, Fennel, Annise, or Commin commixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauened, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of Birds the driest are good, as Partriches, Turtles, Blackebirds, Thrushes, and such like. Of foure footed beasts, Goates and Hares. Also Chickens, their extreme parts, when they are rosted. Of fishes, Crabs of flouds. Also Egges rosted are good. Let him vse pot-herbes but seldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heat: as is *Apium*, Parsley, *Daucus*, Rocket, Peniroiall, Coleworts, Garlicke sodden, Onions and Leeks. He must altogether abstaine from pulses. For sauce, let him vse Vineger with Pepper, Cinamon and such like. Let their salt be compound with Fennel, Hysope, Rosemarie, and *Apium*. You must giue them so much drinke only as shall suffice somwhat to breake their thirst: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage them that be sicke of the Dropsie, without measure. They must drinke thin wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they must eschue sweet wines and *Mulsum*: Vineger doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreouer, let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschue much fruits and second tables: yet Nuts, Almonds, Pomegranates, Peares sodden, and drie Figges, are to be giuen vnto them, but let them take all those moderately, and not euery day. Let not their bed be verie soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them dry herbs, as be Peniroial, Calamint, Origan, and such like: for it is maruellous, how much those do drie vp while they sleep: so that it hath been proued, that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheate, haue risen againe after sleep strong and safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer & a faire day: but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houses being warmed, & nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, and to be caried hither & thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feet, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also the patient must be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into hote

Signa.

Diet.

Panis.

Potus.

Exercitatio.

hote sand. After exercises wipe off the sweate with sharpe linnen clothes. Also it is verie good if you vse daily thrice or foure times frictions: for this doth open the passages that are shut, and drieth vp, extenuateth and casteth asunder humours. Therefore it doth verie quickely prouoke forth much sweate, and constraineth the flesh. They must be rubbed with drie hands, or with Salt beaten in water, or hote oile. After this they must be washed with Alume water, or Sulphure water, or salt water. For many which haue beene taken with the Dropsie *Anasarca*, and haue vsed such kinds of baths, they haue sufficed to weare out the disease, and also to make a stronger state of the bodie. And hitherto we haue rehearsed a common diet for all kind of Dropsies. For the cure, the remedie that is common for all Dropsies, is, that by and by in the beginning, you must purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do, both by bloud-letting, and by purgations, and by those medicines that prouoke vrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kind, we will teach in the chapters following, in which we will follow the cures of them euerie one particularly. *Curatio.*

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Dropsie Anasarca.

IN the Dropsie *Anasarca*, all the whole body and the flesh appeareth loose and wet like a sponge, as it is said: so that all the whole bodie swelleth vp, and is like a dead body. *Signa.* In this disease you must beginne the cure with letting of bloud, specially if the euill be engendred of suppression of hemorrhoids or menstruis, and if age and strength will suffer it. For by this meanes the abundance of humours that do hurt, are drawne out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is swifter, and the cause of the disease is minished, and also health commeth againe with lesse labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out and purged by bloud letting, you must come to the remedy or purging medicines. But if there be need of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulsion, you shall minister decoctions and other things which be rehearsed before in the chapters of weaknesse of the Liuer, and obstruction of the Liuer. For which purpose minister also syrupes of Wormewood, of tame Endiue with the broad leaues, of Agrimonie and *Bizantia*. Let the purging medicines be of Simples, Rubarbe and Agaricke; of Compounds, pilles of Rubarbe, *pilulæ de Hiera simplici*, and pilles of Agaricke, and such like. Also *Hierapicra* is good in the beginning, because it taketh away obstruction, and addeth strength to the intrailes. Therefore you must only beware that you minister not purging medicines that be strong, and which adde no strength to the liuer: but you must bring forth the hurtfull humour with easie medicines by litle and litle. For if you purge but once, and on heaps, you destroy the strength maruellously, and coole the liuer. Therefore euery weeke you must make the wombe soluble, and you must alwaies passe from gentle remedies by litle and litle to the stronger. Therefore in this kind of Dropsie the Antidotes *Diapharnicon, Electuarium Nidum*, be good. Also the root of Elderne sodden in wine doth purge notably. Also the root of Walwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreouer, the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth from *Purgatio.*

purging medicins, you muſt miniſter thoſe things that adde ſtreng[th] uer, whereof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of ob[ſtruction] & weakenes of the liuer. Alſo miniſter thoſe things which prouoke vrin[e] which purpoſe, you may well miniſter *Diarrhodon abbatis, aromaticum Roſat[um] Dialacca, diacurcuma* trochisks of Agrimony, of Rubarbe, Wormwood, *Theri-*

Tritura. *aca*, & ſuch like. And this medicine profiteth notably ℞. the powders of *Diacurcuma* & of *Dialacca*, ana ℈.j. powders of *Diatrion ſantalon*, and *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ℥.ß. powder of *aromaticum Roſarum*, ℈.j. Rubarbe choſen, ℥ ß. ſeeds of Endiue, with the broad leaues of Melons, and of Fennell, ana. ℈ij. of Wormwood, Cammomill, & Withwind, ana. ℈.j. of Nutmegs, Squinant, and Spikenard, ana. ℈.j.ß. of very white Sugar, ℥.j commixe them together, and

Alia. make a powder. Alſo this profiteth maruellouſly: ℞. ſeeds of Caraway, Fenell, & Anniſe, ana. ℈.ij. ſeeds of Comin, and S. Iohns wort, ana ℈.j. ſeeds of *Ammeos*, Parſley, *Daucus*, & Louage, ana. ℥.ß. the roots of *Ireos*, and of *Aſarum*, ana. ℥j. Wormwood, ℈.j. of Licorice, ℥.j. Sugar the weight of all the reſt, commixe them all, & make a powder. And you muſt do your diligence, that in *Anaſarca* the medicines be more drie then moiſt, becauſe the whole ſtate of the body is ſo watery. Moreouer, you muſt apply thoſe medicines outwardly, which can drie vp humors, as be cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, ointments, & other like things

Cataplaſmata that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplaſme is good made of Barley & Beane meale, of Fenugreeke, of the root of Walwort, of Laurell berries, of Wormwood, and of Origan ſodden in wine, and laid ouer all the whole body. Alſo Oxes dung conueniently dried, may wel be applied with *Poſca* or *Oximel*, hauing the fourth part of Brimſtone put to it. Alſo freſh Cheeſe hauing much Creame being laid to, maketh well againſt all ſwelling parts. Moreouer Doues dung, and Goates dung, Mayweed, and Cammomill, by euen portions bruiſed, ſodden in Vineger and Honey, may be applied. Moreouer you muſt vſe emplaiſters of Leauen, drie Figges, *Nitrum*, *Ireos*, Melilot, Sage, Peniroyall, *Cardamomum*, *Sulphur viuum*, Laurell berries, Stauefacre, ſalt Armoniacke, Maſticke, Frankinſence, Sothernwood, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, Doues dung, make it vp with *Oximel*. But you muſt altogether eſchue fatte and rozenny Cerates, for they engender windineſſe, and cauſe ſwellings. But yet the legges and the hands, and other parts of the bodie being ſwollen, may often be annointed

Vnguentum. with this ointment in the Sunne, or by a fire. ℞. of *vnguentum Agrippa* ℥j. of the meales of Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, Beanes, and Barley, ana. ℥.ij. ſeeds of *Althæa*, *Nigella*, *Daucus*, ana. ℥ j.ß. *Sulphur viuum*, ℥.iij. Bolearmoniacke, ℥.ij. root of *Ireos*, ℥.ij.ß. roch Alume, Frankinſence, ana. ℥ j.ß. *Euphorbium*, ℥j. oiles of *Ireos*, white Lillies, and Cammomill, ana. ℥.j.ß. with Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the ſwollen parts verie often, it being melted on the coales. For his diet, you muſt ſeeke it in the former chapter of the Dropſie.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the Dropſie Aſcites.

IN the Dropſie *Aſcites*, all the whole belly is ſwollen vp; and if it be ſtricken, there is heard ſuch a ſound, as a bottell doth make that is not full of

wat[er]

water, but the other parts of the body, ſpecially the vpper parts, are not puffed vp nor ſwollen. Let his diet that hath this Dropſie, be of birds of Mountaines, and other meates eaſie of digeſtion, and which do ingender good iuyce, as is ſaid before in the thirtie two chapter. The cure muſt be begunne by vſing of purging medicines. Let them be ſuch as we rehearſed in the former chapter: Coleworts of the Sea, called *Soldana*, and *Soldanella* taken in drinke, excelleth all the reſt: for this ſheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hydropike water, ſo that many by the onely vſing of it, haue beene reſtored to health. Giue of it in wine or whey, ℥ ij or more, or leſſe, according to the diuerſitie of the body. Alſo pilles of *Sagapenum* are very good: and two drachmes or three of the iuyce of the roote of *Ireos*, putting to it, ℥ j. of Sugar. Alſo you muſt miniſter ſharpe clyſters, vnleſſe the belly be ſoluble of it ſelfe: for then it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this clyſter is ſpecially commended: ℞. flowers of Lawrell, ℥. ij. roote of Polypodie, Agaricke, ana. ℥ j ß. Dodder, or *Cuſcutha*, ℥. iij. ſeethe them in wine or water vntill the third part be conſumed. Then take of the liquor of that decoction being ſtrained, lib. 1. of *Benedicta laxatiua*, ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*, ℥. ij. ß *mel Roſarum*, ℥ j. oiles of Rew, Cammomill and *Ireos*, ana. ℥ j ſalt Gemme, ℥ j ß. commixe them all, and make a clyſter. For the ſame purpoſe, if you thinke good, you may ſeethe *Colocynthis*, *Cartanus*, Laurell berries, Anniſe ſeed, Ammi, and Caraway ſeeds, Rew, roote of Cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the aforeſaid remedies you muſt lay vpon the whole belly, ſome of the preſcribed cataplaſmes and emplaiſters. Alſo apply ointments and remedies that prouoke vrine and ſweate: and let him vſe exerciſes of the which we haue ſpoken abundantly before.

Diet.

Cure.

Clyſter.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Dropſie Tympanites.

IN this kind of Dropſie the belly is puffed vp and ſtretched out: and being ſtricken, it maketh a noiſe like a tabour or timbrell, but the other parts of the bodie waxe leane. It requireth like diet, that the other kinds of Dropſies haue: but in this all windie things are ſpecially to be auoided. Alſo let their exerciſes be much; & great thirſt doth helpe & ſuccour the patient ſtrongly. Let the cure be begunne with purging medicines, whereof you ſhall find examples before. Alſo it is good to caſt in clyſters, which haue vertue to diſſolue and diſcuſſe wind, as this is: ℞ rootes of *Apium*, and Fennell, ana. ℥ j. ſeedes of Anniſe, Fennell, *Daucus*, Louage, Parſley, and Comin, ana. ℥. ij. Caraway ſeed, ℥. iij. Rew, *Aſarum*, leaues of Walwort, Melilot, ana M j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being ſtrained, ℥. xij. *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥ ß. *Electuarium de baccis lauri*, ℥. iij. oiles of Rew and Dill, ana. ℥. j ß. Salt, ℥. j ß. commixe them together, and make a clyſter. You muſt giue alſo vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you muſt vſe as well inwardly as outwardly, thoſe things that diſſolue and diſcuſſe windineſſe, whereof you find plentie in the chapter of the Cholicke. The belly muſt daily be nouriſhed with *Panicum*, *Milium*, Salt, Branne, leaues of Rew, Cammomill flowers, hote aſhes ſewed in

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Clyſter.

Sacculi Ceratum. bags. Also you may apply to it this cerate: ℞. flowers of [illegible] Melilot, ana. ℥.j. ß. Mints, Sauorie, *Asarum*, ana. ℈.j. seeds of [illegible] Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, ana. ℥.j. *Cardamomum*, ℈.ß. Mirrhe, *Castoreu[m]* j oile of Rew, ℥.iij. oile of Dill, ℥.j ß. Rosin and Waxe, as much as is [illegible] ent, make a cerate. Moreouer, cupping glasses fastned often to the whole b[illegible] ly lightly and with much flame, do maruellously profite: Afterward the belly must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long vntill it be red. Inwardly he must vse Antidotes, *Dianisum*, *Diacuminum*, and *Electuarium è bacchis Lauri*, or these Lozenges. ℞. of the powder of *Dianisum* and *Diacuminum*, ana ℈.j the powders of the Antidote of Laurell berries, ℥.j. the powder of *Diagalanga*, ℥. ß. seeds of Annise, Carawaies, *Daucus*, and Fennell, ana. ℈.ß. leaues of Rew, seeds of *Apium* and Louage, ana. ℈ j. Sugar, ℥.vj. dissolue it in the distilled waters of Fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the chapter of the cholicke.

Lozenges.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of reines that send forth bloudie vrine.

Cause. MAny times there happeneth a disease of the reines, through the which thin wheyish bloud is pissed. It is caused through weakenesse of the reines, which be not therefore able to diuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *Vena cana* vnto the reins. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud to the reines, and other grosse matter. Also oftentimes the reines do send out bloud likewise as they are wont in the Hemorhoids. Moreouer some do void out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue lift vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Somtime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines by sharpe humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weakenesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out very wheyish: but if it be through amplitude and largenesse of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuites, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chance through breaking of a veine, then the bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent forth by litle and litle, and paine doth vexe the reines. Therefore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine which is caused through weakenesse of the reines, or amplitude of the vessells that straine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and restrictiue meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are rehearsed in the chapter of spitting of bloud. You must abstaine from those things specially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke besides those things that are rehearsed in the chapter aforesaid, minister decoction of the roote of Comfery, and *Tragacantha* ministred, that is, steeped in blacke wine, is good. Also ℥ j. of Harts horne with wine: iuyce of Marigolds doth stop bruisings out of bloud from the reines. Likewise leaues of Willow brayed with Wine, *lapis Hematitis*, ℥.j. roote of white Thorne, and decoction

Signa.

Cure of bloudy vrine by weakenesse of the reines.

of

of Knotgrasse. Moreouer, ℥j. of Bolearmoniacke ministred is good. Syrupes of Roses and Mirtles, Trochisks of Amber, of *Terra Lemnia*, and of *Spodium*. Moreouer, sheepes Milke is onely praised, being ministred fasting, ℥iiii. with ℥j. of Bolearmoniacke commixed with it. Apply outwardly to the reines and the loynes those things which be described against spitting of bloud, and in the chapter of *Dysenteria*, and other eruptions of bloud; and whatsoeuer is together with his restraining and drying, adde strength also: as be leaues of Brier and Oke, Mast, Mirtle berries, Pomegranate rindes, *Balaustia*, and such like. After this the state of the body must be refreshed and restored with meats of good iuyce, with milke and flesh of birds, and with Swans flesh that is leane; that thereby the whole body may be brought to his former strength, and the reines being strengthened also, they may fulfill their owne proper office, and that they may diuide and straine out the wheyish humour from the bloud. But if the reines do send out bloud according to the circuits, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of sharpe humours flowing from aboue, then by and by you must cut a veine of the same side in the arme. To those that send out by circuits bloud, let them bloud a little before the circuit, but let the other bloud by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the bloud, that his pulling backe and auersion may be done by little and little. Let the places about the reines be couered with sponges wet in *Posca*, or moist wooll, with oile of Roses and Vineger. After this applie ointments, emplaisters, and cerates described in the places before rehearsed. Also a cupping glasse may commodiously be applied, specially if you suspect inflammation to be present in them which pisse bloud through breaking of a veine. Also potions are good rehearsed before in the chapter of spitting of bloud. In the meane season also, the sicke must be driuen from all salt and sharp things. But when excretion of bloud ceasseth, he must vse a diet that doth not ingender much bloud, specially in those that void out bloud by circuit. Also the vpper parts of the body must continually be exercised. In those which pisse bloud through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you shall cure them after the bloud is stopped by those things that are spoken of in the chapter of Exulceration of the reines.

Cure of bloudy vrine coming through circuits, or breaking of a veine, or gnawing.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

THE reines are vexed with inflammation for diuerse causes. For both corrupt humours, and stripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medicines do ingender inflammation of the reines, and specially continuall and vehement ridings. There cometh to the sicke a beating paine behinde about the first ioynt of the backe, a little aboue the bastard ribs: but the paine stretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, specially the right side rein being vexed, but downeward vnto the bladder and priuie members, and the loines & hips, and also to the share and thighs. Also there followeth astonishment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be stretched out right, nor he cannot go on his feete. And whether sneezing or any other concussion do chance, they are vexed with most vehement paine, their extreme parts be cold, and most the

Cause.

Signe.

calfes of the legges, and the feete. There is present difficultie in [illegible] ter, and they piſſe continually and painefully. In the beginning [illegible] thinne and waterie, hauing no reſidence in it: but the inflammation [illegible] worſe, it is more rubicund. Alſo afterward it is groſſe and filthie, and [illegible] vehement feuers preſent. And if the inflammation increaſe ſtill, all theſe ſignes waxe more vehement. To theſe commeth diſpoſition to vomite, and gnawing of the ſtomach, and vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed, and ſweate vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is ſtopped, ſo that they are puffed vp with wind, and do ſend out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meate, and to ſome there are continuall exacerbations, but to ſome betweene whiles. And generally, egeſtion of the wombe, and much excretion of vrine do go before thoſe paines. The ſicke muſt lie in a very ſoft bed: and the firſt day he muſt abſtaine from meate, but you may not extend his faſting to many dayes. For the vrines being made more pure and ſharpe by faſting, do vexe with moſt vehement biting and gnawing. Therefore in the beginning you muſt nouriſh them with thin ſoupings that do eaſe and ceaſe gnawing and biting, as is, Broth of *Ptiſan*, or *Alica* of Barley. Alſo Mallowes for his potherbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water, wherein a little Cinamon hath bin ſodden. To be ſhort, let his diet be thin, and ſuch as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you muſt by and by let him bloud, and you muſt cut the veine that is in the hamme, or in the anckles, and that muſt be done on the leg that is right againſt the reine that is vexed. Alſo ſometime (as *Galen* ſaith) you muſt let bloud of the arme, (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of bloud is preſent. After bloud-letting you muſt come to outward medicines, as cataplaſmes, foments, liniments, emplaiſters, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, and to eaſe paine, made of oile of Roſes, Quinces and Cammomill, of Barley meale, Beane meale, Fenugreeke, Lineſeed, and ſuch like, which be rehearſed in the chapters of inflammation of the liuer and the ſpleene. And if the paine be not eaſed by thoſe things that be applied outwardly, apply a cupping glaſſe to the loines, and the guts; and ſcarification being made, you muſt draw out much bloud. Then you muſt vſe nouriſhment of ſponges, and other things which can eaſe paine. You muſt onely beware all this time, that you giue not ſuch medicines to drinke as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humours to the inflamed parts. This medicine I haue proued to be ſingularly good: ℞. the iuice of Clary, and the iuice of Nightſhade, ana ℥. ij. drunke in ℥. vi. of ſtale Ale morning and euening ſixe dayes together. Alſo you muſt beware in the beginning of the inflammation of purging medicines. But yet you may vſe ſoft clyſters (ſpecially if the belly be coſtiue) made of the decoction of Mallowes, or Lineſeed, and Fenugreeke, or *Ptiſan* broth, putting to it oile of Violets, or Cammomill oile. But you muſt beware you put not in great abundance of it, for then the bowels being filled and ſtretched out with it, will preſſe together the reines. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceaſſed and concoct, which you may know by the ceaſſing of the paine, then alſo you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations concoct and digeſt, the vrine commeth forth much

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

Note.

much in quantitie and groſſe, and in thoſe that haue reſidence, it is good, and ſo iudged the beſt altogether. What medicins prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the 7. Booke of making of medicines, in the 7. chap. ſpecially among pot-herbs, Fennell, *Apium*, and Parſly wel ſodden, are good. And if by the aforeſaid medicines, the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauineſſe do reſt by vſing of the aforeſaid things, and alſo if difficultie of piſſing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vexe the patient, theſe betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as ſwiftly as you can, you muſt helpe the ſuppuration & breaking out of the matter. For the which purpoſe, a Sponge continually wet in water and oile, applied in ſtead of a foment, profiteth. For the ſame purpoſe alſo we vſe cataplaſmes which are made of Barley meale, Bran, Figs, *Althæa*, & ſuch like, rehearſed before in the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. Alſo it profiteth greatly to deſcend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as Mallowes, *Althæa*, Lineſeed, Fenugreeke. *Signa ſuppurationis.*

And if after perfect ſuppuration, the rupture & breaking be delayed and taried (which you may know if the feuers and pains waxe leſſe, & ſenſe of heauineſſe remaine about the reine that is affected) miniſter thoſe things in drinke which prouoke vrine, as is, decoction of Fennell, Peniroiall, Origan, and ſuch like: for theſe ſometime do break the ſuppuration, and purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vſing of them do profit nothing, you muſt waſh the belly with ſharpe cliſters: as with root of wild Cucumber ſodden & allaied, or decoction of Garlike or Radiſh. You muſt ſteep thoſe in Brine, and commixe a litle oile, whereby they may be made ſlippery to be powred in. Theſe muſt be throwne in with a cliſter pipe, & the ſicke muſt be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that ſuppuration, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Alſo if the rupture and breaking tary, Commin with wine called *Paſſum*, helpeth, and Rew with *Vinum muſſum*. Moreouer, the rupture being made, little peeces of fleſh being long, are ſent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be ſent out humours ſtinking, ſwart, and ſlimie: but if they be benigne and gentle, the matter that is piſſed forth, is white, equal, light, and without grieuous ſauor, and little in quantitie. After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, miniſter Milke with Hony, and other things which ſhall be rehearſed in the chapter of vlcers of the reins. *Signa per-fectæ ſuppurationis.* *Signa rupturæ factæ.*

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the ſtone in the Reines.

Nephritis Calculus Renalis

THE ſtone of the Reines happeneth oftener to men of perfect age then to children. The cauſe of ingendring of ſuch ſtones is continuall crudity and rawneſſe of the ſtomach, whereby abundance of groſſe and earthly humours is heaped vp together, and burning of fierie heate about the reines partcth the humours, and knits them together, and hardneth them into a ſtone. The ſtones be in the reines, nigh their ventricles, either little or great, and ſomtime ſmaller, ſometime many, differing among themſelues in greatnes, figure, colour, and ſharpnes: for they are found blacke, whitiſh and pale. There chanceth to the ſicke grieuous paine in the reines, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thruſt in, and yet there appeareth no ſwelling without. He can turne his backebone hardly. The leg that is right againſt the reine that is diſeaſed, is aſtonied, *Cauſe.* *Differences of ſtones.* *Signa.*

there is preſent abhorring of meate, & vomiting. About the begin-
ning and ſtopping, the vrine is piſſed forth little in quantitie,
Afterward there followeth perfect ſuppreſſion of the vrine, and the
uoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go the ſtoole. Some-
there is auoided forth bloud, through the violéce of the ſtones, ſpecially if
be ſharp ſtones. Alſo the vrine hath grauelly reſidence, ſpecially when the ſtone
is remoued from the reins; which ſignes aforeſaid *Hippocrates* declareth in *lib.*
6. Epid. par. 1. *Aphor.* 5. Moreouer things that be light and round, are eaſily ſent
out: but not ſo, if they be of any other forme or faſhion: but ſpecially if they
Curatio. be long and ſharpe, they are hard to be ſent out. When the ſtone, ſtopped in
the reines, doth cauſe moſt vehement paines, leſt abundance of bloud through
the greatneſſe of the paine ſhould come downe together to the member diſ-
eaſed, in a body that is full of humors and ſtrong, you muſt by and by cut the
Vena ſectio. veine in the ham of that leg that is aſtonied, and is right-againſt the reine that is
Purgatio. diſeaſed. But in thoſe that labour of ill digeſtion or vicious humours, purging
of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted
except ſome other thing do forbid them: which alſo *Hippocrates* biddeth, while
he teacheth that yong men ſhould be purged with Hellebore. Alſo if it be not
lawfull to let bloud, nor to miniſter purgation, you muſt waſh the womb by
miniſtring of cliſters, which you muſt do at that time ſpecially, when there is
great plenty of excrements in the bowels. But you muſt only beware that they
be not ſtrong cliſters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other
places to the bowels, leſt the paſſages of the vrine ſhould be ſtreightned and
preſſed together: but let them be ſuch as are onely able to auoide the excre-
Clyſter. ments contained in the bowels, as is this cliſter: ℞. Mallowes, *Althæa*, Mercury,
Maidenhaire, Parietarie, ana. M. j. water Creſſes, M. j. ß. ſeeds of Parſley, *Apium*,
Fennell, and Flaxe, ana. ℥. iij. root of Gladon, ℥ j. ß. Bran, ℥ j. boile them in iuſt
quantitie of water vnto the third part, & then take of the liquor of that deco-
ction being ſtrained, ℥ xi. of *Caſſia fiſtula*, ℥ j. of *Hierapicra*, ℥. ß. *mel Roſarum*
ſtrained, ℥ j. ß. oiles of Dill, Rew, and Cammomill, ana. ℥ j. ſalt, ℥ ij. commixe
Note. them all & make a cliſter. But we may in no caſe vſe continuall cliſters, & neg-
lect almoſt all other remedies, as many Phiſitions do now adays, but vſe them
twiſe or thriſe, & ſo, that they be not kept aboue their accuſtomed time. For if
they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cauſe preſſing together, and
ſtreightnes of the reins, & the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged
and emptied of excrements, you muſt miniſter thoſe medicins, which can loo-
ſen the conduits and paſſages; for which purpoſe the region of the reines, and
Vnguentum. the loines muſt be annointed with this medicine: ℞. oiles of Dill, and of ſweet
Almonds, ana. ℥ ij. oile of Cammomill, ℥ j. ß. Hens greaſe, & Gooſe greaſe, an.
℈ ij. Butter without ſalt, ℥ j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make a ſoft oint-
Inſeſſions. ment. Alſo he muſt vſe inteſſions of the decoctions of Calamint, Origan, wa-
ter Creſſes, Coleworts, leaues of *Althæa*, Mallows, & ſuch like, or the ſick muſt
often be let downe into a great veſſell of warme ſweet water. Alſo foments of
Bran, with leaues of *Althæa* ſodden, being applied to the grieued place, be
Cataplaſmata very good. Alſo cataplaſmes made of Wheate meale, of Lineſeede, and Fen-
greeke, of Lupines, of the root of dog Fennell beaten very ſmall, and of Cam-
momill

mill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine, called *Passum*, about the loines and the belly. Neither shall he do rashly which applieth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed, to the bladder and the share. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another, before the first do coole: for cold doth draw together and bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines, and in the conduits of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it, that it coole not; for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these driue not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those things which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: Gladon, S. Iohns wort, Parsly, *Orcoselinum*, Grommell, *Ammi*, seed of *Daucus* and Fennell, *Asarum*, roote of Brionie and Mather, barke of the roote of Capers, Sperage, and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is, root of Peucedane, or dog Fennell, Briony, *Apium*, and *Radicula*. Also commixe with them, those things that breake & teare the stone in the reins, as is, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, *Bdellium*, Tutsan seed, *Bruscus* root, Saxifrage, Betonie, roote of *Damosonium*, broth of Cicers, roote of Cipresse, Grommell, *lapis Iudaicus*, *Xanthium*, the seed and roote of *Althæa*, gumme of Plumbtree, earth Wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the Sea. Euerie one of these part of them sodden, and part of them very finely powdred, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone at that time, when the vehement paines be released, which chanceth when the stone is remoued, and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschue much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great abundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and loosen the reines, and the conduits of the vrine, with foments, cataplasmes and insessions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clisters, let the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a litle released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subtilly fastned to, if inflammation do not let it: for oftentimes cupping glasses do so remoue on heapes those stones, that they cease the paines by and by, that is, the stones being carried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten the cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priuy members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduits of the vrine. Moreouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine, as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must go about to let the sicke lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioynts of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by all the meanes that you can inuent, you may make the stone to fall out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickely: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe,

and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profite nothing by [illegible] ing, you must put in an instrument called *Catheter*, which is apt to draw out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone [illegible] in the breadth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it staieth about the middle passage of the yard, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must powre hot water by little and little, from the furthest parts of the yard, or you must put the yard in hote oile, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some decoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawne is wont to fall out. But when you cannot draw him out this way neither, you must cut the yard aboue with a litle wound, about the bignesse of an Akorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yard; for almost alwayes it turneth into a *Fistula*, and afterward the vrine cometh out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone. The greatest thing to auoid ingendring of the stone, is to vse meats of good iuyce, easie of digestion, and moderate. Therefore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but little all kinde of Pulse, and of corne: also Cheese, Milke, and the meates that are made of them. Moreouer, blacke wine, and plenty of flesh, and generally all things of grosse iuice, & that be ouer hote and sharpe. You must admonish them, whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke Wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine: or if vicious humours be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine, agreeing to their temperament. Also their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure & strained. Also let their wine be thinne and white, and not very old, for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily Parsneps very well sodden, Fennell, *Sium*, Peniroyall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of much effect: ℞. of the roots of Fennell, Sperage and *Filipendula*, ana ℥.j. rootes of Mather, ℈ j. rootes of *Aristolechia rotunda*, and *Althæa*, ana ℥.j. Licorice scraped, ℥.ij. the stones of sea Sponges, and *lapis Iudaicus*, ana ℈.j. seeds of *Ammeos*, *Daucus*, Parsley, Saxifrage, Fennell, Annise, Grommell, ana ℥ ß. seeds of Melons, and Citrons pilled, an. ℥ j ß. seed of *Alkakengi*: ℥.ß. Pellitory of the wall, Mallowes, ana ℥ j. Pulioll mountaine, Maidenhaire, Peniroiall, *Asarum*, ana. ℥.ß. of the bloud of a male Goat dried, and prepared, ℥.j. *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacke*, ana ℥.ß. of Crabs eyes, Cinamon chosen, and Squinant, ana ℈ ij. beate all, and bring them into a most fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreouer the preparing of the Goats bloud aforesaid is taught of *Aetius*, *lib.* 11. *cap.* 12. Other remedies we will speake of in the chapter of the stone in the bladder.

Preseruation from the stone

Powder against the stone of the reines.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnmeasurable Pissing.

DIABETES is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst: & also whatsoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, it is pissed out again. This disease is ingendred of weakenesse of the retentiue vertue of the reines: but there is such strength of the attractiue vertue, that it sucketh the whole bodie through immoderate heate. There followeth to the sicke a stubburne thirst, neither are they filled by ministring any kinde of liquor. Therefore they are constrained to drinke continually, because that which is drunke goeth out so swiftly by the vrine againe. Also the bowels of the sicke seeme to burne, the loynes swell vp, and the stones and hanches also. And if yet more gnawing heat be increased in the bowels, the stomach is wrinckled, and the veines in it are lifted vp: all the state of the body is leane, and there chanceth grieuous consuming of the bodie. The effect of the cure consisteth in this, to stop the sharpnesse of the humor & the bloud, and with that to make the wheyish humour which is commixt with it, of slow mouing, and to correct the distemper of the reins. Therfore by and by, when the euil beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is best to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out bloud moderately. Also you must giue him things that prouoke vrine meanly, which may purge out the vicious humors that be setled in the reins. But if the euil be immoderate & old, you must neither vse bloud-letting, nor minister any thing that prouoketh vrine: for these do further the colliquation and consuming of the body, which doth chance also by it selfe. For in them that this euill is inueterate, their strength faileth them, and through bloud-letting the whole bodie is made sharper: and things that prouoke vrine, do multiplie & increase the euill in them. The greatest and chiefest remedie of this disease, is to reuomite that vp againe that is drunke. Let his drinke be very cold, as also let the rest of his diet be cooling. Therefore giue him meats of good iuice, & which can difficultly be changed, & do lacke mordacitie and gnawing: or which are able to stop mordacitie and sharpnesse, as be, rere egs, *Alica* made like a souping, and leane swines flesh much sodden. Also you may well giue them new Cheese well compact, and without salt, and milke wherein flint stones, or red hote steele hath beene quenched, the whey taken away. Also for souping, cold Ptisan broth is good. For pot-herbs, take Endiue, Lettuce, and Purslaine. Of fruits, Peares, Apples, & Pomegranates. Also fishes of grauelly places be good. He must drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to wash the salt humours which cause the thirst; for wine changeth the temperature of the body to sweetenesse. In drinke also you must minister vnto him iuyce of Pomegranates, *Rob de Ribes*, or *Rob de Barberies*. For medicines, minister vnto him the iuyce of Knotgrasse, or of Sanguinarie, with blacke wine. Also decoction of Comfery, & of Dates, & of Mirtle beries, or Peares. Likewise firups of Roses, & Mirtles, and such like. Also Trochisks of *Spodium* may be ministred with iuice of knotgrasse, or black wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes & the share, ointments, cataplasmes, & cerates that do coole: as be those which are made of rose Vineger, *Polenta*, Lettuce, Ducks meat, Pellitory

Diabetes quid

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Diet.

Medicamenta

Localia.

of the wall, Vine leaues, Purſlaine, and ſuch like. For which purpoſe alſo, ointments do profite, made of oiles of Roſes and Mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of Nightſhade, or of Vine buds. Alſo you muſt lay to the Hypochondres or ſides, in forme of a cataplaſme, Barley meale, wrought vp with vineger and oile of Roſes. Alſo vſe this emplaiſter: ℞. Barley meale, ℥.ß. Vine buds, tops of Willow, *Burſa paſtoris*, ana. M.ß. the rind of Pomegranats, ℥.ij ß. Purſlaine, M.j. ſeedes of Quinces, ℥ j. red Roſes, M.j. ß. boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oile of Roſes, ℥.ij oile of Mirtles, ℥.j. boile them againe, and make a plaiſter. Of theſe aforeſaid things you may make a cerate, by putting to *Hypociſchidos*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Roſin & Waxe. Alſo you muſt prouoke them to ſweate, that the vicious humours may be turned to ſweating out. The beſt euaporation and ſweating is in a tunne, made with hearbs and other hote things to prouoke ſweate after ſuch ſort, that the head may be without the tunne. Or elſe apply a veſſell full of hote water to the feete, lying in his bed, and prouoke ſweate. Alſo waſh the conduite with Plantaine water, and burnt Alume.

Emplaſtrum.

Sudorum euocatio.

CHAP. XL.

Againſt vlcers of the Reines.

Cauſa. VLcers or biles of the reines be cauſed through rupture and breaking of the veines in the reines. Alſo it is cauſed through rotting of inflammation, and through ſharpe and gnawing humours, carried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loynes, with heauineſſe, and the vrine is piſſed forth without any impediment, which chanceth not ſo in the vlcers of the bladder. Alſo there is atter commixed in the vrine with little peeces of fleſh, or haires ſwimming in them; according to *Hippocrates* ſaying, 4. *Aphor.* 75. who ſaith, If bloud or atter be piſſed out, it ſignifieth exulceration, either of the reins, or of the bladder. And by and by after he ſaith, If in a groſſe and thicke vrine there appeare little peeces of fleſh, or as it were haires, they are ſent from the reines. Therefore when theſe appeare, let the ſicke eſchue crudities, and lacietie or fulneſſe. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digeſtion, or that will eaſily corrupt, or ingender inflammations or windineſſe. Let him chiefly abſtaine from thoſe things which do ſoone waxe ſoure or ſharpe; alſo from all ſharpe and burning things, and whatſoeuer doth breed and ingender choler, as is, much thirſt, abſtinence, hunger, labour, wrath, ſolitarineſſe, exercile, watching, and immoderate ſawces. He muſt eſchue aboue all things immoderate riding, & all vehement mouing and ſtirring: alſo he muſt auoid perpetuall idleneſſe, and continual bathing. He muſt vſe new bread well wrought & giue him fleſh of birds of the mountaines, & kids fleſh, and ſuch like tender fleſh. Alſo giue him ſcalie fiſhes of grauelly places, roſted on a gridiron. Moreouer, riuer Crabs, ſoupings of Ptiſan, and *Amylum* ſodden with milke, be maruellous good. Giue him alſo Milke mixed with Egs, and the fat broth of a Henne. Alſo rere Egs miniſtred alone, are good. Of Pot herbs, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purſlaine, and Lettuce, are good: but al theſe muſt be ſodden, for the ſicke muſt eate nothing that is raw, as is aforeſaid. Of fruits, Raiſins are not hurtfull, nor pine Nuts.

Renum vlcera Signa.

Diet.

Alſo

Also Almonds well blanched are good. Much drinke and strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hippocrates* saith, 5. *Aphor.* 20. is an enemy to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is alayed, and somewhat restrictiue: or let him drinke Goates milke, or Sheeps milke, or Almond milke. Carnall copulation is maruellous euill, not only for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesaid. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselues, and specially Alume waters, and Brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, as well outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humors, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humours. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is not good onely to auoid vicious humors, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vlcer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chance there: for it turneth the mouing of the humors into a contrary part. Also in the mean season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, Mallowes, Endiue, Sorrell, Purslaine, seed of Melons, Cucumbers, and Gourds, sirupes of Violets, Roses, and water Lillies, and the Conserues of them. But when the vicious humors be purged, he must drinke *aqua Mulsa*, or the decoction of Fenugreeke with hony, or of Cucumbers, or of Mallowes, or of Melons seed with *Hydromel*. Also minister Milke with Hony newly milked, and hot: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also Goats whey, decoction of Barley, Raisins, & Licorice, is maruellous good, and the iuice likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed (which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine neither peeces of the couer of the vlcer, nor yet dreggie and filthie matter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and litle in quantitie) then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him Bolearmoniacke, gumme Tragacanth, *Amylum*, *terra Lemnia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things this powder is maruellous good: ℞. *terræ Lemniæ*, Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Tragacanthæ*, *Spodium* burnt, an. ℥. j. *Amylum*, pine Nuts toasted, ana. ℥. ß. Lineseed, Cucumber seed blanched, Melons seed, ana. ℥. ij. seed of *Apium*, ℈. ij. Dragons bloud, ℥ j. beate them all together, and make a verie fine powder, of the which giue the sicke daily, ℥. ij. with Milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must apply such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplaisters and cerates, or ointments made of the oiles of Roses, and of Mirtles, of Barly meale, Frankinsence, Masticke, red Roses, and such like. Examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the bladder.

Curatio.

Vomitus.

Medicines stopping gnawing of humours.

Purging of the vlcers.

Glutinatiues.

Puluis.

To drie and strengthen the reines.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the stone in the bladder.

STones in the bladder do ingender oftener in children, then in older folke. When that vrine grosse and very thicke is carried into the largenesse of the

Calculus vesicæ.

bladder, it ſetleth and ſtayeth there, like dregges of wine, or muddy water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a ſtone. Therefore there be two ſpeciall cauſes of the ingendring of the ſtone in the bladder: that is, thickeneſſe of the vrine, and heat of children. They that haue the ſtone in the bladder, itch often, and do handle their priuy members, which alſo are ſwollen, and they are conſtrained to make water continually, and they are vexed with the Strangury, or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this diſeaſe is almoſt the ſame that the cure of the ſtone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, becauſe the ſtones of the bladder require ſtronger medicines, and you muſt apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The ſtones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with theſe medicines (that is) the ſeede and roote of Fennell, of Louage, blacke Piony ſeeds, Motherwort, Cammomill, the roote and ſeede of *Althea*, *Sium*, Maidenhaire, Sorrell rootes, the ſtones of Sponges, the ſtone of *Tecolithus*, Grommell, *Bruſcus*, root and ſeeds, the ſtones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the ſeed of little Burres, the barke of Capers, Sothernwood ſeed, Iacinth, white Violets, Smallage, Parſley, and other ſuch like, which do prouoke vrine, & which be rehearſed in the chapter of the ſtone in the reines. To theſe you muſt conioyne the moſt laudable remedie, that is, a hedge Sparrow being dreſſed in ſalt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the diſeaſe perfectly. For it expelleth the ſtones that are already ingendred by the vrine, and it letteth them from ingendring any more. Alſo Goats blood is a preſent remedie, as well for the ſtone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it diſſolueth thoſe that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, & eaſeth paine. Furthermore, if the ſtones of the bladder cannot come out by the paſſage of the vrine, but that they be there ſtopped, and compact together, & ſo do cauſe ſuppreſſion of vrine, thē the ſick muſt be laid vpward, ſo that his hips muſt lie vpward and higheſt, and then you muſt moue him hither and thither many wayes, that thereby the ſtone may fall out of the paſſage, and afterward bid him piſſe euen as he lieth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water ſo neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyring, and after that you muſt miniſter thoſe medicines which haue vertue to breake the ſtone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to paſſe by this meanes, you muſt come to cutting. The ſtone therefore being conſumed by any of the meanes aforeſaid, ſuch an order of diet muſt be appointed to the patient, that the ſtone may not ingender againe, which we haue preſcribed in the chapter of the ſtone in the Reines.

Signa.

Curatio.

To breake the ſtone in the bladder.

CHAP. XLII.

Of blond broken out of the Bladder, or curded in it.

IT chanceth ſometimes, that a veine breaketh in the bladder, and then ſome of the blood is ſent out, & ſome waxeth thicke & curdeth within. When the blond is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he waxeth pale, his pulſes be ſmall, darke, and thicke, he is ſorrowfull, he is cold, and his ſtrength decayeth. And ſometime when a clod of blood chanceth to fall into the paſſage of the vrine, then it ſtoppeth the going out of the vrine.

Cauſa.

Signa.

You

You must in this case, as also in other burstings out of bloud, cause a verie quicke and speedy remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawne backe often, and by little and little. Let the patient in his lying be laid vpward, and let his hips be lifted vp, and apply sponges dipped in *Posca*, that is, water and vineger sodden together, to coole him. Also the extreme parts must be bound, and the share must be couered with sponges dipped in *Posca*. If the euill increase, cupping glasses fastened to the ilions, and to the loines profit much. After irrigations with the sponges dipped in *Posca*, you must vse cataplasmes of Knotgrasse, Brambles, Plantaine and Pomegranate floures. Also vse cerates made of *Hypociſchis*, *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, and such like, rehearsed before in the chapters of spitting of blood, and, of the fluxe *Dysenteria*. You must poure into the bladder, iuice of Knotgrasse, Plantaine, or Millefolie, commixing with it *Acatia*, Bolearmoniacke, Trochiskes of *Spodium* and such like. Also inseſſions of such like things are good; for both *Posca* and decoction of *Lentiſcus*, and also of Brambles, and such like, are good. Also you must minister in drinke, medicines apt to bring out bloud, as be, *Rhaponticum* finely beaten, and xij. red seeds of Pionie, *Terra Lemnia*, Horsetaile, the roote of Centorie the great, the barke of Frankinsence, and such like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, first you must go about to dissolue and disperse that bloud with conuenient medicins. Therefore you must minister in drinke, Motherwort, *Stæchados*, Citrine, Wormewood, Sothernwood, shauing of a Vine, Radish seede, Hares or Goats creame, each of them with *Oximel*. Also *Oximel* ministred by it selfe doth profite maruellously, for it dissolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by little and little with the vrine. Apply outwardly baths, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to loosen and release, which you must seeke out of the chapter of the stone in the reines. Aboue other things this cerate is verie good: ℞. of the oiles of Roses and Cammomill, an. ℥.j ß. Calamint, Comin, leaues of Elderne, ana. ℥.iij. *Bitumen Iudaicum*, Gumme Ammoniacke, ana. ℥.ij. Hares creame, ℥ iij. Sothernwood, meale of Fenugreeke, ana. ℥.ß. *Sperma Ceti*, ℥.j. with Rosin and Waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a cerate to apply to the share. And if you profite nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is still stopped, you must of necessitie vse a cyring: by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you must againe minister the things aforesaid in drinke, and apply those things outwardly which do dissolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of blood will not yet be dissolued, you must come to the curing of it likewise as you did in the stone of the bladder.

Curatio.

To bring out bloud.

To dissolue curded bloud.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the Bladder.

OF diseases that be in the bladder, and ingendred there, the most grieuous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The sicke haue these tokens following. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wot not what: they vomite pure choler, and they cannot make water, the share becometh hard, & hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole,

Signa.

as is wont in the disease called *Tenasmus*: the ordure that commeth forth is thin, and hath no residence: also sometime inflations follow, and the wombe is costiue, the right gut being presled together by the inflammation of the bladder To them that haue this disease, if nothing let it, cut the veine of the hamme without any tarrying, or draw bloud of the anckles. Also minister to him a thinne kinde of diet, as is prescribed in other inflammations. He must also abstaine from wine, and he must vse water wherein a little Cinnamon hath beene sodden. Outwardly you must apply those things that haue power to ceasse and mitigate paine. Therefore the place of the bladder must be nourished with oile wherein hath beene sodden Dill, Lineseed, and sometime Rew and *Althea*. Medicines that be cold and restrictiue must altogether be forborne: and that chiefly because the bladder is full of sinews: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth, 5. *Aphoc.* 28.) is an enemy to sinewes. Moreouer, because cold things do shut vp and bind, and so do stop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it selfe) it increaseth it. And last of all, because cold things do prohibite and let that the humors causing inflammation, may be dissolued, consumed and digested: therefore medicines meanely hote are rather to be applied, which haue vertue to ceasse paine, to looosen the pipe and passage of the vrine, and to dissolue the inflammation. Also let the guttes be washed with soft and easie clisters, and after the dung is come forth, cast in oile of Dil, or such like thing, to ease and ceasse the paine. It is good to seeth Poppy shels, together with oile, and to powre in Goose grease, or fresh Hennes greale sodden together in the same oile. In most vehement paine you must powre in ℥ j. of pilles of Hounds tongue dissolued in oile of Dill: or take *Opium* with Mirrhe and Saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Also let the sicke sit in the decoction of Lineseed, Fenugrecke, roote of *Althea*, *Daucus* seede, and such like; and bid the sicke pisse as he sitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not strong enough to receiue and expel out the vrine: therefore the patient or some that be about him, must thrust and presse the share easily and softly, and that must not be done out of measure, lest that paine should be augmented thereby. Also after clisters and insessions vse foments by hote water, and apply oile in oxe bladders, or other vessels, halfe full, or little bags, as is shewed in the chapter of the Pleurisie. And if for all these things, the euill ceasse not, fasten a cupping glasse with scarification to the grieued places. Moreouer, he must abstaine from those things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he must eschue much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the disease, you must come to the vse of those things that haue vertue to dissolue and mollifie, whereof we haue spoken often before. The putting in of a cyring into him that is diseased with inflammation of the bladder, is not easie to vse, and specially in men: for seeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it sharpeneth the paine, and increaseth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vse it. For the passage of the vrine in them is short and straight, so that they may suffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the stopping of vrine do very much constraine you, then you must of necessitie vse a cyring in men also; not because it taketh away the anguish of the disease, but rather because it should

Curatio.

Diet.

Clysser.

Fomenta. Sacculi.

Catheter.

ſhould amend the great ſuppreſſion of vrine, and deliuer the patient from deadly perill. After that you haue enticed out the vrine, you muſt come againe to the remedies which do eaſe paine, vntil the inflammation be diſſolued, and rotten. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be diſſolued by & by through the meanes of an *Eryſipelas*, ariſing outwardly vpon the skinne, and remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and ofentimes much vrine being caſt out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheleſſe although thoſe things appeare, you muſt ſtil vſe the remedies aforeſaid: in as much as for the moſt part, perfect tenſion and ſtretching out being riſen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are cauſed, and long conſtitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceaſſed, and the conſtitution of the diſeaſe is now waxen old, you muſt come to the vſing of ointments, which do call out and bring forth the humors from within: and likewiſe emplaiſters, which do rubifie and bliſter the skinne, are to be applied, which you may find after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of vlcers of the Bladder and his necke.

THe bladder is exulcerate either through ſome bile, or botch, or ſwelling which hath beene before, or through ſome rupture, or by eating & gnawing of a fluxe, or through ſome ſuch like cauſe. There followeth this ſickneſſe ſharpe paine of the bladder, at all times piſſing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthy, there commeth forth dreggie and ſlimie matter, and ſuch as hath a groſſe reſidence like bran. And ſometime thin skins like leaues, and wooll, are ſent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do ſpred abroad and feed deepe, there is ſent out vrine that is bloudy, attery, and ſtinking. To theſe ſignes may be added, difficulty of making water, & riſing vp of the yard. There is paine not onely when the paſſage of the vrine is exulcerate, but alſo when the exulceration is in the bottome or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottome of the bladder, or nigh the pipe & paſſage of the vrine, by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the ſhare: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is paine felt onely at ſuch time as he maketh water, and ſpecially at the beginning and ending of his piſſing, & alſo his paine is the greater if the vrine be ſharp. They that are vexed with this euill, do either ſit continually, or they cannot ſtand vpright, nor reſt lying along; and through great and continuall paine they are killed with feuers, watchings, and conſumings, ſome ſooner & ſome later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the leaſtwiſe very hard to cure: as well becauſe the bladder is ſinewy, as alſo becauſe the vrine which is of nature ſharpe, doth continually touch the vlcers, and ſo gnaweth them, and will not ſuffer them to conglutinate and ioyne together. For although much vrine be ſent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwayes ſome of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers, yea when the abundance of vrine is ſent out, then the bladder ſhrinketh vp and falleth together, ſo that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very litle, yet it toucheth euery part thereof. But ſeeing that oftentimes ſome things chance beſides our expectation, you ſhal go about the cure, by the which if you bring nothing elſe

Vlcera.

Signa.

Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.

to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must
Curatio. perswade the patient to lie down and to rest in his bed: and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Then you must minister remedies for intermitting feuers. The chiefe thing in this cale hath beene drinking of milke, and this is to be preferred aboue all other medicines; for it maketh smoothe roughnesse, and washeth vlcerations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such, as that is which is ministred in the exulceration of the reines. Also you must comfort the sicke by medicines that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of Lineseed, and Fenugreeke, and other things, which are rehearsed before in the chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meete to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spread broader and eate deepe, you must apply outwardly medicines somewhat restrictiue, and such as be hote when they are applyed, that by their heate they may helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, and that through their vertue they may prohibite the places nigh adioining to feed and eat. Re-
Restrictiue medicines. strictiue medicines be these; Galls, Pomegranat rinds, Alume, *Acatia, Hypocis-chis*, and such like often rehearsed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to them, medicines cast in with a cyring. You must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oile of Roses warme. And if none of these be at hand, you must cast in continually most sweete water warmed, specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuyce of Ptisan, or the decoction of Lineseed, Cucumber seed husked, Fenugreek, Mallows, or milke with the oile of Roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clister to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may
Note. not lie vpward, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusion to enter in, becaus it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sick sit often in hote water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do ceasse paine somwhat. And when the vlcers do spread abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a cyring such things as can stop the feeding, as be, *Acatia, Hypocisthis, Terra Lemnia*, Bolearmoniack, and other rehearsed a little before. But if the vlcers be foule & filthie, you must powre in medicines, which haue vertue to scoure and cleanse them, as is *Mulsa* much watered, or milke with a little honey, or with the seed of Cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *Amylum*, or Tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scarre, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue inlessions, and by emplaisters, foments, and irrigations, that be of like facultie and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painefull fits applie emplaisters and irrigations, hauing power to ceasse and ease the paine: and in the time of the intermission betweene the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euill. Therefore apply to the share, Synapismes, and such things as will rubifie

and

and bliſter. And let the ſicke vſe a diet that is good to reſtore ſtrength. And if the euill doth not waxe gentler, you muſt make burnt ſcurfes about the ſhare, either by medicines or with iron, and to ſuffer the vlcers to purge and cleanſe themſelues long time with matter flowing out. You may alſo miniſter medicins to ceaſſe paine in drinke, if vehement paines vexe him. For this purpoſe, aboue other things which we haue rehearſed in other places, the pils *Alkakengi* with *Opium* are good. Alſo theſe things following do much mitigate the paines of exulceration, that is, Cucumber ſeed, Mallows, white Poppy, Tragacanth, *Amylum*, Pine nuts, and Almonds. Therefore this medicine may be miniſtred: ℞. conſerue of Violets, ℥.iij. ſeed of Mallows, ℥.ij. of the foure great cold ſeeds, an ℥.j. Liquorice ſcraped, ℥ j. ß. Gum, ℈.ij. Bolearmoniacke, ℥.ß. trochiskes of *terra Lemnia*, ℥. j. make them vp all together with ſirupe of Liquorice. Miniſter of it daily in the morning the quantitie of an Haſell nut. Moreouer, you muſt throw into the bladder medicines that can ceaſſe paine, and heale the exulceration. *To ceaſſe paine.*

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Stranguric.

STranguria in Greeke, *Stillicidium vrinæ* in Latine, is a diſeaſe whereas the vrine diſtilleth downe by drops, or by little and little, and cauſeth a continuall prouoking and deſire to piſſe. This diſeaſe is cauſed through the ſharpneſſe of the vrine, or by exulceration of the bladder, or by an impoſtume of the Liuer, or the reines; which being broken, and ſending the filth and atter to the bladder, through the ſharpeneſſe thereof, it cauſeth continually deſire to piſſe. You ſhall iudge that ſharpeneſſe is the cauſe, if his vrines be cholericke, and alſo all the ſtate of the bodie; if the reſt of the ſignes betoken choler, and that gnawing do chance about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as alſo an impoſtume or bile of the Liuer and the Reines, by the ſignes afore rehearſed in their owne proper chapters. If therefore the Stranguric be cauſed through ſharpneſſe of the vrine, then you muſt purge the vicious and naughtie humor that doth abound, with all ſpeed. For the which purpoſe, beſides thoſe things which are often ſpoken of before, whey with *Caſſia Fiſtula* is maruellous good, or ſome other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholericke humor being auoided and purged, the patient muſt vſe meats that be temperate, and that can ſtop the ſharpeneſſe: as is iuice of Ptiſan, Mallowes, Purſlaine, Violets, Cucumber ſeed, and ſuch like. He muſt abſtaine from all things that be ſharpe or ſalt. Alſo let him eſchue wine, exerciſes, wrath, and ſlow eating: for all theſe things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vſe ſtony fiſhes, and baths of ſweet water, which is wont to make temperate vicious humors maruellouſly. In drinke you muſt miniſter much ſweete water hote, or the decoction of Barley with ſirupe of Violets, and Roſes. But you may not giue him wine, as is ſaid, except it be ſweete and alaied with water. Alſo milke drunke hote, is the beſt thing that can be. To conclude, for the order of his diet, hee muſt vſe meates that do moiſten, and broths that do make the wombe ſoluble. But the ſicke muſt be compelled to piſſe continually: for if the ſharpe dregges do tary long in the

στραγγεία. *Cauſa.* *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Victus.*

bladder, it gnaweth and exulcerateth it: Alſo to ſtop the ſharpeneſſe of the humours, miniſter the medicine which we deſcribed in the end of the former chapter. For the ſame purpoſe miniſter decoction of Licorice or this powder following: ℞. of the ſeeds of Melons husked, Citrons, and Cucumbers, ana ℥.iij. ſeeds of Gourds, Purſlaine, and Lettuce, ana. ℥.ij. of red Roſes, ℥.j. iuice of Licorice and of Maſte, ana. ℥.j ß. beate them all and make a fine powder: whereof giue daily the weight of ℥.j.ß. in the morning with ſirupe of Licorice, of iuleps of Violets or Roſes. Alſo Venice Turpentine waſhed in Roſe water or Endiue water, and miniſtred the quantitie of a Nut, or ſomtime two or three, is maruellous good: for this (as *Galen* witneſſeth *li.5. de tuenda ſanitate*) doth not onely looſen the belly without hurt, and ſo by that meanes turneth away the ſharpe humors from the paſſages of the vrine: but alſo it ſcoureth and cleanſeth the inward parts, and ſpecially the reines. And there haue beene ſome that haue recouered health onely by the vſe of this. Alſo clyſters made of the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, *Althæa*, leaues of Willow, water Lillies, and other afore rehearſed, putting to them *Caſſia fiſtula*, Sugar, and oile of Violets and Roſes, do profite much. But if the ſharpeneſſe do ſtill increaſe, you muſt alſo caſt in by the yard, into the bladder, milke with *Amylum*. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, you may caſt in decoction of white Poppie, and you muſt annoint outwardly vpon the ſhare and thereabouts, oiles of Violets, and water Lillies, putting to them a very little of the iuyce of Purſlaine. But if the Strangurie doth chance through exulceration of the bladder, or through ſome other part of the body being euill affected, and ſo purging it ſelfe out by the vrine, then it is manifeſt, that thoſe members ought firſt to be cured, but yet ſo, that this preſent euill be not neglected. The cures of euerie part you may ſeeke out in their proper places and chapters.

Pulvis.

Terebinthina reſina.

Clyſter.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie in Piſſing.

Δυσπιτια. Cauſa.

DYSVRIA in Greeke, *Vrinæ difficultas*, is a diſeaſe wherein the vrine is piſſed hardly and difficultly. It is cauſed through weakeneſſe of the bladder, and through cold diſtemper of it, which hurteth his actions. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed of groſſe and flegmaticke humours, which ſtop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold diſtemper if it come of an outward cauſe, by the patients telling, & by the thinneſſe and whiteneſſe of the vrine. But if beſides the whiteneſſe there appeare groſneſſe in the vrine, you may iudge it a flegmaticke humour, which hath ſtopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforeſaid. Cold diſtemper is cured by thoſe things that do heate. Therefore he muſt vſe heating meats, and wine that is hot and condite. Alſo you muſt vſe medicines which prouoke vrine, as are, Parſeneps well ſodden, Fennell, *Apium*, Sperage, Smallage, and ſuch like. Alſo Crabs & Hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well: you muſt drie their fleſh, and miniſter the weight of one ℥. in drinke. Alſo miniſter in drinke the decoction of aromaticke things, or electuaries made of them, and ſo named of them. Aboue other things, the Antidotes of *Diacalaminthes*, *Dialacca*, and *Diacurcuma*, are very good. Alſo triacle giuen in drinke is maruellous good. You muſt nouriſh the ſhare without,

Signa.

Cure of a cold diſtemper.

with

with hote oiles, as is, oiles of Rew, Dill, Lillies, Scorpions, and of *Castoreum*. Also you must applie foments, and little bagges made of Cammomill, Sothernwood, Betonie, Mugwort, Rew, Calamint, Saueine, and such like oiles, into the fundament. If a cold and flegmaticke humour do cause difficulty of pissing, then the patient must vse *Oximel*, and decoctions of Hysope, Peniroiall, Origan, Thime, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse foments, irrigations, and little bagges made of hote things, whereof we spake a little before and in the former chapters. Moreouer, whether a grosse humor, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kinde through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a cyring, vnlesse inflammation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before.

Fomentæ.

Cure of flegmaticke humours that stop the vrine.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the Vrine.

ISCVRIA in Greeke, *Suppressio vrinæ* in Latine, it is a disease, in the which the vrine of the patient is altogether letted and stopped. This disease is caused sometime through weakenesse of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage streighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it commeth by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression and stopping of the vrine. Also atter sent downe to the bladder from the reines, or the liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humour doth. Also it chanceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, and yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsiue, when as his proper sinews be euill affected: so in haile folke when the vrine is holden long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused through weakenesse of the bladder, it is knowne by those signes which declare the cold distemper of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humours, it is knowne by the diet that went before: as if one that liueth idlely, hath vsed much meates which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the Chapters of the Stone. If it be caused of inflammation or of any other swelling, it is knowne by paine, by feuer and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused through some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowne by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine commeth out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage, where you coniectured the bile to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion and pissing of bloud, or fluxe thereof. When as atter hath

Ischuria. *Causæ.*

Signa.

ſtopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chanced before: for either the bladder or the reines laboured of ſome euill before, whereby ſuch, and ſo much atter might gather: or there hath beene an impoſtume in ſome member aboue the reines, which being broken, the atter is ſent downe into the reines, and ſo into the bladder. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne by the patients telling. The cure is diuers according to the diuerſity of cauſes. For if the ſtopping of vrine be cauſed through imbecillitie and weakeneſſe of the bladder, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe things which do heate, as is ſaid in the former chapter. For you muſt altogether remoue cold diſtemper, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the with-holding of vrine be ingendred of groſſe and clammie humours, he muſt be cured by foments, inſeſſions, and cataplaſmes made of herbs that be hote, and that haue vertue to cut and diuide the humors, and with a diet of ſuch like things. Beſides thoſe things which we haue rehearſed in the former chapter of difficultie of piſſing, this ointment following is notable good to take away the diſeaſe: ℞. of the oile of Scorpions, oile of Nard, and of Lillies, ana. ℥.iij. Gumme ſerapin, *Bdellium* & *Opoponax*, ana. ℈. Gooſe greaſe, Duckes greaſe, ana. ℥.ß. roote of *Enula campana*, ℈.ij. Peniroiall, Calamint, ana. ℈.ß. diſſolue the Gummes in wine, and with Waxe as much as is ſufficient make an ointment. Alſo you muſt throw into the bladder with a cyring, oile of Scorpions, or Lillies, or ſome other thing that can diſſolue, cut, and diuide clammy humors. If the vrine be ſtopped through the ſtone or clodded blood, you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper chapter. For the ſtone which hath ſtopped the paſſage of the vrine muſt be remoued out of his place, as is taught before in the 41. chapter, but the clodded blood muſt be diſſolued, as is taught in the 42. chapter. If the vrine be ſtopped through inflammation, or ſome other ſwelling againſt nature, the cure muſt alſo be ſought out of their owne proper chapter. And if the vrine be ſtopped through ſome little peece of fleſh or hard knob, apply bathings and other diſſoluing and looſening medicines, and ſuch as do open and ſpread abroad the pipe and conduit of vrine: examples whereof you may ſeeke out of the chapter of the ſtone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out ſo, you muſt come to the vſing of a cyring, and by putting in of the inſtrument, you muſt entice out the vrine. If the vrine be ſuppreſſed through the dull ſenſe of the bladder, you muſt raiſe vp his action, by prouoking vrine, and you muſt helpe it by inſeſſions, foments, and other hote medicines, which can take away his ſleeping and dulneſſe. But you muſt onely eſchue thoſe things which prouoke vrine, leſt that through plentie of it, the bladder be ſtretched out, and ſo the contractiue vertue of it ſhould be hurt. Moreouer, you muſt entice out vrine with *Nitrum*, or Saltpeter, or with a quicke Louſe, or with ſome other thing that can ſtirre vp the vertue expulſiue of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through ſome great buſineſſe vrine is holden too long, and ſo hath made the bladder feeble, that it can not expell it out, then he muſt helpe himſelfe thus. He muſt ſtand ſo, that the necke of the bladder may leane downeward, and muſt lay both his hands about his ſhare, and he muſt preſſe it, and thruſt out the vrine by little and little, and thus he may do alſo in the dull ſenſe of the bladder aforeſaid.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of weakeneſſe of the bladder.

Cure if it be of groſſe humours.

Vnguentum.

Cure if it be of the ſtone or clodded bloud.

Cure if it be of a peece of fleſh or knobbe.

Cure if it be of the obtuſe ſenſe of the bladder.

Cure if it come in haſte folke.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of exulceration of the priuie members.

VLcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue neede of medicines which do drie vp vehemently: such as these be, paper burnt, drie Dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into powder; for you can scarcely finde a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedy to the exulceration or the priuy members. Also among compound medicines, this is the most effectuous and profitable: ℞. *Aloes Epaticum*, ʒ.ij. Galles, ʒ.j. Dragon-bloud, Bolearmoniacke, Tuttie, ana. ʒ.j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ʒ.ß. Mirrhe, ϑ.j. of Gumme Arabicke, ʒ ij. Alume burnt, ʒ ß. Let all these be beaten, and make a fine powder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate parts. But if the vlcers be very moist and foule, first scoure them and cleanse them with *Muisa* well alayed, and then after with Goates milke: which thing being done, vse the aforelaid powder, or *lapis Hæmatites*, or Frankinsence, or Pomgranate rinds, or *terra Lemnia*, or such like beaten into powder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflãmation, with linnen clothes wet in Rose water, or Nightshade, or Purslaine water, or Housleeke water, putting to it the white of an Egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies seeke out of the other chapters.

Aloes acida.

Puluis optimus.

Abstersion of the vlcers.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

PRIAPISMVS (as *Galen* witnesseth *in libr. 6 De malè affectis locis, cap. 6.*) is when the yard is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heate gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as *Galen* doth witnesse in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouth of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirit ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinew. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuious and windie ayre to ingender in the hollow sinew. For the loynes being beat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, and that also their mouthes should be wider opened. Therefore at that time, they send out no small substance of spirite or ayre into the hollow sinew, which being a little filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his power doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinew. Sometimes this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time from carnall copulation contrary to their custome. And this thing chanceth specially to them that do abound with much bloud, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of bloud with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieued as those be which be taken with distention and stretching out of the sinews: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, do quickely perish, vnlesse helpe be vsed to them by and by: and when they die, their belly is puffed vp, and their sweate is cold. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do

Priapismus.

Satyriasis.

Causæ.

Curatio.

chance through gaping of the mouths of the arteries, & so through the [illegible] them, by and by it is good to let bloud by cutting of a veine: which [illegible] you shall do, when this euill taketh them which abound with blood, [illegible] abstained long time from carnall copulation, contrary to their custome. [illegible] you must cut the blacke veine which is called *Media* or *Mediana*, the middle veine of the armes. Also he must vse a thinne diet, and abstaine from wine. Giue him but little meate, made of corne, and that which doth ingender no wind at all, and that causeth thirst; and it is good for him to vse to drink water: exercises and frictions or rubbings, are well applied and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits of aire. Also it is good to go about emptying by vomiting.

Clyster. Also if the wombe be costiue & bound, you must make it soluble with a clister that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of Beetes, Mallowes, and Mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, lest that the humours should be drawne downeward. For the same cause also, he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you must altogether labour and study to minister those medicins which can void and empty the abundance, and draw vpward, and so turne the humors from the priuie members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be fulnesse, apply horsleeches. But you must lay vpon the loines those things which do euidently coole, as is, Nightshade, Purslaine, Henbane, and Singreene. Also you must of necessity annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament and the yard, with some iuyce or water of hearbs that do coole gently. If a cerate made of fine oile of Roses, washed often in cold water, be applied as well to the yard as also to the loines, it doth notably well. The making of this cerate, which is called *Cerat. liquidum*, is taught of *Galen libr.* 1. *De simplicium medicamentorum facultate. cap.* 6. Also this cerate is good: ℞. white Waxe washed ten times in cold water, quar. j. Purslaine, ℥ ij. commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerate. To be short, apply and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede: of the which we will speake abundantly in the next chapter. Moreouer, it is hurtfull for him to rest lying vpright, but he must lie on his side. He must altogether be kept from sights and stories, and rehearsing of those things which pertaine vnto lechery. If this disease chance of a vaporous and windy spirit, or aire ingendred in the hollow sinew, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissoluing of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the chapters of curing of inflammation and windinesse of the stomach, and to the cure of the windie Cholike: for there you shall find plentie of remedies.

The summe of the cure.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

Τροφὴ σπέρ. GONORRHAEA in Greecke, *Seminis profluuium* in Latine, it is excretion and shedding of seede or sperme against the patients will, and without sickenesse of the yard. It is caused through imbecillitie and weakenes of the retentiue vertue in the vessels containing the sperme, or through some other disease that moueth the parts of the vessels of sperme, after that sort, as the expulsiue vertue doth, according to nature: as in the falling sickenesse it chan-

Cause.

eeth sometime, and in other violent conuulsions and crampes. Also sometime it is caused through fluxe of the spermaticke vessels. The seed that sheddeth out is watery, thinne, without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the most part without feeling of it; but sometime it cometh out with certaine pleasure. They that haue this disease, their whole body corrupteth by litle and litle, and waxeth leane, specially about the loynes, and there followeth much weaknes, not for the multitude of seed, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not standing) there followeth imbecillitie and weaknesse of the retentiue vertue in the spermaticke vessels. But if it cometh out (the yard standing) the griefe is somewhat like a conuulsion, or crampe. This disease chanceth not onely to men, but also to women, and in women it is hard to cure. The cure of this disease is common with those cures that are ministred in euery fluxe. First therefore you must keep the sicke in quietnesse, with little meate, and with drinking of water. Then also you must couer the places about the share and priuities, and the loynes, with wooll wet in oile of Roses, and in wine, or in oile of blossomes of Apples, or of Quinces. Also sponges wet in *Posca* applied are not hurtfull. The daies following you must vse cataplasmes, emplaisters, and oyntments made of Vine branches, Quinces, *Acatia*, *Hypocisthis*, Sumach, and such like afore rehearsed. Also he must vse restrictiue insessions made of decoctions of Briar, Plantaine, Mirtles, and such other like. These things must be sodden in austere and sharpe wine, or also in water. Let him vse meates which are hard and corrupt, and that are difficultly changed, and that haue power to drie vp. Also you must giue him with his meates and drinke, the seed of *Agnus castus*, and of Hempe, specially rosted. Also the seedes and leaues of Rew, the seede and stalke of Lettuce, and the roote of water Lillies. In drinke minister daily, in stead of common water, the water wherein yron hath often beene quenched. To be short, he must eschue the vsing of sharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage; and all his whole diet must be appointed of such things as do drie vp and restraine. And you must minister such medicines as do extinguish and quench seede, as is Tutian seede tosted and rubbed: also the leaues and flowers of it are said to restraine lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but also when they are taken in drinke, or strewed vnder one. Purslaine eaten, and Lettuce seede drunke, and the roote and seede of water Lillies taken in meate, do extinquish the seede by cooling of it. But Rew eaten corrupteth and destroyeth the seede with his heate. They which eate Calamint continually, do lose the power of generation, and likewise the seede of white Violets doth the same. But Smiths water, in which yron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminish the seed without any griefe. Moreouer, of these simples before rehearsed, you may compound and make diuers remedies. And specially this powder is good: ℞ of the powders of *Diacuminum*, *Diacalaminthes*, an. ʒ j ß. seed of Tutsan and Rew, ana. ʒ j. Calamint, ʒ ij. seede of Lettuce and Purslaine, ana. ʒ j. Sugar, the weight of them all: commixe them together, and make a fine powder, whereof minister, ʒ j. or ʒ j ß. infused in soure wine. Also it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To those that can not suffer the hardnes of lead, you must

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguish seede.

Trituræ.

gine counsell, that they strew vnder them some of the aforesaid hearbe dried: for the which purpose aboue other things, Vine leaues, Rew, Calamint, and Rosses are praised: for these profite, and besides that, they hurt not the reines. vehement cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let not his bed be soft, and let him lie for the most part vpon his side, eschuing vpright lying, lest thereby the arteries of the loynes should waxe hote. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sick to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed & strengthened. Also it shall be good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washing, which is wont to driue away all the griefe ingendred of fluxe: & that specially if the water be endued with any medicinable qualitie. Also it is good at certaine times to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, and that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skinne. Moreouer, the patient must exclude all thought belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

Causa. THey which be married, and cannot vse the act of generation, because of the sluggish impotencie and weakenesse of their members, comming of a cold distemper wherewith they be vexed, or of some other cause, such ought to exercise the neather parts, and to vse meates that do heate, and ingender good humours: as is, the flesh of Hennes, Capons, Partrich, Feasants, young Doues, Birds of mountaines, and specially Sparrowes, Cockes stones, and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be, Cich peason, Beanes, Scalions, Leekes, the roote and seede of Parseneps, Pine Nuts, sweete Almonds, Rape rootes, and such other like. Also the Egges of Partriches do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleepe in a soft bed, and let him reade things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priuie members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments, and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following: ℞. oile of Lillies, ℥.j ß. oile of *Castoreum*, ℥ ß. Pepper, Nigella, Pellitorie, ana. ℈. j. Mirrhe, ʒ. ß. *Euphorbium*, gran. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also he must vse medicines which do ingender plenty of sperme, and can heate. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be Rocket, Mustard seed, Garden Cresses, Nettle seed, roote of Aron, and Pepper, *Satyrion*, *Orminum*, Annise, Squill, *Orchis*, called also *Testiculus canis*, whose greatest round roote drunke with Milke, doth prouoke stiffenesse of the yard, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water, doth slake the stiffenesse thereof: also Fennell and Dill are good. The stones of a Foxe dried, beaten to powder and drunke, do cause a stiffenesse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of Scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffenesse of the yard. Moreouer, burne the drie pisle of an Hart, and minister ℥ j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine: ℞. *Dianthos*, *Pirisarcoticon*, *Diagalanga*, ana. ʒ. iij. *Diasatyrion*, ʒ. vj. Pine Nuts, sweete Almonds, *Pistax*, ana ʒ ij. *Satyrium*, ʒ. j. roote of Aron, ℈. j. seedes of Rocket, Nettles,

Curatio.

Diet.

Vnguentum.

Simples to prouoke carnall lust.

Antidotum liquidum.

Nettles, & garden cresses, ana ℥.j.ß. *Scinci*, ℥.ß. *Nux Indica*, ℥.j. of long Pepper and Ginger ana, ℥.j.ß. powder of Harts pisse, ℈.j. sirupe of Mints, and Sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an Electuarie, whereof minister before supper or fasting the quantitie of one drachme or two, alone or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

CELE in Greeke, *Ramex* and *Hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *Rupture*: It is caused diuers waies, & thereupon it hath diuers names. For if the *Peritonæum* do breake, and the bowells fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin, *Ramex inteſtinorum*: that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowells do cleaue or stay aboue the priuie members, it is called in Latin *Ramex inguinis*, that is, the rupture aboue the priuie members. And if any quiet and watery humour be gathered in any part of the filmes or skinne of the coddes, it is called in Latin *Ramex aquoſus*: that is, a watery rupture. When there groweth hard flesh within the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *Ramex carnoſus*: that is, a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that fill vp the coddes. As if the kall or filme that lappes in the bowells, do fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti*: that is, the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slippe downe also with it, it is called in Latin *Ramex omenti & inteſtini*: that is, the rupture of the filme, and the bowells. So when the veines which do nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *Ramex varicoſus*: that is, the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts aboue the priuie members, is caused either because the *Peritonæum* is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken. Both these do chance through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp a great weight. A watery rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessells that are ioyned together be increased in the coddes, and then a watery humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to those parts, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroake, the vessells breake and slide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is changed into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without fluxe and waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowells, and the rupture aboue the priuie members, are common. For there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or aboue the priuie members, which appeareth greater then it did before in exercise, iourneis, holding of the breath and such like occasions: being thrusted together, it goeth backe againe slowly, and it rolleth downe againe quickely. The particular signes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritonæum* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowells fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space, and for very little cause; the swelling appeareth equall and deepe.

Rupture.
Ramex inteſtinorum.
Ramex inguinis.
Ramex aquoſus.
Ramex carnoſus.
Ramex omenti.
Ramex omenti inteſtinique.
Ramex varicoſus.
Cause.
Signs.

the bowells that fall downe being staied with the *Peritonæum*. The proper signes of a rupture that cometh when the *Peritonæum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuersally from the beginning of the rupture, and that only through violent causes: the swelling is of a wonderfull greatnesse, vnequall, and it sheweth straightway sticking out in the skinne, because the bowells are fallen out of the *Peritonæum*. The common signes of a watery rupture be these: swelling that is without paine, and firme, and permanent in the coddes, not vanishing by any occasion: but in them that haue a little of the humour, it giueth place, and in them that haue not so much of it, not so. And when there is a waterie humour in the coddes, the swelling shineth of the same colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or swart. And when these signes appeare in both sides of the coddes, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleshie rupture, hardnesse, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the swelling do increase into a hardnesse or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor sense, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vexe him. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, be cured in this wise. You must lay the patient vpright, and separate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by little and little: and when they are put vp, you must keep them vp with conuenient trusses, and ligaments. But if the places adioyning to the coddes, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieued with inflammation and most grieuous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windinesse, and so thereby the bowels be made disobedient to go vp againe, then you must vse and apply foments, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to ceasse paine and inflammation, and to disperse windinesse, as those things be, which be made of Mallowes, Cammomill, Dill, Linseed, Fenugreeke, Caraway seed, Annise seed, Commin, and such like. Also nourish the places that be vexed with paine, with wooll that is moist, dipped in wine and oile. When the bowells are put vp againe into their places, you must go about that they may be kept vp still with conuenient trusses and bands: applying to it first, restrictiue or glutinatiue cerates, or emplaisters, as this is: ℞. ship pitch, Masticke, ana. ʒ.ß. Frankinsence, ʒ ij. *Hypocisthis, Sorcocolla, Acatia*, ana. ʒ.j. ß. *lapis Hæmatitis*, Dragons bloud, ana. ʒ ij. Bolearmoniacke, rootes of Comfery, Galles, Pomegranate rindes, ana. ʒ.iij. Missle of the oake, ʒ.j ß. of either *Aristolochia*, ʒ.ij. Sumach, Pomegranate flowers, ana. ʒ.j. Goates tallow, ʒ.ij. Turpentine, and Waxe as much as is sufficient: dissolue the gummes first in Vineger, or Wine, and make a cerate, and put it in a Weathers skinne, and apply it, binding it fast, and do not loose it before the seuenth day. And in the meane season, let the sicke tarrie thirtie dayes in his bed, and let him abstaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of Wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying loud, and such other like. And in the meane season, let him drinke this decoction: ℞. both the kinds of *Sanicula*, of *Solidago saracenica*, or *Consolida saracenica*, *Uphioglossum*, Pedelion, Agrimonie, *Numularia*, an. M.j. Knotgrasse, *Clematis Daphnoides*, great Plantaine, Burnet, ana. M.ß. root of Comfery, Hounds-tongue, ana. ʒ.ß. roote of the sixt kinde of *Geranium*, ʒ.vj. Seede of Mirtles, ʒ.iij. Pome-

Cure of the ruptures of the bowels, and of the inguen.

Ceratum.

A glutinatiue decoction.

Prunella.

granate

granate flowers, ℥.ij. leaues of Laurell ℥.j.ß. boile these in red wine & water of iust quantity till the third part be consumed: then straine it, and by putting to it Sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweete, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, ℥.iiij. Also you must take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costiue: for if he be constrained to labour much, when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe. Also he must vse apt and conuenient ligatures and trusses, as we haue monished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessity of mouing requireth it. A watery rupture must be cured by such medicins as do heate and drie vp, as be Beane meale, Laurell berries, Lineseede, *Daucus*, *Althea*, *Nigella*, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the chapter of the Dropsie *Ascites*, and other Dropsies. To conclude, as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by Surgery, let it be sought out of *Paulus Aegineta libro sexto*, chapter 26. where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treate thereof in these Bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a watery rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of Menstruis.

Menstrua suppressus

Cause.

THe menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them, either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped, you shall know it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no griefe of the whole body nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the foureteenth yeare, and in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth either two or three dayes, to many fiue dayes, in some it endureth to the seuenth day. The menstruis also do stoppe in some the fiftieth yeare, or the fiftie fiue yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtieth yeare but in few women. Also barraine women and dauncers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoeuer excrement is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out little or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouermuch grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without bloud, then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that little bloud which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But those that are leane & slender, which be wasted with some continuall sickenesse, they haue no superfluous bloud in them. Moreouer, the menstruis do not flow in them whose bloud is either grosse or clammie, or if it be sent to some other part of the body, and purged out: as for example, if it go out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much bloud from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much bloud hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing, as abundant sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the belly, and all kindes of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis

In whom the flowers are naturally stopped.

In whom the flowers are stopped against nature.

are withholden through great and sharpe sickenesses, and through abundance or scarcitie of foode. For of little foode, that little doth expirate and breathe out straight; and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion and voyding out of the menstruis is preuented and letted. And for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole body being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withholden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chanceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distemper of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted thorough hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrescence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through abundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinnes ingendred about the necke or entrie of the matrice; to other some the scarres of vlcers which haue beene before in the wombe, haue stopped the mouthes of the vessells which carried bloud into the wombe. To some after the abortion of the wombe (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of bloud. Moreouer, stubburne carefulnesse, immoderate feare, and great sorrow, do stoppe the menstruis.

Signa. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomite, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceiued. Moreouer, there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the binder part of the eyes, and the fore part of the head. Also there follow continuall feuers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atter and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately beene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly, or else it is stopped altogether.

Cold distemper. The diuersity of causes is knowne partly by the disposition of the whole body, and partly also for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distemper in themselues, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepie and slower to all [illegible] of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer, their vrine is waterie and such like

Hote distemper. signes appeare, which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distemper are cleane contrarie to these signes of a cold distemper before rehearsed.

Plenitude. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former chapters, are wont specially to be these: that women that are vexed therewith, are grieued most in the time of the menstruis, and they feele vehement paine about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp verie great.

Curatio. Cure of cold distemper. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold distemper of the liuer or wombe do stop the flowing of the menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away with contraries: that is, with meates and medicines that do heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous, and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the body. Aboue other, these things that follow are good, Penroiall, Thime, Calamint, Sothernwood,

wood, Diptaine, roote of *Irees*, *Cassia*, Gladon, *Asarum*, and Saueine: of which you may make decoctions and foments. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Also the meete and conuenient times to take these medicines be first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondarily, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annointing, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and continually. Women that be too hote, and vse much exercise, haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safegard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet, whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not need to be purged: but this were against conception: for they do not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscreete diet, purgations be necessarie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis that are stopped through hote distemperature, may be brought out. Women therefore that be hote, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moister by moist meates and drinkes taken in good quantitie, as be soupings of Ptisan, and of *Alica*, and meats that are made of Lambes flesh, Kids flesh, and Fishes that be tender, birds of mountaines, and milke. Let their pot herbs be Lettuce and Gourds, and their fruit new Figges. They must vse white wine that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good, and to conclude, that diet ascribed to them that haue the feuer hecticke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be with-holden and stopped by reason of the fulnesse that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud. And you must cut the veines of the anckles, or of the hammes: and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable, if cupping glasses be fastened to the legs. The bloud being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annointings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but onely grosse and flegmaticke humours do stoppe the flowing of the menstruis, first you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and prepare them and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction: ℞. the rootes of Gladon, *Irees*, Parsley, and Sperage, ana. ℥.j. of the seedes of *Apium*, Fennell, *Brascus*, Annile, *Daucus*, Ammi, and Nettles, an. ℥ j. Calamint, Wormewood, ana. M.ß. Origan, Sothernewood, Mugwort, Peniroiall, *Asarum*, ana. M.j. Hysope, M j.ß. chosen Cinnamon, ℥.j. seethe all these in a conuenient quantitie of water, vntil the third part be consumed: then straine it, and make the licour of that decoction sweete with Sugar, and clarifie it with the white of an Egge, putting into it of the syrups of Calamint, of Hysope, and of Horehound, ana. ℥.j.ß. and make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning, the weight of ℥.iiij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *Hierapicra*, *Diaphœnicon*, and *Electuarium Nidum*, pilles of Garlicke, of *Benedicta*, or such like. After purging, the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather parts, and specially walkings. Moreouer, apply fomentations, and bathings made of Cammomill, Mother-

Cure of hote distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgation.

Exercises.

Foments.

wort, Mints, & other things rehearsed in the decoction aboue said Also annoint the patient with this ointment: ℞. of the oiles of Lillies and Rew, ana. ℥ j. Motherwort with the thin leaues, Peniroial, Calamint, ana. ℈ j. roote of *Ireos* ℈ ij. Hysope, Origan, an. ℈ iij. with wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. After this, for the cause aboue said, minister medicines which can straightway prouoke & bring forth the menstruis being stopped, such as these be: Mirrhe, *Castoreum*, Laurell berries, Madder, Pepper, Sage, Saueine, *Cassia*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This medicine is notable good ℞. *Castoreum*, ℥ j. wild Mints beaté into powder, ʒ ß. old wine, or *Mulsa*, ℥ iiij. commix them together, & minister it hote after a bath Also the decoction of Peniroial, Mugwort, Rew, Comin, *Daucus*, Sage, Dil, *Ammeos*, Fénel, *Aenula campana*, & such like are good. Also Calamint beaté into powder, the weight of ℥ ij. or Saueine, the weight of ℥ j drunke in wine or *Mulsa*, is very good. Moreouer Trochisks of Mirrhe do maruellously profite. Also wine wherein Wormwood hath bin infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that necessitie so require it, such as this is: ℞. of *Triphera magna* that is without *Opium*, ʒ j. of the meale of *Ernum*, *Nigella*, Mather, Mugwort, Peniroial, ana. ℈ j. ß. iuyce of Rew, ʒ ij. commixe them together, & make a pessarie, and put it in with Wooll or Cotton. Or this pessary: ℞. Mirrhe, *Bdellium*, Storax, an. ℥ j. Calamint, Sothernwood & Wormwood, an. ʒ j. ß. roots of Gladon & Mather, ana ʒ j. seed of *Nigella*, dry Rew, Laurell berries, an. ℈ ij. Saueine, ℈ j. *Castoreũ*, ℈ ß. beate al these to fine powder, & commix them with hony, or *Triphera*, or *Mithridatum*, & make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hot oiles, as is oiles of *Ireos*, Lillies, Laurel, & such like. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of Storax, *Galbanum*, Frankinsence, *Bdellĩ*, the root of *Aristolochia*, Mugwort, Cloues, Cinnamon, & such like. Exãples wherof you shal find in our booke of making medicines. Moreouer the wombe must be euaporated and fomented with odoriferous things, as with Marioram Sauory, Calamint, Cammomil, Peniroial, Mugwort, root of *Ireos*, & such like sodde in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherin you must put a reed or some other pipe; and you must annoint it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fomented with it. Also it will profite if the woman sit in this decoctiõ vp to the nauell, & after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, and with swift exercises, and with other medicines which can make the body slender and leane: as be continuall deiection & solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate & breathe out, & such like, which be abundantly intreated of by *Galen lib.* 14 *Ther. meth. cap.* 15. and *lib.* 6. *De tuenda sanitate*. Those which are not purged of their menstruis, through leanesse of the body, whether it chance through sicknes, or any other meanes, you must first recreate & refresh them, & restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient diet, and by other medicines, which *Galen* rehearsed in the places aforesaid And if they wax fleshy, there is good hope that the menstruis will burst out by their owne accord which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by potions, foments, and other medicines aboue rehearsed. If the menstruis do not flow,

Vnguentum.

To prouoke menstruis.

A notable medicine.

Pessus.

Alius.

Suffitus.

Cure of fat women.

Cure of leane women.

flow, because of some disease and vice of the wombe, first you must cure the euill that is caused of the stopping of the menstruis: and after that, we must proceed to the prouocation and purging of the menstruis. The cure of the diseases of the wombe, must be sought of their proper places. *Cure if it be of vice of the wombe.*

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of the menstruis.

WE say, that menstruis do redound and ouerflow in women, when that great plenty of them do flow out longer then the accustomed time of their purgation. There is no iust or certaine time of their purgation: for to most women they flow two or three daies, to many fiue daies, & to some seuē daies. The menstruis do chance to flow out of measure, through great or smal vessels opened wide, or broken. Also immoderate purgations do ingender in women sometime through grieuous trauell in childbirth, which also do ceasse oftentimes of themselues. Oftentimes after abortion, they labour of a vehement purgation & fluxe of menstruis, & sometime it bringeth them into a dangerous perill. If the greater vessels be broken or open, the bloud floweth out gushing on heaps: but if the lesser be open, it floweth out by litle & litle, & not in great quantitie. If it be caused through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by litle & litle, but also it floweth with very great paine. Moreouer when the menstruis flow immoderately, there followeth a filthie colour, the feet are puffed vp with a light swelling, the strength of the body is decayed, both the digestion and appetite of meat is corrupted: & in all points such signes as were wont to follow immoderate voiding of bloud, either by the hemorhoides, or by anie other fluxe of bloud, do follow in this disease. First therfore in the beginning of the cure, you must bind the places betweene the ioynts & the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the armhols, & the shates. Also you must fasten great cupping glasses lightly vnder the paps, as *Hippocrates* teacheth, 5. *Aphor*, 20. Also they must vse meats and drinks that be sharp and restrictiue, as is Rice, and such like: and let the sicke rather eate rosted meats then sodden: and specially such flesh as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birds that liue on mountaines, & wild beasts. They must abstaine from mouing, and wine, and in steed of it they must vse some restrictiue potion, or *Posca*, not cold but warme. Moreouer, you must minister restrictiue medicines in drinke, as these simples be following: ℞. Pomegranate flowers, *Hypocisthis*, *Acatia*, Corall, *Lycium*, *terra Lemnia*, Calles, Knotgrasse, both the *Consolidaes*, the stone *Hematites*, shells of Mast, Plantain, Barberies & such like. Compound medicins be these following, as syrupes of Roses, Mirtles, trochisks of Amber, & of *terra Lemnia*. Also these pils following are maruelous good to stop & restraine the menstruis. ℞. *terra Lemnia*, Bolearmoniack, Frankinsence, Mastick, Gals, ana. ℈.ij. Dragons bloud, the stone *Hæmatites*, ana. ℈.j. Harts tong burnt, ʒ.i. *Hypocisthis*, *Acatia*, red Corall, ana. ʒ ß. Pomegranate flowers, red Roses, ana. ℈.ii. Amber, ℈.i. commix thē with sirupe of Mirtles, & make pils, whereof minister the weight of one drachme or ʒ ß. Also fomēt the place outwardly with the oiles of Roses, Mirtles, Quinces, & sharp wine. And apply ointments, emplaisters, and cerats, & restrictiue Epithems, wherof you shal find many before in the chapters *Signa.* *Curatio.* *To restraine menstruis.* *Catapotia.*

of the fluxes, *Dysenteria*, *Diarrhœa*, and *Lienteria*. Also infessions made of the decoctions of the aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuyce of Plantaine is maruellously commended, wherewith *Galen* saith, in foure dayes he stopped a fluxe of the wombe, that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuice of Knotgrasse, or Nightshade, or *Hypociſchis*, or *Acatia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praised: ℞. of Frankinsence, Pomegranate flowers, and Galles, ana. ʒ.i. of Gumme Arabicke, *Acatia*, Amber, Harts horne burnt, ana. ʒ. ii. Bolearmoniacke, ϑ.ii. beate all these to fine powder, and mixe it with Wooll dipped in oyle of Roses, and put it into the wombe.

Infessus.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

VTERI *fluor* in Latin, fluxe of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour as the humor that doth abound in the body. For some is red, as bloud putrified, or atter: some white, which commeth of fleame: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie, which is of a wheyish matter. And if pure bloud come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede, that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowne. The places are continually moist with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she sauoureth no meate, but abhorreth it: in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine, and sometime without paine, or with exulceration, or without it; and either with an inflammation, that is, with the vlcer, or else it is filthie or vnpure. The diuersitie of causes you may know by the colour of that that floweth foorth, as is aforesaid. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting bloud. For many incommodities would follow, if you should first go about to represse and stoppe the rage and violence of the bloud that floweth, as the Dropsie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomacke, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloud-lettings as you do in them that spit bloud, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the bloud may be the longer a little. You must cutte a veine in the arme. After this you must binde the extreme parts of the bodie with bands, and you must vse and apply all such things as can turne the fluxe of the humor another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thickenesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake, wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vexe a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humours may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also it is not against reason, seeing

Causa.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

Vellus ratio.

Cure of a fluxe that is white and atterie.

seeing that that which is flowed out, is ingendred of fleame, if you do minister a medicicine to her, which doth purge fleame. And you must minister and apply to the whole body, medicines and remedie which do drie vp, seeing that the disease is moist. Therefore exercises, specially of the vpper parts, and frictiós are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birds of the mountaines, and wild beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred as do extenuate grosse humours, and after that do bring them out with the vrine, as be, *Asarum*, Fennell, *Apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictiue, as be, oiles of Roses and Quinces, and other rehearsed in the former chapter. Also you must vse absterstue and scouring medicines, lest that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherefore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and cleansing of the filth, you must annoint with oile of Roses, or of Quinces, or of Mirtles. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe, and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictiue medicines, not neglecting absterstue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall need, because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceasseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the belly and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heate, and from such things as do prouoke vrine. *Cure of a pale and cholericke fluxe.*

CHAP. LVI.

Of Strangling of the Wombe.

SVFFOCATION or strangling of the wombe is nothing else, but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is causled through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnesse that followeth after the retention & stopping of menstruis. For in women the wombe, when it is retched and stretched out, it runneth not to an other place like a wandring beast, but is drawne backe through the extension. Also it chanceth oftentimes through the seede that is restrained. Also many times it chanceth through cold which happened to the wombe, at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard abortion, or when as any hath hasted to stop sodainly a fluxe of blood flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slowneste, weakenesse of the legges, paleneste of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present, there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voice doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawne vp together. The pulses are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out at the mouth and nostrills, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries doth remaine still. When the euill doth ceasse, the balles of the cheekes beginne to waxe *Causes.* *Signes.*

red, and the eyes be lifted vp and opened. Also a certaine humiditie and moistnesse, that one may by feeling perceiue to run out of the wombe of women, and the bowels do make a noise: and also the wombe it selfe is a little loosened, and so their mind, senses, and mouing cometh to them againe. This disease commeth by courses at certaine times, as the falling sickenesse doth, and that chanceth when the matrice (as is aforesaid) is filled with seede, or with some other matter that putrifieth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it selfe is diseased with the quantitie and qualitie of any thing, then menstruis, or seede, or other kind of *Symptomes* are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body, do cause this disease, the body is so vehemently cooled, that both breathing and arteries beating, cannot be perceiued by the senses. Which humour, if it be either grosse or sharpe; it causeth conuulsions and crampes: but if it haue the nature of melancholy, it causeth sorrow and sadnesse, and defection of the mind, refrigeration and paine of the stomach. This kinde of disease ingendreth in all seasons, but specially in Winter and Autumne: and most commonly yong folke, and such as be prone to lecherie, and barren, specially if they be made so by medicines, be most taken with this disease. Many do recouer from this disease, and many againe do perish sodainly in the very fit, or at the least way within few houres after. That chanceth when the pulses be swift and inordinate, and then do leaue off and vanish cleane away. At the last a cold humour in little quantitie doth bedew and moisten the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you must bind the extreme parts, and besides the bindings, you must rubbe the legs and all the whole bodie; and do euen as you would recouer one that is swounded. And you must place the sicke with her necke & shoulders bending, and rising vpward, and with her thighs and share leaning downeward. You must apply to her nostrils stinking things, as the snuffe of a candle newly put out, feathers, specially of Partriches, burnt, or Wooll burnt, or soles of shoes, or shales of Garlicke or Onions: also haires burnt, and specially if they be the haires of the sicke, or Goats horne burnt. Also Pitch melted vpon the coales, *Galbanum* or *Castoreum*, or such like. Also you may hold a chamber vessell with old vrine to their nose, or old linnen clothes dipped in Brimstone and burned: and you must persume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things, as be *Storax*, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, Cloues, and such like. And it is good to fasten cupping glasses with much flame, and lightly to the parts aboue the priuie members, and to the bottome of the belly. As soone as the fit doth come, you must apply foments, and litle bags warmed, to the bottome of the belly and share, for you shall scarcely find a more present remedie in the coming of the fit of this disease. And you shall make them of both the Motherworts, and with Origan, Betony, Cammomill, Calamint, Wormewood, Peniroyall, Lineseed, Louage seed, and such like. And if the fit be prolonged, you must also adde to such things as are good to dissolue and bring out windines: whereof you shall find example, & names out of the chapters of windinesse of the stomach, and pain of the Cholick. Also then you must poure into the wombe, both ointments and oiles that be very odoriferous, as is, oiles of Spike, & *Irees*, & such like. Also let a midwife dip her fingers in these oiles, and then put them into the mouth of the matrice, rubbing it long and easily, that

How to do in the fit.

Sacculi.

that through that prouoking, the grosse and clammie humour may be auoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, and call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause sneezing, as be, Pepper, *Castoreum*, *Struthium*, and such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse insessions made of the decoction of Laurell berries and leaues, Peniroiall, Calamint, Motherwort, Horehound, Saueine, *Althea*, Cammomil, *Serpillum*, *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, and Fenugreeke. But in the time of the insessions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of Roses and Vineger. But I iudge, that you must rather vse foments and litle bags then insessions, specially when as for the most part, although thou wouldest neuer so faine, thou canst not vse insessions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceassed, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomites do lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must apply cupping glasses with scarification to the loynes, and the ilions. After the seuenth day minister the purgation of *Hiera Colocynthide*, or pils of Agaricke, and by and by come to the drinking of *Castoreum*, which being continually drunk, it deliuereth the patient straightway from this euill. Also you must minister euery day thereof, ℥ j. sometime with *Mulsa*, somtime with the decoction of Motherwort, and sometime minister it with thin wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse insessions & pessaries that do mollifie, made of Goose grease, *Storax*, Masticke, gumme Armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heat, and haue vertue to bring out winde. Therefore vse this perfume specially: ℞ of the Trochisks of *Gallia* & *Aliptæ Muscata*, ana ℥ j. ß. *Storax*, ℥ iij. Cloues, Maces, ana ℥ j. wood of *Aloes*, ℈ ij. Cinnamon chosen, leaues of Laurell, ana ℥ ij *Ladanum*, ℥ ij ß. beate them into powder, and commixe them with *Storax liquida*, and make Trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be cõtent with a very litle meat and drinke, & let al her diet be exsiccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must begin oftentimes with bloud-letting, specially if the menstruis haue been stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *Hierapicra*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, Salt; then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply very well *synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, Pellitorie, Pepper, and Mustard seede. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as, deambulations in the morning, gestations and carryings in a cart, or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carrying about, crying out loud, distinct & apt reading is conuenient. Also annointings and frictions vsed now and then are good. Baths of sweete water are seldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is very good to vse naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this is as it were the very last refuge. Aboue others those baths are good which be in *Badenia*, In the base Germanie, in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe, and at

What must be done straight after the fit.

Trochiskes of perfumes.

Diet.

Cure of the whole bodie.

Buckſtones in Darbiſhire, and there is a bath neare Newmarket in Suffolke, at a towne called Exning, they be all very good; but if they go to any of theſe baths, they muſt take heed of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of falling out of the wombe.

WE ſay, that the matrice falleth out, when it is ſo turned downward, that it ſticketh out outwardly. And yet the whole matrice rolleth not downe, being looſened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwiſe folke do thinke; for if it ſhould fall downe ſo, it could not be reſtored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but ſeldome, yet there be many cauſes of the falling out of it. For, a woman falling from a high place, if ſhe fall on her haunches, *Cauſe.* the pannicles and filmes that hold vp the womb, and the members adioyning, do breake, and cauſe this diſeaſe. Alſo it chanceth many times that in a ſore trauell of child-birth, the wombe falleth out becauſe of the drawing out of the ſecundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Alſo many times it chanceth through negligent and vnskilfull drawing out of the child, ſpecially if it be dead. Moreouer it chanceth ſometimes through a ſtripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or coming of enemies, or through perilous ſailing, or through ſome ſuch like cauſe, all the body being looſened, the wombe falleth out. Alſo ſometime this euill chanceth (all the wombe being looſened) through reſolution or weaknes of the pannicles and muſcles, which thing chanceth ſpecially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie and clammy. It falleth out moſt commonly by the mouth of it, and that which falleth out, is like to the egs of an Oſtrich, differing onely in this, that it is bigger, or leſſe in quantitie. There is no neede of many ſignes, becauſe the diuerſitie of cauſes may partly be knowne by the *Signa.* conſtitution and ſtate of the body, and partly by the telling of the ſicke, and them that be with them daily. When this diſeaſe is but newly begun, you muſt endeuour to put vp the wombe againe, & to reſtore him into his owne place: *Curatio.* for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarry ſo ſtill, ſpecially if age agree vnto it. For in them that are well ſtriken in age, the wombe being put vp againe, it ſlideth out againe through euery light cauſe. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a cliſter. Likewiſe if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on each ſide. For otherwiſe it chanceth by their ſtretching out, that the matrice which is in the midſt between thē, is preſſed together & pent in a ſtrait place, and ſo when he is fallen out, they let it and ſtop it, that it cannot be put vp again into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you muſt lay the ſick vpright, ſo that her hanches may lie higheſt, her hammes bowed, & her legs ſpread broad: then you muſt bathe & nouriſh abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme Oile, or Butter, or Mallowes ſodden, or with the decoction of *Althea*, Fenugrecke, Lineſeede, or ſuch like: and you muſt prepare Wooll together on a heap, in figure and thickneſſe according to

the

proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dip it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *Hypociſchu* infuſed in wine, and put it into the wombe, and you ſhall wreſt and writhe vpward all that which is fallen downe by little and little, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you muſt couer the parts about the priuie members with a ſponge wrung out of *Poſca*. The woman ſhall lie with her legges ſtretched out and ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more ſafegard to binde the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be ſwollen through continuance of time, and be ſtuffed vp with plentie of humours, ſo that the ſwelling do let the purging vp of it, you ſhall nouriſh it with decoction of Beetes, and then you muſt cleanſe it and waſh it with Vineger, and ſtrew in it Salt finely powdered; and when it leaueth ſwelling, then put it vp as is aforeſaid. Then faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame to the nauell, and both the ilions or ſmall guts: and apply continually to the noſe odoriferous things. The third day (the Wooll being as yet ſtill in the wombe) let the woman ſit in blacke ſoure wine a little warmed, or in the decoction of Mirtles, Bramble leaues, Pomgranate rindes, and ſuch like. This being done, let her lie vpright againe with her haunches higheſt; then take the former wooll out, and put in ſuch another in the ſtead of the firſt, dipped in the ſame medicine. Alſo apply cataplaſmes and emplaiſters outwardly to the bottome of the belly, made of Dates, Pomegranate rindes, Lentils, and ſuch like. Alſo Cerates that are made of Maſticke, wood of *Aloes*, *Ladanum*, Frankinſence, Squinant, *Acorus*, Nutmegs, gumme *Tragacanthe*, and ſuch like, are good to be applyed. But let theſe things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Alſo during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eſchue mouing, and ſuch things as prouoke ſneezing. And the wombe muſt be perfumed beneath with ſtinking things, but to the noſe you muſt apply moſt odoriferous things: for the matrice flieth from ſtinking things, and it followeth and embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meates be ſuch as ingender good iuyce, and giue her odoriferous wines. Alſo the belly muſt be made ſoft and ſoluble, leſt if ſhe ſhould go to the ſtoole difficultly, the matrice ſhould alſo fall out againe. But yet you muſt take good heede, that the belly be not too much looſened, for then the parts adioyning are looſened, and ſo the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer, if that part of the wombe which is fallen out, hath through continuance of time by negligence beene putrified and rotten, and through continuall wetting of it with vrine, and filthines ſticking in it, it be exulcerated: you muſt cut off and ſeare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath been knowne (as *Paulus* teſtifieth) that the whole matrice, becauſe it was rotted, hath beene taken away, and the woman liued ſtill. *Victus ratio.*

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the Mole of the matrice.

MOLA in Latin is called of *Aetius & Paulus*, a ſwelling that is hardened, ſomtime in the mouth & entry of the matrice, & ſomtime it ſticketh out in al the matrice, & in feeling it is almoſt like a ſtone. *Galenus li. 14. Ther. meth.*

Causa. defineth *Mola* to be a peece of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seed, and much menstruous bloud flowing into the matrice, & there kept, retained and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne together, and *Signa.* changeth it into the forme and fashion of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction and drawing vp of the sides, slenderneſſe of the bodie, euill colour, losse of appetite, and suppession of the menstruis. Also in this euill the paps do swell, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with child, but in processe of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this disease, as is in conception. Many of them do make a suspition of the Dropsie, but yet there is a difference betweene them two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the Dropsie doth, nor maketh a noise as the Timpany doth. But yet often in processe of time, the liuer is cooled, and the Dropsie ingendreth. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the begin- *Curatio.* ning. But howsoeuer it chanceth, the cure may not be neglected, but you must apply and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you must giue her meates that ingender good iuyce, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that wil cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, and carryings, and deambulations, and baths, and in her lying, let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine in the arme, and then you must purge her by *Pilulæ fœtidæ*. When the body is purged and emptied, apply cataplasmes, foments, insessions, pessaries, ointments and cerates, which haue vertue and power to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althæa*, Mallowes, Cammomill, Melilot, Fenugreeke, Lineseed, and such like. For this pur- *Vnguentum.* pose also it is good to apply *vnguentum Dialthæa*, or *emplastrum Diachylon simplex*, or apply this ointment: ℞. of the oile of sweet Almonds, ℥.iij oile of Lillies, ℥.ij.ß. Goose grease and Hens grease, ana. ℥.j ß. mucilage of Lineseed, and Fenugreek, ana. ℥.j. of the gummes *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium*, ana. ℥.ii. roote of *Althæa*, *Nigella* seeds, and *Daucus*, ana ℈.ij. dissolue the gums in wine, & with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must *Pessus.* put in pessaries made with Butter, Swines grease, Harts marrow, Raisins, fatte Figs, Lineseed and Fenugreek. After this you must minister such medicines as *Mosuli.* can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that wee rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good: ℞. the powders of *Diacinnamomum*, *Diagalanga*, *Diacuminum*, ana. ℥.ß. powder of Diamber, ℈.j. powder of *Dialacca*, ℈.ß. Cinnamon chosen, S. Iohns wort *Calamus aromaticus*, *Asarum*, roote of Gladon, Annise seed, ana. ℈.j. seed of Rew, Ginger, Motherwort, Horehound, *Dictamus*, Sage, ana. ℈.ß. Sugar dissolued in the waters of Motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is sufficient & make lozenges, whereof minister daily the weight of two or three ℥. Also it is good *Pessus.* to put in this pessary: ℞. of the roote of *Asarum*, Gladon, and Madder, ana. ℥.ij. seed of Rew, *Nigella*, ana ℥.ß Marioram, Nutmegs, Cloues, Laurell berries, ana. ℥.j. Saueine, ℈.i. *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, ana. ℈.ß. powder them, & searce them that haue need, and with Turpentine make a pessarie. To conclude, you

must

must vse medicines that can dissolue and loosen congealed bloud: for so there will follow excretion, and voyding out of much blacke bloud and clodded. Also it profiteth maruellously to the taking away of this disease, specially if the euill haue continued long, to vse naturall bathes, and such as do ingender by themselues, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearsed in the chapter of the Dropsie, may be vsed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of inflammation of the wombe.

THe wombe is inflamed through many causes: as through a stripe, or retention and stopping of menstruis: also by abortion, exulceration, or vnmeasurable lechery, sitting on a very hard stoole, very long and swift deambulation and walking. Also oftentimes it chanceth through cold, prohibition and letting the transpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be these: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the share, the loines, and the roots of the eies: conuulsion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, & the necke, and declining of them contrary. Also paine of the stomach, and shutting vp of the mouth of the matrice, and pulse that be small and often. If the inflammation be feeble and small, the aforesaid signes will not be great and strong, and the wombe will be vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the signes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painefull all ouer, but if some part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greatest in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loynes most, and hard dung is withholden & stopped, because then the right gut is pressed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, and the strangury or difficulty in pissing is ingendred, because the bladder is pressed together. If the sides of it be inflamed, the parts aboue the priuie members are stretched out, and the legges are grieued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you shall feele the mouth hard, vnpleasant, shut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neyther age, nor state of the body, nor time of the yeare do let it, you must cut the veine of the hammes or of the anckles (if the inflammation came not after abortion, or great voiding of blood.) Afterward you shall place the sicke in a darke house, which is moderately warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you must rubbe the space betweene the ioyntes, and also the extreme parts, that you may turne away the course of the fluxe from the wombe. For her meate, which must be little in quantitie, you must vse Ptisan broth and rere Egges, but there must be a day betweene: she must abstaine from drinking of Wine, and for that she must vse the decoction of Cinnamon, or hote water. Also the belly if it be not soluble enough of it selfe, must be washed and emptied by easie and mollifying clisters Outwardly you must apply vpon the loines and about the share, Wooll wet in Vineger, wherein Roses haue beene sodden. Also Dates or Quinces sod-

Cause. *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Diet.* *Localia.*

den in wine commixed with oyle of Roſes, is good to be applyed. Alſo you muſt apply cataplaſmes made with the meale of Lineſeed, Fenugreeke, and with Melilot, Plantaine, Lintels, Knotgraſſe, Purſlaine, Singreene, and ſuch like: and that ſpecially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *Eryſipela*. Moreouer, you muſt put into the matrice, Wooll moiſtened with the oile of Roſes, or Quinces, or in the iuyce of Purſlaine, or Singreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline & ceaſſe, you muſt come to the vſing of thoſe things which haue vertue to releaſe diſſolue and diſcuſſe. Therefore you ſhall bid the patient ſit vp to the loynes in Fenugreeke ſodden, or in the decoction of *Althæa*, Lineſeed, Mallowes, and ſometime alſo Motherwort, Horehound and Sage. Alſo you ſhall annoint aboue the priuities, and the loynes, Barley meale with Fenugreeke and Lineſeed ſodden in *Mulſa*, or the decoction of drie Figs. Alſo put in peſſaries made of Butter, Harts-marow, Gooſe greaſe, Hens greaſe, and ſuch like. When the cure hath proceeded, ſundry meates and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifeſt, bring the ſicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windineſſe in the wombe.

Cauſa. THe wombe is puffed vp through cold, or humors corrupt in it, or through abortion or ſore trauel in child-birth, the dore of it being ſhut, or a clod of bloud being in it, and ſtopping it. Oftentimes the windines ingendreth in the hollow bought and ſpace of it, ſometime in the boſome of it, which is euident to the ſenſes, & ſometime in the thinner parts of the ſubſtance of the wombe, not appearing to the ſenſes. There followeth this euil, ſwelling of the bottome of the belly, with hardnes and paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the ſtomacke: and yet neuertheleſſe it is ſtretched out on both ſides, ſometime to the ſhare, and ſometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom alſo the head agreeth. Alſo many times wind breaketh out of the priuities, that the ſicke may feele it. If therefore windineſſe be gathered in the hollowneſſe of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noiſe in the body, ſuch as chanceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: alſo if you beate your fingers on it, it maketh a noiſe like a timpanie. But when the windineſſe is contained in the thinne and ſlender paſſages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured firſt, if age, the region, and time of the yeare, do not let it, by bloud-letting, faſting, and purging with *Hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you muſt vſe foments, and annointings with oile of Rew, or with oile wherein Dill hath beene ſodden. Alſo let her vſe inſeſſions made of the decoction of Rew, Pennyroyall, Calamint, Horehound, Motherwort, *Althæa*, and ſuch like. Alſo apply cataplaſmes, made of the ſeeds of *Apium*, Fennell, Caraway, Comin, Louage, *Daucus*, Anniſe, Fitches or Darnell meale, and ſuch like. Alſo you muſt powre into the wombe ſuch things as haue power to looſen and diſſolue windineſſe, as is, oyle of Rew, *Ammeos*, Origan, and the decoction of things before rehearſed. And if windineſſe be included and ſtopped through the meanes of a clod of blood, after the vſing of the aforeſaid things, and ſpecially inſeſſions,

Signa.

Curatio.

let

let the Midwife put her finger being first annointed, into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by little and little. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplaisters, and cerates that be stronger, as this is, ℞. Sothernwood, Origan, and Calamint, ana. ℥.ij. seed of Tutsan ℈.ii. of Centorie the lesse, ℥.j. Caraway seeds, *Ammi*, ana. ℈.ß. *Cassia* ℈.j. *Bdellium*, Armoniacke, ana. ℥ i. ß. oile of Rew and Dill, ana. ℥.j. with Waxe and Turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate and applie it to the wombe: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the toppe. Also, for her diet you must minister foode that doth attenuate and dissolue windinesse, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *Diamson*, and *Diacuminum*, and *Diacalaminthes*, and such like. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. XLI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

THe matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the agrieued part: and at certaine times stinking and atterie humours are sent out from the filthie vlcer. And other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach, and specially of the fore-part of the head, of the great sinews in the necke, and at the rootes of the eyes is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers ends, and other tokens declared before in the Chapters of inflammation of it. Therefore if the vlcer may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *Specillum Oricularium*: But if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent foorth. If the vlcer be inflamed, the humour is little in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie, with great paine. If the vlcer be foule and filthie, the humour commeth forth in more great abundance, and is matter with lesse griefe. If the vlcer doth eate and feede, the humour is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcer is inflamed, you must vse bloud-letting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the body doth abound with vicious and corrupt humours. Also applie such medicines as do represse and stop the flowing of humours, and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuyces or waters of Purslaine, Plantaine, *Bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vlcer be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicines, as is, *Ptisan* with Honey, *Mulsa* with the decoction of the roote of *Ireos*, *Aristolochia*, Wormewood, or Agrimonie. Those vlcers which do eate and feed, must be washed with Mares milke, or Asses milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony and roote of *Ireos*. *Causa.* *Signa.* *Curatio.*

These things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annoynted: but if they be deepe within, cast them in with an instrument called *Metrenchita*. When the vlcers be well purged and cleansed, you must vse such things as wil close them vp: first gentle things, and then those that be of more effect. The cerate of *Aetius* doth especially please me, which is this: ℞. of white Waxe, ℥.i. of fine oyle of Roses, ℥.iii. and melt them together vpon the coales: and when it is cooled, then put it into a mortar, and put thereinto womans milke, or Asses milke, or Goates milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle vntill it be white, then powre out the aforesaid milke, and put in new milke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about ℈.j. of Saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oyle of Roses, ℥.ii. the grease and marrow of a Goose, an. ℥ ß. also you must put to oile of Quinces, in stead of oile of Roses. You must apply this cerate to the belly and the hanches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by secret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that faculrie: as be, the decoction of Pomegranate rindes, Roses, Quinces, Bramble, Mirtles, Sumach, *Acatia*, *Hypocistchidis*, with restrictiue wine. To this place you may transferre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the chapters of vlcers of the reines, the bladder, and the yard.

Ceratum.

CHAP. LXII.

Of straitnesse of the Matrice.

PHINOSIS in Greeke, *Obduratio* or *Coarctatio vteri* in Latin: it is a stopping or streightning in the mouth or necke of the matrice, whereby those places are made so streight, that it will not admit nor suffer any seed: or if they do receiue it, they cannot hold it; for because of their knobby hardnesse it cannot shut together. Sometime it receiueth seed, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, and thereof is a child conceiued, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great streightnesse of the places, it cannot be brought foorth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations, that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and intessions, that be of like power and vertue. Therefore you must applie foments made of the decoction of Fenugreeke, & *Hydreleon*. Also you must vse pessaries that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *Aesipum*, that is, oile tried out of wooll in sheeps flanks or necks, Saltpeter, & Turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is, Mallowes, *Althaea*, *Nigella*, Fenugreek, Lineseed, *Ammoniacke*, *Bdellium*, Rosin, Grease, and such like, of the which you may make cerates, emplaisters and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, and euaporations made of aromaticke things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a drie sponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you must

Causa.
Signa.
Curatio.

put in another that is thicker. Therefore you must haue many and sundry drie sponges ready. Afterward you must annoint vpon the sponges that you will put in, some medicine made of Alume, & *Elaterium*, mixed with Hony, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if after the sponges be take away, the place do not seeme open and wide enough, and inflammation be present through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applied, then annoint vpō the sponge that you will put in this ointment: ℞. oile of *Ireos*, ℥.j. of fine Turpentine, ℥.ij. of Goose grease, ℥.j root of *Ireos* and Frankinsence, ana. ℥.ß Waxe as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oile of Roses or Violets in stead of oile of *Ireos*. When the inflammation is ceassed, & the place is open, annoint vpō a sponge a cerate made of oile of Roses, & Goose grease, and vse that vntill it be healed, making the place a litle sounder: but yet you must alwayes put in sponges vntil the end of the cure, lest that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrennesse.

STERILITAS in Latine, barrennesse in English; it is caused of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part when his seed is either hote, and as it were burned; or else cold, thin, waterie, and feeble, as is the seed of old and feeble men: or when it is sent forth thicker then it ought to be: or because the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very short yard, so that they cannot cast their seede into the innermost place of the matrice, which also sometime chanceth through much fatnesse: for fat men haue such great bellies, that they cannot cast the seed into the deepest parts of the bodie. Also women of their part cannot conceiue, that haue their matrice either hote and fierie, or cold and moist, or foule, filthie and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* saith 5. *Aphor.* 62.) the seed is corrupted or quenched in such. Also women that be verie grosse and fat, do not conceiue (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth 5. *Aphor.* 46.) Moreouer, women that be leane and slender do not conceiue, or if they do conceiue, they suffer abortion straightway, which also *Hippocrates* witnesseth 5. *Aphor.* 44 Also some do not conceiue, because their wombe is weake, or streight, or short: or because the vessels of it be stopped or shut vp, or blinded and couered, by reason of a scarre: or because the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or because the mouth of the matrice is too streight, or too wide open. Also vnwilling carnall copulation for the most part is vaine and barren: for loue causeth conception, and therefore louing women do conceiue often. Also age too great or too little, doth let conception. Therefore you must separate them that be young from carnall copulation, so that the man may be thirtie yeares old, and the woman eighteene. But specially an vncomely and foolish shape and forme of the womans bodie, doth giue an occasion to barrennesse. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate stature and height of the body, breadth of the loynes, and the share, buttockes sticking out, a handsome and conuenient greatnesse of the belly, a straight breast and large pappes. The signes whereby the diuersity of causes be knowne be these. The hote distemper of a man, is easily knowne by the abundance of haires, *per.* *Causa.* *Signa.* *Hote distem-*

ſpecially blacke haires vpon the genitalles, and the places adioyning, from aboue vnto the middle thighs. Alſo this diſtemperature is laſciuious and readie to carnall luſt, but it is ſoone ſatiate and filled. A temperament that is too cold, is declared by the parts about the ſtones being bald and without haire. Alſo they that be of this temperature, be not deſirous and prone to carnall luſt. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the reſt of the bodie, and becauſe few menſtruis are ſent out, and that with paine, ſo that ſometime the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is ſent out is blackiſh. Alſo there followeth this temperature, an inſtinction or tickling to lecherie, and drineſſe of the whole bodie. A temperature of the matrice which is cold, is knowne by ſuppreſſion and ſtopping of the menſtruis. Alſo they that haue this temperament, do deſpiſe vſe of carnall luſt, and haue the mouth of the matrice drawne together. If through too much moiſtneſſe, barrenneſſe be ingendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with moiſtneſſe, and the menſtruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Drineſſe is knowne by the contrary ſignes to moiſtneſſe. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne, partly by ſight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about her. For the cure common to both, as well the man as the woman, it is conuenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a meane and meaſure in labouring, eating, drinking and bathing, and in all other exerciſes. Men therefore that haue their ſeed corrupted through naughty and euill kinde of diet, if they vſe a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their genitors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her ſelfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idleneſſe doth fill and ſtuffe the whole bodie with ſuperfluous humours and excrements: but great labour drieth vp the bloud, and conſumeth the menſtruis. Let her vſe meates and drinks eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as the ſtomach may well comprehend and conſume. And you muſt ſpecially obſerue in their order of good diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fatte: for they that be fatte, are vnapt to procreate and beget children, becauſe their genitors cannot touch together, and alſo becauſe they ſend out little ſeed. Moreouer, it is conuenient that you giue vnto ſuch as deſire to get children, ſome accuſtomed and pleaſant thing to eate or drinke before meate, which is moſt apt to prouoke carnall luſt, and to ingender ſeed: as thoſe be that do heate meaſurably, and puffe vp with wind. Therefore wine in this caſe meaſurably drunke, is to be preferred before water. For as the Prouerbe is, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, that is, If you haue not bread and wine, carnall luſt will coole and pine. For pot herbs they muſt vſe Rocket, *Orminum* (it is an herb like vnto Horehound) *Eryſimo*, and other ſuch like, which we haue rehearſed for them that cannot vſe carnall copulation, Rew, Calamint, and Mints muſt be eſchewed altogether: for Calamint and Mints, although they ingender much ſeede, yet that which they ingender, is feeble and weake: but Rew doth altogether corrupt & deſtroy ſeed. If a woman do not conceiue, through the vice and corruption of certaine humours, it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, and to amend her with a good diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heed as can be to thoſe things that chance to the matrice, and that

Cold temperature.

Cure of both to man and woman common.

Cure of a woman full of corrupt humours.

their menstruis may flow without any impediment. Therefore when the purgation of their menstruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a measure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take some of those things that can prouoke and stirre vp the purgation of the menstruis, as be herbs that be odoriferous and sharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, Fennell, *Apium*, Louage, and such like, whereof you shall finde plenty in the chapter of the stopping of the menstruis. After the purging of the menstruis, both the right side and the left side of the matrice is open. If cold distemper doth cause barrennesse, you must correct and amend it by foments, cataplasmes, and suffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heate: as those be that are made of Motherwort, Peniroiall, Sage, Rew, Annise seede, Commin, Gladon, and such like. Also it profiteth her to drinke *Castoreum*, and odoriferous seeds, Comin, Annise seed, and Iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis. You must amend and correct a hote distemper of the matrice causing barrennesse, with such things as do coole and moisten: as these hearbs be, Lettuce, Mallowes, Gourds, Purslaine, and Orach, with such like. Also she must drinke wine that is thinne, white, and alayed. Also it profiteth her to sleepe, and to bathe in sweete water. Also you must apply to the loynes and about the priuities such things as do coole, as iuyce of Nightshade mixed with oile of Roses, which also being layd vpon Wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceiue through moistnesse of the matrice, it is good for them to vse a drier dyet. Also they must exercise themselues much, and they must be rubbed in the vpper part of the body. Also, to the intent to purge out, and turne away humors, let them vomit sometime after dinner, and somtime fasting: and you must drie them with scarcitie of meate, and let them eate flesh of middle aged beasts rosted, and giue them pure wine, that is mighty to drinke, but giue it them seldome. Also it profiteth to apply restrictiue things to the matrice, as be, Roses, leaues of Briar, Galles, Sumach, Mirtles, Knotgrasse, Pomegranate rindes, and such like sodden. But you may not do this, vnlesse the whole bodie be first purged. A drie matrice must be cured by the contrary to that which is aforesaid, as with baths of sweete water, annointings, and meates that do moisten. Let her vse Wine that is alayed, being not very old. And if a womans conception be impedited and stopped through grosse humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *Hierapicra* in whey: and she must vse a most exquisite dyet, and meates that do ingender good iuyce: but you must consume the flegmatike humours with much labour, with sweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts: and all other things which be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, which it behoueth not to rehearse heere particularly. Also windinesse ingendred in the wombe, doth let the fertilitie of conception, and causeth barrennesse. Such women therefore as haue this, must first be amended with a streighter diet. Then you must minister both outwardly and inwardly to them, such medicines as can dissolue, disperse, and consume windinesse, as is, Comin, Rew, Dill, seed of *Apium*, and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapter of windinesse of the matrice, and in other places. If shutting vp of the matrice doth cause barrennesse, you shall open it by casting in of o-

Cure of cold temperature of the wombe.

Cure of hote distemper.

Cure of a moist distemper.

Cure of a drie distemper.

Cure of grosse humours.

Cure of windinesse.

Cure of a matrice shut vp.

doriferous cliſters, and by vſing of foments and inſeſſions made of Fenugreeke, Lineſeed, Mallowes, and ſuch like rehearſed in the chapter of ſtreightneſſe of the wombe. And afterward you muſt proceed to ſtronger medicines, as Motherwort, Calamint, Peniroiall, and Marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vſe a drying diet, and drying foments. And it is good alſo to vſe reſtrictiue medicines, as be, the decoction of Galles, Bramble rootes, Mirtles, and ſuch like rehearſed before in the cure of a moiſt diſtemper. Laſt of all, if crookedneſſe of the matrice do cauſe barrenneſſe, you ſhall direct and make ſtraight the matrice with mollifying foments, for foments can do that beſt: but yet you may conueniently put in mollifying peſſaries: but ſpecially the decoction of Peniroyall, and Motherwort, and *Caſtoreum* drunke with *Poſca*, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* ſaith, that the carnall luſt vſed backeward is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures onely by other chapters: for the particular cure of each cauſe, muſt be ſought out of his proper chapter.

Cure of an open matrice.

Cure of a writhed matrice.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of ſore trauell in child-birth.

Difficilis partus cauſæ.

SORE trauell in child-birth doth chance either through default of the parent, or of the child, or of the ſecundine, or through ſome outward cauſe. Of the parent, if ſhe be groſſe and fat, faint hearted, and vnskilfull of paine; or if the whole matrice be ſmall, or if there be inflammation of the whole wombe, or of ſome part of it, or that it be vexed with ſome other diſeaſes: or if ſhe be naturally weake, ſo that ſhe cannot driue out the child: or if that ſhe do labour before time. Alſo if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be ſome peece of fleſh ingendred there, by reaſon of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the child is, if it be of an vnaccuſtomed greatneſſe, or ſmall and of a little weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monſtrous, as hauing two heads, or three feete, or if it be dead, and ſo doth not labour to come forth, or if it ſwell: or being aliue, if it be weake, ſo that it cannot proceed foorth: or if they be two or moe, and do all ruſh ſodainly together into the necke of the matrice, or if the childe be faſhioned contrarie to nature. For the naturall forme of a child coming forth is, firſt with his head (his hands being ſtretched out vpon the thighs) and with his head declining to the neather parts, but ſtraightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the beſt forme in coming forth next vnto this, is, firſt with his feete, hauing the hands ſtretched vpon both thighs, and ſo deſcending ſtraight out. All other formes in coming forth, except theſe two, are contrary and abhorring to nature. The trauell is made difficile through the ſecundine: if it be not pulled away, becauſe of the groſſeneſſe or thickeneſſe of it, or if it breake before it ſhould do, becauſe of the thinneſſe of it. For then the humour that is gathered together in the matrice, is ſent out before conuenient time. Therefore the priuities be without moiſture, and be drie at the time of the trauell, when moiſtneſſe were neceſſary, which ſhould make a ſlippery and eaſie going out of the child, and ſo through drineſſe the child ſlideth out hardly. Alſo difficultie in child-birth is ingendred of outward cauſes: as of cold, which thickeneth the

matrice,

matrice, and maketh the passages streighter; or through a great heate, which dissolueth and weakeneth the strength. But outward causes are knowne by the telling of the patient, or of them that sit by her. Weakenesse of the woman that laboureth, as fatnesse, may be knowne by the state of the body. Also by diseases, that she hath had before, you may readily come to the knowledge of weakenesse, and of many other euils. Weaknesse of the child is knowne by feeble and slow mouing of it. Which if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldnesse of the belly, and great paine about the nauell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, and a naughtie colour of the face. Greatnesse of the childe may be coniectured by the constitution of the parents bodie, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenesse and thicknesse of the secundine may be gathered and knowne thus: if none of the aforesaid signes be present, and the woman strong and lusty, and the childe moueth quickely and easily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore you must place a fat woman downeward in a little bed, that is, hanging downeward with her head, and her face towards the ground, bending and inclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oile, Ducks grease, Hens grease, and such like: and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by little and little. You must comfort and incourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskiltull of paines in trauell, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and let her thrust it out to the illions with all her might. If sore trauell in child-birth be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or as it were, adarctation and penning in of the childe, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing, by powring in largely sweete wine and hote. Also the decoction of Fenugreeke, or Mallows, or Linseed, or also egges are good, because they are of a loosening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the parts about the priuie members, and the belly & loynes with the aforesaid decoction, or with some other loosening and mollifying medicines. Also it profiteth to vse hote insessions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house inclining to heate. Also it is good to vse infusions, and annointings with oiles that be hote in touching and vertue, and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a feuer nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, and you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanely hote. Many do vse to such violent shaking of the bodie. And if any woman be weake, and haue sore trauell in child-birth through resolution of the bodie, you must comfort and refresh the body with medicines that do thicken, and draw together, and with such meates and drinkes as do recreate, restore, and adde strength to the bodie: as be insessions and sprinklings with Mirtles, Vine leaues, Pomegranates, Roses, smelling to Vineger, and annointings with Wine mixt with cold oyle of Roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the matrice. If sore trauell do chance through an vnnaturall forme of the child in comming forth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and

Signa.

Cure of a fat woman.

Cure of a fearfull woman.

partly by making it straight. And if the head or foote be sent out first, you may not draw out the childe taking hold by that member, but put your fingers to the shoulders or hanches of the child, and thrust vp that againe which is come forth, into the conuenient place. If there be two or three, or moe children, & do thrust altogether into the necke of the matrice, you must driue back the rest into the bottome of the wombe, & bring that out first, which seemeth to be most ready: but if it do not come forth because the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through some other cause, you must come to drawing out of the child, or to cutting, which is taught abundantly of *Aetius, li.16. cap.23.* and of *Paulus libr.6. cap.74.* For it is not our purpose to teach handie cure heere. Moreouer, if the tunicle or secundine of the childe be thicker and strooger, then that it may be broken, you must cut it. Those that haue the humor which is contained in the tunicles or secundine, flowing and running out before the conuenient time, so that the places be dried vp, you shall wash it all about with whites of Egges, with the decoction of Mallowes, and Fenugreeke strained, or with iuyce of Pulsan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuersally helpe all that haue sore trauell in child birth, is this that followeth:

Pulvis optimus. ℞. Cinnamon chosen, ℥.ij. Mirrhe, *Cassia lignea*, ana ʒ.j. white Amber. ℥.j. ß. beate them together, and make a fine powder, whereof minister in wine that is odoriferous, the weight of one drachme. Moreouer the child being borne, oftentimes it chanceth that the secundine doth sticke fast in the wombe; which if it chanceth, then sometime the mouth of the matrice is found open, and sometime shut: and the secundine many times is still ioyned to the bottome of the wombe, and many times it is separate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open, and the secundine which is left therein, do cleaue to some part of the wombe, being wound vp together like a ball, it may easily be drawne out. You must draw out the secundine with your left hand being warmed, and annointed with some fat thing, and put into the wombe. If the secundine be fastened and knit to the bottome of the wombe, you shall likewise put in your hand, warmed and annointed with grease, and take hold of the secundine and draw it out: but you may not draw it straight forth, lest the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but softly and easily, first pulling it crooked, bringing it this way and that way: then after that, you may draw it somewhat harder, for by this meanes you shall loosen it from the fastening. But if the mouth of the matrice be shut, you shal vse perfusions, and with the fingers of your left hand you shall labour to open it easily, and to make it wider by little and little. Which if you cannot bring to passe, it is good to apply about the priuities, forments, perfusions, and ointments that can mollifie, dissolue, and releale. If she be strong, you must put into her nostrils at that time also sneezing powder, made of *Castoreum*, Pepper, and such like. For *Hippocrates* in 5. *Aph.*49 writeth thus: That the secundine may come out, giue her sneezing powder, and let her stoppe her nose and mouth. Also you must minister vnto her potions that can prouoke menstruis: which things aforesaid, you must do the first and second day. Moreouer, she must vse suffumigations, seething in a pot, Motherwort, *Irios*, Saueine, Penyroyall, Calamint, *Dictamus*, and such like. Then put the pot vnder a close chaire, vpon the which

To draw out the secundine.

let

let the woman ſit, being compaſſed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand, and labour to pull out the ſecundine as is aforeſaid; but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rend it, for within a few dayes after, being rotten and turned into atter, it wil fall out. But becauſe through the euill ſauour and ſmell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head, and marreth the ſtomach, they that are troubled with this euill, muſt be continually perfumed. For which purpoſe theſe things are good: *Cardamome*, *Bdellium*, with Saueine, Frankinſence, *Storax*, *Ladanum*, wood of *Aloes*, and ſuch like. Alſo perfuming with ieate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellouſly. Alſo ſimples, ſuch as prouoke menſtruis, be good: as decoction of Motherwort, and Laurell berries, with *Vinum mulſum*. Alſo make peſſaries of Mirrhe and *Cyclaminum* commixed with oile.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

ISCHIAS in Greeke, properly is called a moſt grieuous paine, which is wont to chance about the ioynt which the Greekes do call *Iſchion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in Engliſh the huckle bone. The Latines call this diſeaſe *Iſchias*, and they that are afflicted with this diſeaſe, are called *Iſchiadici*. The barbarous ſort call this diſeaſe *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diſeaſed with it *Sciatici*. It is cauſed through a groſſe and flegmatike humour, which being congealed, abideth in the ioynt of the huckle bones. Therefore continuall crudities and rawneſſe, and vnmeaſurable vſing of venerious acts, do not a litle helpe the ingendring of a *Sciatica*. Alſo ſometime ſwift deambulations and walkings, and ſuppreſſion or ſtopping of the Hemorhoides, and cuſtome of vomiting being omitted, and purgation of menſtruis, or elſe other familiar and accuſtomed emptyings being impedited and ſtopped, and neglecting of exerciſes: for each of theſe do ingender abundance of flegmatike humors. There goeth before this euill ſometime paine of the muſcles that be nigh vnto it, and ſpecially of the loynes; ſometime the beginning is in the huckle bone it ſelfe: alſo ſometime it chanceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe onely about the hammes, and to ſome about the ankles, but in ſome all the legge is equally vexed with paine. Alſo in many, there is paine about the priuie members, and then alſo the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in piſſing: and then chiefly the whole legge, from the haunch to the heele ſuffereth paine. Let the cure be begun with voyding and purging of the humour that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humours, before all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or alſo in the arme, on that ſide that is diſeaſed. For ſometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the bodie be ſtuffed with a flegmaticke and groſſe humour, you muſt beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpoſe you muſt miniſter Clyſters often, made after this ſort, or in this manner: ℞. of Centorie, Sage, *Verbaſculi ſdorati*, Rew, *Chamepityos*, ana. M. j. rootes of Gladon, ℥. j. *Stachados*, ℥. iij. ſeedes of Anniſe

ἰσχιας.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Clyſter.

and Fennell, ana. ℥.ij.ß. Agaricke of the beſt, ℥.ij. roote of Polypodie, ℥.v. Seethe theſe in ſufficient quantity of water, vntil the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction, ℥.xiij. of *Hierapicra* ℥.ß. of *electuarium Nidum maius*, ℥.ij. of oile of Lillies, ℥.ij. oile of Rew, ℥ j. the yolkes of two Egs, Salt, ℥ j.ß. commixe them all and make a Cliſter. Alſo vomiting doth helpe them, that haue the *Sciatica*, much more then the purging downeward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downeward ſodainly. Therefore you muſt prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterward you muſt miniſter vomiting medicines, beginning firſt with them that be eaſie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickned together, which can difficultly be diſſolued and looſened, cauſed through Phiſitions vſing ſharpe medicines out of time, ſuch be holpen by faſtening on of a very great cupping glaſſe with ſcarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vſe ſuch medicines as can repreſſe and ſtoppe the fluxe. For ſeeing the diſeaſe is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muſcles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is ſent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this diſeaſe, there is neede of medicines that can mitigate and aſſwage, which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as thoſe things which do coole, do thruſt the humours violently to the anckle bone: ſo thoſe things that do vehemently heate, do draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer, you may not come to the vſing of ſharpe medicines, till after bloud-letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man apply ſharpe medicines to the diſeaſed member, before the bodie be emptied or purged, he ſhall make the diſeaſe hard to cure, becauſe of a multitude of humours ſo thickened there, that they cannot be diſſolued. For beſides other things, it is made groſſe and viſcous, and through the heate and drineſſe of the ſharpe medicines, it ſuffereth as it were roſting or burning. Firſt therefore you muſt irrigate and ſprinkle the aggrieued place with oile of Rew. After you muſt apply more effectuous medicines, which do heate, and can draw humours from the bottome to the toppe, as be *oleum Vulpinum*, oyle of Pepper, *oleum Coſtiuum*, oyle of Iuniper, *vnguentum Aragon*, *Martiatum*, and *Agrippa*. Alſo Sage, Rew, Laurell leaues, Elderne, roote of Walwort, Peniroiall, Saueine, *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and ſuch like. Of the which you may make foments, oyntments, emplaiſters, and cerates. But if griefe be extremely painefull, then vſe this which followeth, for it is moſt excellent againſt this euill: ℞. Roſin of the Pine tree, ℔ j.ß. *Galbanum*, ℥.v. melt them with a ſoft fire, and then ſtraine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the powder of Maſticke, ℥.j. and then ſpread it warme vpon Dogges leather, or Lambes leather, and ſtrike it a good thickeneſſe; and before you apply this plaiſter to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following: ℞. freſh Hogs greaſe, ℥.j.ß. and take Sowes or Monkes peaſon, in number twenty, and beate them both well in a mortar, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoynt the places and the plaiſter, and warme the plaiſter againſt the fire, till it be ſoft, and lay it to the agrieued place, and let it lie nine dayes. If there be haires vpon the place, you muſt ſhaue them off firſt, and rolle it well, leſt it ſlippeth away; then euerie day, morning

Vomitus.

Cucurbita magna.

When ſharpe medicins may be vſed.

Simples.

Emplaſtrum.

Vnguentum.

morning and euening at each time, let the patient take, ℥.j. of this electuarie: *Electuarium.*
℞. of the roots of *Acorus*, or Gladon, being made cleane, ℔.j. ſtampe them very ſmall, (as poſſibly you may do) then take of clarified Honey, ℔ iij. and put in the rootes by little and little, euer ſtirring it, and when it is well ſodden, put into it of Cinnamon, ℥.j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vſe: and at the end of the nine dayes, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay to the forenamed plaiſters other nine daies, vſing the ſame Electuarie, and procure vomite, as before, euery ſixth or ſeuenth day; for that doth greatly reuert the humour. But in the beginning of the griefe, apply to the agrieued place againe and againe, ſponges wet in the decoction of Iuniper, or Sage, or Elderne leaues. Afterward vſe this ointment: ℞. of *vnguentum Martiaton*, ℥.iij. oile of *Ireos*, and Lillies, ana. ℥.ß. iuyce of Rew, and *Chamæpityos*, ana. ℥.ij Honey, ℥ j ß. Sage, Peniroiall, Pepper, ana. ℥.ß. Pellitory, Staueſacre, ana. ℈.j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. Alſo the vſing of this cerate profiteth: ℞. *oleum Coſtinum*, and *Vulpinum*, ana. ℥ ij.ß. oile of Pepper, ℥ß *Opoponax*, *Bdellium*, *Storax*, ana. ℥.iij. roote of Briony, Salt-peter, leaues of Elderne, ana ℥ij. *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, Rew, ana. ℥.i.ß. *Euphorbium*, ℈.j. diſſolue the Gummes in very ſharpe Vineger, and with Turpentine and Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make a cerate. And if the euill do remaine ſtill, you muſt vſe cliſters againe: and then faſten a very great cupping glaſſe with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gaſhes with ſcarification. And if that the diſeaſe be not ended ſo, you muſt vſe againe purging vomites, and the other remedies aforelayd: which being done, you muſt come to the vſing of Dropaces and Synapiſmes, and ſo to the vſing of burning medicines: amongſt which, the roote of the herbe called *Iberis*, is not the worſt, being new digged vp in Sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a little old Swines greaſe, being layed and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole ſhanke or legge. Alſo the leaues of it will do the ſame thing. And being ſo applied, let it lie not paſt two houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be poſſible for them to ſuffer it: for it raiſeth ſwelling with burning and redneſſe, as a Synapiſme is wont to do. Afterward bring the ſicke into a bath, in the which, when he hath ſwet a little, bid him ſit downe in the veſſell, becauſe of the biting heate, and compell him to ſuffer it ſtrongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring biting and gnawing with burning heate; then bring him out; from which alwayes almoſt (as *Aetius* witneſſeth) although they be carried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oile with a very little wine, and ſhake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humour with a ſharpe cloth, and couer the leg it ſelfe with verie ſoft wooll. And truly (this being done) it hath beene wont to need no other remedy for the cure. But if ſometime it chanceth any part or remembrance of the euill to be left ſtill, within a few dayes after, you may vſe againe the ſame remedy. And certaine dayes after, you may lay on the cerate which is a little before deſcribed. Moreouer, among burning and bliſtering medicines, this is good: ℞. *Mel anacardinum*, Leauen, ana ℥.i. *Cantharides*, (the wings caſt away) ℥.ij. Vineger as much as is ſufficient, and commixe them together.

Aliud vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Cauſticum.

Aliud. Or this is good: ℞. *Euphorbium*, Saltpeter, ana. ℈ij. Sope, quicke Lime, ana. ℥j. *Mel anacardinum*, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed together, may be of the thickeneſſe of honey: let his diet be such, that his meate may be meanely thinne, and easie of digestion. Let his exercise be walkings, continuall writhings, leapings, or dauncings and running. It is good alwayes to haue the bodie soluble. And if the disease hath endured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforesaid medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort as *Paulus* teacheth *in libr. 6. cap. 76.* and *Aetius lib. 12. cap. 30.*

Victus ratio.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the Goute in the feete and ioynts.

PODAGRA and *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kinde. And therefore they differ not but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weakeneſſe of ioynts, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humour do flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioynts, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *Articularis morbus*, the ioynt sickeneſſe. Sometime this euill doth rush in sodainly, being equally dispersed throughout all the ioynts. But for the most part, the fluxe is wont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in some, paine doth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollowneſſe of the foote is grieued, either through chafing of the shoo, or some such like thing. The Goute taketh his beginning at the feete, whereupon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, & also to the ioynts of the huckle bones, and the thighes; afterward to the hands, euery ioynt particularly being grieued. They that are taken extremely with this disease, haue paine in the backebone ioynts, and in the ioynts of the ribbes, and eye liddes, and to some paine in the throat also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is ingendred of continuall crudities and drunkenneſſe, and of immoderate vsing of lecherie, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkings, through long standing, or often riding, by suppreſſion and stopping of accustomed excretions and fluxes and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the mind, do not onely ingender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humours. Also many times the Cholicke being naughtily cured, is wont to be a cause why the ioynt sickeneſſe should follow. But for the most part, a disposition to this kind of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posteritie. Also vniuersally abundance of all raw humors is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and do fasten themselues in the ioynts, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is ingendred of commixtion of humours. The outward causes may easily be knowne by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humours you shall know by the signes following. The humor of blood, if it be much in quantity, it causeth fulneſſe, and great swelling, not onely of the veines, but about the

Podagra.

Arthritis.

Causa.

Signa.

skinne

skin of the whole member that is grieued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very cold, or very hote: and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the bloud doth chance continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with bloud, and are puffed vp and swollen. The conuenient age for this euill, is youth. Also meats that ingender good iuyce, and nourish abundantly, were eaten before, and exercises were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is most afflicted, is Spring time. If the humour that floweth into the ioynts be cholericke, you may know it by the yellowish colour of the skinne. Somtime rednesse is mixed with the yellow colour, that is, when choler is commixd with blood. Also there is sensible heate and sharpe paine like lancing. Also moistnes sodainly bursteth out of the skinne, without euident swelling. The patient is eased with cooling medicines, and reioyceth: but with hote things his paines augment. In the state and strength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirst. His vrine is cytrine, and sometime also it is sharpe. There is wont to go before this disease, great cares, and wrath, watchings, and wearinesse, & a diet that was apt to ingender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare that is hote and drie, be apt to cause this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioynts, be flegmaticke, the swelling will giue place to the thrusting of the finger, and it is loose and moderate: the colour of the member afflicted, is white. Old age is much afflicted with this humor, and a complexion cold and moist, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenesse, rest, and a diet that ingendred flegmaticke humors. If it be salt fleame, great itch, and gnawing, or biting doth trouble the diseased members. If the fluxe to the ioynts be of melancholy, which chanceth but seldome, the colour of the swelling is blackish. The age which doth most ingender this fluxe, is the declination of middle age. Also the complexion is cold and drie, and the time of the yeare, Harueſt; a countrey that is cold and drie, and like state of the aire, and a diet that ingendreth melancholy. When the humor that floweth into the ioynts is bloud, by and by you must let bloud, not once only, but often, taking it away by litle and litle: for if you do omit bloud-letting, and do vse repercussiue medicines, you shall be an author of great euill. For the bloud being driuen backe from the vnnoble members, it rusheth vp to the principall members, & that be necessary to life. Therefore in fluxes of bloud, letting of bloud is very necessary, specially in them that abound with bloud. You must cut a veine in the arme beneath, right against the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this disease, cut a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the ancle, or the sole of the feete: for a veine being cut right against the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacie and strength. Then specially must bloud-letting be vsed, when this euill beginneth first to inuade any man. For they that be vexed often with this fluxe of bloud, do feele more hurt then helpe of bloud-letting, specially if their bodie be weake and cold. After bloud-letting you must apply remedies to the agrieued member, which do neyther coole greatly, lest they should driue together and thicken the

Signs if bloud do flow.

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes of melancholy flowing.

Cure by bloud letting.

Localia.

humors; nor heate vehemently, leſt they ſhould draw more humors vnto the diſeaſed member. Therefore you muſt ſprinckle the grieued place with old Vineger, and oile of Roſes mixed together, ſpecially if the cauſe of the paine do ſeeme to be deepe within. For Vineger of his own proper thinneſſe, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of Roſes, which naturally can eaſe paines. But if the paine be aloft nigh the skinne, you ſhall helpe it greatly with oile and wine, applying it in Sommer warme, in Winter hote. Afterward alſo you muſt vſe cataplaſmes which can eaſe and ceaſſe paine, without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of Fenugreek, Barley, Beanes, Lupins, Cammomill, and ſuch like: and you muſt ſee that thoſe things be euer hote, which may well be, if they be continually changed, & couered ouer aloft with wooll. Alſo this medicine profiteth not a litle: ℞. Goates milke, ℥ v. the yolks of two Egs, oyle of Roſes, ℥ j. Saffron, ℥ ß. crums of bread as much as is ſufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplaſme: ſtamp theſe till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieued. Alſo you may make an emplaiſter or cerate of oile of Roſes, Vineger, Roſin, Waxe, *Galbanum*, gum Ammoniacke, Frankinſence, Saffron, and ſuch like. You muſt giue him meates which do extenuate, and that do nouriſh but little, as be pothearbs. Let him abſtaine altogether from fleſh, except it be birds of mountaines. Let him vſe fiſhes that breed in ſtony waters. Wine if the intemperance of the ſicke may ſuffer it, muſt altogether be taken away: for it is almoſt the onely reaſon whereby health ſhould follow: which, ſeeing among a thouſand, ſcarce one doth obſerue, it is not maruell though there be verie few which be deliuered from this diſeaſe at theſe dayes. In ſtead of Wine let him vſe water, wherein Cinnamon, Anniſe ſeedes, or ſuch like hath beene ſodden: or that drinke which is called fooliſhly nowadayes *Ipocras*: the making whereof you may finde before in the chapter of the Palſey. Let the ſicke diligently auoyde fruite, and carnall luſt. Alſo he ought to haue a ſoluble belly alwayes, that can auoyd out the ordure readily alone: which, if they do not well, waſh it with ſome eaſie cliſter. If through flowing of choler, the diſeaſe in the ioints be cauſed, then your labour muſt be to void and purge out the humour that doth vexe the patient, which you muſt do, as well by vomiting as by the belly downeward. Therefore you muſt ſurely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full ſtate of it, you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to coole and reſtraine; as be thoſe that are made of Singreene, greene Roſes, ſharpe Sorrell, Nightſhade, Plantaine, and ſuch like, often before rehearſed. In this kinde of fluxe, many times, becauſe of the vehemencie of the paine, you muſt vſe ſuch medicines as can cauſe aſtoniſhment. For the which purpoſe, it is good to apply the medicine which we deſcribed before, of Goates milke, crummes of bread, Saffron, and yolkes of Egs, with the which you muſt commixe Poppy ſeeds, ℥ iij. or *Opium*, ℥ ß. or more or leſſe according to the paine. Alſo, for the ſame purpoſe, leaues of Hemlocke and Henbane do profite, being applied and layed on. But you muſt note, and take heede, when you be compelled to vſe ſtupefactiue things in feruent and vehement pains, that afterward you do recreate and nouriſh thoſe members by ſuch things as do heate. For vnleſſe you do ſo, you ſhall

Cataplaſmata

Victus ratio.

Why few be cured of the goute at theſe dayes.

Cure of the cholericke fluxe.

Stupefacientia.

Note.

make

make those members weake and intemperate, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines be, Origan, Sauorie, Mustard seed, Pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the bodie: but so, that you touch not the aggrieued member. Moreouer, you must minister in drink those things that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine. Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe, are wont to do good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: for moistnesse increaseth the fluxe. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictiue Apples and Medlars, and other that do coole and stoppe or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether from Wine, as is aforesaid. They which are diseased through flowing of fleame, you must beginne the cure of them with purging of fleame. The fleg-maticke humour is auoyded by vomiting, but neuertheless also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euill, is downeward by the belly, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioynts of the bodie. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleame, is to go out by the guttes. For if it were drawne by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth perill. Therefore it is more safe and healthfull to purge it downward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be prepared, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hunger and famine many dayes; for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith, 7. *Aphor.* 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong clisters, and medicines that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and ceasse paine, and which can dissolue and drie moderately, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onelie dissoluing and discussiue things. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althæa*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure, or Barley meale applyed to. Also the roote of it sodden in *Aqua mulsa*, and stamped and applyed, is good. And this ointment is good. ℞. of the oiles of Laurell, and *Ireos*, ana. ℥.j. old swines grease, butter, ana. ℥ iij. the marrow of a Hart, ℥. ij. fine Turpentine, ℥.v. *Galbanum* dissolued in Vineger, ℥.j. Hysope, roote of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke seed, an. ℈ ij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Moreouer, let the meates that you giue to nourish him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuyce of Rice rootes, and such like: but yet flesh of the birds of mountaines roasted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *Acetum Mulsum*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him Wine, in very little quantitie at certaine times, and let it be thinne, yellow and old. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, must be emptied eyther with *fleame*,

Diet.

Cure of flegmatike fluxe.

Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.

Vnguentum.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a melancholie

bloud letting or by purgation. Vse bloud-letting, when the bloud is infected with melancholy: and vse purgations, when the patient declineth to melancholie; but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to vse one of the aforesaid things: but first cut a veine, and then vse a purging medicine: which thing you must also do in other euils that haue need of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you must vse such things as can represse, stop, and also heate sensibly. After purging, vse those things that can gently heate, attenuate and dissolue or discusse, as is afore taught. But because knobbes and hard swellings do ingender afterward in the ioyntes, as well because of the grossenesse, and earthie hardnesse of the humor that hath flowed thither, and also through the vsing of immoderate discussiue and drying medicines, without mixing of such with them as haue a mollifying vertue: therefore to take those knobbes away, you must vse those medicines, which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the spleene. But specially very old and sharpe cheese, brayed in the decoction of very fat and old swines flesh, is good to be applied. Also, for this euill, Figges braied and laied on are good. Also *Altbea* twise sodden, Oates, Nettles, Briony roote, round rootes, Dill, Sothernewood, Mayweede, Horehound leaues mixed with Pitch, Sulphure and wine. Also you must commixe fat and greases of swine, Goates, Calues, and Geese. Also all marrows and other things that haue vertue to mollifie and soften. And also bathings, after the inflammation is ceassed, are most commodious and profitable to all that haue the Gout. While they wash them, put sponges wet in Vineger & Salt mixt together, round about the diseased places, that they may remaine safe from humours flowing to it. They must wash themselues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tarry long in hote water. It is best therefore that they be sprinckled and wet with hote water powred on them. Also it is profitable that all the bodie be rubbed with drie linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the Goute, shall defend themselues afterward from it, by this meanes: First, twise in a yeare, that is, at Spring time and Autumne, if nothing do let it, let him bloud largely. Also about those times, and oftener, let him vse purging medicins. Also it is necessary for him to eate little meate, and to abstaine from fulnesse. Also he must vse meates that be easie of digestion, and which readily be distributed into the members of the bodie, and be without excrements. Let him abstaine altogether from wine, or let him vse it very scarcely. Let him vse exercise very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* saith) must go before meate. And to conclude, they that desire to be freed from the Gout, let them remember this short and most wholesome precept of *Hippocrates*: The way to helpe and preserue health, is, not to be filled with meates, and to be vnslouthfull in labouring. Also let his sleepes and venerious acts be in a meane. As for remedies in this case, let Salt be braied small in oile, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it helpeth greatly all those that will be free from this euil, except they be of a wonderfull drie temperature. And he must vse annointing with that, morning and euening all the daies of his life.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

A defence for the goute.

The end of the third Booke.

THE

THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An expoſition of Feauers.

FEBRIS in Latine, a Feauer in Engliſh, it is an vnnaturall heate, which taking his beginning at the heart, is ſpread by the arteries and veins into the whole body, and doth hurt, and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not, that he hath a Feauer, vnleſſe the heate being immoderately increaſed, do offend the man, and hurt his operations and actions. *Febris quid.*

Moreouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witneſſeth) which do ordaine and conſtitute our bodie, (that is to ſay) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently; (that is) the hard and ſound members in the bodie, the humours, and the ſpirits or aire: ſo alſo there be three kinds of ſimple Feuers. For if immoderate heate be kindled in the ſpirits and aire of mans bodie, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in Engliſh it may be called, one day Feauer. This Feauer is like to hote ayre or winde, included in a bladder or bottle: for like as the ayre heateth the bottle that it is in, euen ſo, the ſpirits of a mans bodie, being heat more then they ſhould be, do heate all the whole bodie. There chanceth in this kinde of feauer but one fit, and for the moſt part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon it is called *Diaria febris*, that is, the one day feauer. For they ceaſſe after the firſt fit, if they be rightly handled. But you muſt note, that there be feauers called *Diariæ*, which laſt vntill the third day, as thoſe be which are ingendred of thickening and ſtopping of the conduits and paſſages. For although that this word *Diaria* be not of the very ſubſtance of ſuch feauers, yet becauſe they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching ſhould be brieſe and euident (notwithſtanding that the word repugne againſt it) ſeeing that they be of the ſame nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may moſt rightly be called *Diariæ* (as *Galen* ſheweth abundantly *in lib. 9. Therapeutices, cap. 1.*) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kinds of *Diaries*: one which is named *Diaria* ſimply and without adiection or putting to of any word, which feauer doth not extend aboue the ſpace of a naturall day (that is) twenty foure houres. Another kind there is, which is called *Diaria plurium dierum* (that is) a diarie of many dayes. It is called by another name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The ſecond kinde of ſimple feauers is, when as immoderate heate is kindled in the humours, and *Three principall kindes of ſimple feuers* *Ephemera.* *Diaria.* *Note.* *Diaria ſimplex.* *Diaria plurium dierum.*

Putrida. it is called *Putrida*, that is, rotten, onely because the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hote water: for as that doth heate a coole vessell that it is powred into: so also humours, hote aboue nature, do heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot, either within the vessels or without. If they rot within the vessels, then either all the humors do putrifie together, or else one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and alike within all the vessels or veines, or specially within the greatest, it causeth a feuer called *Synochus putrida*: which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth, you must note first, that the Phisitions of Greece do call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fit remaining still continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many dayes: or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *Continens febris*, and in English, a constant or continuall feauer. But although there be one forme and likelihood of such feauers, whereupon, they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For some of them haue manifest signes and tokens of rottennesse: and some againe haue none at all, which (as we said a little before) be of the kindes of *Diaria*. We, to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euident, do call the first, *Synochus putrida*: and the last we call *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous sort, which call the last of them *Synocha*, and the first *Synochus*: seeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witnesseth) containe them both vnder the name of *Synochus*. Of those feauers which are named *Synochi*, there be three sundrie sorts or differences: for some of them do endure of an equall vehemencie and force from the beginning vntill the ending: those the Greekes call *Homotonos*, and *Acmasticos*, that is, remayning still in the same force and vigour. Some alwayes increase and augment by little and little: those the Greekes do call *anabaticos* and *epacmasticos*, that is, increasing and augmenting more and more. Some do decrease and diminish by little and little, those the Greekes call *paracmasticos*, that is, decreasing. Moreouer, if one onely humour do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latines, *Continua febris*, in English a continuall feauer, which is when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remission and slaking of euerie fit. Whereby it is euident that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis*, that is, a constant feauer, and a continuall feauer, do differ much asunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remission or slaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is tensible remission and slaking in euerie fitte. Also the feauer *Synochus* hath but one onely fit: but in *Synechis* there be many fits. And they two agree in this, that neyther of them doth leaue the patient sometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or else *Continua febris*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it causeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feuer, which is called of the Greeks *Causos*. If fleam do putrifie or rot within the vessels, there ingendreth a continuall Quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the vessels, there ingendreth a continuall Quartane. And these continuall feauers be somewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will speake straightway. For

Συνοχος.

Two kinds of Synochus: Synochus putrida, & non putrida.

Three sorts of Synochus.
1
2
3

συνεχης.

What a continuall feuer is.

Difference betweene Synochus and synechis.

Three kindes of continuall feauers.

Tertiana continua.

Quotidiana continua.

Quartana continua.

a coo-

a continuall Tertian agreeth with a true intermitting Tertian, in this, that it hath a fitte as well as it euery third day. And a continuall Quotidian agreeth with an intermitting Quotidian, because each of them hath a fitte euerie day. Also a continuall Quartane agreeth with an intermitting Quartane, because both of them causeth a fitte euery fourth day. But yet these feauers do differ two wayes, notwithstanding that they agree in the humour that causeth them. *Likenesse betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.*

First they differ, because in continuall feauers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humour is dispersed into all the members of the bodie; whereupon it chanceth through violence of spreading of humours, the feauers are purged out by themselues. Hereby also they differ another way, that is, the intermitting feauers slake betweene the fittes, but the continuall feauers do not ceasse at all betweene the fittes. *Difference betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.*

Hitherto we haue rehearsed what kindes of feauers humours putrified within the vessels do cause and ingender: now we will expound, what feauers humours putrified without the vessels do conceiue, ingender and kindle. If therefore an humour do putrifie and rotte without the vessels, it causeth an Intermitting feauer, which is so called, because the fitte doth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceassing, and leaueth off betweene the fittes. It may most aptly be called in Latine *Febris interpolata*, because the fittes come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. *Intermittens febris.* *Interpolata.*

Of this feauer there be three kindes, that is, a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartane. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rotte without the vessels. It is so called because it ceasseth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greeke is called *Amphemerinon*, is caused of sweete fleame being putrified and rotten without the vessels: and it is so called, because it returneth euerie day. We did not rashly say sweete fleame: for if glasen fleame do putrifie and rot a little, it causeth a feauer called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feauer, in which the patient is both feauerous, and feruently cold, and doth feele both heate and cold immoderate in all parts of his bodie, both at one time together. To the aforesaid feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowels and entrailes: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. *Tertiana intermittens.* *Quotidiana exquisita.* *Epialos.* *Lypiria.*

An intermitting Quartane is ingendred of melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceasseth two dayes, and returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of simple feauers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled in the sound, hard, and fleshie parts of mans bodie, and it is called both in Greek and Latine, *Hectica febris*, and in English the feauer Hecticke. This feauer is like to a hote vessell; for as the vessell doth heate the water that is powred into it: so also the feauer Hecticke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshy parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humours of the body. And if this feauer do [illegible] increase, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it: then it is called *Hectica marasmodes*, and *marasmus*. And this (as *Galen* witnesseth) is vncurable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the drinesse which is left, being proper to old age, will kill the patient. Besides the feauers now of vs rehearsed, there is another se- *Quartana intermittens.* *Hectica febris* *Marasmus.*

Pestilens feauer.

uer which is eauſed of breathing in of peſtilent aire. But ſeeing this Feuer (as *Galen* witneſſeth, *libro primo De differentia febrium, capite quinto*) is ingendred of rottennesſe; for the aire about vs being corrupted with a putrifying and rotting euaporation, cauſeth alſo the humours of the bodie to rot: therefore it may be contained vnder the ſecond principall kind of the feuer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let paſſe to tell, that ſome feauers be ingendred without diſeaſe or griefe in any member of the bodie, and ſome feauers be kindled through the inflammation of ſome member. Therefore, as the former feauers haue their names, ſo alſo each of theſe that follow haue their proper names. For the feauer which is ingendred through inflammation of the filme or kall that girdeth in the ribbes, it is called, *Pleuretica febris*. That which ingendreth through inflammation of the lungs, is called *Peripneumonica febris*. That which chanceth through inflammation of the ſtomacke, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *Typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likewiſe all other feauers which ingender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerſe names, according to the diuerſitie of the member. Therefore in euery ſicke perſon you muſt diligently diſcerne feauers which come without diſeaſe of other members, from thoſe feauers which ingender through inflammation of ſome member. Of the aforeſaid feauers, ſome be *Typica* (that is) certaine and ordinate: and ſome be *Erratica* (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typica* be ſuch feuers, whoſe fits, and ſlakings from them, do come iuſtly at their appointed time. *Erratica* are ſuch feuers as be contrarie to theſe, for they keepe no certaine and iuſt time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermiſſion betweene them, as be thoſe feauers which ingender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in ſome it remaineth vnmoueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearſed the kinds of ſimple feauers: it remaineth therefore, that we declare briefly the kindes of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are cauſed two wayes: firſt, becauſe theſe feauers aforeſaid (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the diſeaſe of any member. Secondarily, becauſe theſe feauers, which be ingendred through inflammation of ſome member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are ſometime compleate and ioyned together, and ſometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witneſſeth) is, when the Feauers inuade the patient at diuerſe houres: and confuſion is, when they beginne at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the Feauer Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witneſſeth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together, being both intermitting feauers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitritæus*: becauſe all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the ſaid feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be ſhort, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feauers of the ſame kinde, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feauers, and

Feuers ingendred by inflammation of ſome member.

The kinds of compound feauers.

Complications of Quotidians and Tertians.

Hemitritæus.

Tertians

Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feauers of diuerse kinds are coupled together, as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and sometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreouer, after the same sort, feauers which are ingendred with inflammation of some members, are sometime mixed together, as if diuerse members do each of them kindle a feuer proper to themselues, or the affection where they ingender be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed many sundrie wayes, first the kinds of simple feauers must be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that studie Phisicke: for vnlesse they know them very perfectly, it cannot be that euer they should know well compound feauers. Therefore seeing the knowledge of them is verie hard, in so much that oftentimes cunning Phisitians are deceiued in iudging of them, you must seeke the signes and tokens, whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to help the memory of the studious, haue comprehended all the kinds of simple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

- Of simple feauers there be three principall kindes. For vnnaturall heat ingendred
  - In the spirits or breath, causeth *Ephemera*, or *Diaria*, whereof be two kindes, that is,
    - *Ephemera simpliciter*, or *Daria*, one day feuer.
    - *Diaria plurium dierum*, otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*, enduring three or foure dayes.
  - In the humours, causeth *Putrida febris*, a rotten feauer. They do rot in two places,
    - Within the vessels, & that two waies. For eyther
      - All the humors do putrifie & rot equally, & cause a feuer called *Synochus putrida*.
      - Or One only humour putrifieth, and so causeth a continuall feuer. If there be putrifaction
        - Of Choler, it causeth a continuall Tertian, or a burning feauer.
        - Of Fleame, it causeth a continuall Quotidian.
        - Of Melancholy, it causeth a continuall Quartane.
    - Without the vessels, and cause an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrifaction
      - Of Choler, it causeth an intermitting Tertian.
      - Of Fleame that is
        - Sweete, it causeth an intermitting Quotidian, exquisite and pure.
        - Glaten, it causeth *Epialos*.
      - Of Melancholy, it causeth an intermitting feauer Quartane.
  - In the fleshie parts, causeth eyther,
    - *Hectica Febris*, or *Marasmus*.

CHAP. II.

Of one day Feauer.

Ephemera quid.

DIARIA *Febris* in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke, in Englifh, one day feauer; it is that which hath one onely fit, finifhing for the moft part in one day, at the moft, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the firft fit, and doth not exceede nor paffe a naturall day, if it be rightly vfed. And that, becaufe of the matter wherein it is, that is, the fpirit or breath, which is eafily diffolued and difperfed. Therefore *Galen* doth moft worthily call this, the moft fimple feauer, becaufe it is the fhorteft, and the moft gentle feauer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed eyther by ignorance of the Phifitions, or through the intemperance of the ficke, or by errours of the miniſters and aſſiſtants, whereby it turneth into another kinde of feauer, that doth not chance through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is cauſed, when as the ſpirit or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature, without any putrifaction or rottenneſſe. And that chanceth many wayes: ſometime through conſtipation, binding, or thickening of the skinne, which ſtoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or ſpirits which were wont to flow out by the pores, which becauſe they be hote and ſharpe, therefore they ingender a feauer. Sometime it is cauſed through wearineſſe and vehement defatigation. Alſo through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digeſtion, ſadneſſe, feare, ire, vehement care of the mind, burning of the Sunne, cold, hunger, drunkenneſſe, and ſwelling of the kernels in the throte, and ſuch like, which can heate the ſpirits and inflame them. The ſignes wherby *Diaries* are knowne, are of two ſorts: for ſome ſignes be common to all *Diaries*, and ſome be proper and peculiar to each cauſe. The common ſignes be ſixe in number, whereof the firſt is the pulſe. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulſe in greatneſſe, ſwiftneſſe and oftenneſſe. But it keepeth exquiſitely that order, ſoftneſſe, and equalitie, which is according with nature. The ſecond common ſigne is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doth little turne from a naturall ſtate. An vrine that accordeth with nature, is ſubruſe in colour, meane in ſubſtance, hauing in it a reſidence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equalitie of heate, which in all *Diarie* feuers is gentle, pleaſant and eaſie. The fourth ſigne is the maner of ending of it: for all *Diaries* are looſened and ended by a breath or vapor which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moiſtures, or ſweet ſweates. The fift is the wanting of euill ſymptomes, and accidents: as be, vehement paine of the head, and ſtomacke, and other parts, abhorring of meates, vnquietneſſe, vnſatiable thirſt, and ſuch like. The firſt common ſigne is, that all *Diarie* feauers be ingendred of an outward cauſe, which the Phiſitions at theſe dayes call a primitiue cauſe. But the particular ſignes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ from other, be theſe that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer, cauſed through watching, there chanceth to them a naughtie colour, and ſwelling of the face, heauie motion of the eyes, for they ſcant lift vp the eye liddes: there is moiſtneſſe of the haires of the eye liddes, and ſmall pulſes. For watching (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) ſeeing it letteth digeſtion, it ingendreth abundance of crude

Cauſe.

Signa.

Common ſignes ſixe.

1

2

A naturall vrine.

3

4

5

6

Particular ſignes of Diaries.

Signes of watchings.

crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the naturall heate, and loosepeth the bodie, whereupon there follow the tokens aforesaid. To be short, watchings do reuoke and pull backe nature from digesting: therefore they cause great cruditie and rawnesse, as well in the braine, as in the rest of the bodie, whereupon also do chaunce the tokens aforesaid. The signes of a Diarie, caused of eare and sorrow be these, leannesse of the bodie. If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer: if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and drinesse of the eies doth signifie both the said effects, but in thoughts and cogitations it is least, because the spirits and humours are lesse consumed. And it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effects, a certaine vnaccustomed paleness or swarmesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her naturall colour. They which haue a Diarie through wrath or furious anger, haue neither hollownesse of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their eies seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is a loftinesse of the pulses. So also the signes of the rest of the Diaries being ingendred through perturbation of the mind, may chiefly be knowne by the pulses. For in sadnesse the spirits are carried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble, and rare. In feare new begunne, the bloud and spirits runne inward, as it were to the spring head, and the mind is troubled. For nature being vexed, drieth the spirits hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby the pulses are made swift, necessitie compelling them, and the minde being chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits being dispersed, and vertue being feeble) it causeth such pulses, as we spake of before in sadnesse. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer through burning and heate of the Sunne, their skinne is hote and drie, their head seemeth to them to burne, because of the spirits inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and sometimes the veines in their eyes, temples and forehead, and in all their whole face, are stretched and puffed vp. They that haue this feauer through cold, are taken with heauie distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth and keepeth the fumous excrements within the skinne. Moreouer, the skinne is lesse hote, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moisture, because the wonted fluxe is restrained and stopped through cold. Moreouer, there is no filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused of wearinesse, their skinne is made drier then it is in other Diaries, because exercise drieth vp the bodie, and draweth out the moisture of it; also their pulses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and be wearied aboue measure, haue small pulses, because of imbecillitie and weakenesse of strength; but they that haue vsed small labours, their pulses be great, because their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* feauer through drunkennesse or hunger, neede no signes to know the cause, for such causes may be knowne by telling of the sicke. They which haue this feauer through kernels, swellings or impostumations about the throate or mouth, or other where, they haue verie great pulses, and because of the feauerous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equalitie of their pulses, because the instrument of mouing is not letted, neyther by obstruction, nor through abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

Signes of care and sorrow.

Signes of anger.

Signes of sadnesse.

Signes of feare.

Signes of Sun-burning.

Signes of cold.

Signes of wearinesse.

Signes of drunkennesse and hunger.

Signs of swellings about the throate.

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heate. And their vrine appeareth pale, because the choler that should colour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diarie Feauers is brought to passe by dyet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple, consists in this, that you minister vnto them meates that ingender good humours, and that be easie of digestion, and apt to be distributed about the bodie. Giue vnto them that are burnt in the Sunne, and to them that be angred, a diet which doth coole and moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heate moderately. Against watchings or sadnesse, or consuming with ouermuch care, vse a diet which can both moisten, and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drinesse that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreate and refresh their strength. They that haue a Feauer of wearinesse, you must allow them to eate as much meate as they digest: for you must alwayes eschew cruditie and rawnesse of the stomach. For the substance of the bodie being dissolued and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easie of digestion. You must measure the quantitie of taking of meate, by the patients strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreouer, by the time of the yeare, the region, and such other like. But those whose temperature of the bodie is very hote and drie, such you must feed with meate by and by at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diarie feuer will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feuer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fed with a thinne diet, which haue a diarie caused of a botch or impostumation; for in them the substance of the bodie is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diarie feauers, those which be properly named so, and do endure but twentie foure houres. For besides that it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweate (as *Galen* saith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, sorrow, or care; because great abundance of the spirits is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easily and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headach, whether they haue watched, or be feauerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pierceth the head quickely. And they that haue this feauer ingendred of great anger and fury, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, may haue no wine giuen to them; for the spirits and bloud are maruellously chafed, and bolleth sore. Also you must driue from Wine those that be feuerous through the swelling of botches or kernels in the throte, vntill it be loosened: not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feauer, but that it hindereth the cure of the botch. For it increaseth the flowing of the humours into the grieued places, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple Feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witnesseth) with baths. Therefore who soeuer hath this Feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath: but yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this Feauer caused of botches or impostumations, may profitably tarrie in the ayre or fume of the bath; because it both rarifieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also it prouoketh

Victus ratio.

Wine good for Diaries.

Curatio.

and

and enticeth sweate out of the bodie. Neither doth it hurt those patients with drinesse, as it would do those that haue this feauer ingendred of wearinesse, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For seeing their bodie is dried vp altogether by those causes, they must be kept from the aire of the bath, lest it augment their griefe. Therefore such may tarry the longer in a bath of sweete water being made hote, that through the moisture of it, they may recouer the humiditie that is lost, and is decayed in them. Afterward soft hands must rubbe them gently, with plentie of warme oiles, wherein there is no manner of restriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moisten, loosen, and soften the hard and fleshie parts, and it dissolueth and disperseth those things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the bodie. They that haue this feauer caused through burning of the Sunne, you must cure them by and by in the beginning with cooling, and with many bathings of sweete water, and onely with powring on a little oile, without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiseth heate. Things that do coole the head being applied to it, be oile of Roses, and of vnripe Oliues, and other which be rehearsed *in libro primo*. These being first made cold, and then receiued with Wooll, and holden vp aloft, you must presse it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vpon the forepart of the head, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the sicke into a bath. If anie person haue this feauer through cold, he must also be brought to a bath in the remission of his fit, and his head must be nourished both before and after the bathing with oile of *Ireos*, and *oleum Nardinum*, and such like. For they that haue a feauer through this cause, haue need of medicines that can heate, and remoue constipation and binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feuer through hunger, in the declination of the fit, you must bring them straight vnto a bath, and powring vpon them much sweete oile warmed, rubbe them softly, and you must keepe them long in the water of the warme bath, that thereby the drinesse which hunger hath caused in the body, may be corrected & amended by the oile and the bath. When they be come out of the bath, you must recreate and refresh the strength with conuenient meates, and then you must bring them againe to a bath, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceassed) you must giue them hote water to drinke, and by and by you must minister iuyce of Ptisan, and sometime they may take Lettuce, and they may eate fishes taken out of grauelly places, as being light meate, sodden in a white broth: which, what it was in old time, *Galen* sheweth in his fourth Booke, *De sanitate tuenda*. If the feuer *Diaria* do chance through crudities or rawnesse of the stomach, you must first consider, whether the wombe be soluble, or else costiue. If it be soluble, and those things onely which be corrupt, do seeme to void forth then you must wash him, and nourish him in the remission of the feauer; but not vnlesse first you diligently behold and foresee all things chancing to the stomacke. For if such abundant emptying hath beene already, or doth now continue, so that the vertue and strength of the sicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate and wash him both together. But you must diligently behold first those [illegible] be about the stomacke. You must vse about the sicke, if the [illegible] are no-

longer, irrigations and sprinklings of the stomacke with oile of Wormewood, and other things which are rehearsed before in the third booke, in the chapter of weakenesse of the stomacke. But those things that be applyed to the stomacke, let them be well heate. For those things that be applyed blood-warme do dissolue and loosen the strength of the stomacke. If the belly be altogether costiue, handle & feele the sides, and then the whole body, and consider whether the meat is descended into the small guts, or into the Colon. And if the meate abide yet still in the stomacke, let the sicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throate, and vomite vp all that vexeth and troubleth him. Then you must foment and nourish his hypochonders and sides, and let him rest. But when the food is descended alreadie into the bowels, you must bid them lie with their face and stomacke downeward, and you must nourish the bellie and prouoke sleepe, for that digesteth crudities maruellously. After sleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you must put in a suppositary, or cast an easie clister to loosen the wombe. They which haue a feauer caused through swelling of the kernels of the throte, in them you must first cure the bile or botch that caused the inflammation, after that sort that *Galen* teacheth in his Bookes *De medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they must be washed. Also they must be nourished with a thin and scarce diet, because in them the substance of their body is not lost. Also they must be kept from wine, for the causes aforesaid. And this sufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* feauer, being so called *simpliciter*, without any addition.

Note.

Sleepe digesteth.

CHAP. III.

Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.

THERE is another kind of Diaries, which is named *Diaria plurium dierum*, for no other cause but because it extendeth and continueth vnto the third day. It is otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*. The ancient Authors haue called this feauer *Diaria*, because it is of the same nature that right Diaries are of. For it endeth after the first fitte, if it be rightly and well handled This feauer is caused of thickning or stopping of the pores and passages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witnesseth) doth chance either because the small pores are stopped vp, or because they waxe narrower, or also because the body it selfe is moderately thicked; which is wont to chance through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicine that is very sharpe and restrictiue, or through burning of the Sunne, and other such like which can drie the skinne. This feauer may be knowne first by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together then it is wont to be: Secundarily you may know this feauer by mouing of the heate: for at the touching it seemeth gentle, and easie; but afterward, if you hold still your hand longer, the heate is sharper. Thirdly you may know this feauer by the vrine, which is much altered from his naturall substance and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine should be made higher coloured. Fourthly you may know it by the bignesse of the body, which keepeth one state, and doth not fall away, because the thickneſse of the ski[illegible] dissoluing of the vapours and moisture; and therefore also

Diaria plurium dierum, Synochus non putrida.

Causa.

Signa.

1

2

3

4

also the eyes are not hollow, nor drie, but more swollen, and full of moisture, then they should be naturally. Fiftly you may know it by the pulse, which is equall, great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them bloud, and you must draw out so much bloud as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a surety, that vnlesse you vse this remedie to those which by nature haue their bodie vnapt to breathe out vapours because of abundance, it will come to passe, that either they shall be choked, or be in danger of often swounding, vnlesse great strength, or much sweating, or large fluxe of bloud do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by bloud-letting, shortly after minister meates and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meates which can do this in feauers (as *Galen* witnesseth) be *Ptisan* and *Mulsa*. The medicines be *Ptisan*, and *Oximel*, and things sodden in *Mulsa*, as be Calamint, Hysope, Origan, Serpillum, *Ireos*, and *Apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they inflame and kindle feauers, as also Wine doth. *Oximel* doth onely scoure and cleanse strongly, & doth not inflame and kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions and stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heate is diminished by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottennesse of humors in the pulse, nor crudities of rawnesse in the vrine, if the suspected houre wherein the feauer tooke the patient the first day, be after noone, you may boldly wash the patient quickely long before sixe of the clocke, but it is sufficient if you end the washing three houres before. Likewise if you suspect the tenth houre, you may wash him the seuenth houre, for three houres or foure is space enough betweene the bathing and the fitte. When the bodie hath beene heat in the bath, being first annoynted with sweete oyle warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following do scoure and cleanse most moderately, that is, meale of *Eruum*, and of Barley, and also of Beanes. Moreouer, *Mulsa* which is waterie doth the same. Stronger things be, *Ireos*, roote of *Panax*, and *Aristolochia*, and *Mulsa* which is of a meane commixtion; but that *Mulsa* scoureth most of all that is pure, which is, when there is but a litle water mixed with Honey, so that the melted Hony, may easily enter into the small pores of the skinne. Stronger scourers then these, be, the froth of Salt-peter, the Salt-peter it selfe, and then *Aphonitrum*: Sope is one of them that is able to scoure most of all. Moreouer, after a bath, you must giue the patient nothing but water, which hath had a litle *Apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth inuade the patient in the euening, or two houres sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him onely iuyce of *Ptisan*. Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them, you may wash him againe, if you will, and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chance any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit, which you had the first day, and

Curatio.

Abstersiue medicines.

Oximel.

then you must consider the vrine, and also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperature, when there is left but a litle obstruction. Wherfore you shall wash him the fourth day, and giue him meate, hauing respect to the aforesaid considerations: and you shal hope that nothing wil be left the fift day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feuer is not of the kind of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.

SYNOCHVS in Greeke, is a *Feauer*, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many dayes, or else it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens Febris*, and in English it may be called, a constant and stable Feauer. There be three sundry differences of these constant feuers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This Feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens Febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vessels, which be about the arme-holes and the share; which is wont to chance, when a feauerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the body. For whatsoeuer things be hote and moist, and may hardly breathe or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kinde of Feauer is not ingendred nor kindled in folke that be leane and slender, nor in them that haue a thinne and rare state of their bodie, nor in a cold temperament of the bodie, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it ingendreth in them which do abound with bloud, and in those that be hote, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises and diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshie, grosse, and thicke bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hote excrements. They which haue this feauer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent and equall. The constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer, then it should be by nature: but the quickenesse and frequencie of it, is according to the greatnesse of the feauer, & these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this Feauer, there be signes of rottennesse, & that as well in the vrine, as in the pulse, and by the qualitie of vnkind heate. The cure of this Feauer must be begunne with letting of bloud. And if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing do stop or let it, you must draw bloud till he do faint & swound. For if the patient be strong, this is the chiefest remedie for this kind of Feuer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickely through the fainting and swounding. As for cooling of the bodie, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, or more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer, in such bodies, there chanceth of necessitie, loosenesse of the belly, or a laske, and oftentimes also vomiting of choler: which things, moisture or sweats do gather from the whole bodie. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these Feuers, not to marke the number of days past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe & strong, you may let bloud, not only the sixt or seuenth day, but also

Continens febris.

Causa.

Signa.

in

in the dayes following. But if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not onely the remedy of bloud-letting hath beene pretermitted and kept back, but now also either through ignorance of Phisitians, or through feare of the sicke or his assistents, in processe of time, you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discerne & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt wil be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke wil drinke, and you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath been vsed to drinke cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommodity would arise through it, you shall abstaine from it, and vse other remedies whereby obstructiõs may be taken away, and abundance auoided, and that the burning heate of the feauer may be cooled and eased The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinke ministred immoderately and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse and clammy humors to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue ingendred obstructions or rottennesse, or inflammation, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like effects. As often therefore as a feuer is kindled of such humors, cold things are not good for their auoyding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencheth the feuer that is already kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feuer remaineth still, of necessity an other feuer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse then that which went before, because that the body is thickened through cold. And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is, that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall distemperature, or by some vice that they haue gotten. So in some it hath bin found that their throte hath bin so hurt, that they could not swallow; in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest: in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut Colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reines, or the bladder, or some other such like member, is so striken with cold, that it is made weake and vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderate drinking of it out of time, haue by and by beene taken with difficulty of breathing and with crampe and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinews. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling, or fleame, or bloud, or any knobby hardnesse, you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them that a raw humour doth hurt with obstruction or rottennesse. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, and then you do perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature, that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sicke haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may more boldly minister it: for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them that haue but litle bloud and flesh. Therefore by these things before rehearsed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefest remedies of these kindes of feauers called *Synochus putrida*, be these two, bloud-letting, & drinking of cold water: but bloud-letting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient will suffer it, and drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feuer is greatest, and when you are compelled to leaue bloud-letting.

When cold things should be ministred.

Discommodities of cold drinke.

Of cold water.

Continens febris hath two remedies chiefly.

You must note well the time when you should let bloud, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if eruditie and indigestion of meats do go before, you must refraine so long time from bloud letting, as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there wil follow of necessity any fluxe and emptying, you must leaue so much bloud still, as will voyde by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of bloud-letting the menstruis do chance to flow, or also that the hemorhoides do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the fluxe, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shal let nature work alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much bloud, that thereby vnder them both conioyned together, you may bring to passe your request and expectation. Let the diet in these feauers be chiefly this that followeth. In those that haue been let bloud, minister to them two houres after bloud-letting, iuyce of Ptisan, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe Ptisan broth. In this diet the patient must persist and continue vntill the third day. You must note, that in these feauers called *Synochi*, the patients must be fed at such time as haile folke are wont to eate, and when they feele most ease: for so they shall the easilier suffer and beare their foode. And if they be strong and lustie, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feauer straightway, the patient must vse a most thin and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weake and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently foresee, and ponder his strength and abilitie. He that desireth to know more of this kind of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him reade *Galen in lib. 7. Therapeut. meth cap. 5.*

You may not let bloud on a full stomach.

Diet.

When the sicke should be fed.

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

FEBRIS *Continua* in Latine. *Synochis* in Greek, in English it is called a continuall feuer: it is a feuer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits, but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heate betweene the fits. A continuall feuer is caused, when one onely humor doth putrifie and rot within the vessels. And there be three differences of this feauer, according to the diuersitie of the humor that putrifieth in the veines: for if choler do putrifie within the vessels, it ingendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *Causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feuer. If fleame do putrifie and rot within the veines it ingendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feuer, then that none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feuer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feuer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian: differing onely in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffenesse, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continuall Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it onely differeth from it, because it doth

Febris continua.

Cause.

Three differences of continuall feauers.

Signa.

not

not intermit and slake betweene the fits. In like manner the continuall Quartanes haue the signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and rest betweene fittes. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said, that continuall feuers be of the kinde of rotten feuers, it is necessarie for him that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrifying & rotting. Therfore two things must be taken heed of at the first, whereof one is the feauer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feauer you must also regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feuer, which is now kindled and inflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feuer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things must be considered concerning the rottennes: one is, that the rottennes alreadie ingendred, may be healed: the other is, to let and stop that which is readie to ingender putrifaction. That which is readie to ingender, is cause through perspiration and breathing out, if it be impedite and letted. So that of this other two considerations do spring: first, that the humour which is withholden, may be purged and emptied out: secondarily, to prohibite and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe: it wil be prohibited with those remedies which do heale obstructions. Againe note, that the obstructions which are ingendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted and driuen backe away. You must cure that obstruction which is already ingendred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you shall driue away and stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors: whereby it appeareth euidently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing, must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing therefore that (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be fiue things in continuall feauers from the which considerations in curing be gathered, that is, the feauer, rottennesse, perspiration impedite and letted, obstruction, and abundance of obstructiue humours, you must begin the cure with the last consideration. Therefore seeing that the abundance of humours that cause obstructions, doth require purging and emptying out, in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you must let him bloud. You must then specially let him bloud, when the whole body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veins be swollen vp, or stretched out, for that doth signifie abundance of bloud. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the curing of obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be taken away. But because most of those medicines be hote, it is to be feared, lest they should increase both their rottennesse, and also the feauer. Therefore you must vse to minister those things that can deliuer the patient from obstruction without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in the second chapter of this Booke. When those humours that caused the obstructions be diuided, cut, and scoured, you must allay to auoid & emptie them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats. But seeing those things which should bring this to passe, be hote, of necessity the rottennesse and the feauer must be increased by them, therefore, as much as we may, we must

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be fiue things to consider in feauers.

Curatio.

Bloud-letting.

How obstructions should be healed.

Bathing doth coole.

labour to chooſe ſuch a thing as doth heate but little, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all (as in this caſe a bath) you muſt vſe that. *Galen* teacheth in *libro tertio De ſanitate tuenda, capite tertio*, that a bath can do this. For he ſaith, that the ſtrength of ſweet waters made hote, if they be temperate, be hote and moiſt, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moiſt. And a little after he ſaith, A bath if it be diſcreetly vſed, mollifieth the hard and ſtretched parts, & it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any ſticke within the skinne. Theſe things being done, and thoſe humours being ſcoured out, which were compact together in the skinne, ſo that the obſtruction and perſpiration impedited be taken away, you muſt come to the cure of the rottenneſſe. Therefore at this time you muſt firſt corroborate and reſtore the ſtrength, whereby it may exuperate and ouercome the rottenneſſe, and be able to digeſt the humours. And you ſhall heale the putrifaction and rottenneſſe, if you do void and empty out by all meanes that which is corrupted and putrified. That which is left ſtill within, you muſt bring to an exquiſite meane by moderate motions, and coole breathings: and you ſhall worke the emptying out of your humours by vrine, egeſtions, vomiting and ſweats. Laſt of all, you muſt proceed to the curing of the feauer, which muſt be done by cooling things. For euerie feauer, inaſmuch as it is a feauer, muſt be remedied by cooling and moiſtning things. But to know how each of theſe things ſhould be rightly done, it is partly rehearſed before, and partly it ſhall follow hereafter. In continuall feuers, whoſe ſtate or vigor of the diſeaſe will come at the fartheſt within ſeuen dayes, if their ſtrength be luſty, and their age agreeing to it, you muſt ordaine them a verie exquiſite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feauers, whoſe vigour, force, and ſtate is longer then ſeuen dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the firſt you muſt feede them liberally: when the vigour and ſtate draweth neare, their diet muſt be more ſcarce. But in the ſtate and vigor of the diſeaſe, you muſt feed them moſt thinly and ſcarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, and feed him moſt, increaſing his diet in like caſe as the vigour and ſtate of the feauer doth diminiſh, as *Hippocrates* ſaith in the firſt Section of his Aphoriſmes.

Cure of putrifaction.

Cure of the feauer.

Diet.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning Feauer.

Continua Tertiana.

ARDENS *Febris* in Latine, *Cauſos* in Greeke, in Engliſh it is called a continuall Tertian or a burning feauer: it is of the kinde of continuall feuers, as is declared in the former chapter: and it is cauſed when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therefore it agreeth with an exquiſite intermitting Tertian, becauſe it is ingendred of the ſame humour that the other is. But yet it differeth from it in that, that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is carried all ouer the bodie: but in a burning feauer the choler is contained in the veſſels together with the bloud. Hereupon it commeth that the fittes in a burning feauer do not intermit nor ſlake. But when the choler in them is ſtirred moſt vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing ſtrong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and vigour, and the feuer endeth. Which *Hippocrates* declareth *4. Aphoriſ. 58.* ſaying, He that is taken with a burning feauer,

Difference betweene a burning feuer & a Tertian.

if it be vehement cold, & rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the disease. A burning feauer is knowne by these signes: their tongue that haue this feuer is drie, grosse, rough and blacke; there is gnawing of the stomacke, intollerable thirst, watchings, and also many times rauing, and egestions of the wombe be liquid and pale: which signes *Hippocrates* rehearseth *in libr. 4. Vict. Acuterum.* They which haue this feauer, let them lie in a cold place, and in a sweete ayre, from whence pure winde commeth. Also let him lie in a soft seathe bed, which must be made often, let the couerings be very thin and cleane: which must be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great wideneſſe, that he may easily moue his members that be hot to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, stirre it with a fanne, or such like. You must giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moisten, as is, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrell, Ptisan broath, and such like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle Cinamon hath beene sodden, or Veriuice. If the sicke haue vsed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a spoonefull or two, or mixe Iulep of Violets, or some Iulep of Roses, or such like with decoction of Barley. Moreouer, the stomacke must be refreshed with iuice of Roses: and other cooling things must be vsed, as strewing of the floore with greene Vine leaues, & with the leaues & floures of Roses, water Lillies, and Violets, and by sprinkling and powring often of cold water on the floore vp & down. For the cure, in the beginning straightway, you must cut a veine, if age, time, vertue, and strength do permit it. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith in his Aphorismes thus: In great burning feuers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the state of the whole bodie is cooled, and the feuer is quenched. In many also a laxe is caused, and sweats flow forth. Afterward let the breast and stomach be nouriſhed with Dates braied with oile of Roses, or of Quinces, or of water Lillies. Also other cooling medicines be good, as be Vine buds braied, Endiue, Succory, Knotgrasse, Lettuce, Sorrel, Vine leaues, & such like. Also a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oile and water made hote, and applied to the breast and stomach, it ceasseth the burning of feuers maruellously. Also a bādfull of wooll soked in water and oile of Roses heat greatly, & being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breast, doth easily quench the vehemency of the burning heate. These things must be hote, for warme things do dissolue the strength & vigor of the members. Neither shall you rashly also commixe Vineger against vehement burning feauers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increasing of the fit: for at that time the effect of the bodie is driuen about, & the heat is in the inward members: therfore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermost parts, and be an occasion of greater hurt: for fierie heate being oppressed and stopped within, it raiseth a more vehement & burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, strength, and vigor of the fittes, when the heate is alreadie spread ouer all the bodie, these cold things may be well applied: for then the residue of the vniuersall heate which remaineth about the inward members may be really quenched. Hereupon the patient will begin to breathe better, & shalbe troubled with an easier thirst. Also some by breathing out of a dewie vapor do fall on sleep. The epitheme which you must vse in this feuer, is this: ℞. of Rose water, and Lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward medicines.

Epithema.

ana. ℥ iiij. ß. waters of Endiue and Succory, ana. ℥ j. ß. good Vineger, ℥ j. all the three Sanders, of each, ℥ ß. seed of Purslaine, gra. iiij. commixe all together, and make an epitheme. Moreouer, when the vigour and strength of the sickenes is at hand, you may safely minister pure cold water, if none of those things which be rehearsed in the third chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very little, do let it, you shall minister the first draught retrained after this sort. Take one cup full of temperate water, and commixe fiue cup fuls of pure cold water with it, and so minister it to suspected bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you must needs bring to passe one of these things, that eyther the cholericke humours may be voided and emptied out, or else that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by sweats, vomits and egestions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water, wherewith very often great burning feauers haue beene cured quite and cleane. A bath of sweete water is good onely to them which haue a burning feauer without any swelling, tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Erysipela:* but if signes of concoction do appeare in the vrine, it is much more conuenient for the patient. Let the sicke which in a vehement burning feauer desireth to vse a cold bath, be yong, and of a moderate state of the body, as also *Hippocrates* witnesseth and monisheth. Neither let it be done to him in Sommer time, and in hote times of the yeare, and in the vigour and strength of the feauer, and let it be one that hath vsed to wash in cold water in his health. But when the feauer waxeth more moderate, and vertue is stronger, and if there be signes of concoction together with it, a bath of sweete and temperate water is sufficient, and doth good. For annointings, oile of Cammomill doth good, specially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter whereof you should make competent remedies against burning feauers, you shall finde in the chapters following.

When cold water may be ministred.

Nota.

To whom a bath is good.

Vnctions.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

Exquisita Tertiana febris intermittens in Latine, an exquisite and pure intermitting Tertian feauer in English, it is cauled of choler carried by the sensible parts of the bodie, and by the proper nature of it. it remaineth pure, sincere, and vnmixed. Therfore seeing it is ingendred of choler that is sincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phisitions exquisite. This feuer ingendreth in persons that be cholericke by nature, and in their flourishing age, in Sommer time, in hote and drie regions, and when the weather is hote and dry, and in bodies oppressed with labors, watchings, cares, deep thoughts, and burning of the Sunne. Also this feuer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fit causeth a vehement cold, rigour and stiffenesse and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearsed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the cold in a Quartane feauer, thus, because in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerated. But in a Quartan the cold seemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feele in Winter time. Therefore a Tertian feauer doth not chance without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the flesh: but a

Cause.

Signa.

Differences of coldnesse in a Tertian and Quartane.

Quarta

Quartane feauer doth not by and by the firſt day inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and increaſeth: ſo alſo the rigour and cold increaſeth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a Tertian feauer, an exact and perfect order and equalitie of the pulſes: but yet in the increaſing of the fits, the pulſes are raiſed and prouoked to vehemencie, greatneſſe, and frequencie. Moreouer, in the vigour and force of the feauer, it cauſeth thirſt, and burneth vp the patient, ſo that he caſteth off the clothes, to make him bare and naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate ſpreadeth equally all ouer the bodie, ſo that the breaſt is no better then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the firſt touching you ſhall feele much gnawing and biting heate, burſting out as it were with a certayne vapour and moyſture: but not long after your hand will vanquiſh it, if you do hold it ſtill. Moreouer, there followeth this feuer vomiting of choler, and the belly is laxatiue, and they piſſe vrine that is cholericke, ſubruſe, and ſomewhat yellow, and moderately thicke. Alſo their vrine hath by and by a white cloud, or a laudable ſublation in the midſt. If the vrine be redder, and if in the firſt fitte there do appeare neither ſublation in the midſt, nor cloud, the feuer will extend and remaine ſeuen fits. Moreouer, this feauer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the ſpace of twelue houres at the moſt. For this is the longeſt time of a fit in true & pure Tertians. But ſometime the fit is ſhorter then the aforeſaid ſpace of time, hauing difference more or leſſe according to the quantitie and qualitie of choler within, or becauſe of the ſtrength of the patient, or through the preſent affect of the patients bodie at that preſent time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure Tertian feuer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, is not called an exquiſite Tertian, but an extended and ſtretched out Tertian. And if the feuer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigour and cold, and with the ſignes aforeſaid of the vrine and pulſes, as alſo of other things afore rehearſed, then it is called *duplex Tertiana*, a double Tertiã. *Signes of a double Tertian.*

But as for an exquiſite Tertian, becauſe it is ingendred of pure choler moued about, you muſt moiſten it, and coole it, as much as you may poſſibly by all meanes. For this humour (as *Galen* witneſſeth) is the hoteſt and drieſt among all the other that be in the bodie. Let the ſicke lie therefore in a cold place, againſt a ſweete and pleaſant ayre. Alſo you may not ſuffer many to be in the houſe, becauſe they ſhould make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be ſprinkled often with cold water, and with Roſe water, Violet water, and ſuch like. And ſtrew on the floore Willow leaues, floures of Roſes, Violets, water Lillies, and ſuch like. Let the patient vſe meates that haue vertue and power to coole and moiſten. And you muſt giue him ſo much of them as he can verie well digeſt. Let his pot-herbs be Orach, Beets, and Spinach, Mallows, Lettuce, Gourds, Sorrel, Endiue, Succory, and ſuch like. Alſo giue him *Piſan* broth, and ſoupings made with Alica. Of fiſhes, let him eate ſuch as liue in grauelly places: for ſuch, beſides that they do coole and moiſten, they ingender good iuice and are eaſie to digeſt. Of fowles, let him eate them that be of ſoft fleſh, as be chic- *Victus ratio.*

kens and Partrich, Doues, yong Sparrowes, Feasant, and such like: but of those that haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excremẽts, because of their often exercises. Also he may eate Cocks stones, & Sowes feete, for they be without excrements, because they are exercised: and their braines, specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of Pigs well sodden, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easilier be consumed of the stomach. Also rere Egs, which be but onely hote through, may be suffered, specially the yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest than the whites, and they do coole meanely. You may suffer him to eate fruits which be not verie hard to digest, as be, Cherries, Prunes, Mulberies. He must abstaine from Honey, because it will easily turne into choler, and from Mustard, salt meates, and all sharpe things. Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be digested, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden. Or let him vse to drinke this: ℞. Iulep of Violets, ℥.iiij. water wherein a little Cinamon hath bin sodden, ℔ j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one vessell into another, often. But when the disease beginneth to digest, you must giue him in the beginning a little wine that is thin & alayed with water, & giue him more liberally of it when the end of the disease is at hand. This is the order of diet for many, but not of all men: for they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of nature, you must ordaine for them a thinner diet, that is, let them be contented with Ptisan broth vntill the iudgement of the feauer. As for sleeping, they may not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud, and spirits, and naturall heate may be letted and stopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawne to the outward parts: for otherwise the feuers will scarse be dissolued, and they will come very slowly to their state, & fluxes will increase and be multiplied: when the fitte is ended, sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehement motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the mind, specially anger, feare, sorrow, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole and moisten. In the beginning to quench the boiling of choler, and to mitigate the cholerous heate, let him vse this decoction: ℞. of floures of Violets, Borage, and red Roses, ana. M.j. floures of water Lillies, M.ß. Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, ana. M.j.ß. of Raisins picked, ℥ j. Damascene Prunes. number ij. seeds of Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Purcelain, Gourds, ana. ℥.iij. of the roote of Succory, ℥.vj. seethe all together in ℔.ij. of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with Sugar, and purifie it with the white of an Egge; then adde to it sirupe of Endiue with the broad leaues & Iulep of Violets, ana. ℥ ij.ß. commixe them together, and make a potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting, ℥.iij.ß. But if the sicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this medicin: ℞. of conserues of Violets, Borage, Roses, water Lillies, & Succory, an. ℥.ß. *Electuarium de pruni Damascen* without *diagridiũ* ℥.vij. *diarrhodon abbatis* ℥.j. *Diatriõ santalon* in powder, ℥ ij. of Iulep of violets as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer, you must remoue

Potus.

No sleepe in fittes.

Curatio.

A decoction to digest choler.

Mistura.

the

the cause of the feuer: which you shall do if you emptie out the choleriek humor. Therfore you must empty out the choler which is crept into the stomach, by prouoking vomite. By what means you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former Books. The choler which is caried downward, it is best to empty it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite Tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time nature is wont to thrust in choler thither: as in the declination and staking of the fitte, nature thrusteth it to the neather parts and to the skinne. Therefore at that time you must cast in an easie and soft clister, that it may both bring out the choler easily, and that also by his gentlenesse, the sharpenesse of the choler which is wont to vexe and gnaw the guts, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clister: ℞. of Mallowes, leaues of purple Violets, Mercury, Endiue, and Succory, ana M.j. seede of Purslaine, and of Melons, ana. ℥.ij.ß. seethe them all in a sufficient quantity of water, till the third part be consumed: straine it, and adde to the licour of decoction, of the marrow of *Cassia fistula* newly drawne, ℥ j. oile of Violets, ℥ iij. common salt, ℥.j.ß. commixe them and make a clister. Also you must empty out choler by prouoking vrine, and sweate, specially if it be carried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without drying. Therefore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherein *Apium* or Dill hath beene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister Wormewood safely, which is a speciall remedy for the stomach, when it is vexed with choler: specially, if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, & infuse it in *Melicratum*, that is, wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and such like medicines: ℞ roots of *Apium*, Sperage, and Succory, ana. ℥.ß. of the seeds of Parsley, Fennell, *Bruscum*, and Louage, ana. ℥.ij. blacke Cicers, ℥.iij. Dill, M. ß. seethe all in sufficient quantity of water that runneth, vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweete with Sugar, adding to it *Oximel compositum*, ℥.ij. and make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euery time, ℥.j. or ℥.j.ß. with ℥ iij of *Ox mel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fitte, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feauer. For this purpose also annoyntings with oiles of Cammomill, Dill, and such like, are not a little profitable. Moreouer, hote baths of sweete and potable water do profite two wayes, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also because of their qualities, they do much good: for such baths do moisten and coole. But baths of sea-water, salt-water, salt-peter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profite much lesse then potable waters. Therefore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they do good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrarie qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more good then the emptying by any meanes (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident, that emptyings & purgings in an exquisite Ter-

Vacuation.

Vomitus.

Clyster.

Prouokers of vrine.

Absynthium.

To prouoke sweate.

Bathes of sweet waters.

tian, do but litle please *Galen*: specialy those emptyings that are done by bloud-letting, and by a vehement purging medicine, for all such kind of purging medicines be of a hote faculty and quality. But seeing this feuer is the hoteſt of all other, therefore it rather desireth to be cooled and moistned, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other meanes, and specially when nature laboreth and assayeth to driue out the humor. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath, this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistned. Therfore you must strew in, neither Salt-peter, nor Salt, nor Mustard seed, but it is good to powre much oile, being made hote, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are delighted in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memorie, that it be done opportunately, and in due time; for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftner, you shall not erre from *Galens* doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against the bastardly Tertian.

Cauſe. A Bastardly Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleame. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of the feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite Tertian they do. *Signa.* In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceed twelue houres, neither is this iudged in seuen fittes, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer, in this bastardly Tertian, the signes of concoction do appeare more slowly, neyther is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer, as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of sweat, as an exquisite Tertian doth. *Diet.* Therefore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistening, as it is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power and vertue to heate, cut, and diuide; for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of *Ptisan*, wherein some Pepper is put, and you must giue them *Mulsa* to drinke, wherein hath beene sodden, Hysope, Origan, and Spikenard. Also you must giue them soupings and broths easie to digest. Moreouer, seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meate daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall beware and take heede, that Nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must onely take heede that the disease do not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must striue and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate, and cast downe. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger, looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much the more it hurteth and debilitateth the strength. And meates, looke how much they increase the patients strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therefore, you must vse hunger to them that be strong and lustie, and their disease hard to digest: and you must feede them more largely whose

strength

ſtrength is debilitate and weake, and their diſeaſe not ſtubburne for to digeſt. Let their drinke be water, in which a little Cinnamon, and ſome Hyſope or Origan hath beene ſodden. *Potus.* Quiet and reſt is good for them, but exerciſes do hurt them: for this doth call forth outwardly nature, and naturall heate, which could concoct and digeſt crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the patient bloud, you may not faile to do it, but by and by in the beginning, if the age, time, region, and ſtate of the bodie will permit it: you muſt draw out ſo much bloud as the preſent ſtate of the bodie requireth and will ſuffer. By the preſent ſtate, vnderſtand the ſtate as wel of the patient as of the diſeaſe: for the ſicke, if he be ſtrong, may ſuffer bloud-letting, if not, the contrary: if the diſeaſe remaine, and be cauſed through abundance of humours, it requireth bloud-letting, not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the diſeaſe will endure long through cruditie and lacke of digeſtion, you muſt draw out but a meane quantity of bloud, that the ſtrength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the diſeaſe. *Curatio.* *Bloud-letting.* Alſo you muſt caſt into the belly not very eaſie cliſters, that they may bring forth the ſluggiſh and hurtfull matter, and make them thus. ℞. Mallowes, Mercurie, leaues of Violets, Origan, and Hyſope, ana M.j. ſeed of *Cardamum.* ʒ.iij. ſeethe all together in ſufficient quantitie of water, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, *Benedicta laxatiua*, *Hierapicra*, ana. ʒ iij. *Mel roſarum*, ʒ. vj. oyles of Violets and Cammomill, ana ʒ.j ß. common ſalt, ʒ ij and make a cliſter. *Clyſter.* Alſo you muſt miniſter to the patient, decoctions made of ſuch things as can cut, and diuide, and alſo prouoke vrine without any great heating and drying: as is this: ℞. roots of *Apium*, Fennell, and Succory, ana ʒ.j. Endiue, Succory, Origan, and Hyſope, ana M.j. Lettuce, M.j.ß. the foure common cold ſeeds, ana. ʒ.j. ſeedes of Fennell & *Apium*, ana. ʒ.j.ß. ſeethe all theſe in two pounds of water, vntil the third part be conſumed. Then ſtraine it, and make the liquor ſweet with Sugar, and purifie with whites of Egges the ſtrained liquor. Then adde to it *ſirupus acetoſus ſimplex*, *Mel roſarum* clarified, *Oximel ſimplex*, ana. ʒ j ß. and make a potion, whereof miniſter daily euery morning ʒ.iiij. *Decoctum.* After theſe you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as do empty the belly gently, as is infuſion of Rubarbe, *Electuarium è Pſyllio*, and *Diaphœnicon*, and ſuch like, which are able by themſelues, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with fleame: whereof we haue rehearſed many in our former Bookes. *Purgatio.* After the ſeuenth day, you may miniſter continually decoction of Wormewood: alſo *Oximel* drunk alone helpeth many. *Abſynthium.* *Oximel.* Alſo vomiting after meate is ſo healthfull and profitable to theſe old and inueterate feauers, that many (as *Galen* witneſſeth *in lib. 1. ad Glauconem*) haue beene cured with this one remedy. *Vomitus.* For a feauer which hath continued long, doth ingender and breed many flegmaticke excrements in the ſtomacke, which being caſt out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered from the feauer. Alſo the ſides muſt be nouriſhed with hote medicins, that thereby the winds and bolning which ſtretcheth them out, may be diſſolued and diſperſed. Among other this foment is very good. ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilote, and Dill, ana. M.j. Wormewood, M.ß. red Roſes, M.j. Lineſeed, and Fenugreecke, ana. ʒ iij. boile theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water, vnto the third part, then dip a ſponge in it, and nouriſh the ſides there- *Fomentum.*

with. Also it profiteth to annoynt the stomach with this or such like oyntment:

Vnguentum. Re oiles of Mastick, Roses and Cammomill, ana. ℥. iij. of Cloues, ℥ j ß. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oinment. Moreouer, bathing in this seauer is not healthfull, before that signes of concoction do appeare, because crude and raw humors, which should be digested within, are brought out by it to the skinne, and so it doth increase obstructions.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Quartane Feauer.

Causa. AN exquisite Quartane is another kind of the intermitting feuers, which is ingendred onely of a melancholy humour, putrifying and rotting without the vessels. This feauer doth not by and by in the beginning inuade the

Signa. patient with vehement rigour and cold the first day, but it is like to them that are cold in Winter through vehement frost: but when the feauer hath continued and proceeded forward and is increased, then also the rigour and cold increaseth with it, and waxeth greater and stronger daily, till the whole disease be come to his full increase and force. And the cold doth not seeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skinne, as it doth in an exquisite Tertian, but there is caused vehement cold, and as it would breake the bones. Their pulses are very rare and slow in the beginning of the fits, but when the feauer is in his full force, or also when it is increased, then of necessitie the pulses are swift and often: but yet they do keep their naturall slowneſſe and rarity, if you consider the swiftneſſe and frequencie coming in the fits. But the moouing of the heate, the increasing, and the vigor and force of this feuer is cleane contrarie to that in Tertian feauers. For in this feauer the melancholy humor is kindled and inflamed by little and little, and as it were a stone, or a shell, or a bone, or some other such cold and drie bodie. And when that anie flame or heate is kindled in it, then in the fit it leaueth nothing fumous or smoakie, but it burneth and consumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceasſing and intermission of this humour betweene the fits, then there is in fleame. And the intermission and ceasſing betweene the fittes seemeth to be exquisite and pure without any griefe at all: because in this feauer, lo[illegible] how much melancholie is kindled and inflamed, and so much in the time [illegible]he fit is dispersed, consumed and drawne out cleane. Moreouer, in a Quart[illegible]ne feauer there followeth not vomiting vp of choler. Their vrines are thinne, white, and waterie, and as it were strained from a grosse matter. Also this feauer beginneth specially in Autumne and H[illegible]est, comming after erraticke feauers. But you must behold both the nature of the patient, and his temperament, also his diet vsed before, his age, the region, and other such like. For if those things be cold and drie, then you may looke more surely, that a Quartane feauer will ensue, specially if at any time Quartanes be rife among the people. They that haue a Quartane feauer, in the beginning must be handled and ordered moderately and gently, neither may they be vexed with anie vehement medicine, or by vehement emptying and purging, for the humour which causeth the Quartane is stubburne to be drawne and handled. Therefore in the beginning, and before it be digested, it will hardly and scarcely follow the medicine

Cause of long intermission in Quartane fits.

Curatio.

that

that draweth it: and that becauſe of his groſſeneſſe and coldnes, and alſo becauſe it ſtoppeth the narrow wayes, by the which it ſhould paſſe out. Yet if bloud do ſeeme to abound much, then you muſt take away that. And if when you haue ſtriken a veine, the bloud that commeth out do appeare blacke and groſſe, as for the moſt part it doth in diſeaſes of the Spleene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great abundance of bloud being drawne out, nature will get the vpper hand in digeſting the reſt of the humour, and will make the feauer ſhorter. You muſt cut the innermoſt veine of the left arme, which is called *Lienaris vena*, the Spleene veine, or *Mediana*: for this veine empticth out the melancholy humour, ſpecially from the Spleene, which is wont to be diſeaſed in a Quartane feauer; but if when the veine is ſtriken, the bloud doth appeare thinne, and yellowiſh, you muſt ſtoppe it by and by: for ſuch an humour is not vnprofitable in a Quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the groſſe and cold humour, as well becauſe of his ſubſtance, as alſo with his qualitie. You muſt ordaine for the patient a very good diet, ſuch one as is not windie, and ingendreth good iuyce. Therefore you muſt keepe the ſicke from ſwines fleſh, and from all other meates that be groſſe, tough and clammy, and ſlow of digeſtion. Moreouer, let him abſtaine from all things which do coole and drie the bodie. He muſt eate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and do ingender good iuyce: for thoſe that do liue in fennes and mariſhes, they be vnwholeſome and full of excrements, and do ingender a groſſe humour. He muſt vſe fiſhes of grauelly waters, which be ſoft and without toughneſſe: but in this feauer ſalt things and Muſtard muſt be miniſtred in meates, that they may extenuate, cut, and diuide the groſſe and clammie humours, and that they may conſume and feed vp the ſuperfluous humiditie and moiſture. They muſt vſe Wine that is white, thinne, and meanely hote: for that by the thinneſſe it doth extenuate the groſſeneſſe of the melancholy humour, and by the meane heate that it hath, it heateth the bodie by little and little, which is cooled with the melancholious humor; and it helpeth digeſtion and alſo prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and reſtraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accuſtomed exerciſes, that is to ſay, you muſt ſuffer them to vſe exerciſes, but not ſo much as they did in their health. Neither may they vſe frictions, deambulations, and other exerciſes of the bodie ſo often nor ſo vehemently as they did in their health; for that would cauſe perill and danger of obſtruction. But if exerciſes be vſed moderately, and that in the time of intermiſſion betweene the fits, they will voide out excrements, and bring other commodities which *Galen* rehearſeth *in lib. ſecundo De tuenda ſanitate*. They muſt altogether abſtaine from bathing if they can, and be content onely with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, becauſe it doth heate, doth profit, yet, becauſe it calleth forth humors outwardly, it bringeth perill of obſtruction, ſpecially when the bodie doth abound with excrements. And if the Quartane be ſhort, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermiſſion betweene the fittes, when the patients haile dayes be, if he vſe his wonted exerciſes. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes, it muſt be kept ſoluble, either with his accuſtomed meates, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clyſters, firſt gentle and eaſie, and after ſharper: for you muſt increaſe

Bloud-letting.

Diet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

the ſtrength and ſharpnes by litle and litle, as the matter of the feuer doth concoct and digeſt by little and little: for at the beginning (as is ſaid before) you muſt handle and order theſe feauers gently and eaſily. You may ſeeke examples of eaſie cliſters out of the former chapters. *Clyſter.* A cliſter ſomewhat ſharper is this that followeth: ℞. Mallowes, Cammomill, Mercury, leaues of blacke Violets, ana M. j. leaues of Sene, the rootes of Polipodie, ana. ℥ v. Harts-tongue, M. j. ß. ſeethe all theſe in a ſufficient quantitie of water vntill the third part. Then ſtraine it and commixe with the licour of that decoction, the marrow of *Caſſia fiſtula*, ℥. j. *Diaſena laxatiua*, ℥ ß. common oile, ℥ iij. *Mel roſarum*, ℥ ß. ſalt Gem, ℥. j. and make a cliſter. Within certaine dayes, giue to the patient *Diatrion piperion*: but becauſe it doth heate vehemently, you may not miniſter it daily; whoſe making and vertue you muſt ſeeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. De ſanitate tuenda.* Alſo (as *Galen* ſaith) the patient ſhall do rightly, *Piper.* if he drinke daily, onely Pepper with water: for it heateth and diſſolueth the groſſeneſſe of windie ſpirits and vapours, and it extenuateth and digeſteth the crude and raw humours, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hypochonders, and ſides. And theſe things muſt be done from the beginning of the feauer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and ſtate. And if the ſicke ſeeme now to be in the vigour and ſtate of the diſeaſe, then he muſt vſe a thinner diet then he did before or muſt do afterward, and you muſt command long quiet and reſt to the patient, leſt nature being occupied about digeſting of the matter of the diſeaſe, ſhould be called from her office and worke. Afterward you muſt prouide and foreſee the intrailes, which are wont *Prouiſion for the intrailes.* to be ſwollen and ſtretched out, with viſcous, tough and groſſe humours, and alſo with abundance of windie ſpirites, and vapours: which being diſſolued and emptied out, the bowels waxe ſoft and are looſened. Therefore you muſt annoint them with thoſe things which can mollifie and looſen, as be, ointments which are made of Barley meale, ſeede of *Apium*, rootes of *Ireos*, Rew, and ſuch like. Among other annoint the left ſide with this ointment, *Vnguentum.* ℞. of oile of Capers, ℥ iij. oile of *Ireos*, and of ſweet Almonds, ana. ℥ ij. ſeeds of *Apium*, and of Comin, rootes of *Ireos*, ana. ℈. j. Waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. After theſe things you muſt miniſter medicines which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you miniſter ſuch things before the inward members be free from obſtructions, becauſe thoſe medicines be hote, they carrie the humours downe with them, *Prouokers of vrine.* and do increaſe the obſtructions. For to prouoke vrine, you muſt miniſter *Mulſa*, wherein Dill, or Rew, or elſe *Apium* hath beene ſodden. If ſignes of *Purgation of melancholie.* concoction do appeare, then you muſt ſtraightway vſe purging medicines which can purge out melancholie: and you may not purge him once onely, but oftner, if the matter ſeeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out all at once, ſeeing the bodie is not able to ſuffer & beare ſo ſtrong a purgation, as ſhould purge out all that ſtubburne humour at once. You may ſeeke examples of ſuch medicines as do purge out melancholie, out of the firſt Booke in the chapter of melancholiouſnes. But yet aboue other things, *Aetius* praiſeth ſweet wine infuſed in the inwaed part of *Coloquintida*, but ſo, that you commixe with it ſome *Apium*, or *Daucus*, to make it pleaſant. After meate,

meate, you muſt prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white Hellebore *Vomitus.*
firſt commixed with Radiſh, as is declared in the other Books, which if it work little or nothing, you muſt miniſter Hellebore by it ſelfe. And if any man abhorre from Hellebore, let him vſe this or ſuch like medicine: ℞. iuice of Ra- *Vomito.*
diſh, or diſtilled water of it, ℥. iij. *Oximel ſimplex*, ℥. ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke: but they which cannot vomite, muſt be purged downward, ſuch be they that haue a ſtraight and ſlender breaſt. After purging you muſt giue them *Theriaca*, or ſomewhat that is of like vertue, as this is: ℞. *Liquoris Cyrenaici*, fine Mirrhe, Pepper, of each like much: beate them by themſelues, and commixe them with the iuice of Rew, and make pilles thereof, and miniſter the weight of ℈. ſ. They that miniſter any of theſe medicines at the beginning of the ſickeneſſe, or at all, before the vigour, ſtate, and force thereof, they make of a ſimple Quartane oftentimes a double Quartane, or without doubt they make the ſingle Quartane greater and more vehement: and of a double Quartane they make a triple Quartane, or elſe the double one is made greater.

CHAP. X.

Of a Quotidian Feauer.

QVOTIDIANA *Febris intermittens*, that is, an intermitting quotidian feauer; it is ingendred of putrified and rotten fleame being thruſt of na- *Cauſa.*
ture by the ſenſible parts of the bodie. It is called of the Greekes *Amphimerina*, becauſe it cauſeth a fit euery day. But if glaſen fleame which is the coldeſt of all other fleames, do putrifie by it ſelfe the one halfe of it, that is, if the whole ſubſtance of it do not putrifie equally, but ſome parts of it do putrifie and ſome do not, then it ingendreth a feauer called *Epialos febris*: in which *Epialos febris.*
the patient is feauerous, and vehemently cold together, and at one preſent time he feeleth immoderate heate and immoderate cold in all the parts of the body together. For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being ſpread by all the veines, or in the reſt of the body, ingendreth the rigour and cold, but the other rotten part of the humour ingendreth the feauer. A Quotidian feauer doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehe- *Signa.*
ment cold by and by the firſt day, but in proceſſe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a rigour. The pulſe when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, ſlow, little and weake. Neither alſo in the augmenting and increaſing of the Quotidian is there ſwiftneſſe of mouing of the pulſes, nor greatneſſe, nor vehemencie. The heate in this Feauer is not ſo ſharpe and vehement as it is in a Tertian: for it neyther burneth them, neyther are they compelled to make naked their bodies, and to throw off their clothes, neyther doth it compell them to breathe much and often, and to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to deſire to drinke cold water, but it is moiſt and ſmokie, and commixed with much vapour. Alſo it is hardly kindled and it conſumeth a long time, vntill that by increaſing it come to the force and ſtate. Moreouer, they that haue this feauer do not thirſt, becauſe not onelie the tongue, but alſo the whole bodie in this Feauer is moiſt. The vrines in Quotidian Feauers eyther be white, and thinne, and waterie: or thicke, and

troubled. There bursteth out no sweate at all in the first dayes, neither is there any exact and perfect rest from being feuerous. For the feuer remaineth each time almost the space of 18. houres. There chanceth also to them vomiting of fleame: and those things which are sent out by egestion, are colder, moister, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Also a Quotidian feuer doth chiefly vexe them that be moist and flegmaticke of nature. Also it chanceth in a moist season, specially in Winter that is cold and moist, and in olde folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer saw a young man that was cholericke and drie by nature, taken with this feauer: but they that be moist and most flegmatick, hauing a grosse substance of the bodie, and do liue an idle life, seruing their belly, and giuen to drunkennes, vsing bathing often, and specially after meate, they are soone taken with this Quotidian feauer.

Victus ratio. Let the diet in this feauer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding. Therefore you must now seeke such places, wherein we haue declared abundantly what kind of diet it should be. In the first dayes, that is, when signes of

Curatio. crudities and indigestion do yet appeare, the fleame must be diuided and cut, and the pores and passages that be stopped, must be scoured and cleansed. And therefore you must minister *Oximel* because it doth scoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammy humours, and it deliuereth the pores from obstructions. And you must minister those things which prouoke vrine, that the fleame (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily passe by the conduits, and be emptied out. Therfore it is good to minister decoction of the roote of *Apium*, Parsley, *Ireos*, Fennell, and such other like often rehearsed before, with *sirupus acetosus compositus*, and *mel Rosarum*, and *sirupus è duabus Radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and diuide. About the vigour and force of the feuer, you must take heed and haue regard to the stomacke, and specially to the mouth of it. Therefore you must prepare those things, which being applied outwardly, may adde strength to the stomach, such as be, Mastike, Spikenard, Wormewood, and such other like. Therefore before meate, vse this ointment: ℞. oiles of Mastick, Wormewood, and Nard, ana. ℥.ij. ß. Mastick, Cloues, and wood of Aloes, ana.

Vnguentum. ʒ v. Cinnamon, ʒ.j. with Waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the stomach. The stomach being strengthened, you must compell vomiting, first by ministring of Radish, then after, meats must be eaten; for so it lifteth vp the meats, and causeth the easier vomite. After he must vse medicines that do purge out fleame: for fleame when it is digest, may conueniently be purged. What medicines those be that can purge out fleame, it is euident in our other Bookes, and this heere sufficeth to cure a Quotidian feauer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feauer Hectick.

HECTICA *febris*, is a feuer wherein an vnnaturall heat is not only kindled in the spirits and humours, but now also it is kindled in the masse, sound and fleshie parts and members. This feauer knoweth no paine, and they that haue it, do thinke that they haue no feuer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate,

heate, seeing all the members of their bodie be equally heat (as *Galen* declareth abundantly in his Booke *De inæquali intemperie.*) The feuer Hectick is ingendred and caused two wayes. First, for the most part, of burning feauers, which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humiditie and moisture that is contained in the body of the heart: or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feauers are not onely Hectickes, but also *Marasmodes*, that is, consuming and melting feauers. For feauers being ingendred (the humiditie yet remaining still) when they haue caught and occupied the bodie of the heart, hereupon they are specially kindled and inflamed, like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring the feuer Hectick. Another way of ingendring them is this, when they begin of themselues by and by, being ingendred as Diarie feauers be, either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning by the heate of the Sunne. The feauers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such feuers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *Marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Phisitions: if those feauers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them. For the nature of them is hote and drie, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is very much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you powre abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kindled: for the flame being small and weake, panteth alwayes vp & downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *Marasmodes*, that is, cõsuming. The feuer Hectick which turneth into *Marasmus*, or a consumption, is very readie and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses and heate by touching them, you may see the eies wonderfull hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches or furrowes: for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye-browes sticke out. Also there hangeth on the haires of the eye-lids, drie gumme and filth, and vncleanely affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perisheth, and the skin of their forehead is drie and retched out, and their eie-lids winke often as though they were sleepie; but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotencie and debility to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places: for what other thing haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare bellie, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast, and if you touch their skinne, it is verie drie, which if you take hold on with your fingers and pul it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thinne, hard, weake, and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him, doth seeme weake: but a little after it bursteth out sharpe and gnawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shall be a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate, the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse

Cause.

Marasmos.

Signes.

Hectica febris. and swiftnesse. It is called a feuer Hecticke, so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and reserued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the bodie, then it is an absolute and perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *Marasmos*. For the cure of a feuer Hecticke before it come vnto a consumption, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these points, that is, to coole & moisten, as well with those things that be outwardly applied, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the ayre that the patient doth breathe in, be cold and moist. And, if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the fixth Chapter, in the cure of the Tertian. He must also vse meates that do coole and moisten, as broth of Ptisan, bread steeped in a little cold water, the flesh of kiddes, feasants, birds of the mountaines, cockes stones, capons flesh, rere egges, new cheese without salt, and fishes of grauelly waters, Lettuce, Endiue, Succorie, Gourds, Spinach, Mallowes, and such like: Cherries, Proines, Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and such like. He must also taste milke, for that profiteth him maruellously, so that this feauer be not compounded and mixed with another feauer that is ingendred of rottennesse of humours. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue beene vsed to it before. Let him drinke thereof moderately, or let him drinke water wherein a little Cinnamon hath beene sodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreouer, it is good to them that haue this feauer to eate meate often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware and take heed that they eate not great abundance of meate at one meale, which vertue, being weake, should not be able to ouercome and digest. They must eschue immoderate mouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feauer Hecticke: for purgations are hoter and vehementer then they are able well to suffer: but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clisters that can coole and moisten, adding to them marrow of *Cassia fistula*. You must minister such things within the bodie as haue power and vertue to coole and moisten; as among the compound medicines be these, sirupe of Violets, of Water lillies, and of Tame-endiue, *sirupus acetosus*, and such like. Also *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diapapauer*, and such like. Of simples these be good, the iuyces and distilled waters of Lettuce, Purslaine, Tame-endiue, and Poppie. Among those things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feauer: I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be carried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to carrie the sheet, at each corner one. The water of the bath must be most temperate: and also the patient must not tarrie in it long, lest any of his moisture within him should be drawne out by it: therefore in no case must he sweate in it. There be some that vse to seethe in the water of the bath hearbs, as Violets, Mallows, Lettuce, flowers of Water-lillies, and such like: some other do seethe calues feete, or lambes heads, vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware lest any thing be powred on his head, seeing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole bodie, the sheete being

Aer.

Diet.

Lac.

Potus.

Nota.

Balneum.

let

let downe easily, & then againe lifted vp by foure yong men which must carry him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped all ouer once in cold water, but he may not tarry in it any time at all. They that haue this feuer and be brought into a bath, vnlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* saith.) By and by, as soone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheete be ready, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, and first wipe him with sponges, & after with soft linnen clothes; and let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other this Liniment is good: ℞. oile of Violets, ℥ ß. oile of Gourds, ʒ. iij. new butter without Salt, Swines grease, ana ʒ. j. ß. commixe them and make a Liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body Or adde to it mucilage of *Tragacanthe*, ʒ. ij. marrow of calues shankes, ʒ. iij. Waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Also oile of Water-lillies and of Poppie, are good, and specially oile of Roses, which (as *Galen* saith) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also it profiteth him to haue his heart cooled and moistened with Epithemes: as is this: ℞. waters of Violets, Water-lillies, and Lettuce, ana. ℥ iij. strong Vineger, ℥ ß. red Roses, all the Sanders, ana. ʒ. j. powder of *Diamargariton*, ʒ. ß. seede of Purslaine, ʒ. iij. Saffron, ϑ. ß. commixe them & make an Epitheme, & apply it to the region of the heart cold. *Epithema cordis.* Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus: ℞. water of Lettuce, ℥. ij. Vineger, ℥. j. *Diarrhodõ abbatis*, ʒ. j ß scraping of Iuory, ℥ ß Purslaine, ϑ ß. commixe them & make an Epitheme, and apply it to the liuer. *Epithema iecoris.* Also for them that haue the feuer Hecticke medicines are good which can coole & moisten with their odor and sauor, as be floures of Water-lillies, Purslaine, Violets, Roses, and such like. *Odoramentum.* Also you may find moe things that are good for the cure of the feauer Hecticke, in the second booke, in the Chapter of the Ptisicke or Consumption. And in curing of the feuer Hecticke this onely must be your study & labour, that the body may not only be cooled & moistned with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applied outwardly, and specially by annointing with oyle. How much oile applied and annointed outwardly, specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboue an hundred years old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulso, foris oleo*, that is, I keepe me moist with *Mulso* within, and oyle I annoynt vpon my skin. *Pollio Romulus.*

CHAP. XII.

Of an Hemitrice feuer.

Although there be diuerse kinds of compound feuers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke, in the explication of feuers: yet in this place we will onely speake of that feuer which is compounded of an intermitting Tertian, and a continuall Quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *Hemitritæus*, and in

Latin *Semitertiana*, in Englisth halfe a Tertian. It is so called because this whole feauer hath halfe the nature of the said feauers, each of them: by the example of this compound feauer, you may learne to cure all other compound feuers.

Causa. Therefore an Hemitrice feuer is caused, when putrified fleame is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a Tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a Quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreme parts. Therefore the feauer which is compounded of them both

Signa. causeth horrour and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a Tertian, and greater and more vehement then the cooling of a Quotidian: so that it is a meane betweene them both. It is ingendred two sundry wayes: for eyther two fits are ioyned together by and by at the beginning, and do inuade the patient together both at once; or else each of them cometh separate from the other. Therefore when the Tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feauer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, and there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driuen out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour: but when the Quotidian exceedeth the Tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a little shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vexe him. But when the intermitting Tertian and the continuall Quotidian be equall, and of like force and greatnesse, the fit doth come with horror and shaking for cold. And when the Quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horrour waxe lesse and gentler: but if the Tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horrour increase and waxe greater. Note therefore, when a feauer is ingendred of an intermitting Tertian and a continuall Quotidian, being

Exquisitus Hemitritæus. equall, of like force, greatnesse, and strength, then it is called an exquisite *Hemitritæus* ague: but if one feauer do exceede the other, then it is called an vn-

Non exquisitus Hemitritæus. pure Hemitrice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feuer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite Hemitrice feuer is ingendred of two feuers equally commixed, that is a Tertian and a Quotidian, you must also vse

Curatio. a cure conuenient & agreeing equally to a Tertian and a Quotidian. But in an vnpure Hemitrice, when there is most of choler, or most of fleame, you must also varie and change the cure, according to the humor and feuer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the Tertian. But if fleame abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the Quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound; but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we need not in this place rehearse the remedies whereby this feuer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the Tertian and Quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly and perfectly the curing of simple feauers, he shall also know how to cure compound feauers without any more labor: for the cures of simple feauers being knowne, and considered, it is most ready to any man to cure compound feauers: so that here we shall not need to write seuerally of the curing of compound feauers.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Peſtilence.

SEeing that at this preſent time and day, there be euerie where Treatiſes of the Peſtilence made of diuerſe new Authors, I neede not now long diſpute here of it: but it ſhall be ſufficient, if we do briefly declare the cauſes, ſignes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diſeaſes before. There be two eſpeciall cauſes of the Peſtilence, as *Galen* writeth *in lib.* 1. *De differentijs febrium, cap.* 5. The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten aire. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humors be ready to putrifie and rot, when a man taketh any light occaſion to kindle a feuer of the corrupted aire. Therefore the chiefeſt cauſe why men are infected with the Peſtilence, is breathing in of aire, without which no breathing thing doth prolõg their life. For it beginneth for the moſt part of breathing in of aire which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chanceth in warres: or the euaporation of ſome pooles, fennes or mariſhes in Sommer time. It chanceth alſo ſometime to come before immoderate heate of the aire, when the temperature of the aire is changed from his naturall ſtate, to immoderate heate and moiſture, of neceſſity the Peſtilence muſt follow. Hereupon *Galen* ſaith, that of all temperaments of the aire, the worſt is that which is hote and moiſt. Alſo oftentimes (as is aforeſaid) naughtie and corrupt dyet ingendreth humours in the bodie that be eaſie & ready to putrifie and rot, and ſo is the cauſe why ſuch bodies are infected with the Peſtilence. And then truly they ſpecially haue the Peſtilence, which vſe a naughty and corrupt diet, and ſo be full of all kinds of ſuperfluities. Therefore it need not ſeeme maruellous, if ſometime ſome one among many (which yet doth very ſeldome chance) be infected with this diſeaſe, the ayre yet not being peſtilent and corrupt. For they that keep a good and healthfull diet, and be without ſuperfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or elſe very litle hurt, although they be in the corrupt and peſtilent aire: and may eaſily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and ſtate. Hereby it is eaſie to anſwer them that aske, how it chanceth that all men are not taken equally with the Peſtilence, ſeeing euery one is conſtrained to breathe in the peſtilent aire. The firſt cauſe why ſome remaine vnhurt, is becauſe they be not full of ſuperfluous humidity and moiſture, but do vſe moderate diet and exerciſes, and haue their body eaſie to breathe out vapours. Another cauſe is, becauſe all mens bodies be not of like diſpoſition and effect. For diſpoſitions of mens bodies are of many ſundry formes: for ſome bodies are quickely ouercome and infected, and do moſt readily ſuffer any cauſe: but ſome againe be inſuperable, and cannot be ouercome, nor will at all ſuffer the infection, or elſe very hardly. And therefore the greateſt portion of ingendring of diſeaſes, is the diſpoſition of the body of him that ſuffereth the diſeaſe. For elſe all men that taried long in the burning heate of the Sunne, or that vſed ouermuch moouing, or that were loden with wine, or inflamed with anger, or affected with ſadnes, ſhould fall into a feuer. Alſo we do not deny, but that ſometime great

1 *Whereof rottenneſſe beginneth.*

2 *Nota.*

Plagues from God.

plagues and peſtilence be ſent of God, for the grieuous ſinnes and horrible offences of men, wherewith he puniſheth our great offences: whereof there be many euident teſtimonies in the Prophets, and ſpecially in *Ezechiel* chap. 5.

The time of the Plague.

The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the Peſtilence is riſe and flouriſheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of Harueſt or Autumne: for then both the ayre and mens bodies are moſt apt to putrifie, corrupt and rotte, for many cauſes. There be many and diuerſe ſignes of the Peſtilence to come, rehearſed of the new Authors: among which ſignes, the firſt is the changing of the times of the yeare. The ſecond is often *Phænomena* in the aire, ſpecially in Autumne. The third is, when puſhes, and pocks, and meaſles do not only vexe children, but alſo yong folke of perfect age. The fourth is, when the winds are often in the South and in the Weſt in Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatning raine, but yet it doth not raine at all. The ſixt is, if women conceiued with child, do ſuffer abortion for euery light cauſe. The ſeuenth is, when in Sommer after raine ſuddenly a great abundance of frogges of diuerſe colours do gather together on a heape. The eighth is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beaſts and fiſhes. The tenth is, the flying of birds from their neſts, leauing their egs there ſtill. The eleuenth is, the dearth of victualls and corne. The twelfth (which is the moſt certaine ſigne) is a hote and moiſt temperature of the yeare.

Signes of one infected.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Signes of one infected.

There be many ſignes that declare when one is alreadie infected with the Peſtilence. The firſt is, if the outward members be cold, and the inward members burning hote. The ſecond is, heauineſſe, wearineſſe, ſloath of the whole bodie, and difficultie in breathing. The third is, paine and heauineſſe in the head. The fourth is, carefulneſſe of the mind, and ſadneſſe. The fifth is, a maruellous inclination (for the moſt part) to ſleepe, for ſometime watching and rauing do vexe him. The ſixt is, a diuers and frowning look of the eyes. The ſeuenth is, loſſe of appetite. The eighth is, immoderate thirſt and often vomiting. The ninth is, bitterneſſe and drineſſe of the mouth. The tenth is, a pulſe, frequent, ſmall and deepe. The eleuenth is, the vrine for the moſt part troublous, thicke, and ſtinking like beaſts vrine: although ſometime the vrine of them ſeemeth to differ little from the vrine of healthful men; therefore by ſuch an vrine, they that are vnskilfull of the other ſignes be quickly deceiued, ſuſpecting no hurt, becauſe of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth, which is the moſt ſure token of all, is, if there do ariſe and ingender botches behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the ſhare, without any manifeſt cauſe, or alſo if carbuncles do ſuddenly ariſe in any member: for when they appeare, they betoken ſtrength of nature, which being ſtrong and mightie, doth labour to driue the poiſon out of the bodie. Alſo they do declare which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, do thruſt out from them the venimous humors. For if they do appeare in the nacke, they declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the heart; but if they appeare in the ſhare, the liuer is moſt affected. But ſeeing that botches do not alwayes appeare, (which is moſt perillous and dangerous: for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expell and driue out the venimous humors) you muſt haue reſpect to other ſignes and tokens

Signifying of botches.

which

which be rehearsed a little before. As for the cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare, then if nothing do let, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other parts of the face and necke, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the armeholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side: it is cõmonly called *Basilica*: or if that vein wil not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch do appeare in the share, you must draw out bloud from the ankles of the same side. But if there do appeare no botch outwardly, you must draw out bloud from the same side where there is felt greatest paine and heauinesse. But out of which veine you must let bloud, the paine and griefe of the members afflicted, will declare to you well enough: for if the members aboue the breast be grieued and afflicted most, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be most grieued and afflicted, cut the *Basilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be most vexed, you must cut the veine of the hamme or ankles. And if nature be strong, and other things not letting, you must draw out bloud abundantly. But if through age, or for other causes, you may not vse bloud-letting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the necke and the shoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. And if the Pestilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or supper time, when the stomach is filled with meate, then he must vomite straightway. At the last, when the bodie and stomach is emptied, you must by and by minister some medicine that can resist poison, that it may draw the poison to it, and call it backe from the heart: for that is the propertie of such medicines. Among a great number of the which, this is praise-worthy, which is called *Electuarium de Ouo*, which once a good and wise Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vse. Why I do preferre this almost before all other, is, because of his maruellous effects and vertues which haue appeared often in diuers sicke persons: and because it is easie to make, except the roote of white Diptaine, which cannot well be gotten; for the which it is better to vse the leaues of true Diptaine, which may well be come by; minister of the foresaid Electuarie to them that be of perfect age, ʒ. j. and to them that be younger, sometime ℈. ij. will suffice: you must dissolue it in water of Roses, or Endiue, or Scabious. Also this medicine vsed, is good to preserue a man from the Pestilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of Barley, or the quantitie of a Pease. Also the taking of this potion doth helpe much: ℞. *Theriaca Andromachi* ℈. ij. *Mithridatum*, ℈. j. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ℈. ß. waters of Roses, Scabious, and Bugloss, ana, ʒ. j. Commixe them. What power and strength is in Bolearmoniacke to driue away the Pestilence, *Galen* teacheth abundantly *in libro nono, de simplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus*. Where he writeth, that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as dranke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vsed in the time of the Pestilence. Moreouer, this powder doth profit very much: ℞. the leaues of true Diptaine, the root of Turmentill, the root of Pimpernell, Zedoary, Gentian, root of *Betonica alpina*, commonly called *Tunica*, ana, ʒ. ß. Bolearmoniacke prepared, ʒ. j. *Terra lemnia*, ʒ. iij. *Aloes* Epatike, Myrrhe, ana, ʒ ß. Saffron, ʒ. j. Mastick, ʒ. ij.

Curatio.

Vena secta.

Cucurbitæ.

Vomitus.

Alexiteria.

Electuarium de Ouo.

Potio.

Bolus armeniacus.

Pulvis optimus.

and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*. Wherefore minister to the sicke, ℥.j. in Rose water, or Sorrell water. When the patient hath taken some of the aforesaid medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with soft sheets, and well couered with clothes, that he may there sweate foure or fiue houres, or longer, according to his strength. But if by this meanes you can scarcely prouoke him to sweate, you must lay tiles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient; for these by reason of their heate will readily prouoke sweate. And in all the time that the sicke doth sweate, you must onelie take heed, that he do neither sleepe, eate, nor drinke. After sweating, you must diligently wipe off the sweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterward let the sicke rise vp from his bed, if he will, or if he can, and let him eschue the open aire. Let the aire of the chamber in which the sicke doth lie, be corrected, amended, and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete smelling perfumes, daily foure or fiue times. It is best for the sicke to change from one chamber to another: becausse the aire of one chamber, by the continuall tarying of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be corrected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber, into the which the sicke shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those things should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath sweat, giue vnto him the broth of a Chickin, and that you must do often afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and refreshed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and but very little at once: for they that are thus fed, will sooner recouer againe then other. Also he may vse to eate the flesh of Chickins sodden with Sorrell, or with iuyce of Limons, or else Veriuyce. Also the sicke must be kept altogether from sleepe the first day by talke of the assistants, by rubbing of the extreme parts, by pulling of their eares, nose, and haire. For the which purpose it is not vnprofitable to dip a sponge in very sharpe vineger, and hold it to the nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion: ℞. Iulep of Violets, ℥.iij. sirupe of the sharpe iuyce of Citrons, ℥.j.ß. sirupe of lowne Endiue, ℥.ij. of the decoction of Sorrell, Scabious, and flowers of Bugloss, ℥.x. or so much of their distilled waters: commixe them, and make a potion. Also you must take the water wherein Barley hath beene sodden a little, and commixe with it iuice of Roses, or Sorrell, or Limons, or of vnripe Grapes and minister it in stead of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as is this: ℞ conserues of Violets, Roses, and Bugloss, ana. ℥.j.ß. Bole armoniacke prepared, ℥.j. red Corall, ℈.j. barkes of Citron apple, ℥.j.ß. Camphire, ℈.v. with sirupe of the iuyce of sharpe Citrons, as much as is sufficient: make an Electuary or liquid Antidote. Also you must lay vpon the region of the heart (specially if the sicke do yet feele heate about the breast) this Epitheme: ℞. waters of Roses, Bugloss and Sorrell, ana. ℥ iiij. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, ℥.j. wood of *Aloes*, red Sanders, the barkes of a Citron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart, ana. ℈.v. Saffron, grain.six: commixe them all, and make an Epitheme. But you must note, that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote:

Sudor.

Aeris correctio.

When meate should be ministred.

Of sleepe.

Potio.

Comfortatiues

Electuarium.

Epithema.

and

and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straightway; for then they constraine and shut vp the pores, and so do bring vnto the patient no small griefe. Therefore it is better to vse cordiall bags, as this is: ℞. flowers of red Roses, Water-lillies, and of Violets, ana. ℥.ij. of all the Sanders, Corall white and red, *Spodium*, Pearles, ana. ℥.iij. Cinamon, Cloues, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barkes of the Citron apple, Saffron, ana. ℈.j. seed of Sorrell, ℈.ij. seed of Purslaine, grain.iiij. beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bags of silke, and apply each after other being heat. *Sacculus.*

Moreouer, you must altogether couet and labour, that the venimour humours may be entised & drawne to the place where the botches appeare & burst out, and you must do it by setting to of cupping glasses, or by medicines applied, that haue vertue and power to draw those humours, as this is: ℞. tarte Figges, in number sixe, great Raisins, ℥ ß. salt Gumme, ℥.ij Hony, ℥ j. with oyle of Cammomill: make it into the forme of an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. *Outward medicines.*

Or apply this plaister, which is much commended of all men: ℞. a great Onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the kore within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of Rew or Sage: which done, stop the hole fast that is in the top of the Onion with lute, and set the Onion in the imbers to roast: and when you do thinke that it is roasted enough, pull off the barkes of it, and then bray it in a mortar vntill it be thicke like an Emplaister, and apply it hote to the botch. *Emplastrum.*

You need not to be afraid to applie *Theriaca* to the botches, because of the authoritie of *Gentilis* and *Valescus*, and some other authors. For *Theriaca*, and such like medicines against poison, do not worke their operation by driuing the poison from them (as they being in a wonderfull errour do affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poison to them, as *Galen* teacheth in his booke *De Theriaca ad Pisonem*. *Error of Gentilis and Valescus.*

Also this Emplaister is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch: ℞. meale of Fenugreeke, and Lineseed, of flowers of Cammomill, ana. ℥.ß. roots of *Althaea* and white Lillies, ana. ℥.ß. Figs in number sixe, leaues of true Diptaine, ℥.iij. rootes of Valerian, ℥.ij Mustard seed, ℥.j ß. Doues dung ℥.ß oyles of Cammomill and Lillies, ana. ℥.j. ß. make them into the forme of an Emplaister or Pultice. *Emplastrum suppuratorium.*

Also this is practised: ℞. of *Emplastrum diachylon simplex*, ℥.ij. of gum Armoniacke, and *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But if the botch will not breake of himselfe by applying the aforesaid things, you must then lay vpon it Goose dung dissolued in the common oile, or in oile of Camomill. And this is sufficient to speake of here, as touching the cure of the which be taken with the pestilence. *Aliud.*

Now we will briefly expound, by what meanes a man may preserue and defend himselfe from the infection of the Pestilence, which vexeth and infecteth in some certayne place or region. And seeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the Pestilence is not caused but through the breathing in of the pestilent and corrupt ayre: there cannot be a more present remedy to preserue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. For there is no other meanes to auoid the pestilent aire, because whether we will or no, we must draw in such aire, vnlesse we get vs away into some other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which *A preseruation from the pestilence.* *Flight is the best remedie.*

you must the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectiue. And you must flie farre off into such a place whereas the aire is knowne to be pure and good, and destitute of corruption: neither must you returne home againe from that place very soone. Hereupon it is not rashly said of the common sort, that these three Aduerbs, *Citò, longè*, and *tardè*, in the time of the Pestilence, do more pleasure and profit then three shops very well furnished. Therefore they that may conueniently for their businesse flie away, let them not suffer themselues to be perswaded by any meanes to tary in the pestilent aire: which if they do, they shall foolishly put themselues in danger of pestilent death. But if you may not flie for vrgent businesse, and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tary, be without all kinde of stinke, and kept cleane from all filthinesse and sluttishnesse. Let the windowes of it be close shut, specially in cloudy and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is risen aboue the earth some houres. You must come abroad but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preserue you from the infection. You must make fires daily in your houses, with Oken wood, Iuniper, *Tamariscus*, Laurel, or such like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and strength in fire, to amend and correct the rottennesse and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following: ℞. Rosemary, M. ß. Sage, Betonie, Wormwood, Marioram, Origan, ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder: ℞. of Iuniper berries, ʒ. j. Myrrhe, ʒ. iij. Frankinsence and Masticke, ana ʒ. iij ß. roote of *Benedicta*, ʒ. j. Rew, ʒ. ß. Cypresse barks, ʒ. j ß. roote of *Angelica*, Lauender, ana. ʒ. ij. beate all together, and make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, Iuniper cleft in small stickes, or the berries of Iuniper. Let richer folke vse wood of *Aloes*, or powder of *Gallia moschata*, Cloues, and such like. When necessitie constraineth you to go abroad, carry this or such a like Pomander with you: ℞. *Lapdanum*, ʒ. iij. *Storax calamita*, ʒ. ij. Cinamon, Mace, Cloues, Nutmegs, ana. ʒ. j. wood of *Aloes*, ℈ j. Spikenard, ℈. ß. Myrrhe, Masticke, Frankinsence, ana. ʒ. ß. Muske and Amber, ana. gra. iij. powder them and searce them, and with *Storax liquida* and water of Marioram as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a *Pomum odoratum*. In Sommer time let the aire be purified and corrected with cold things, as with flowers of Roses, Violets, Water-lillies, Vine leaues and branches, Willow leaues, and such other like. Also sprinkle the pauement with water of Roses, Sorrell, and such like: or with cold water wherewith some Vineger is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell Roses, Vineger, Camphire, Sanders, and such other like: or to smell to this Pomander: ℞. *Lapdanum*, ʒ ß. *Storax calamita*, ʒ. iij. flowers of water-lillies, Roses, and Violets, ana ʒ. j barks of the Citron apple, ʒ. j ß. all the Sanders, ana. ʒ. ß. of Maces and Cinamon, ana. ℈. j. Masticke, ʒ. j. white Poppie, ʒ. ß. Camphire, ℈ ß. Amber, Muske, ana. gra ij. bray and commixe them with *Storax liquida* and Rose water, and make a Pomander. But seeing *Galen* saith, that one of the chiefest things which they that would be preserued from

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

the

the pestilence, ought to regard and take heed of, is, that their bodie be for the most part without superfluities and excrements, and may well breathe out the vapours: truly there is nothing more to be eschued at such a time, then ouermuch deuouring and swallowing in gluttonously of meate and drinke. There- *Diet.*
fore let their meates be altogether easie of digestion, and such as ingender good bloud, and be not ready to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commixe with the meates that be eaten at that time, some Vineger, or some other sharpe iuyce, as Veriuice, or iuice of Citron apples, or of Limons or Orenges. In Sommer time he must vse for pot-hearbs, Bugloss, Endiue, Succory, and Lettuce: and in Winter, let him vse Sage, Parsly, *Apium*, Marioram, Balme, and Hysope. He must abstaine from all fruits, vnlesse they be sharpe, as be Pomegranates, Citrons, Limons, Orenges, and such like, which are good for him to vse. Let his drinke be Wine that is thinne and watery. Let euery man beware of strong Wine that is vnlayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vse exercises, but in a meane and tempe- *Exercitium.*
rate place, and in an ayre being first purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you must eschue common dancings openly, and also turnings, leapings, and whatsoeuer such like exercise there be that requireth often breathing in of aire. Therefore because of this also in the time of the Pestilence he must eschue companies gathered together by magistrates by some open commandement, for matters of the commonwealth, as Courts, Sessions, and such like. Let his sleep, watchings, and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he must sleepe in a chamber that is close, well stopped and shut, lest the pestilent aire should enter into it: the aire of which chamber must be purified and corrected with some perfume aforesaid, morning and euening. He must vse sheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue been laied vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from sleep, let this be his first care and worke, to empty the bodie of superfluities and ex- *Excretion.*
crements. And you must onely take heede and beware, that the bodie be not costiue at any time: therefore if it do not of it selfe void out excrements daily, you shall prouoke them out with *pilule Rufi*, or with a soft Clyster, or with a Suppositary made for the purpose. When the bodie is emptied from superfluities and excrements, as well by the guttes as by the bladder, he must take some medicine that can preserue him from the infection of the Pestilence; for the which, there be many things before rehearsed. And if necessarie businesse do constrain you to go abroad openly, you may chew Zedoary, or root of Angelica, or Pimpernel: or you shall smell to Rew, for the sauor of it doth marueilously resist the pestilent aire. He must eschue all carnall lust, specially immo- *Venus.*
derate vsing thereof. After copulation, he must keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes must altogether be abhorred, as a most present poison, *Balneum.*
specially common baths: because when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the pestilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vse a priuate bath, let them preserue and defend themselues most diligently from the corrupted aire when they go out of the bath. But it is better, and more wholesome to vse frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let baths alone: but yet you may wash the head weekly with lie, wherein hath bin sodden

Asarum, Marioram, Lauender, Rosemary, Betony, Sage, Cammomill, and such other like: but yong men and such as abound with bloud, must in the time of the pestilence vse bloud-letting; and that not onely once, but (if nothing be to the contrary) bloud-letting doth often profite much to preserue them in health, because it doth much coole the state of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Also you must purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that specially in the Spring time and Autumne. As for perturbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth that we describe medicines which can keep and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilulæ Rufi* or *Pestilentiales*, or else *Communes*, are principall and chiefe: ℞. Aloes epaticke, two parts, Saffron orientall, Myrrhe, ana. part. 1. with white Wine, or with water of Scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily ʒ.j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pills, because of the Aloes and Myrrhe in them, which do most resist putrifaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent aire. Also you may vse these pils following: ℞. Aloes epatick, ʒ.iij. Myrrhe, ʒ.j.ß. Agarick prepared, ʒ.j. Saffron orientall, ʒ.ß. Bole armoniacke prepared, ʒ.j. seede of Citron apples, ʒ.ii. Mastick, ʒ.ß. root of Pimpernell, ʒ.ß. with Rose water, make 13. pils of ʒ.j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicin that is commonly called *Electuarium de nucibus*: ℞. of Walnuts in number 20. of fat Figs in number 13. Rew, M.ij. of Wormwood, *Cotula fœtida*, and Scabious, ana. M.j. root of *Aristolochia longa*, ʒ.ß. roote of *Aristolochia rotunda*, ʒ.j.ß. of Turmentill, *Petasitis*, and Pimpernell, ana. ʒ ii.ß. leaues of true Diptain, M.j. of Laurell berries, ʒ.iij. of Harts horne burnt, ʒ.ii.ß. Maces, Myrrhe, Bolearmoniack, true *Terra lemnia*, ana. ʒ.iij. Salt of the Sea, ʒ.i.ß. *Nux vomica*, ʒ.ij. flowers of Bugloss, M.j. beate them all, and commixe them with ℔.ii. of clarified Hony, and made a liquid medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is very good: ℞. leaues of true Diptaine, ʒ.ß. of the rootes of Zedoary, *Tunica*, Pimpernell, and Turmentill, ana. ʒ.ß. barks of the Citron apple, ʒ iij. *Terra lemnia*, ʒ.i. Bolearmoniack, ʒ.j. Myrrhe chosen, Aloes epatick, ana. ʒ.ß. Saffron, ʒ ß. Masticke, ʒ.i ß. Liquorice, ʒ.i. Scabious and Sorrell, ana. ʒ.iii. red Sanders, ʒ.i. scraping of Iuorie, and *Authera*, ana. ʒ.ß. the bones of the Harts heart, red Corall, ana ʒ.ii. seed of Purslaine, gra.v. bray all finely, and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, Lozenges, with Sugar, and waters of Roses and Scabious, and minister daily of them ʒ.i. or more, or lesse, according to age and strength. Also onely Bolearmoniacke taken with Vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *Theriaca*, *Mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plenty named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

Bloud-letting.

Purgatio.

Preseruatiues

Pilulæ communes.

Pilulæ.

Electuarium de nucibus.

Pulvis.

The end of the fourth Booke.

THE FIFTH BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRING OF TVMORS WHICH HAPPEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

¶ What that swelling is which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the diuision of the same, according to the opinion of the Neotericke.

THose Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Phisitions and Chirurgians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme consent of old writers, haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*: whereas indeede *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and other Grecians, hath beene reputed but as one kind of those swelling tumours, which commonly are said to chance besides nature; which the Latines haue very fitly termed *Abscessus*, and the crew of yonger Phisitions do call it *Exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the interpreter of *Auicene*: of the which, as also of all other kinds we will intreate particularly in his seuerall Chapter. Although, indeed, it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the *species* or *differentia* of those tumours besides nature: appoynting it to be diuerse from that which they call *Exitura*, and also from that other kinde *Pustula*. For vnder the name of Apostemes, they will conclude and place those tumours onely which being lifted vp into a great bigneſſe, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humours (as they terme them) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostema* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumours besides nature, by *Auicene* and his followers, it is thus commonly defined. An Apostеme is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated into one bigneſſe. Which definition they do affirme to be essentiall, consisting (as they say) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do very sufficiently explane the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the *genus*, and the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities, which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: all which distinctions and diuersities, *Galen* doth recite in his Booke intituled, *De morbo & symptomate*. But these three kindes of sores, which in that swelling besides nature, commonly called *Apostema*, do concurre as establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: intemperature, which

Apostema.

Abscessus.

The common definition of Apostema.

Three kinds of diseases causing the essence of tumors besides nature.

they also call an euill complexion: immoderation, whereby they intend a ministerial composition: and the solution of that agreeing vnitie which nature affoordeth to euery body. To which three kindes, the Greekes haue assigned three opposite and fit termes, calling the first δυσκρασία, the second ἀμετρία, the third συνεχείας λύσις: but they bring also many other descriptions rather then definitions of this *Apostema*: for definitions I dare not terme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined, neither do they serue either to the sufficient explication of his nature, or the constitution of his essence: which they verie well knowing, are content to let them go vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue desumed and taken out of *Galen* his Booke which he wrote *De tumoribus præter naturam*. An Apostеme or tumour besides nature, is one of those things which happpening vnto the bodie, doth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremest dimension. This definition they haue extorted out of *Galen* his words, which he set not downe as an exquisite definition, but as an ordinary assertion. You may fashion (if you please) many such definitions, as this for one. An Apostеme is an increment exceeding naturall constitution. Or this: An Apostеme is a tumor, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall state and habite in quantitie and bignesse. Whereas *Galen* in his *lib.* 13 *Therap Meth.* hath these words: In this thirteenth part of our whole worke we wil begin to discourse of those tumours happening besides nature, in which the parts haue forsaken their naturall constitution by becoming more bigge: so that you seeing the slender weight of these definitions, must annexe this particle, *actiones ladent*, hurting the duties of the bodie: or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or else they will not be absolute or essentiall: for euery tumour making distention or swelling in length, breadth, or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie constitution of nature, eyther in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or, euery excrement or greatnesse exceeding nature, must not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apostema*, or a swelling besides nature. For (as *Galen* saith in his booke *De tumoribus præter naturam*) such like augmentations may befall not onelie to the diseased, but also to the healthfull, as well in the whole bodie, as in any member of the same. For grosse men although they be enlarged, and as it were distended both in breadth and profunditie: yet they haue not this distention besides nature, but (as he saith) onely not naturally. For they haue not yet passed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of those increments which are besides nature: and those tumours which abide in those parts which are yet sound and without the taste of griefe, may well be said to be aboue and beyond nature, but not besides nature; as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely, be maruellously increased, or inflated, yet so that his substance be free from all annoyance, this cannot appositiuely be said to be besides nature, but onely beyond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of *Galen*, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions thereof. But such like tumours besides

Accidentall definitions.

Definitio prima.

Secunda.

Tertia.

A perfect definitiō besides nature, taken out of the writings of Galē.

sides nature are wont to be diuided into three kindes by *Guido* and those of his age, into impostumes, abscessions, or pushes and vlcers. Impostumes they call great tumors, in which the matter whereof it springeth doth offend in plentie or quantitie. Pushes are those little tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in quality then in quantitie; yea and in them there lurketh a poisonous venime (as they say.) But the Abscessions are those tumors which the Latines call *Abscessus*, & of the Greeks may well be named ἀποστήματα, as we proued before: but let it be lawfull for euery man to impose what titles or names they will, so that (as *Galen* saith) they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselues. Therfore leauing all the scrupulous and scholerlike contentions, which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumors or impostumes (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will beginne with inflammation.

The diuision of a tumour besides nature into his species, after the opinion of the later sort.
Apostemata.
Pustula.
Exitura.

CHAP. II.

Of the difference of those tumours which happen besides nature.

THere be many and sundrie differences of tumours besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name Apostemes: the differences whereof, of the later Chirurgians are obserued, to proceed either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the accidents, or from the affected parts, or else from the efficient causes. The differences which they deriue from the substance, are supposed by *Auicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the littlenesse thereof. Amongst the bigge tumours they do recken *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in the fleshie parts, which are fit to be distended) and *Oedema*, *Erysipelas*, and *Scirrhus*, which do all grow vp to a great bignesse and quantitie. Little tumours are called of them little eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skinne and the vtermost parts of the bodie, as the Greekes leprosie, the scab, the ringworme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more large hereafter. The matter of the aforesaid tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall, as not naturall, that is to say, fleame, melancholie, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature; sometime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime a yellow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre vnto another place. The symptomates or accidents which are commonly incident to these tumors, are, griefe, heate, softnesse, hardnesse, and such like: from the which they will deriue some differences. But those which they take from the members and from the affected parts, are *Ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the squince, the inflamation of the throat, *Phyma*, *Phygethlum*, and those inflammations which we terme *Glandulæ* and *Bubones*. But the efficient causes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congestion and fluxe, and *Crisis*, that is to say, iudgement thereof, which happeneth

The diuision of a tumor into his differences.
From whence the differẽces of tumours besides nature are taken of the later sort.
Substantia.
Materia.
Accidentia.
Pars affecta.
Causæ efficientes.

in diseases. There be also certayne other causes both internall and exter-
From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature doth come. whereof we will dispute more copiously and earnestly in that which followeth. But yet truely all diuersities and differences of these kindes of swellings chancing aboue nature, haue their beginning from the nature and substance (which prouoketh the swelling) of that which floweth, as witnesseth *Galen* in his book which he wrote of Tumors aboue nature. Likewise in his second booke that he wrote *ad Glauconem cap.* 13. *Meth. med.* In which places he declareth, that the varietie of all swellings which are aboue nature, doth arise of the nature of that which floweth: for when (saith he) a flatuous matter hath more free accesse, then also the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *Phlegmone* when as bloud aboundeth: as likewise *Erysipelas*, when choler hath his course: and they also be more vexed with *Oedema*, when fleame or rheume descending from the head doth reigne. Also they be grieued with the disease *Schirrhosis*, when either a thicke or too cold humour is setled in some part thereof. Therefore (as *Galen* saith) all tumours do chance besides nature, which proceede eyther of humours, or of a flatuous and windie spirit, which is gathered sometime vnder the skin, sometime vnder the thinne filmes that couer the bones; sometime in the belly, sometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the midst of these, and of the *Peritonæum*. The Greekes call it *Emphysema*, and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *Apostema*. If such swellings happen of humours, then they are either hote, or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumours come of the best bloud, that is to say, which is perfectly ruddie, and of a meane soundnesse and moderate qualitie: and then the Greekes call it *Phlegmone*, the Latines *Inflammatio*: or they proceed of yellow choler, or of burning and thinne bloud, or else of those things which be hoter then bloud or choler. They terme this euill *Erysipelas*, but these name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold swellings are prouoked either through thin fleame, and then the Greekes call it *Oedema*, but our Phisitions terme it *Laxus tumor*, the Interpreter of *Auicen*, *Vndimia*: or also it is caused through the humor melancholy, or through thicke, cold, and clammie fleame. They call this *Schirron*, the Latines *Duricies*, the Arabians, *Sephirus*. Also swellings sometimes do chance by reason of a late taking away superfluous bloud, as hereafter shall be declared. Tumors are said to be mingled, when such kind of humors are tempered together: and if one maistereth the other, the name is giuen to the swelling from that humour which exceedeth in the mixture: as in bloud-ruling choler, we will call *Phlegmone* the principall to be *Erysipelatodes*: and also because melancholie gouerneth, *Erysipelas* is said to be *Phlegmonodes*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretation, both of *Schirrus Phlegmonosus* with *Phlegmone Schirrhosa*, and of *Oedema Phlegmonosum* with *Phlegmone Oedematosa*. And after this example you shall name the other tumours, although there chance commixtion of three or foure humours together at once. Moreouer, if the humours be of like force, and equally incorporate, so that the one cannot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of those humours which they stirre or raise vp. As if bloud be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together, *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the

Emphysema.

Calidi tumores.

Tumores frigidi.

Tumores serosi.

Tumores complicati.

One euill seemeth to haue affinitie with another.

the kind and nature of *Phlegmone* & *Erysipelas*. Those truly be the chiefe swellings and tumors which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humours (that is to say) *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, *Aedema*, *Scirrus*: whereunto innumerable other tumors exceeding the measure and bounds of nature, are reduced, and comprehended, although they haue chosen to themselues diuerse names, according to their sundry causes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *Phlegmone*, *Phygethon*, which is called *parvus*, (*Celsus* being the author) but of our men *Phyma* and *Tuberculum*: also it is named of the same *Celsus Terminthon*, of *Oribasius*, the kinds or *species* of *phyma*: but of *Aetius*, *phigethlum*: also they be called *Deflidens*, which *Celsus* calleth *Furunculi*, felons. Likewise *Gangræna* of some member, *τερμὸς*, that is to say, mortification, but not absolute, and also *Sphaselus*, which is called of the Latines, *Syderatio*, & of *Auicen*, *Ascachilos*. *Carbunculus* also is called of the Greeks *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicen* writeth in the chapter *De pruna & igne Persico*. But vnto *Erysipelas* are referred *Herpetes*, which in kinde be two maner of waies, that is to say, *Miliares* and *Excedentes*, biting and gnawing, which the Greeks do call *ἐσθιόμενοι*. He which expoundeth *Auicen* hath called both the kinds *Formicæ*, but he being deceiued with the likenes of the name hath mixed them in the same Chapter by great ouersight, with those *Verrucæ* which the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ*, the Latines *Formicæ*. *Celsus* seemeth to haue comprehended those *Herpetes* vnder the name of *ignis sacer*: but the Chirurgians of later times haue numbred them among the cholericke pustules, as they terme them. There commeth also of choler almost all those diseases called of the Greekes *Phlyctænæ*, and therefore they belong vnto *Erysipelas*, whereof *Auicen* doth intreate in his chap. *De vesicæ inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumours caused of fleame, that is to say, vnto *ædemata*, are referred certain tumors comprehended of the Greeks vnder the name *Apostema*, which be called of *Auicen*, *Nodi*, of *Haly Abbas*, *Selaa*, and *dubeleta phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abscessus*: wherof there be diuers kinds, according to the diuers matters cõtained in them. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three kinds of *Abscessus* chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: those be *Atheromata*, *Stratomata*, *Melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies contained in thẽ, as we wil declare hereafter more at large. There is also a kind of *Apostema*, that is, of *abscessus*, wherein are other things contained, which do represent not onely the properties of humors but also of certain sound bodies: but these (saith *Galen*) chance very seldome, and of these we wil also speak hereafter when we shall intreate of absc̃essions. But now vnto the said kinds of *Abscessus* there appertaine certain names of tumors being deuised of the later sort, and neuer as yet found out amongst ancient writers, as *Testudo*, which is a soft swelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *Talpa*: the one seemeth to belong vnto *Atheroma*, the other vnto *Melicerides*. But vnto *Stratomata* doth belong a certain swelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will speake in his place. Hitherto also do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*, which do differ from the aforesaid *Nodi*. There commeth also of fleame that which the common sort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *ædemata*. These be called of the Greekes *Cherades*, of the Latines, *Strumæ*. Notwithstanding *Galen* in a certaine place

The chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing humours.

What tumors do associate phlegmone.

Erysipelatous tumors.

Aedematous tumores.

Certaine new names of tumors giuen of the latter sort of Phisitions.

Testudo.

Talpa.

Ganglium.

Strumæ.

amongest the diseases named *Scirrhi*, doth take it for *Duricies*. Also vnto *Schema* is referred in *Galen* that kind of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *Leucophlegmatia*, & *hyposarca*. But the swellings or tumors which pertaine vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the said *Schirrus*, are *Cancri*, which of the Greekes be called *Carnici*, and *Carcinomata*: Notwithstanding *Celsus* maketh a difference betweene *Cancer*, and *Carcinoma*, that he might say, that it did come and proceed by litle and litle of those things which do chance outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (some member being corrupted) The same *Celsus* diuided *Cancer* into many parts or kindes, that is to say, into *Erysipelas*, *Gangræna* & *vlcus nigrum*: of this kind also is *Elephantus*, or *Elephantia*, or *Elephantiasis*, called of the common sort of Phisitions *Lepra*, and of some, *sancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *Lepra* signifieth with *Auicen* and with the vnlearned company, a most grieuous & deadly disease, when yet with *Gal. Paul. Aegineta*, & with other Grecians it is counted but a light griefe, not much differing from that which we call *Scabies*, which is called of the same writers *Psora*. Among this hard swelling kinde of tumors, are accounted the diseases called in the Latine tongue of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Verruca*, which be swellings like vnto little hillocks appearing in the skin, whereof they haue this name being called of the common sort *Porra*. To this kind also may be referred *Myrmecia*, as if one should call them *Formicula*, & *Acrocordones*, which of our countrimen are termed *Pensiles verrucæ*, and *Clauus* also, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes ἥλος, of *Auicen* they are called *Almismar*, *Thymion*, or *Thymon*, representing the knobby tops of the hearbe Thime. *Auicen* seemeth also to haue giuen it this name *Tusium*, or (as another translation hath it) *Tarsecum*. Also among the diuers kinds of *Verucæ*, there be euils called of *Auicen Cornua*, so called, because they being very long, are turned againe crooked like vnto hornes. In like case also there be *Calli* which the Greekes call τυλλοί, these are ingendred by means of the skin being obdurated and hardned through much labour. Vnto choler also there seemeth to pertaine this euill, which the Grecians cal *Dracontion*, the Latins, *Dracunculus*: according to the liuely similitude or likenes of that name, *Auicen* calleth it *Vena medem*, *Haly Abbas*, *Vena sanioſa*. Whereof *Paulus Aegineta* intreateth, *cap. vltimo lib.* 4. This disease is not very rife with vs. Besides these tumours which we now haue rehearsed, there chanceth other also, affecting oftentimes the superficiall parts of the body, that is to say, certain smal appearings, which they cal *Pustulæ*, and *Bothor*. Which although they differ both among themselues, and also from those tumours which we haue aboue recited, yet they are caused of the same humors, of the which also they are now called great tumours. Therefore they onely seeme to differ from them in respect of their greatnes and smalnes. But that such little tumours (which truly a Chirurgion ought not to be ignorant of) might appeare most manifest, and easie to be conceiued of euery man, I haue thought inexpedient, and a thing worthy the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue already done in the greater. Therefore, that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kinde of pustules or pushes, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining

Leucopelegmatica.
Scirrhosi tumores.
Cancer.
Carcinoma.
Elephantiasis.
Verrucæ.
Porra.
Myrmecia.
Acrochordones.
Clauus.
Thymion.
Cornua.
Calli.
Dracunculi.
Pustulæ.

the

the ſame title amongſt the Latines, and *Pſora* called of the ſame writer *Scabies*, being truly diſeaſes very neare of affinitie among themſelues: for there is roughneſſe and ſharpeneſſe of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, comming of the ſame humour, that is to ſay, of choler. Notwithſtanding they differ in this, becauſe *Lepra* doth conſume the skinne with manifeſt ſcales ſomewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Pſora* doth onely hurt the outward part with diuerſe formes, and doth vnlooſe a certaine ſcurfe of the body. Hitherto alſo doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines *Impetigo*, in Engliſh the Ringworme, and commonly of ſome (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *Volatica*. This chanceth by reaſon of the mingled putrifaction of wilde bloud being thinne and ſharpe, with other that be thicke: and very often and eaſily it doth turne it ſelfe (*Galen* affirming the ſame) into the aforeſaid euills, that is to ſay, into *Lepra* and *Scabies*, which they call *Pſora*. Yet there are ſome which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of *Celſus*, *Impetigo*. But truly ſeeing he doth write ſpecially of *Impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Libro quinto ſuæ medicinæ*, it is euidently apparent, that he meant ſome other thing by this word *Impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongſt the Greekes, ſeeing that truly we neuer reade in any Greeke Author, that there were ſo many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed of or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with *Galen* ſpeake properly, *Lepra*, and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the ſame euil: otherwiſe the ſame ſhould be changed into it ſelfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into few words: when the skinne is lightly infected, with an onely roughneſſe and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*, But when the griefe waxeth worſe, it changeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cauſe manifeſt ſcales, and doeth pierce the skinne ſomewhat deepely; it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be ſtretched out onely by the outward *Superficies*, and doeth cauſe brannie or ſcalie bodies, it is called *Pſora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *Scabies*. Although this word *Scabies* doth extend very farre commonly alſo among the Phiſitions of late time, who do name all the euill of the skin to be *Scabies*. But they ſpeake very improperly: for the pure and true *Scabies*, ſo called of the Latines, is without all doubt that diſeaſe which is called of the Greekes *Pſora*, of *Auicen* alſo *Albara* and *Morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of ſome. For that which is ſaid of him and almoſt of all the Phiſitions of Africke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of *Celſus* alſo *Leuce*. But amongſt them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greeks *Alphos*, in which diſeaſe the whole fleſh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the body, euen as though (as *Galen* ſaith) it were ſet about with certaine ſcales. But theſe *Alphi* (as it is in *Galen*) in their kinde are of two ſorts, that is to ſay, white, which come of fleame: and blacke, which proceede from a melancholike humour. But theſe things we haue ſpoken of, being led by the conſequence of things. For neither *Leuce* nor *Alphi* themſelues are accounted amongſt the tumors beſides nature, but rather among the euils of the skinne. Which things although they hurt very little, yet becauſe they do diſtoneſt and bring ſhame, they are wont to be for the moſt part a greater heauineſſe

Lepra. *Pſora.* *Lychene.* *Foure kinds of Impetigo.* *Lepra.* *Pſora.* *Scabies.* *Albara.* *Leuce.* *Alphos is of two ſorts.*

and wearineſſe (eſpecially vnto women) then many other diſeaſes which truly do hurt, but yet they be ſecret. Both theſe euils, that is to ſay, *Leuce* and *Alphi*, *Celſus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *Vitiligo* (making three kindes thereof) although other Students of Phiſick, turning Greek into Latin, do conuert *Leuce* in al places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with his Epithet or addition, as to ſay, *Alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therefore, if we wil comprehend it vnder any certain head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habite of ſome part of the body, which could not well receiue any nouriſhment to it ſelfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nouriſhing facultie, whereof ſome do conſtitute two kindes, the one which doth infect the skinne onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue faſt vnto it like vnto little ſcales; the other which goeth in ſomewhat deeper, ſo that it toucheth the very fleſh, and coloureth the haires: for in it there ariſeth gray haires, like vnto a certaine kind of moſineſſe: this is gathered together of viſcous and glutinatiue fleam: but both of them do defile & ſtaine, either with their white, or eſpecially with their black colour. The firſt *ſpecies*, which is aloft and ſuperficiall, whether it be white or blacke, it is called of the Greeks, *Alphis*, by the ſame name, as before, becauſe it changeth the colour of the skinne, for ἀλφίνει (whereof ἀλφὶς is deriued) ſignifieth amongſt the ancient Greekes to change. *Auicen* calleth it *Morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce ſomewhat deeper, is called of the Greekes, and of *Celſus* alſo *Leuce*, and of the reſt of the Latins *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicen*, *Albara*. *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth it *Lepra*, a filthy diſeaſe which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernicious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greeks affirme it) & litle differing from a ſcab: neither (as *Auicen* thought) pernicious and grieuous, but onely lothſome and filthy. Whereby we may coniecture, that little credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnleſſe the matter be throughly diſcouered. For one and the ſelfe-ſame word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vphold many diuerſe and different ſignifications, as in their Commentaries doth euerie where appeare. But we haue ſpoken by the way of the euills and defedations of the skinne, onely that the confuſion of things might be eſchued, which happeneth by words miſ-underſtood. Therefore omitting theſe things, we will returne vnto our purpoſe, and with as much breuity as we can, we will diſpatch the diſcourſe of the reſidue of ſwelling ſores, among which, beſides thoſe which we haue rehearſed and touched alreadie, are reckened by the Greeks, *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hidroa*, *Pſidraces*, *Exanthemata*, *ſeu elſi papulæ*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are little ſwellings, and thoſe hard, which ariſe in the outward skinne and *Superficies* of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a groſſe humour, which are either reſolued, or elſe ripened by a litle matter which ſpringeth with it. The Latines call them *Vari*: *Galen* maketh mention *libro quinto*, *De medicam. ſecundum locos*, of an affect, which he calleth *Ionthoſus affectus*, which he ſaith is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiaſis*, vnder the which diſeaſe he ſeemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celſus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epynictides*, (as *Celſus* ſuppoſeth) are Peſtilent puſhes, eyther of pale colour, or of a blacke colour

Vitiligo.

Small credit to be giuen to wordes or names.

Ionthi.

Epinyctides.

our, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bigneſſe of a beane, ariſing eyther in the legs or in the feet. About them there is alwayes a very vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thick and clammy exulceration within. His colour is like vnto his humor: but the griefe greatly ſurpaſſeth the bigneſſe of the ſore, which in quantitie ſurmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either (as *Celſus* thought) becauſe that in the night time they pricked and moleſted more grieuouſly, or becauſe they moſt cõmonly ariſe in the night. *Pliny* termeth them blewiſh puſhes, diſquieting eſpecially in the night time. The Arabians call them *Eſſere*, *Sere*, or *Saire*, which words explane the forenamed nature of the ſore. Thoſe which are called of the Greeks *Hidroa*, the Latins terme *Sudamina*, & *Plinie Papule ſudorum*, *Auicen*, *Planta noctis*, & *Almanſorus*, & *Albaſaphum*: whereby it cometh to paſſe, that *Epinyctis* doth much differ from *Auicen* his *Planta noctis*, although the Greek word *Epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But theſe *Sudamina*, as *Galen* ſaith, *lib 4. Aph. Apher.* 21. are reckned amongſt thoſe kind of puſhes or whelks, which ſticking in the very *ſuperficies* of the body, do pricke and ſhoot, not vnlike to our common vlcers: and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious ſweats, which bite the skin, & make it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and yong men, and to thoſe which are cholericke, & in the time of heate; but it is ſo eaſie to be cured, that of it ſelfe (without any aide) it will heale, ripening with a white top. But *Auicen* thinkes, that theſe deſudations, by their deſcription, agree rather with *Celſus* his *Exanthemata*, then with *Galen* his *Sudamina*. But he who wil obſerue the nature of the words, will thinke that *Auicen* his deſudations may well be the Greekes *Hidra*, which the Latines call *Sudamina*. But we muſt not follow the names ſo much among the Barbarian and Arabian Writers, but the genuine and ſincere deſcriptions of the things themſelues. *Pſydraces* or *Pſydraica*, are puſhes, which abiding in the very vttermoſt part of the skinne, are reſembled to bladders excited by fire, which are called *Phlyctene*. Theſe riſe ſpecially in the head. *Pſizacion* is not truly read in *Celſus* for *Pſydracion*. Thoſe puſhes which grow in the skinne, firſt comming by thicke humours ſtuffed in the skinne, and are commonly called *Morbilli* and *Variola* of *Galen*, becauſe they ſwell, and waxe big, as it were the bud of a flower, they are called *Exanthemata*; but of *Hippocrates* (becauſe they do breake out of themſelues) they are termed *Ecthymata*. For ἄνθος whereof *Exanthema* is deriued, ſignifieth a flower, and ἐκθύειν (wherof *Ecthyma* commeth) ſignifieth to burſt out. *Pliny* calleth ſuch puſhes, whelks, and the corruptions of flegme. But theſe are of two kinds: for ſome of them are ſteep, and ſome go out into breadth. Thoſe which are ſteep, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch; but thoſe which are broad, do flow, and proceed from a more cold and thicke humour, and do not a whit procure itch. The firſt ſort of the common Phiſitions are knowne by the name *Morbilli*: the ſecond by this name *Variolæ*. But the Frenchmen prepoſterouſly abuſing the names, haue called the low and broad kinde *Rubeole*, but the higher ſort *Variole*. *Hippocrates in libro tertio* Epi. doth diuide theſe kindes of puſhes into little and great *Ecthymata*, in calling the ſteeper kinde *Magni herpetes*, eyther becauſe (as *Galen* ſaith) they occupy a great place, or elſe becauſe they happen with a vehement gnawing.

Why they be called Epinyctides.

Sudamina.

Planta noctis

Deſudationes Auicenæ.

Pſydraces.

Morbilli.

Variolæ.

Exanthemata

Ecthymata.

For indeed these sometimes appeare great in height onely, sometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celsus libr. 5. medicinæ* in his treatise of *Impetigo*, remembreth two kinder of whelkes; the one somewhat small, which if it be daily rubbed with fasting spittle, it waxeth whole: the other somewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more sharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth very vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He saith, that this is termed of the Greekes ἀγρία, in Latine *fera*. But in both these kinds he confesseth, that there is lesse impediment or corruption then in *Impetigo*, so that he affirmeth, that euill, whose cure is hard, except it be taken away, doeth change and turne into *Impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof) do call both these kindes, but specially the first, *Dartræ*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the same manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth slowly. Which whelkes or pushes do agree in all things to be those which are said of *Celsus* to be of the first kinde. Some do constantly affirme, that these whelkes so named of *Celsus*, do nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *Impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that that onely Author among the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papulæ*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vsed of *Plinie*, wherein he seemed in the beginning *libr. 26.* to haue altogether meant another thing from *Impetigo*, and that it was farre away a worse euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Physicke he hath interpreted sometime *Lychene* among the Greekes, to be *Impetigo*, and the like disease called *Mentagra*, he termeth also in the same place *Lychenes*. Furthermore, the same *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept first into Italy in the raigne of *Tiberius Cæsar*, which griefe in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much lesse vnto Italy. It was of so great filthinesse and corruption, that anie death was to be preferred or wished before it, and also of so great infection, that by the swift passage thereof, onelie by kissing one another it infected the people, but chiefly those that were gouernors and rulers among them. This euill beganne almost at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *Mentagra*. This perhappes is that scabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartra*. *Galen* also seemeth to acknowledge this disease: for in his first booke *De medicam. compos. secundum locos*, he remembreth a most vile kind of *Impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearseth out of *Crito*) prouoketh itching, it afflicteth also the patients, and bringeth them into no small danger. For sometime (saith he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eies, and it causeth the greatest deformitie of the bodie almost that can be: which description of *Impetigo*, doth consent in all things with the *Mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this most contagious *Lychene*, called of *Pliny Mentagra*, is that disease which at this day commonly some do call *Gallicum malum*, some *Neapolitanum*, other some not bearing any hate or iniurie to their Countries, do call it *Venereum*. For this infection was altogether vnknowne to the ancient Phisitions, and also of the former age: and first of all it crept into Neapolis, in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. at which time *Charles* the eight, the most inuincible king of France did ouercome and winne the Alpes, going about also to

Papulæ Celsi.

Dartræ Gallicæ.

Mentagra.

Plinie lib. 26.

Galen acknowledgeth Mentagra.

Morbus Neapolitanus, & Venereus.

inuade

inuade Italy, although not long before, it had spread it selfe abroad through the countries of Spaine, as some report. Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it beganne to be called *Hispanica lues*, the Spanish pestilence: which plague being sent vpon the earth, as it were, by the iust reuengement of GOD (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abhominable whoredome forbidden of God, hath corrupted and ouerthrowne with the contagion thereof a great part of humane kind. For the same sickenesse the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage thereof from one to another: and now also it strayeth & wandereth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italy, & all Europe, to the great annoyance of the people. There are also certaine pushes besides these, rehearsed euen now out of *Auicen li.* 4. called *Glandosæ*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *Ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicene libro* 3. of certaine whelks, which he calleth in the same place *bothores iunctiurarum*: and *in libr.* 4. he calleth them *almatim*, which, because he sheweth that they be blacke and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *Terminthi*, which a little before we accounted among the *species* of *Phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face: who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *heleodes*, that is, *vlcerosæ*, full of scabs or sores. These white and milkie pushes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicen*, *leuis bothor*, if their descriptions be throughly considered they will seeme to pertaine vnto the whelks called of the Greeks *Ionthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicene* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephelide*, that is to say, for the roughnesse and swartnesse of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto we haue intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly aboue the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them.

Pustula glandosa.

Terminthi.

Pustula alba.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature, appearing vniuersally on the outside of the bodie.

The causes of tumors besides nature.

THere are two causes of tumors chancing besides nature, agreed of among the latter sort of Physitions and Chirurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the fluxe, which the Greeks call *ῥεῦμα*, and the congestion or heaping together of humors. Againe, by the same Writers there are appoynted to be sixe causes in number of this fluxe, that is to say, 1. the strength of the repulsiue member: 2. the weakenesse of the retentiue: 3. the abundance and plentie of matter: 4. the looseneſse or fulneſse of the pores of the body, through the which the fluxe happeneth: 5. the straightnesse of the repulsiue parts: 6. and the lower situation of the place retayning the fluxe. But these may be reduced vnto foure heads, as vnto the repulsiue member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked

Fluxionis causa.

Pars propellis
Particula excipiens.
Humor fluens.

either by the meanes of the expulsiue member, or because of the fortitude of the expulsiue vertue, or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentiue member, or because of the straitnesse of the particular pores: but some part receiueth the fluxe, because it is either painfull, or hot, or somewhat weake, or seldome, and base, or setled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humor, there is a defluxion or flowing downe into some part of the body, because it is in abundance superfluous, of nature troublesome, and of substance thin. But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe, by reason of the largenesse of the passages, as of the veins, arteries and pores. But of congestion, (which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature) there are assigned two causes, that is to say, the fault of the vertue nutritiue, and the imbecillity of the vertue expulsiue. By which things we gather, that hote tumours happen for the most part through the defluxion of humors, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hote fluxe exciteth the tumour, *Galen* doth declare plainely and wittily, in that little booke which he intituled *Inæqualis intemperies*, writing after this manner: A hote descending of a fluxe (saith he) as soone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the greater arteries and veines are filled and stretched out, then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a fluxe is strongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof issueth out through the extreme parts of them, and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth; and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the best and chiefest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour, do waxe hote in euery place, and also are still powred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh, and besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall, are diuersly and many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly, by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out, and torne and pulled asunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hote, but also are suppressed and made heauy. But the other parts of the body, some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *Phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kinde of tumours chancing besides nature, which are caused of the flowing of humours, something already (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue) is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioyned matter, which hath already flowed, and is compact in the aggrieued place. Hereupon therefore there must be vsed a diligent care of the Physition in such kinds of *Phlegmone* which as yet remain in generation (as in all other tumors also and diseases which are yet in beginning, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen lib. 13. meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreseeth & that which cureth: but these things pertaine to another kind of study. But it is conuenient that we set downe the speciall causes of tumours which are aboue nature, to

Spatium.

Causes of congestion.

How a hote defluxion prouoketh a tumour.

There is a twofold declaration of all those euills which are yet in begetting.

the

the which theſe three are commonly appointed: Primitiue cauſes, which we call both *Pregreſſæ* and *Euidentes*; and cauſes antecedent, which we name *Antecedentes*: and ioined cauſes, which we terme *Coniunctæ* or *Continẽtes*. Theſe be called of the Greekes προκαταρκτικαὶ, προηγούμεναι, συνεκτικαί. The primitiue cauſes are ſaid to be theſe, which while they do worke any diſeaſe, are ſeparated, as a fall, a ſtripe, a blow, a bruiſe, a tumor, or a ſolutiõ, or that euil which is cõmitted by admitting a diſſolute diet. Antecedent cauſes, are thoſe which of themſelues are fit and materiall to beget any diſeaſe or affect, as are foure humours both naturall, and not naturall. Naturall humours are thoſe which ſerue to nouriſh the body, and haue their being with the bloud, and are comprehended vnder the name of bloud. Which if they be ſent out from the veins and arteries, they do ſuddenly congeale and gather together, whether they flow without the body, or do remaine ſtil in the place wherein they be contained. But they call thoſe vnnaturall humours, which are found ſeuered from the bloud, with the which the body is nouriſhed; and by reaſon of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do ſomtime grow, although they remaine in the aire which compaſſeth vs. And theſe, as it were, by a certaine kind of prouidence of nature, being deſtined and ordained for ſome vſe, are demitted and ſent into certaine receptacles, either into the vttermoſt parts of the body, and ſo ingender vnkind ſwellings, called *Abſceſſus*, or whelkes, ſcabbes, defedations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall ſweats: or ſometime by an inſenſible aire inwardly infuſed they do excite ſweatings. Sometime alſo they putrifie within, and beget Feauers. But ſuch like (ſay they) are improperly termed humours, aſſuming to themſelues the names of naturall humors. For they hold this opinion, that onely thoſe iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of bloud, and of nutrition and moiſture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are ſincere and pure bloud, cholericke alſo, flegmaticke and melancholicke: by the which foure kindes, all the parts of the body are generally nouriſhed and maintained: ſome parts with a more pure, and (as I may ſay) a more bloudy humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholicke, as the nature of euery part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veines and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and conſiſtencie (as *Galen* hath expreſſed *in libro de atra bile.*) Furthermore, of thoſe foure humours which are called naturall, foure eſpeciall Tumours are ingendred, which are commonly called *Apoſtemata*. In the which the ſwelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *phlegmone, eryſipelas, œdema, ſcirrhus*. Of humours not naturall (as it pleaſeth the latter Phyſitions) do proceed *Abſceſſus*, which they alſo call *Exitura* and *Puſtulæ*, which they thinke cannot well be called Apoſtemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kindes alſo, flatuous and watery, which proceed of a fluible ſubſtance, and are commonly called *apoſtemata ventoſa & aqueſa*, that is, windie and wateriſh apoſtemes. There be therefore ſix titles attributed vnto ſimple tumors, that is, *phlegmonoſi, eriſypelatoſi, œdematoſi, ſcirrhoſi, flatuoſi, & aqueſi*. But the compound tumours are not called according to the concourſe of humors,

Speciall cauſes of tumours aboue nature.

Pregreſſæ. Antecedentes. Which are ſaid to be naturall humours.

Which are ſaid to be vnnaturall.

What iuyces are properly termed naturall humours.

Of the foure naturall humours are ingendred foure lawfull and eſpeciall tumours.

What tumors do come of vnnaturall humours.

(because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humour, especially as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniuncte causæ* or *continentes* of those tumors besides nature, which they commonly call *apostemata, pustulæ*, and *exituræ*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumors also do greatly augment; and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished: and when their substance is vtterly spent and extinguished, the Tumours also of themselues do fall away. And this cause, called *coniuncta* or *continens causa*, of all the maladies and sundrie dispositions of the bodie, is after this manner by *Auicen* defined, that when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanies him; and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanisheth. But for all this, some Physitions of our age, and those very well learned, do contend that *Galen* would admit but two causes, that is to say, an externall and an internall: or as they say now, a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which, that (he saith) doth happen to the body outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated, vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the biting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the body, and doth presently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that, which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and dueties of the bodie, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie: and that *coniuncta causa*, which *Auicen* and his Sect haue inuented, according to their owne description, which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kinde of affect letting the execution of those ducties pertaining to the bodie, which is the verie definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue, that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to preiudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one and the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this latter age, concerning this triple kinde of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this Treatise of mine, for plainenesse sake, shal diuide & distinguish these three causes, into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primitiua, antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumours happening besides nature. Now the course of our Treatise doth exact that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before, we shall intreate somewhat of the nature and generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks ἀπόστημα, and of the common Physitions *exituræ*, are called of *Galen* (*libro de tumoribus præter naturam, & secundo ad Glauconem*) dispositions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumours, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith *Galen*, there must of necessitie be a place voide in the middest, which borroweth either some flatuous, moist, or tempered, or mixed substance from the parts, which in length of time is altered into many

Coniuncta causa tumorum præter naturã

What it is which is called continens causa.

Some thinke that coniuncta causa nothing differeth from the maladie it selfe.

What abscessus Galen thinketh to be.

and

and ſundry circumſtances. But there is a double kind of theſe *abſceſſus*: one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it ſelfe is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before a certaine humour, either vaporous, or elſe a ſubſtance mixed of both parts, is in ſome part collected together, which alſo happeneth two wayes: for either in the ſpace lying betweene the ſeuered parts, ſuch like ſubſtance is ingendred, or elſe it runneth into the parts themſelues, and that either in the beginning, or elſe that way by the which thoſe diſeaſes happen, called ἀνοικείματα which (ſaith *Galen*) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infeſted and grieued ſome one part, do thence remoue, and are enforced into another. And this ſubſtance which begetteth this *abſceſſus*, worketh himſelfe a place betweene the skinne and the fleſh. And in time it doth fley off all the skinne, eyther becauſe it is very vehement, or elſe becauſe the plenty of matter doth putrifie, and ſo breake the skin. But if thoſe humors, with the which the ſpace ſituated betweene the ſeuered parts is filled, do continue any time, they haue (as I ſaid before) many alterations, and are changed into many ſubſtances, which do repreſent the properties not onely of humors, but euen of ſolide and hard bodies. For you ſhall find ſundry matters within theſe ſpaces, ſome like vnto ſtones, ſome to grauell and ſand, ſome to wood, ſome to coles, ſome to dirt, ſome to the foam of oiles, ſome to the dregs of wine: the varietie of ſubſtances ſome ignorant men haue thought to proceed from the force of incantation.

Two kinds of abſceſſus, Gal. lib. 14. Therap. meth. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem

ἀνοικείματα

What things may be found in abſceſſus.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the ſignes of tumours beſides nature generally appearing, together with the iudgements thereof.

TVmours beſides nature, being reſiant in the extremeſt parts of the bodie (the examining and ſpeculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chirurgion) being ſurueyed by the iudgement of the ſenſes, and the affected parts being touched and felt with the hands, are eaſily deſcried and knowne. For in euery part of the body, there appeareth a certaine kind of increaſing exceeding the naturall ſtate, and diſtending aboue the meaſure of nature, that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the duties or actions thereof, becauſe either ſome humour, or ſome ſuch ſubſtance proceeding of the humour, or which do ſauour ſomewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporous ſpirit hath excited it, there alſo muſt needs happen a tumor beſides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apoſtemes, are diſcerned by their ſwelling, by their paine, and by their heate, being ſtretched out more or leſſe. But they are not counted to be true Apoſtemes indeed, which we haue termed *puſtulæ* and *abſceſſus*, beſides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, and alſo in the greater or leſſer ſequeſtration, *determinata*. But the ſignes of euery particular difference, and of their matter whereof they be ingendred, ſhall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the ſimple differences of thoſe tumors which are aboue nature, by the which the compound differences ſhall alſo be eaſily knowne. But we muſt not

General ſignes of tumors aboue nature.

Particular ſignes.

come vnto particular things, before we haue throughly discourſed of vniuerſall, for that order is wont to be obſerued in the inſtitutions of the Arts, neyther truly vnworthily, or without cauſe. For thoſe vniuerſall and common things are more manifeſted vnto vs then particular, becauſe theſe particular things are more confuſed and more mixed one with another, as *Ariſtotle* teacheth *lib.* 1. *Phyſicorum, ca.* 1. Let no man therfore maruell, though euery where in this treatiſe of Chirurgery, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of thoſe which comprehend many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpoſe, and let vs proſecute the iudgements of tumors conſiſting aboue nature.

1 *Iudicia.* In the which firſt of all we muſt note, that all thoſe tumors which they call true Apoſtemes, (if we will credit *Galen* and *Auicen*) are greatly complicate and folded together, neyther can any of them be eaſily iudged or found out to be pure and ſincere: for (as *Galen* ſaith) with *Phlegmone*, that is, with an inflammation coming of bloud, there is ſomething chiefly mingled which doth preſerue the nature either of *Eryſipelas*, or *œdema*, or *ſcirrhus*: but chiefly *Eryſipelas* becauſe it repreſenteth a kind of *Phlegmone*, or *Aedema*, or *Scirrhus*: and ſo conſider and mark in all the reſt of the tumors. But truly thoſe tumors beſides nature, which they terme not true Apoſtemes, are very often found ſincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of ſimple and ſincere tumors in thoſe things which follow, by the which the remedies alſo of compound and intricate tumors ſhall manifeſtly appeare. For I thinke it good to diſcourſe of all the kinds of tumors, and alſo to diſpoſe aright that which ſhall ſeeme ſuperfluous. For if a man ſhall know all the ſimple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded together, he ſhall be furniſhed ſufficiently to exercile himſelfe particularly in the reſt. But now let vs ſee other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumors themſelues. *Periodi, paroxiſmi*, and the criſes of tumors beſides nature, do follow the analogie of the humours whereof they be conflated or ingendred, (*Guido* affirming the ſame) which analogie, we heere declare to be a property or proportion, a nature or a likeneſſe of ſubſtance, which they call *forma ſpecifica & occulta*, a ſpeciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumors, eſpecially they which be wholeſome, and which are cauſed of the flowing of humours, are diſtinguiſhed by foure times, that is to ſay, by their beginning, by their increaſing, by their ſtate, and by their declination. The ſigne of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be ſtretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is preſent, but yet with ſmall griefe. We may alſo iudge augmentation to be preſent, when we ſee the tumor to be raiſed like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the ſymptomates which are wont to follow euery tumour, to be manifeſtly increaſed. But the tokens of their ſtate is, when all the aforeſaid things, that is to ſay, the tumour, and the ſymptomates of the differences of euerie tumour hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increaſing, but the matter cauſing the tumour doth degenerate and change it ſelfe into another kinde of ſubſtance. But their declination is then knowne to be preſent, when the pile of the tumour and the proper ſymptomates thereof are decreaſed and diminiſhed, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another ſubſtance. Therefore ſuch

Libr. de differ. morborum.

Foure kindes of tumors beſides nature.

1 *Principium.*

2 *Augmentum.*

3 *Status*

4 *Declinatio.*

kind

kinde of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially, that is to say, from the essence of the tumor it selfe, that is, from the greatnesse or smalnesse, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents, which do very much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, somtime do seeme to happen all together, because of the short hardnesse of euerie one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kinde of tumours, which do chiefly happen thorow the influxion of humours, except they be hindered by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, eyther of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause, (the fluxe having recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrifaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best, and the most to be desired, is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all the which *Galen* doth insinuate *in libro de inaequali intemperie*, writing on this manner: Therefore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified and corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must graunt that this putrifaction being resisted and ouercome, the muscle must returne to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therefore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, eyther by digesting those humours which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or loosening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humours, these two things are specially required, viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it selfe. And a little beneath he addeth also these wordes. But if that fluxion do make the parts as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinarie action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted and putrified. Thus farre *Galen*. The tokens of dissolution and loosening of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the little throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, and of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the blacke and blew colour, to which also somerime happeneth an odious stinch. But the tokens of a stony hardnesse of the tumor are, the immiution of the tumor, and also the extreame hardnesse thereof. The notes and signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumor, are, the sodaine diminution thereof, which chanceth sometime by too much refrigeration and coldnesse, sometime by reason of a secret venime, which lurketh in the place. And this same sodaine and often imminution of the tumour succeedeth commonly some feauer, and also other euill symptomates. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of those tumours which our common Phisitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*. The tokens also of those tumours which we call *Pustula*, shall not be forgotten, when we shall haue occasion to handle

The times of tumors do take their difference from three things chiefly.

Tumors about nature are contained vnder foure moodes.

Gal. lib. de inaequali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrifaction.

Signes of induration.

Signes of the regression and lurking of a tumor.

handle them. But the signes and tokens of the abscesses, commonly called *Indicia*, either those which foreshew their coming, or else those which do manifest their presence already, are these. When thou seest (saith *Auicen*) pulsation and beating, or hardnesse to haue continued a great time, and also that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth, is, that the Apostеme will be turned into matter and suppuration, and so consequently to be an abscession. But when thou findest that the place is soft, and that the griefe is somewhat asswaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumor is supereminent aboue the rest; and againe if by thrusting it with your finger, you shall perceiue a waterish inundation to subsist; and againe that the colour of his top shall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and also that it is turned into abscession. And therefore it was well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that Feauers did oftner happen when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was alreadie come to his maturitie. Moreouer, the markes and tokens as well of the present abscession, as also of the abscession to come, are comprehended in these common verses,

Signes of abscession to come.

Signes of abscession already present.

Apho. 47 li. 2.

Durities longa, pulsus, dolor, & calor auctí,
Signant pus fieri: sed factum, dicta remissa,
Sub digitis vndans, albescens pars & acuta,

Which may be thus Englished,

By hardnesse long, by pulse and griefe, and eke by heate increasd,
We know that matter doth approch but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeeld to fingers weight, and whitenesse doth appeare,
——— and painfull be also.

But you must be very attentiue and vigilant in discerning and iudging of the matter it selfe. For the manifest knowledge of the matter and suppuration is sometime withholden from the Phisition, by reason of the thicknesse of the skinne in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphorisme of *Hippocrates*:) Whosoeuer is ignorant of the suppuration which is in the body, his ignorance proceedeth of the thickenesse of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the signes of abscessions. Now of the iudgements of them, these things are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicen* and his Sect. Abscessions which are planted neare vnto any strong member or vnto any iuncture or ioynt, and in those places where there are most veines and sinewes; and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heate, being indurate also and couered with a thicke skin, containing also thicke matter, and so the more slow in motion, the outward place being plaine also, and euen, not ascending like a little hillocke, I say, such a like sore is greatly suspected; and verie hardly and slowly ripened: and such a one as is euerie way by description opposite and contrary to this, is of good and laudable habite; for both soone and easily it mattereth, and oftentimes also (no outward medicine aiding or assisting) of it selfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abscession do grow vp into a sharpenesse, and the substance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thrust foorth the conceiued humour without

Apho. 41. li. 6.

Iudicia abscessuum.

What abscessions may easily be digested.

any

any forreine aide, vnleſſe a man by making inciſion will anteuert and preuent his voluntary opening. Such like abſceſſions are digeſted ſometime by breathing or wind (no ſolution being made ſubiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is ſmall in quantity, good and thin, and not ſticking very deep. But if there be any emiſſarie or way made into the tumour, either by Nature or by Art, the humor conceiued within doth breake foorth oftener then digeſt. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale ſafer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be ſo, that it muſt be mollified by Art, you ſhall ſafelier do it by a ſharpe pen-knife or other cleare and bright inſtrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *Rupt. rium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I ſaid) euery apertion which is made & enforced by Art, is worſe then that which Nature affordeth of it ſelfe, becauſe ſuch like manuall openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fiſtula*. But when neceſſitie vrgeth, and when we cannot vſe a better remedy, we muſt boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you ſhall eſchue thoſe diſcommodities, which before I named, if (when the matter ſo requireth) you do ſeaſonably make apertion, and by that meanes haſten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his laſt Oracle of his firſt booke of Prædictions hath expreſſed the very notes and markes of the worſt matter, and of the beſt, ſpeaking after this maner: That matter is eſteemed beſt, which is of colour white, and euery way like it ſelfe, and ſoft and gentle to the toucher, and as little vnpleaſant to the noſe as may be. And that which is euery way contrary to this is the worſt of all. But the tokens & ſignes of all the other humours and ſolide ſubſtance alſo which are included in theſe abſceſſions, ſhall be manifeſted and ſhewed in their particular chapters, as they ſhall by conſequence and order enſue.

What abſceſſions may ſoonneſt be ended through reſolution.

Abſceſſions are ſafelier opened with a penknife then with rupterium medicamentum.

The notes of the beſt and worſt matter out of Hippocrates.

CHAP. V.

Of the generall method of curing all tumors beſides nature, but of thoſe eſpecially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apoſtemes, and Abſceſſions, commonly called Exitura.

OF all tumors aboue nature, as well thoſe which are already ingendred, as thoſe which are not yet in generation, there is one common and principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen libr.* 13 and 14. *Method med.*) namely that that which is aboue nature reſident in any member, and raiſeth the ſame into a tumour, ſhould altogether be emptied out. But thoſe which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obſtruction of the humour that floweth to the aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and ſingular care of the Phiſition, to declare the cure of them. But theſe common manifeſtations, according to the difference of the tumour it ſelfe, and the nature of the affected member, do very much differ and alter. For truely in all tumours alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth and infeſteth, is in no caſe to be vſed and miniſtred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro ſecundo ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which alſo ſhall manifeſtly appeare in that which followeth.

The common order of curing of tumours.

The common method of curing of tumors doth change according to the difference of the tumour, and the member affected.

handle them. But the signes and tokens of the abscesses, commonly called *Indicia*, either those which foreshew their coming, or else those which do manifest their presence already, are these. When thou seest (saith *Auicen*) pulsation and beating, or hardnesse to haue continued a great time, and also that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth, is, that the Apostеme will be turned into matter and suppuration, and so consequently to be an abscession. But when thou findest that the place is soft, and that the griefe is somewhat asswaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumor is supereminent aboue the rest; and againe if by thrusting it with your finger, you shall perceiue a wateriſh inundation to subsist; and againe that the colour of his top shall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and also that it is turned into abscession. And therefore it was well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that Feauers did oftner happen when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was alreadie come to his maturitie. Moreouer, the markes and tokens as well of the present abscession, as also of the abscession to come, are comprehended in these common verses,

Signes of abscession to come.

Signes of abscession already present.

Apho. 47 li. 2.

Durities longa, pulsus, dolor, & calor auctі,
Signant pus fieri: sed factum, dicta remissa,
Sub digitis vndans, albescens pars & acuta,

Which may be thus Englished,

By hardnesse long, by pulse and griefe, and eke by heate increald,
We know that matter doth approch but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeeld to fingers weight, and whitenesse doth appeare,
——— and painfull be also.

But you must be very attentiue and vigilant in discerning and iudging of the matter itselfe. For the manifest knowledge of the matter and suppuration is sometime withholden from the Phisition, by reason of the thicknesse of the skinne in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphorisme of *Hippocrates*:) Whosoeuer is ignorant of the suppuration which is in the body, his ignorance proceedeth of the thickenesse of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the signes of abscessions. Now of the iudgements of them, these things are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicen* and his Sect. Abscessions which are planted neare vnto any strong member or vnto any iuncture or ioynt, and in those places where there are most veines and sinewes; and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heate, being indurate also and couered with a thicke skin, containing also thicke matter, and so the more slow in motion, the outward place being plaine also, and euen, not ascending like a little hillocke, I say, such a like sore is greatly suspected; and verie hardly and slowly ripened: and such a one as is euerie way by description opposite and contrary to this, is of good and laudable habite; for both soone and easily it mattereth, and oftentimes also (no outward medicine aiding or assisting) of it selfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abscession do grow vp into a sharpenesse, and the substance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thrust foorth the conceiued humour without

Apho. 41. li. 6.

Iudicia abscessuum.

What abscessions may easily be digested.

any

any forreine aide, vnleſſe a man by making inciſion will anteuert and preuent his voluntary opening. Such like abſceſſions are digeſted ſometime by breathing or wind (no ſolution being made ſubiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is ſmall in quantity, good and thin, and not ſticking very deep. But if there be any emiſſarie or way made into the tumour, either by Nature or by Art, the humor conceiued within doth breake foorth oftener then digeſt. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale ſafer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be ſo, that it muſt be mollified by Art, you ſhall ſafelier do it by a ſharpe pen-knife or other cleare and bright inſtrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *Rupterium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I ſaid) euery apertion which is made & enforced by Art, is worſe then that which Nature affordeth of it ſelfe, becauſe ſuch like manuall openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fiſtula*. But when neceſſitie vrgeth, and when we cannot vſe a better remedy, we muſt boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you ſhall eſchue thoſe diſcommodities, which before I named, if (when the matter ſo requireth) you do ſeaſonably make apertion, and by that meanes haſten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his laſt Oracle of his firſt booke of Prædictions hath expreſſed the very notes and markes of the worſt matter, and of the beſt, ſpeaking after this maner: That matter is eſteemed beſt, which is of colour white, and euery way like it ſelfe, and ſoft and gentle to the toucher, and as little vnpleaſant to the noſe as may be. And that which is euery way contrary to this is the worſt of all. But the tokens & ſignes of all the other humours and ſolide ſubſtance alſo which are included in theſe abſceſſions, ſhall be manifeſted and ſhewed in their particular chapters, as they ſhall by conſequence and order enſue.

What abſceſſions may ſooneſt be ended through reſolution.

Abſceſſions are ſafelier opened with a penknife then with rupterium medicamentum.

The notes of the beſt and worſt matter out of Hippocrates.

CHAP. V.

¶ Of the generall method of curing all tumors beſides nature, but of thoſe eſpecially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apoſtemes, and Abſceſſions, commonly called Exituræ.

OF all tumors aboue nature, as well thoſe which are already ingendred, as thoſe which are not yet in generation, there is one common and principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen libr.* 13 and 14. *Method med.*) namely that that which is aboue nature reſident in any member, and raiſeth the ſame into a tumour, ſhould altogether be emptied out. But thoſe which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obſtruction of the humour that floweth to the aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and ſingular care of the Phiſition, to declare the cure of them. But theſe common manifeſtations, according to the difference of the tumour it ſelfe, and the nature of the affected member, do very much differ and alter. For truely in all tumours alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth and infeſteth, is in no caſe to be vſed and miniſtred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro ſecundo ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which alſo ſhall manifeſtly appeare in that which followeth.

The common order of curing of tumours.

The common method of curing of tumors doth change according to the difference of the tumour, and the member affected.

But we muſt not cure thoſe tumors with ſuch remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vſe ſometime one remedie, ſometime another, which is of force to ſtop the fluxe, and auoyd out that which is ingendred, ſo farre forth as the kinde of the tumor, and the nature of the affected member doth require.

The order of curing of tumors is chiefly taken from two things.

Galen therefore chiefly draweth the demonſtrations of the cure of tumours aboue nature from theſe two things, viz. from the diſpoſition it ſelfe or eſſence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the diſpoſition of the euill (which we haue now in hand) or the eſſence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and conſent of the later ſort, that is, the quantity, the quality, & the matter or ſubſtance which prouoketh the tumour. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken alſo the particular order of curing. For a great tumor is cured one way, and a ſmall tumour another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatneſſe and ſmalneſſe (as ſome ſuppoſe.) And one way is a mighty *Phlegmone*, and another way a litle *Herpes* healed. Otherwiſe alſo is that tumour remedied, which is cauſed by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congeſtion, or is alreadie ingendred and congealed. Alſo a hote tumour, as *Eryſipelas*, is otherwiſe cured then a cold, as is *adema* and *Scirrhus*.

The eſſence of a tumor doth containe three things in it.

The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or ſmall. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as ſome terme it) the deriuation and congeſtion. The matter thereof is the humour, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be conſidered, viz. their temperature, their forme or faſhion, their ſituation or place, and their power and ſtrength. To the which alſo may be added a fifth thing, which is, the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficulty of the ſenſes. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the laſt thing, which is the vertue and ſtrength of the tumor. Theſe things therefore alſo do much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obſerued throughout all kinde of tumours aboue nature. It is therefore requiſite, that in curing thoſe tumours which chance beſides nature, we remember all thoſe declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmone*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleſhie parts of the body, is otherwiſe cured then thoſe which are ſituated in the ſinewy places: otherwiſe in the eye, then in the knee or necke: and otherwiſe are the kernels in the throate cured, then thoſe which are reſident in other parts of the body. But to be ſhort, the temperature, the faſhion, the ſituation and the ſtrength of the member that is affected and beſet with the tumour, do change all thoſe operations, which we ſhall attempt and proue in their cure: retaining ſtill that generall inuention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwayes taken from the diſeaſe. Therefore firſt we haue here decreed to ſet downe a common & generall method of curing of tumors aboue nature, eſpecially of thoſe which are cauſed through the influxion of humours, taking their manifeſtation from the affect or euill it ſelfe, nothing reſpecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuerſall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, when as they

Foure things to be conſidered chiefly in the nature of affected members.

Libr. 2. ad Glauconem.

The order of handling that which follows.

ſhall

ſhall degenerate and change into abſceſſions. Then moreouer, we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, eſpecially of thoſe which be ſimple, by whoſe proportion or analogie, the cure of compound tumours ſhall eaſily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place ſhall require, we will rehearſe out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their aſſumption from the parts which are affected, and as it were beſieged with a tumor: which things being rightly weighed and conſidered, it ſhall be eaſie for any reaſonable Phyſition or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kinde of tumours which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumours which are ſaid to be aboue nature, from the flowing of ingendred humours, and from the inuention of the cauſe of the verie euill, that ſo both the cauſes which excite the ſame, may be preuented, & that which is alreadie in it may be taken away. Therefore by example and analogie of one difference of tumours which are cauſed through defluxion (for here we minde to intreate onely of them) we will vnderſtand alſo other differences, which do grow through flowing of humours. And here we will ſet downe a briefe and compendious curing of one kinde of *Phlegmone*, which chanceth very often, and procureth feuers and other very dangerous euils and ſymptomates. But in this place vnder the name of *Phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euerie hote and flaming diſpoſition which the Greekes call *phlogoſis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloudy fluxe, chiefly incident to fleſhie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine and redneſſe appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heate, a ſtretching out, and a ſtriuing or thruſting, and when the euill is increaſed, there is ſence of the pulſes beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* and other Greeke Writers, as *Paulus Aetius*, and *Oribaſius*, which do follow him as their beſt guide, we properly call *Phlegmone*. That we may therefore come to the matter it ſelfe, theſe are the verie words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euery *Phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (ſometime one or other member ſending it foorth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which begionneth to be affected with *Phlegmone*: but ſometime that member which is afflicted doth draw it to it ſelfe. But the parts which ſend it foorth do driue out the iuyce, being eyther ſuperfluous by reaſon of the plentie thereof, or grieuous becauſe of the qualitie, or elſe becauſe of both. But they which are attractiue, doe draw or pull with a ſickely heate or griefe. But to theſe are adioyned certaine helping cauſes, viz. the weakeneſſe and baſeneſſe of the member, the fulneſſe of the conduits and paſſages through which the fluxe paſſeth, the ſtraitneſſe alſo and narrowneſſe of the pores and expulſiue parts, and the inferiour places, as we haue alreadie declared. Therefore of all theſe, there are three inuentions of curing thoſe tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter ſort of Chirurgians. 1. The firſt is to turne away the fluxe, and preuent it altogether. 2. The ſecond is to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that cauſe, for the which the member entertayneth or alſo draweth the fluxe vnto it. 3. The

The finding out of the cauſe is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Gal. lib. 13. Meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery Phlegmone.

The helping cauſes of fluxe.

Three orders are ſet downe for the cure of thoſe tumours which are cauſed through the influxion of humours.

But we must not cure those tumors with such remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vse sometime one remedie, sometime another, which is of force to stop the fluxe, and auoyd out that which is ingendred, so farre forth as the kinde of the tumor, and the nature of the affected member doth require. *Galen* therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumours aboue nature from these two things, viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the disposition of the euill (which we haue now in hand) or the essence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the later sort, that is, the quantity, the quality, & the matter or substance which prouoketh the tumour. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a great tumor is cured one way, and a small tumour another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose.) And one way is a mighty *Phlegmone*, and another way a litle *Herpes* healed. Otherwise also is that tumour remedied, which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congestion, or is alreadie ingendred and congealed. Also a hote tumour, as *Erysipelas*, is otherwise cured then a cold, as is *adema* and *Scirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter thereof is the humour, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be considered, viz. their temperature, their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength. To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is, the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficulty of the senses. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tumor. These things therefore also do much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obserued throughout all kinde of tumours aboue nature. It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumours which chance besides nature, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmone*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the body, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinewy places: otherwise in the eye, then in the knee or necke: and otherwise are the kernels in the throate cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body. But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation and the strength of the member that is affected and beset with the tumour, do change all those operations, which we shall attempt and proue in their cure: retaining still that generall inuention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwayes taken from the disease. Therefore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common & generall method of curing of tumors aboue nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humours, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, when as they shall

The order of curing of tumors is chiefly taken from two things.

The essence of a tumor doth containe three things in it.

Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members.

Libr. 2. ad Glauconem.

The order of handling that which follows.

ſhall degenerate and change into abſceſſions. Then moreouer, we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, eſpecially of thoſe which be ſimple, by whoſe proportion or analogie, the cure of compound tumours ſhall eaſily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place ſhall require, we will rehearſe out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their aſſumption from the parts which are affected, and as it were beſieged with a tumor: which things being tightly weighed and conſidered, it ſhall be eaſie for any reaſonable Phyſition or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kinde of tumours which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumours which are ſaid to be aboue nature, from the flowing of ingendred humours, and from the inuention of the cauſe of the verie euill, that ſo both the cauſes which excite the ſame, may be preuented, & that which is alreadie in it may be taken away. Therefore by example and analogie of one difference of tumours which are cauſed through defluxion (for here we minde to intreate onely of them) we will vnderſtand alſo other differences, which do grow through flowing of humours. And here we will ſet downe a briefe and compendious curing of one kinde of *Phlegmone*, which chanceth very often, and procureth feuers and other very dangerous euils and ſymptomates. But in this place vnder the name of *Phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euerie hote and flaming diſpoſition which the Greekes call *phlogoſis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloudy fluxe, chiefly incident to fleſhie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine and redneſſe appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heate, a ſtretching out, and a ſtriuing or thruſting, and when the euill is increaſed, there is ſence of the pulſes beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* and other Greeke Writers, as *Paulus Aetius*, and *Oribaſius*, which do follow him as their beſt guide, we properly call *Phlegmone*. That we may therefore come to the matter it ſelfe, theſe are the verie words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euery *Phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (ſometime one or other member ſending it foorth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which begioneth to be affected with *Phlegmone*: but ſometime that member which is afflicted doth draw it to it ſelfe. But the parts which ſend it foorth do driue out the iuyce, being eyther ſuperfluous by reaſon of the plentie thereof, or grieuous becauſe of the qualitie, or elſe becauſe of both. But they which are attractiue, doe draw or pull with a fickely heate or griefe. But to theſe are adioyned certaine helping cauſes, viz. the weakeneſſe and baſeneſſe of the member, the fulneſſe of the conduits and paſſages through which the fluxe paſſeth, the ſtraitneſſe alſo and narrowneſſe of the pores and expulſiue parts, and the inferiour places, as we haue alreadie declared. Therefore of all theſe, there are three inuentions of curing thoſe tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter ſort of Chirurgians. 1. The firſt is to turne away the fluxe, and preuent it altogether. 2. The ſecond is to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that cauſe, for the which the member entertayneth or alſo draweth the fluxe vnto it. 3. The

The finding out of the cauſe is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Gal. lib. 13. Meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery Phlegmone.

The helping cauſes of fluxe.

Three orders are ſet downe for the cure of thoſe tumours which are cauſed through the influxion of humours.

third is, to emptie out all that humour that hath flowed in the aggrieued place.

Primus scopus. But how the first intention should be finished, *Galen* hath fitly taught, *lib. 3. Meth. med.* where he declareth vnto vs all the waies to auert and turne away the fluxe, and the meanes to stop and inhibite *Phlegmone* which as yet remaineth in generation, writing after this manner: When humors are equally augmented amongst themselues (which the Greekes call *Plethora*) yea also when all the body is voide of excrements, and doth containe a mediocritie of iuicie humors, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *Phlegmone* raigneth raising the fluxe) through the emission of blond we helpe and remedie *Phlegmone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often bathings and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Furthermore it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feuer be not present, and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although the sicke be feuerous. But when the body is stuffed either with melancholie, or choler, or fleame, or with other clammie and viscous humours (which state of the bodie the Greekes call *Cacochymia*) the euacuation thereof must be laboured by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humour that raigneth. But of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Antispasis*, that is, a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all these kinds of tumors, while the fluxe doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the beginning and increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, and in the declination therof, while the fluxe now remaineth and sticketh in the member, and the whole bodie is sufficiently emptied, the euacuation must be attempted, and fetched either from the affected part, or from that which is next adioyned thereunto. The second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe. viz. which do mitigate paine, and also binde and preuent the fluxe. Moreouer it teacheth remedies which are able to loosen and dissolue the naturall pores, by the which the affected member is wont to be throughly purged. But the matter of all these shall be abundantly described hereafter. Now we will handle the third intention, which is perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumors from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines which do euaporate and dissolue, but also by such as do repell and represse, such as the Greeks call ἀναπτυσμα. And therefore, in the beginning of these phlegmonous tumors, and other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influxion of humours, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do euaporate: except in certaine cases, of the which (saith *Guido*) *Galen* seemed to haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, when that such tumors be in cleane and pure members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third is, when the matter is thicke, and not pliable to repulsion. 4. The fourth, when it is very vehemently packed together. *Auicen* excepteth onely two cases, viz. when it happeneth in any cleane or pure part, or in any other place, out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one case, other sixe, other ten, other nineteene, other twenty three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a case, we must know that

Plethora quid.

Cacochymia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.

there

there be two kinds of repulsiues, both amongst the late Physitions and also the Arabians, that is to say, common, and proper. Common repulsiues are such as do inhibite all fluxe, keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it, that is, by reason of the thicknesse of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores & wayes whereby it should flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do represse fluxe by refrigeration and cold, Syngreen, Lettuce, *Psillium*, *Cotiledon*, that is to say, *Vmbilicus Veneris*, *Lenticula palustris*, *Caphura*. And these also do stuffe & stop the passages, *Farina* called *Volatilis*, the white of an eg, *Amylum*, *Gluten*, and the kinds of gums: to conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without biting. But those things which do confirme and roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oyle of Roses, *oleum Omphacinum*, ole of Mirtles, oile of Cammomil, *Absynthium*, Horehound, *Nux cupressi*, & such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, & so do free it and defend it from all imminent fluxe But proper repulsiues are such as when the humors do slide into some other part, do meete with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applyed to thin tumors. Of these manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of a hote, but both sorts, that is, both hot and cold, are in operation astringent, and binding. The medicines repressing, which of nature are cold, are Vine leaues, Plantaine, Nightshade, *Dipsacos* viz. *Virga pastoris*, or *Bursa pastoris*, *Glaucium*, *Balaustium*, *Omphacium*, *Sumach*, *Terra cimolia*, commonly so called, and *Terra sigillata*, and others of that kinde. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *Oxycratum*, the oyntment of Bole, the oyntment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hote repulsiues are, Alume, Cypresse nuts called *Galbula*, *Iuncus rotundus*, or *Odoratus*, called of the Grecians χύπερος, called also *Blatta bizantia*, *Lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other such like things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxion, prescribed by *Guido* in two seuerall Prologues. In the beginning of all tumours, which proceed from the influxe of humors, but specially of such humors as are phlegmonous it will be auaileable to vse repulsiues, as they are called, these ten cases onely excepted, that is to say, when the tumour is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venimour matter, or a substance which is very thicke, and so vnfit to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also; if the tumour be inclined to suppuration, or descending from a primitiue cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie, and verie weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe: for in these cases, we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine, rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner: In the beginning of all tumours, but chiefly of those which are phlegmonous, common repulsiues are profitable (three cases onely excepted,) that is, if the tumour happe in those parts which are called *glãduloſa*, if they be enclined to suppuration,

Repellentia communia.

Repellentia propriè dicta.

Frigida repri-mentia.

Calida repel-lentia.

The first pro-logue of Guido in represſiue things.

Gal. 2. ad Glauconem.

The second Prologue.

tion, or if they proceed of a venimous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then, when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumor, it is behouefull to dissolue and scatter the matter, applying to the swolne place *Diaphoretica*, not biting or sharpe, but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moist; but this must be done principally in the three last remembred cases, in the which we must endeuour to attract and draw the matter which is dispersed, to the head where the tumor most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can and so inhibite the course and fluxion of the mixed humors. Which truly wee may sometime do, by vsing attractiue emplasters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggrieued place, (as *Auicen* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule of Art. In the beginning of all tumors which proceed of the influxion of humours, (those three excepted which were named a little before) onely pure repressiues are to be vsed. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsiues, some of those things which do dissolue and discusse. But in the state of tumors, yea and somewhat before the state, we must commixe repressiue medicines equally with discussiues: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully vse onely resoluing and releasing remedies. To conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and driue it away: but if the flure doeth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it dependeth vpon both, that is to say, that partly something hath alreadie flowed, and cleaueth fast to the place; and partly something may yet abound and flow: then it shall be lawfull to vse commixed remedies, that is, partly those which can resolue and vnbinde, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must vse also compound cures, as *Galen* saith. 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all these things truly are to be vnderstood thus, as if a tumour aboue nature is to be dispatched and cured by resoluing medicines, or (that I may speake generally) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuers matter that exciteth the tumor, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

Si tumor iam factus est.

Emplastrum. Cucurbitula. Artis canon generalis.

CHAP. VI.

Of the cure of abscessions generally.

Of the cure of tumors which are turned into abscessions, which they call Exiture.

BVt if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abscessus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finished and ended (as saith *Galen Libro 2. ad Glauconem*) by helpes and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *Chalastica*, that is, by resoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine, which is called of *Galen Tetrapharmacum*, being very soft, and prouoking sleepe: with the which, according to the opinion of the same *Galen*, *Lib.* 13. *Therap.* there must be commixed a little honie. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euery one a litle portion or quantitie, that is to say, of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the Herbe *Colophonia*, which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of Bulles tallow. But in processe of time we must passe ouer vnto

Tetrapharmacum.

those

those things which are able to concoct and digest, or to ripen and bring to suppuratiō. But those which are turned into another kind, that is, into another substance, and that altogether besides nature, they are to be removed and cured by the Art of Chirurgerie. Moreouer, in removing them, according to the counsell of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* it shall be requisite to consider, that among all the wayes and meanes whereby we intend to finish our purpose, we should alwayes make choise of the best of them. The best meanes and wayes are declared and manifested vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the shortnesse of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing safely and without danger. Againe, that thou maist cure safely, there are three speciall things diligently to be considered. The first and the chiefest is, that you throughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the same, yet at the least, that you hurt not the sicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or disease may not easily returne or come againe. By these considerations, if you will declare the best method of curing, you shall find in all those tumours before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgerie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the studie of Chyrurgerie in those chiefly which now we do intreate of, that is, in those tumors which are altogether aboue nature, doth tend to the killing and destroying of them, and doth wholly declare after what sort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to passe, the next counsell is, to transferre the euill, as we vse to do in those humours called *Hypochymata*, that is to say, the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth first tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and also into putrifaction: but this he appointeth in the second place. These things hath *Galen*. Therefore when the parts which are troubled with *Phlegmone* do beate very vehemently, so that now you begin to despaire of their cure (they being not yet mattered) all the ancient Chyrurgians (saith *Galen* 4. *Therap.*) do minister and apply such kind of medicines which do speedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vse none at all. And although those parts that are annoied with *Phlegmone* be annointed with a Cataplasme, which may both heate them, and moisten them, & bring them to suppuration, yet the same doth not appeare by the first reason or way, that is, as the remedy and helpe of the euill, but as the mitigating & easing of the symptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *Phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the same *Galen* addeth moreouer a litle after, that a short and compendious cure of those parts which are affected with *Phlegmone* is quickly ended and dispatched, by remedies which can dry & robind, which truly doth altogether either remoue the affect, or else, if they leaue behinde them some litle relict, which may turne to suppuration, it is needfull to vse some other sharpe medicine, which is able to bring out the matter; or if the skin about the tumour be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you necessarily must vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auicen* saith, namely, that the cure of an Aposteme (as it is an Aposteme) is the extraction and drawing out the strange matter which raiseth the Aposteme. But to declare the remedies of them, wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also which

The best order of curing is declared three wayes.

1
2
3

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

Auicen.

When abscessiõs are chiefly to bee cut and opened.

we spoke of a litle before, they are to be sought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the abscession being already come to suppuration, or changed, or strongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not discussed and dissolued, or if in conuenient season, and while the occasion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you must make an issue by incision, for that which otherwise will not be digested. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterprised, if there be feared any erosion or gnawing to ensue, or any other danger; yea if necessity cõmandeth, it ought straightway to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out as speedily and safely as is possible, for the cause before alledged. But apertion is made more safely with a knife, then with burning and scalding medicines, if nothing do hinder it. And commonly such kind of phlegmonous tumours, being already turned into suppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreouer apertion, or the letting out of the matter ought to be done by reason both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & also of the affected place. But if any part of the mattered member shall seeme to be putrified and rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likenesse of an Oliue or Mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more easily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eschue alwayes any great incisions, who did heale such kind of mattered tumors, both in the parts about the priuie members, and also in the armeholes, onely by incision (as he vsed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need somtime required to cut off somwhat by reason of the plenty, not only of matter, but also of the corrupted parts, he vsed no greater incision then the breadth of a great Mirtle leafe. For by wide & large sections, when the mẽber is brought vnto a scarre, besides that it is made most filthie, it also becometh very weake, and vnfit to moue withall. But these kinds of sections imitating the Mirtle leafe, are vsed in those tumours especially which do matter vnder the armeholes and about the share. And in those truly the lengths of them must be drawn ouerthwart, & not by the straightnesse or rightnesse of the leg or body: for when we bend the leg or the arme, the skin naturally doth apply it self with it. But in other places we alwayes almost do vse simple incisions. Now in this apertion or incision seuen things are especially to be considered, according to the consent of the later Chyrurgians. First, that incision be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The second, that incision be made in the neather place of the tumour, that the mattered and corrupted filth may the better be voided out. The third, that it be made next the wrinkles & processe of the muscles. The fourth, that you do auoid and eschue the sinewes, veines, and arteries, as much as you can. The fifth, that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, especially in great abscessiõs, lest that by too much emptying out, and that suddenly, and also by the resolution of the spirits, there follow weakenesse and faintnesse. The sixt, that the place be handled & touched very gently, & with as litle paine as can be. The seuenth, that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with flesh againe, and brought to a scarre, after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib.* 13. *Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the incision of a suppurated abscession, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and ouercometh

Seuen things to be diligẽtly marked in the apertion of an abscession alreadie mattered.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

Two things considered of Galen in the apertion of a mattered tumour.

If mattered tumor is more safely opened with a knife thẽ with burning medicins. Lib. 13. *Ther.*

A section imitating the Oliue or Mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cõmeth by wide incisions.

Why mattered impostumes about the share must bee cut ouerthwart.

cometh your medicines, neither do they seeme vnto you to be able to digest all the corruption: it is requisite to make an issue by incision for that matter which yeeldeth not to digestion, in that place especially where it is most high. 2. Moreouer in the incision also of another abscession which pertaineth vnto fluxe, and yet respecting both the kinds, you must not forget to cut and lanch that which is already come to suppuration: and then applie some medicine thereto which can drie it without erosion or gnawing. But after the impostume is opened, you must vse remedies that be of a scowring and cleansing nature, *Detergentia.* and fit to purge the filthy vlcer, as are, soft flaxe or lint, and soft linnen, Emplaisters and Ointments which shall be spoken of in their particular Chapters. At the first time *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickened with Alume *Zuccharinum*, which medicine *Gulielmus à Saliceto* did also vse. But afterward you must come to the applying of *Mel Rosatum*, and *Mundificatiuũ ex Apio*: and last of all, to *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Ægyptiacum*, if the matter so require. But aboue, without you must minister ointments, as *Basilicon*, *Diachylon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, and other of that sort, which are appointed for vlcers. *Ointments are to be applied aboue a tumor that is opened.* For when you haue cut an abscession, it must be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* after the skin was cut in those phlegmonous tumors which chance about the armeholeis and priuy members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *Thuris purgamentum*. For this hath a light astriction or binding. But you must also (saith he) first asswage the lanced member, (as much as you see cause, first with foments, then with Cataplasmes, and straight after with some moistning medicine, or else with such as do not much drie. (all these being applied outwardly vpon the vlcer.) For in the very vlcer, both of *Manna* (as hath bene said) and also of those remedies which are taught and declared by vsing of lint, those things are first to be layed on, which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward those that do purge and cleanse: after the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollownesse, you must minister such things as may fill the same: but if it fall out otherwise, you must vse things to bring it to a scarre. *The vse of Manna and Thus after the incision, & the vertue of the.* *The launced part must first be eased.* *What things are to be layed to an vlcer.* Moreouer if the sicke will not suffer incision to be made, either with some bright instrument, or with a penknife by reason of the softnesse thereof, then the appertion is to be finished with burning medicines. For this purpose *Auicen* praiseth the seede of Line or Flaxe, leauen and Doues doung, which you may make more excellent and forcible if you mingle them with a little soft Sope, or with the filthinesse that cometh of Mustard seede. *Auicennas in fine tractat. 1. Fen. 3. lib. 4.* But that medicine which is called *Ruptorium*, or *Causticum*, which is made of Lime and Sope, in this matter is most excellent, and obtaineth greatest fame. Hitherto haue we spoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

CHAP. VII.

Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumours ingendred of bloud.

HAuing spoken generally of those tumours which consist aboue nature, it is conuenient that we intreate particularly of the differences of euerie

one of them, taking our exordium from *Phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomates. Therefore *Galen lib. 1. de morbis & symptomatis*, taketh *Phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally, after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time, that is, for euery kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, that is, for euery hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call φλέγμονε. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumour ingendred of bloud that is the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thickneſſe or groſneſſe. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latins it is called diuerſly, by reaſon of the kind, *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks abſolutely, *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and conſent of the later ſort is two fold, *videlicet*, *Vera & non vera*. A true *Phlegmone* is cauſed of good bloud, which is the beſt both in quality and ſubſtance or eſſence, but yet more abundant then naturally ſhould happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true & lawfull *Phlegmone*, is cauſed of naughtie and vnnaturall bloud. For bloud is a hote & moiſt humour, proceeding from a more temperate part of the very *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that cometh of the meate in the firſt digeſtion; and it is two wayes, naturall and not naturall. Naturall bloud is a hote and moiſt humour, ſlender, and meane in ſubſtance, but of a very red colour; in ſauor & taſte, it is ſweet, gentle and good. But that bloud is ſaid to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digreſſeth from the former deſcription of bloud, yet notwithſtanding containing it ſelfe within the bounds of his breadth and largeneſſe; which if it doth once paſſe, it is no more to be called a bloud, but ſome other humor. But bloud doth chance to degenerate from his proper nature, two kinde of wayes. The firſt way is (as they terme it) in it ſelfe, that is, in reſpect of it ſelfe, (his proper ſubſtance being changed without any commixtion with another.) The ſecond way is by another, or in reſpect of another; and yet it conſiſteth two waies by it ſelfe, that is to ſay, either becauſe the ſubſtance thereof is more thicke, or more thinne then it ought to be; or becauſe it is burnt, and that which is thinneſt of it, is turned into melancholy; but that which is thicke into choler, and that without ſeparation. But in reſpect of another, bloud becometh not vnnaturall, when as another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many waies, according as the diuers kinds of choler, fleame or melancholy may be commixed with bloud. By which thing it is manifeſt, that of bloud there are engendred foure kinds or differences of tumors aboue nature. Firſt, of naturall and good bloud there is engendred a true *Phlegmone*: but of bloud which is corrupted through the admixtion of other humors, there do grow three differences of that kind of *Phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawfull; becauſe that the three other humors, that is to ſay, fleame, choler and melancholy, may be eaſily commixed with bloud. Therefore if melancholy be mixed with bloud, it is called *Phlegmone Scirrhodes*: if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *Phlegmone Eryſipelatodes*: if fleame, it is termed *Phlegmone Ædematodes*. But of bloud, which is filthy and corrupted through the aduſtion and corruption of his owne proper ſubſtance, according to the manner of the thinneſſe or thickneſſe thereof, there are ingendred either

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for Phlogoſis.

Phlegmone alſo is taken for an inflammation coming of the beſt bloud.

Phlegmone duplex.
1. *Vera.*
2. *Non vera.*

Sanguis quid.

Sanguis quotuplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies

Foure differences of tumors cauſed of bloud.

Carbun-

Carbuncles, which are called of the Greeks *Anthraces*: or else *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancres. Of the which diseases we will speake hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Causes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

THere are three causes of *Phlegmone*, as there are also of all other tumors besides nature, which do chance through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet*: 1. *Primitiua*, which we call both *prægressa* and *euidens*: 2. *Antecedens*: 3. *Coniuncta*. Euident causes of inflammation are outward causes, as, beating or belking, diruption, conuulsion, breaking or bursting a wound, a voluntary vlcer, a loosenesse, and other of that sort which do prouoke fluxe, by exciting paine in the affected member. The Antecedent cause, is abundance of bloud, which is good and faultlesse, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is bloud prouoked (as a certane superfluous thing) to flow and descend to some member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thrust, and abideth compact together, vnlesse it be by and by represled from the beginning, as we haue said before in our generall Chapter: to the which we must therefore haue continuall accesse, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumors, whereof we now intreate. The coniunct or continent cause, is the bloud it selfe, which is already stuffed in the affected place. The markes or tokens of *Phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member aboue the naturall habite, vehement heate, so that the member seemeth to burne. There appeareth redneſſe in the outward parts such as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by some other meanes. There is extreme paine, vnlesse the member hath altogether a dull sense. There is also grieuous beating, and pulsation very vehement inwardly. There is also extension or stretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but also the patient himselfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore resistance of the member if it be touched after the manner of extension. There be also other such like signes, which do testifie that abundance of bloud is present in some part of the body. *Phlegmone* hath foure times: 1. the beginning: 2. the increasing: 3. the state: and 4. the declination: except at the leastway, fluxe hath recourse within, or it be straightway represled by repulsiue medicines But when it shall lightly passe ouer these foure times, it is needfull either to resolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to suppuration, or else to putrifie and rot it, or to turne it into a *Schirrus* and stonie hardnesse. And truly the signes of all these are to be sought out of the Chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times, and the meanes to finish tumors aboue nature (which they commonly call *Apostemata*) be declared and expressed. But *Phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill symptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part: recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adenæ*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall parts. Also mortification of the affected

The causes of Phlegmone.

1. *Prægressa.*

2. *Antecedens.*

3. *Coniuncta.*

Signes of a true Phlegmone.

Foure times of Phlegmone.

Iudicia.

Symptomates which hinder the cure of Phlegmone.

affected member (which they call *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, & of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter which did cause the inflammation. Also a stony and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclirotica*, which proceedeth through a certaine ouerthwart and vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherefore in curing tumors which consist aboue nature, we must diligently oftentimes mark and consider how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chance vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist, and be occupied about that most which appeareth, and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of very well, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases, whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared lest some remnant of them be lett behind, which is very hard. Wherefore in euery resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euery tumour, whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily drie, doth leaue very hard knobs, which are hard to remoue. Hitherto *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *Phlegmone*.

CHAP. IX.

The order of curing the Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humors affecting the outward parts of the bodie.

The method of curing Phlegmone which is yet in generation.

SEeing that *Inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *Phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of bloud, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*Phlegmone* being yet but beginning to raigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten already: there must needs truly be a double consideration in the cure of the *Phlegmone* being yet but beginning, that is to say, to emptie out and auoide that which hath flowed already, & to hinder & stop that which is now a flowing. Moreouer we shall stop fluxe, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the fluxe. We shall draw it backe and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloudletting, if strength and age will suffer it; but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those parts which haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring backe and repell fluxe, by ministring those medicines which are able to driue and turne the fluxe another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member already infected with *Phlegmone*, by confirming and strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astriction if it be too loose, by cooling it if be too hot, as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, & by emptying the whole body with bloudletting, if it doth abound with bloud, and if it sendeth infection to the member: of all which things we will speake by and by. But we do empty out and auoid that which is flowed alreadie, and hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse & dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together

By what meanes the fluxe is stayed.

1. *Retractio.*

2. *Repulsio.*

3. *Causa summotio.*

Vacuation of that which is flowed already Gal. Ther. 13.

together and refrigerate. And truly in Phlegmonous tumors now beginning, we muſt rather vſe (ſaith *Galen*) cooling and aſtrictiue medicines, then thoſe which do concoct and digeſt, and ſo much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thick ſubſtance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *Phlegmone* hath caught and taken vp, you muſt not apply any longer repercuſſiue remedies, as we ſaid before, but then it is conuenient to vſe thoſe which can digeſt. Alſo in an old and inueterate inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole body, and other ſome fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardneſſe & blackneſſe in the mēber: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* alſo affirming the ſame) to take away the bloud by ſcarification. And theſe things haue we ſpoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greeks properly are wont to call *Phlegmone:* which things may be ſufficient to content a reaſonable Phyſition, and one which is exerciſed in this kind of ſtudie. But becauſe we haue taken in hand to write theſe things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it ſhall not be amiſſe, neither any thing from our purpoſe, if after this generall and compendious method, we ſet downe more particularly thoſe things which not onely the ancient Phyſitions, but alſo the later ſort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore aboue the generall rule, as they terme it, the Chirurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *Phlegmone*, vnto foure branches, or particular intentions: that is to ſay, into a iuſt obſeruation of a good diet. 2. the ſtopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before, 3. the emptying out of the humour, which hath already entertained himſelfe in the member (which they call *Materia coniuncta.*) 4. and the correcting or amending of the ſymptomats. The firſt intention therefore is made perfect by the due vſing or adminiſtration of ſixe things commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vſing of thoſe things alſo which are ſaid to be anexed vnto them. And theſe things which are ſixe in number, called of the Phyſitions *Res non naturales*, (as hath beene declared from the beginning of this treatiſe) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and reſt, ſleeping and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the minde or the accidents. All which things (becauſe *Phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feuers) ought to pertaine vnto coldneſſe and moderate moiſtneſſe. For which cauſes we haue thought good to ſet downe theſe precepts following. Let the ſicke be in a pure and cleare aire, and that ſomewhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately moiſt. Let him drinke ſmall Ale, or Beere, or other ſmall drinkes. But if a vehement feuer ſhall haue any acceſſe (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abſtaine from wine. Let him not exerciſe or moue that member which is beſet with *Phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, eſpecially if there be very great abundance of humors in the body. Let him keepe a meaſure in ſleeping and watching: and let him ſhun ſleeping on the day time, ſpecially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drūkenneſſe & gluttonie. Let the belly be alwayes kept ſoft and ſoluble, and now and then let it be waſhed with Cliſters if need require. Let him flie anger, cryings out, and wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abſtaine from venereous actes as a mortall foe.

Scarificatio.

Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone.

1. *The firſt intention is an order in diet.*

Res non naturales.

Aer.
Cibus.
Potus.
Motus.
Quies.
Somnus.
Repletio.
Inanitio.
Animi pathemata.
Venus.

The

2. The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.

A veine is alwaies to be cut directly.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of bloud, if strength and age do suffer. But in all members of the body, whether you intend to reuell, that is, to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from the place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth, which is called in Greeke κατ' ἐυθὺ, a veine must alwayes be cut, though there be great aboundance: but directly, the right sides do answer to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therefore if *Ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throate, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee you must cut a veine in the elbow, either the outward or the middle veine, except you meane to scarifie the other leg, or breake the veine asunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place.

The choice of bloudletting is declared of the afflicted part.

Therefore the election of the cutting any veine, and the inuention to turne the humor another way, which *Hippocrates* calleth *Antispasis*, is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen* 13. and 14. *Meth. med* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *Phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, though it be but meanly stuffed with humors, we must emptie and euacuate by letting of bloud, if we will follow the aduice of *Galen*, who *lib. 13 meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, writing thus: Paine, and truly the heate of the member wherein *Phlegmone* hath setled himselfe, although the whole body be void of excrements, do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanly, that is; to draw forth bloud, and to make euacuation no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further, you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a litle to draw backe the bloud that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of bloud, as hath been said. Therefore if *Phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legs are to be exercised, bound & rubbed; if in the legs, the hands must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Physition then to the Chirurgion.

3. The third intention is the euacuation of the humour already compact in the member.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *Phlegmone*, onely by applying repulsiue things to that member which laboreth with the inflammation, excepting these cases before rehearsed. For that which is filled with corrupted water, as *Galen* saith, is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do binde and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *regerentia*, repulsiues and restitiues. But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, that is, to emptie that which is flowed, and also to stop, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestiue medicines with repressiues, but yet so, that the abundance and strength of the one may preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, and somewhat more milde, in mitigating, remedies must be apphed, if paine be vehement. But in the end and

Repressiues in the increase, must exceed digestiues.

declination

declination of the ſtate, it is requiſite to euacuate by digeſtiues only that which is compact together, if that *Phlegmone* muſt be ended by reſolution or diſcuſſion. If truly it doth turne into abſceſſions, and that it cannot be that the gathering together and eruption of the matter ſhould be letted, it ſhall bee lawfull to vſe medicines which can both matter, open, and cleanſe the vlcer. Furthermore, thoſe remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils, that is, of *Phlegmone* and *Abſceſſus*, for they do altogether conſume that which remaineth of the humour: but when inciſion is made in the abſceſſion, which is alreadie come to ſuppuration, you muſt lay on ſuch a medicine as may dry without eroſion or gnawing, as hereafter ſhall bee ſhewed. But in thoſe phlegmonous tumours which now are but in the beginning, the moſt apt remedie to repell and driue backe, is *Oxicraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *Poſca aquoſa*. It is a mixture of water and vineger, ſo tempered together that it may be drunke: and then a ſponge being wet and laid in this *Oxicratum*, muſt be applied to that part where *Phlegmone* is. But in ſtead of *Oxicratum*, by the counſell of *Galen*, we may take ſharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the ſinewes. Theſe are the words of *Galen*: In thoſe parts which are about the ſinewes, it ſhall bee ſufficient in the beginning of *Phlegmone*, to lay on a ſponge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a little vineger is mingled, or in water onely, or in ſharpe and ſoure wine. For the ſame purpoſe alſo this Cataplaſme of the ſame *Galen* is very effectuall, made of Syngreene and the rindes of Pomegranates ſodden in wine of *Rhu*, that is, *Sumach* and *Polenta*. This by reſtraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor; and both wayes it doth ſtrengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath been deſcribed of the latter ſort: of *Auicen* after this ſort as followeth, ℞. of the iuyce of Syngreene ℔.j. of wine that is thicke of ſubſtance, & ſharpe in taſte, ℔.ß. of Barley meale, one quart, of the rind of Pomegranats, and Sumach powdered, ana.℥. ß. boyle them and make an oyntment. There is alſo another which greatly auaileth for the ſame purpoſe, inuented of *Haly Abbas*: ℞. of *Santalum*, white and red, ana ℥.iij. of *Memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*, ℥. ij. of *Terra cimolia*, and Bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥.j ß. Let all be brayed into very fine floure or powder, and well ſearced, then diſſolue them in the iuyce of Syngreene, or Purſlaine, or Lettuce, & make a Liniment. Another alſo in the beginning of phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vſed, which is very profitable for greene wounds, and bruſes taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of Roſes, and of the diſtilled water of Roſes, that is, of Roſe water, wherein you muſt wet fine clothes, and lay them to the inflamed member, and let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both ſimple and compound, which do profit in the beginning of *Phlegmone* to reſtraine and repell fluxe, which are to be ſought out of other Authors, which haue written of this thing. But theſe ſhall contents vs for this time.

If Phlegmone do turne into abſceſſions.

Repulſiues are to be vſed in the beginning of Phlegmone.

Oxicratum.

Lib. 13. Method. medendi.

Galeni Cataplaſma, lib. 2. ad Glauc.

Fren. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas. Linimentum.

Alind.

Among the remedies which in the increaſe of *Phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of Roſes is maruellouſly effectuall, (the Greekes call it *Rhodium*.) For this doth partly draw backe, & partly doth digeſt through

Remedies to be vſed in the increaſing of the Phlegmone.

the vapour: becauſe it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betweene the oyle and the Roſes. Therefore in oyle of Roſes there is a certaine aſtriction, which cannot (ſaith *Galen*) ouergo the weake parts of the tumour: but when they haue pierced ſomewhat deeper, it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the ſtrength, both to thruſt together, to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly; whereby it commeth to paſſe, that in the augmenting of Phlegmonous tumours, oyle of Roſes is a moſt excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *Phlegmone* there is another in *Auicen* very profitable. ℞. of the leaues of Mallowes, M. j. of Wormewood, Roſes, ana. ℥. ß. of Barley meale, ℥. j. oyle of Cammomil, quart. ß. Seeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the faſhion of a ſoft Emplaiſter. Another of the ſame. ℞. of wine boyled either to the halfe or third part, (the one we call *Sapa*, the other *Defrutum*) quart. j. Roſe water, and Vineger, ana. quart. ß. Saffron, ℥. ij. Let them be a little heat ouer a ſoft fire, then ſtraine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you muſt apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an Epitheme. Moreouer ſuch kinds of remedies which are vſed in the increaſing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repreſſiue and digeſtiue medicines, ought ſeldomer to be remoued and changed, then thoſe which repell the matter, being miniſtred in the beginning of *Phlegmone*.

Lib. 3. de ſimp. medic.

Oile of Roſes a preſent remedie in the increaſe of Phlegmone.

Aëtius, in the vigor or ſtate of *Phlegmone*, & when there is vehement paine felt, hath ſet downe theſe remedies: as Mallowes mingled with a little bread, and with oile of Roſes. Alſo Meliot boyled in the liquor called *Paſſum*, and applied with a little bread: of the like vertue (ſaith he) are Dates ſodden in *Paſſum*, and mingled with the bread and oile of Roſes. Another alſo which digeſteth through breathing in the vigour of *Phlegmone* very effectuall. ℞. Pellitorie of the wall, Mallowes, ana. M. j. fine branne, the floure of meale, ana. pug. j. Fenugreeke, Dill, ana. ℥. ß. oyle of Cammomill, quart. ß. Let them be boiled in wine, and brayed together till they be well incorporated, and make an Emplaiſter. Another taken out of *Galen*, *lib.* 13. *Threap.* ℞. of the crummes of bread made of corne, ℔. j. ſteepe it in hote water the ſpace of one houre, then ſtraine it, and commixe therewith of the beſt honie, quart. j. and make it to the forme of a Cataplaſme. This doth diſſolue and mitigate paine. *Auicen* counſelleth to miniſter in the vigour of *Phlegmone*, *Vnguentum Baſilicon*, and that which is made of the iuyces thereof, called *Diachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter; although notwithſtanding both of them do carrie with them a digeſting qualitie. But theſe and other ſuch remedies, which are miniſtred to diſſolue that which is alreadie flowed, and to eaſe paine, becauſe they are of a very moiſt nature, muſt be changed very ſeldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humour which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *Phlegmone*, is diſſolued and diſcuſſed, and the tumour together with the extention thereof is diminiſhed, and the griefe ſomewhat aſſwaged, then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you muſt vſe onely diſcuſſiue things, as are wild Mallowes bruſed, and annointed, Raiſins (the kernels being taken out) applyed with bread and a little honie, and

What things do helpe in the ſtate of Phlegmone.

Emplaſtrum Galeni.

What remedies muſt be vſed in the declination of Phlegmone.

Barley

Barley meale vſed alſo with honie. Alſo moiſt wooll, flaxe, a ſponge, or ſome ſuch like thing, wet in hote wine, then ſtrained or wringed, you muſt miniſter it: for all theſe haue an excellent diſcuſſiue nature, and prouoke not paine. But if, by reaſon of the ſtubburnneſſe & hardneſſe of the diſeaſe, the affected place doth containe too great plentie of matter, and that ſuch as reſiſteth reſolution; you muſt not by and by (as ſome do) breake forth vnto Chirurgerie, that is, to make inciſion, or to ſcald it and burne it; but you muſt labour by all meanes poſſible, that the humor collected together may be digeſted and diſſolued by ſuch medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to attempt the digeſtion of the humor by ſuch medicines as can profite in that caſe, before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to digeſtiue medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to diſſolue that which is compact in it, but the matter ſeemeth rather to pertaine vnto ſuppuration, you muſt come vnto thoſe things which can ripen and procure matter. And we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into abſceſſion) may through the vapour be digeſted, if the matter which exciteth the ſame be thinne and little, and fit to be reſolued: or if it remaineth not any thing deepely within, & the skin of the affected member be thinne. But if the humour be plentifull, and thicke, and lurketh very deepe, and the skin alſo thicke, exhalation or reſolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you muſt come vnto thoſe helpes which can ripen and prouoke matter, of which ſort is this Cataplaſme, made of wheate meale, ſodden moderatly in water and oile: for this (*Galen* being our author) doth ſpeedily bring to ſuppuration thoſe inflammations which will not yeeld to digeſtion, and it hath alſo a heate like vnto our heate, that is, temperate and meane; and by reaſon of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine clammie and glewiſh propertie, whereby in ſtopping the pores they hinder the naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an Emplaiſter: which two things are moſt required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There are ſome which do mingle with this Cataplaſme a little Saffron to colour it. But if a tumour, by reaſon of the thicke and viſcous humours which are ſtuffed in it, be hardly brought vnto ſuppuration, this Cataplaſme doth notably helpe which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *Althæa*, and of figs that be ſweete and fat, which do reſemble the thickneſſe of honie, commixed with wheate meale, as followeth. ℞. of the foreſaid decoction, ℔. j. of wheate meale ℔. ß. boile them throughly together, and bring them into the forme of a Cataplaſme. But if in ſtead of wheate meale, you vſe barley meale, or crible bread, which the Greekes call συγκόμιστον, it more auaileth to diſcuſſe the inflammation then to bring it to ſuppuration, as *Galen* hath noted *lib. 2. ad Glauc.* There is another alſo excellently profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of *Phlegmone*, which is commonly vſed of the common Chirurgians. ℞. of the barke of the roote of Marſh mallowes, that is, of *Althæa*, of the roote of Lillies, Grownſwell, called in Greek τριγλοχιτων, leaues of Mallowes, ana. M. j. wheate meale quart. j. of the meale of Flaxe ſeed, ℥. j. freſh ſwines greace, ℔. ß. Seeth the herbes in ſufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a Cataplaſme. But if (when the matter is gathered together and diſpatched) the abſceſſion whereinto *Phlegmone* is turned, doth not open

What reſolution is to be hoped for.

Pus monentia.

Lib. 2. ad Glaucon.

℞

Haly Abbas remembreth this Cataplaſme.

A common Cataplaſme.

open of the owne accord (the members now being free from the inflammation) you muſt go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digeſted, with a penknife, or ſome other inſtrument, or by ſome drawing medicine. Then you muſt bring the vlcer vnto a ſcarre, like vnto other vlcers, which you muſt do by cleanſing the ſore, by filling it with fleſh, and ioyning it together, which at the laſt will cauſe a ſcarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke which bringeth forth the tumour, and very diſobedient to reſolution and digeſtion, and be exceedingly compact in the paſſages of the fleſh (as is wont to be in continuall inflammations which be naughtily cured, the thinne part of the humour being reſolued, and the thicke part remaining ſtill in the paſſages) then you muſt not be afraid to vſe ſcarification, eſpecially (as *Galen* admoniſheth *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*) when hardneſſe, blewneſſe, or blackneſſe do appeare.

Symptomatis correctio.

The fourth intention, which in the cure of *Phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian and Phyſition, is the correction and the remouing of the ſymptomates which do ſo ſuddenly come vpon the inflammation, and thoſe are paine, recourſe of the matter, whereof the tumour is raiſed, to the outward parts, putrifaction and corruption of the mattery member, and as it were a certaine ſtonie hardnes remaining behind, by reaſon of ſome mightie drying and digeſting medicines. Therefore if vehement paine ſhall happen to the tumour, you muſt labour by all meanes poſſible to mitigate and aſſwage the ſame: becauſe (beſides that it weakeneth the ſtrength, and hindereth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe, and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore do grieuouſly torment in *Phlegmone*, ſtraightway you muſt lay on thoſe medicines which can lenifie and eaſe the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of *Galen*, which was made of the licour called *Paſſum*, of oile of Roſes, and a little waxe mixed with them both: but this is to be taken in moiſt wooll, which hath much oile in it, and to be miniſtred cold in Sommer, and hote in Winter. Therefore ſuch a medicine being tempered and applied, as is ſaid before, doth rarifie, extenuate, digeſt, and euacuate: it maketh the humour that is ſharpe, viſcous, groſſe, or plentifull, and which cleaueth to the aggrieued parts, to be equall, conſtant and moderate; and it diſcuſſeth the thicke vapour which can finde no fit iſſue, and ſo it mitigateth paine: It bringeth no hurt with his heate, for it maketh dull or taketh away the heate of the oile of Roſes. Whereby it cometh to paſſe, that this remedy doth aſſwage paine without doing any hurt, and diſprofiteth not the euill, as hote water, oile, and wheate meale, which things in an inflammation that happeneth with paine, cannot be profitable (as *Galen* witneſſeth.) For theſe do looſen and releaſe through their heate and moiſture, and do reſolue the ſtrength of the member, whereby it is made more weake, and more prone and apt to entertaine fluxe. To the ſame vſe (that is, to allay the paine in *Phlegmone*) you may apply effectually oile of Roſes, yolkes of egges, crummes of white bread ſteeped in hote water, and then ſtreine them, and commixe them with oile of Roſes. Theſe alſo are a preſent remedy, Mallowes ſodden in water, and mingled with branne and oile of Roſes, or with oile of Violets. But *Auicen* in mitigating euery paine vſeth Saffron, which he profitably commix-

Dolor.

Lenifiers of paine in phlegmone.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

eth

eth with asswaging medicines. Furthermore if the sharpenesse of paine be so great and vehement, that it cannot be eased with those things, which because they mitigate and lenifie paine, (the succors of nature being stretched out) are properly called *Anodyna & paregorica*, that is, prouokers of sleepe and helpers of paine, you must passe ouer vnto those aides which we call *Narcotica*, that is, stupefactiues. Amongst the which we haue tried by daily experience besides the authoritie of some Writers, that Henbane hath profited in this case maruellously, whose leaues you must take, and bake them in the hote embers, then mingle them with swines grease and applie them to the place. This doth pacifie vehement paine, and bringeth Phlegmonous tumours vnto suppuration. But while you attempt this thing, you must haue a diligent care lest you apply too much moisture, because it is a thing, which in the beginnings of inflammations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, it is very pernicious (as we said a little before.) But if you feare recourse of the matter, that exciteth *Phlegmone*, to the inward parts, and that chiefly toward the principall members: you must cause it to come forth by some drawing medicines, or else by applying cupping glasses, which do draw vehemently from the inward parts. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation, the relicts of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*, you shall boile in water the rootes of wild Cucumber (which is commonly called in Herbaries and shops *Cucumer asininus*) or of Briony or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselues (as *Galen* commandeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges. Then commixe Meale with Water, to the which also put a little suet, either of a Goose or a Cocke; but if there be not plentie of these at hand, adde swines greace, and make Cataplasmes. This doth notably heale that scirrhous affect which through mighty drying and digesting medicines in the member which *Phlegmone* occupied, doth still remaine behinde: also the aforesaid Herbes together with the rootes of *Althæa*, being after moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet, and then applyed, to discusse and dissolue such hardned tumours: as *Galen* doth plainely teach, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*. Therefore if you feare, that Phlegmonous tumours which are scarcely digested through their vapor, neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*, you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollifie and soften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member shall putrifie, you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarrifications: afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water, and then lay on it an Emplaister made of the meale of Beanes or Tares sodden in *Oximel*. There be other things also to be proued in this case, which we will by and by set downe in the cure of *Gangrena*. But now it shall be more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such Phlegmonous affects, in some short sentences. And first we will begin to declare the summe of the cure of *Phlegmone*, being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grieuous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with conuenient purgations, and especially by letting of blood, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed member be all to washed and annointed with such things as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the

Nota de Hyosciamo.

Recursus materiæ ad interiora.

Duritiies relicta.

Galens Cataplasme for hard tumors.

Putrefactio.

Galen lib. 2. ad Glauc.

1.

2.

3. humour. 3. Let the humour, which is contained in the aggrieued place, be
4. emptied out by drying and digesting medicines. 4. Let the affected part, and
The summe of the cure of Phlegmone when it afflicteth with much paine. those also which are about it be strengthned and fortified. Now followeth the summe of the cure of the said *Phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more grieuous paine. 1. When as inflammation being caused through the defluxion
1. 2. 3. of humours, doth vexe with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemencie of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things which do strongly binde, or vnlooſen, through their heate and moisture, or resolue strength. 3. But you must apply to the inflamed place such helpes as
4. by meanely binding can repell that which floweth, and euacuate that which infesteth the affected member. 4. Applie to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *Posca*, that so you may preuent the passage of the humour that
5. floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft and gentle Emplaisters, and those especially, which are
6. made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Amongst those things, which are of power to drie, and repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolution with oile of Roses, which is made of the stone *Chalcitis*: then
7. lay vpon it pure woll dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you must often apply the foresaid Cataplasme, or that rather
8. which is made of Barley Meale. 8. If the abundance of thicke matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion, in that place especially where
9. it is highest. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent,
10. and cleanse it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision paine be vehement, you must first asswage it with foments, then with a Cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the
11. member be still enflamed, lay on a Cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called Chittes, which doth emptie out and driue backe.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call sanguinea pustulæ, that is, bloud pushes.

De Carbunculo. *ἄνθραξ.* *γάγγραινα.* *σφακελος.*

SEEING that we haue intreated aboundantly, as much as perraineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Phlegmone*, which is the first difference of inflammations, and most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke *ἄνθραξ*: next of *Gangræna*, the Cancre, and last, of *Sphacelus*; (which with the expounder of *Auicen* they commonly call *Esthiomenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *Phlegmone* hath, and doth prouoke a most sharpe feuer; but these are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as *Galen libello de Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in many other places hath diligently noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote; with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours, there are raised vpon the out side of the skinne whelkes or

Gangræna & Sphacelus do follow great Phlegmones.

The generatiõ & description of a Carbuncle.

pushes, like things that be burned or scalded, and then this inflamation is called *Carbunculus cum pustula*, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill doth happen very often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vlcer: I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken the vlcer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, but many litle and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the seeds of Hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine crustie vlcer, such as hote iron doth cause. But betweene their beginning, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthly colour, somtime blacknesse, and in that place the skin cannot be eased, but it is as it were fastned to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlegosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of Lime or Pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholie. And these truly are the signes and tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very effect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement paine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected, do necessarily fall into a Feauer, and that sooner then they which are troubled with *Phlegmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chanceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbraking and continuall vomitting, together with want of appetite, and loathing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, & an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill: When as in very deed ἄνθραξ, among the Greekes is the very same that *Carbo*, or *Carbunculus* is among the Latines. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes, killing the people suddenly, and they follow a pestilent plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heed or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer, although ἄνθραξ, or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous and contagious: yet the worst of all, and the most deadly, is that of *Auicen*, which doth arise in the purest places, and neere to the principall members. For it is to be feared, lest the venimous matter which exciteth the Carbuncle, do suddenly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall member: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exhalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is enough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chanceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes, or iawes, it suddenly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomake. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in *Auicen*, which appeareth first red, and then vellow, or of an Orange colour.

Carbuncles duplex
Signes of a Carbuncle.
1. *Vlcus crustosum.*
2. *Some great whelkes, some small.*
3. *The colour of the crust either earthly or blacke.*
4. *The flesh blacke about it.*
5 *Grieuous paine.*
6. *A vehement feauer.*
7. *Nausea.*
8 *Vomitus.*
9. *Want of stomacke.*
10. *Cordis tremor.*
11. *Animi deliquium.*
Indicia.
1. *Whē a Carbuncle is most deadly (the iudgement thereof being taken from the affected place)*
2. *Another iudgement taken from the affected place.*
3. *Iudgement of the colour.*

4. Iudgement of the accidents.

But if it waxeth blew or blacke, it killeth almoſt euery man, and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the owne nature then it. If the accidents which are wont to accompanie this diſeaſe, be very much remitted or releaſed, there is ſome hope of recouerie: But if they be ſtill more and more ſtretched out, and made more vehement, then truly the matter is in great deſpaire.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a carbuncle muſt be begun by bloud letting.

Galen lib. Method. med. 14. & ſecundo ad Glauconem, commandeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing ſet downe a conuenient order of diet) muſt be begun with bloud letting by and by at the beginning (if none of thoſe things do let, which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine) who alſo willeth to draw bloud euen to the fainting of the heart: for it profiteth much thoſe that be troubled with this euill. And this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be ſtricken directly againſt the vlcer. But the choice of the veine is manifeſted vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue ſaid in the cure of *Phlegmone*.) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Phyſition muſt take counſell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare from what place and how much bloud is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I ſaid) do hinder you, it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſcarifie the ſaid tumour, vſing ſomewhat deepe cuts or wounds, by reaſon of the thickeneſſe of that malicious humour, that is, ſuch cuts as are ſomewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaſeth *Galen*) There are ſome, which would haue ſcarification made in the cruſtie or hard vlcer onely, and then they ſtraight way ſprinckle thoſe inciſions with hote ſalt water, that bloud might not meet together in them, and increaſe, but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they alſo apply ſome gnawing medicine, as Arſenicke, which in this caſe among the reſt hath the greateſt vertue: but ſome do miniſter to the ſcarified place horſe-leeches, or bloud-ſuckers. But ſtrong repulſiues are in no wiſe to be vſed or applied to the aggrieued member (although refrigeration bee needfull, which indeed doth belong vnto the inflammation;) for you cannot ſo turne away the fluxe, or preuent the malice hereof, becauſe of the thickneſſe of the humour. And if at any time you ſhall do it, you ſhall find ſome other naughtie humour (as *Galen* ſaith) which is ſetled in the depth or inward parts of the body: but this humour muſt not be ſuffered to flow abundantly (the ſame *Galen* being our authour.) Therefore ſuch remedies are to be ſought for, as by a moderate repreſſion can digeſt or diſperſe the humour. Such truly is that Cataplaſme, both that which is made of Plantaine, and alſo that which is made of Lintels twice ſodden. But with this you muſt commixe crummes of bread, which hath been baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after *Galens* counſell) be neither altogether without Branne, nor very full of it. But this kinde of Cataplaſme is called of the latter ſort *Emplaſtrum de Arnogloſſa*. which they make after this ſort ℞. of Plantaine, Lintels, bread baked in an ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boiled in water. To theſe *Auicen* putteth Gaules, who alſo for this purpoſe doth allow the Cataplaſme which is made of the two

Deepe ſcarification.

Sprinckling of hote ſalt water.

Arſenicum. Sanguiſuga.

Fluxe in a carbuncle cannot be turned away, neither ought it.

Lib. 14. Ther.

A Cataplaſme good for a carbuncle.

Cataplaſme made Arnogloſſa.

A cataplaſme of Pomegranates.

Pome-

Pomegranats ſodden either in Vineger, or in ſharpe or tart Water, and theſe they apply both to the affected member, and alſo to the parts about it. Of this mind alſo is *Paulus Ægineta*, who ſaith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and diſſeuer it from having any ſocietie with the parts about it, you muſt ſeeth in Vineger a ſharpe Pomegranate cut in ſmall peeces: when the ſore is corrupted you muſt wipe it ſmooth, and cleanſe it with a linnen cloth, and when it waxeth drie, you muſt moiſten it with Vineger. Alſo the kernell of the old filberd nut, or of the young, doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the beſt remedie for the parts lying about it, is the ointment made of Bolearmoniacke, of the oile or Roſes or Mirtles, and of Vineger: which is vſed, becauſe the humour which hath flowed already, ſhould not returne backe againe within. There are ſome which do draw, and allure the poyſon and malicious humour in a peſtilent Carbuncle, with ſucking or drawing it with cupping glaſſes, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beſet with *Carbo*. Which thing truly I would alſo counſell to do, if ἄνθραξ doth occupie the arteries, and the parts about the leſſer veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but ſlowly. But if it ruſheth or breaketh forth ſtrongly and aboundantly, the rage of the humour muſt be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately repreſſe (as of late we recited out of *Galen*,) leſt that there be cauſed too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth ſo ſtrongly in the affected member, & ſo the euill be made more painfull and angrie. But vpon this hard or cruſtie vlcer, eſpecially when the member is putrified, you muſt lay ſome ſtrong medicine, both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digeſt) and alſo which can moue the matter, (ſeeing that ſo you ſhall fauour the putrefaction of the member:) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Muſa*, *Paſio*, or *Polyida*: and it muſt be waſhed in ſome ſweet wine, or in *Sapa*, by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the filthie humour. That Cataplaſme alſo which in *Galen* is made of the meale of Tares or Oximel, is rightly applyed, when as the vlcer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the ointment called *vnguentum Ægyptiacum* is to be applied. But if theſe things do little profite, you muſt come vnto more ſharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kind are theſe, the roote of *Dracunculus*, of *Ariſtolochia* broken and laid in Vineger, Lime, Arſenicke, yellow Oker, and other of this ſort, which do burne like fire. Theſe do profit ſufficiently, if they do throughly reſolue the corrupted member, euen from the quicke. This being done, whatſoeuer is corrupted and dead within, you muſt by and by pull away, and plucke it vp by the roots. But when after theſe gnawing medicines there followeth a ſcurfe or ſcarre, which is drawne euery way from the quicke fleſh, the wound truly, which is raiſed through them, muſt be diligently regarded, as in ſores that be burned. But being in extreme diſeaſes, (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) extreme remedies are perfectly the beſt: we are conſtrained ſometime, (our medicines not prenailing with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by actuall or manuall inſtruments (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or ſome other ſuch thing. But the end of burning is, while there is ſenſe of paine euerie way, as *Celſus* hath taught very well. After theſe things the cruſt or ſcabbe which is vpon the

Paulus.

Nux auellana

Remedies to draw the poyſon in a carbuncle.

What muſt be applied to a cruſtie vlcer.

A cataplaſme of the meale of Tares & Oximel.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Adurentia medicamenta.

When aduſtion muſt be vſed.

Finis adurẽdi.

vlcers, must be resolued by such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sicke shall refuse to suffer adustion, the helpe of some poore and base fellow is to be vsed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with his teeth, may quite extinguish and pull vp the same; as were in time past certaine people in Italie named *Psilli*, who did sucke their wounds which they receiued by the stinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Moreouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or consumed any other way, the hollownesse thereof (the inflammation now ceasing) must first be cleansed, and afterward being made pure and cleane, it must be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Synulotica*;) which when it is throughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vse those things which can bring it to a scarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill do not rage very much, but shall seeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as *Auicen* saith) by applying Figs commixed well together with leauen and Salt. And when this Cataplasme or the like is layed too twise or thrise, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke, and full of chinkes or clifts; and then the place is to be scowred and cleansed with mundificatiues made of *Apium*. That medicine also which is made of the yolkes of egges and of Salt, if it be often applyed, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the same purpose we vse commonly at this day that medicine which is made of Honie, Salt, Wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Consolida maior*, that is, Comferie (which the Greekes call *Symphyton*) being brayed betweene two stones, doth heale *Anthrax* very maruellously (as they report,) and within the space of one day it quite destroyeth it, so that it needeth no other curing any more after; besides also it is a common helpe for other wounds. Some also do declare wonderfull things of *Scabiosa*, because that (being eaten, or drunke in wine) it thrusteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth dissolue and discusse them without paine.

Psilli.

Maturatiuũ Auicennæ.

Mundificatiuum ex Apio.

A common cataplasme vsed in Paris.

Consolida maior.

Scabiosa.

What things do resolue the crusts of vlcers

In the vlcers of a Carbuncle these do resolue the crusts of the scurfe, fresh butter, swines suet, and other fat things of that sort. For this purpose also this Emplaister following doth maruellously profite: for besides that it resolueth the scarre, that is, the crust, more speedily then the aforesaid things, it also aswageth the paine that is caused either of the sharpe and burning medicines, or of the bright instrument, and it mightily discusseth the malignous humour which exciteth the Carbuncle. ℞. of Wheate and Barley meale, ana. ℥. iij. of the which make a solide Emplaister with the decoction of Mallowes, Violets, and the rootes of *Althæa*, and put thereunto of Butter, and Swines suet melted, ana. ℥. ij. the yolkes of two egges, which must be put in when they are taken off the fire, and all these must be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforesaid rootes and herbes; which must be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then sifted through a searce. As concerning their diet, Epithemes, Cordials, and other of that kind, which are made to strengthen the heart, also euacuations, if they be needfull, do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Physicke which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in ministring them, you must aske the aduice or counsell of some learned Physition. But commonly all men almost do vse *Theriaca*, which is

Theriaca.

wont

wont to be miniſtred to the greatneſſe of a Braue, made of the water of Scabious, or if a very ſharpe and vehement feuer be preſent, you muſt make it of Roſe water, or water of Bugloſſe: which the ſicke muſt take ſixe houres after meate. But becauſe we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida*, and *Muſa* (which *Galen* ſo greatly vſed) it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſet downe here the deſcription of them.

℞. of Cytrines, that is, of the firſt flowers or buds of Pomegranates, ℥. x. of Alume that may be cut, ℥. iiij. of Coperous or Vitrioll, ℥. xij. of Mirrhe, ℥. iiij. of Frankinſence, *Ariſtolochia*, & Gals, ana ℥. viij. of Salt ammoniack, ℥. iiij. *Andronis Trochiſcus.*

℞. of Pomegranate rindes, ℥. vj. of Mirre, ℥. viij. of Alume that may be cut, ℥. v. of Frankinſence, ℥. iiij. of Coperous, ℥. iiij. of the gall of a bull, ℥. vj. Let theſe be taken in ſweete wine. *Polyida Paſtillus.*

℞. of cut Alume, ℥. iij. Frankinſence, ℥ iiij. of Mirrhe as much, of Coperous, ℥. ij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. xij. of buls gall, ℥. vj. *Aloes*, ℥. viij. Take theſe in ſharpe wine. *Polyida paſtillus alius.*

℞. of cut Alume, *Aloes*, Mirrhe, Copetous, ana. ℥. vj. of Saffron and of the dregs of the oile of Saffron, ℥. iij. of the flowers of Pomegranates, ℥. iiij. Let them be taken in *Mulſum* made of *Falernum*. *Muſæ trochiſcus.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangræna and Sphacelus.

GALEN *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the inflammation be made and changed into mortifications, yet they be not throughly ingendred and alreadie confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is ſo outragious, that except it be remedied verie ſpeedily, the affected member doth eaſily repreſent the habite of death, that is, it doth very readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life, ſenſe, and mouing. But when the member is ſo corrupted and ſo feeble, that it is altogether without ſenſe, and as it were dead, ſo that whether it be ſtriken, or cut, or burned, the ſicke feeleth it not, then the Greeks call this euill no longer *Gangræna*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latines *Syderatio*, the later ſort call it *Eſthiomenon*: which name alſo they giue vnto *Gangræna*. But *Auicen* calleth it *Eſthiomenon*, when as the corruption thereof doth paſſe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vſe in another order. Some call this affect ſometime *Herpeta Eſthiomenon*, ſometime very improperly, *Cancer vlceratus*. But this affect chanceth alſo to the bones, when as the fleſh being beſet & compaſſed about with them, bringing forth and ingendring filthy & ſtinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poyſon, and conſumeth them with moſt corruptible rottenneſſe. Therefore when as the member ſhall together appeare void of life, ſenſe, & mouing, you muſt by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the ſound fleſh. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangræna*, becauſe the one doth grow vp in the bones, (as we haue declared) and not in the fleſh and the veſſels of the bodie onely: but the other cometh not to the bones; notwithſtanding it is one kind of *Sphacelus*, but it borroweth a proper & ſingular name beſide the cómon terme. This kind of corruption being

What a Canker is, & whence it hath his beginning.

Gangræna peſſimus tyrannus.

Sphacelus.

Syderatio oſſium.

The benúmed member muſt ſtraight way be pared.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether depriued of ſenſe, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antonij*, in another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguiſhing and deſtroying of the life in them, chanceth three wayes. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is ſent to it from the heart through the Arteries, by reaſon of the diſſoluing of the mixture and conſent of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is diſſolued and deſtroyed, either becauſe of too much cold (as ſometime it happeneth in ſharpe and boiſterous winter) or by reaſon of immoderate, raſh and vnaduiſed refrigeration of the inflammation, or elſe becauſe of the exceeding and vnmeaſurable vehement heate, and poyſon of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus* are cauſed, when as the life being gotten into the member, is choked and ſtopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which ſometimes do cloſe vp and ſtop the veines, arteries, and pores of the skin, that there the ſpirits (the breathing forth of the vapourous ſtreames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindered) are ſtrangled and choaked. The third way, theſe mortifications, and deſtroyings of life are cauſed in the members, when as the paſſage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to ſome member is letted and forbidden: and that happeneth either by reaſon of a vehement and ſtrong binding, or elſe becauſe of ſome bruiſe receiued in thoſe paſſages and pores through the which the breath is carried. To conclude, *Gangræna* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *Necroſis* and *Sphacelus*, do chance vnto mens bodies, deſtroying either the member or the vitall faculties, or the naturall heate and temperature of the body. But the ſignes of *Gangræna* and *Syderatio*, *Galen* in his litle treatiſe of tumours aboue nature, declareth to be theſe. Firſt truly that flouriſhing colour is extinguiſhed in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations: then paine and beating of the pulſes, that is, the moouing of the arteries, which is felt of the ſicke, do depart a little aſide, yet their naturall diſpoſition is not altogether ended, but their ſenſe altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member ſtraight way appeareth blacke, and it is very ſoft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthy ſauour, and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to paſſe, that when it is touched with the finger, it eaſily yeeldeth very deeply, neither after doth it riſe vp againe or returne, but the skin appeareth as though it were ſeparated from the fleſh. But this mortification of the affected member (which the Grecians call *Gangræna*, is of ſo great crueltie and madneſſe (as *Paulus* ſaith) that except you preſently ſeeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member ſoone periſheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But if (as *Celſus* reporteth) it yet hath but ſmall power, but is now in beginning, it is not very hard to cure, eſpecially in a young mans body, and ſo much the rather if the muſcles be ſound and whole, if the ſinewes be not hurt, or ſmally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned againe into *Sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and very many do die of a cold ſweate.

Ignis Sancti Antonij.

Three cauſes of mortificatiõ

1

What things do diſſolue the mixture of the member.

2.

3.

Signes of Gangræna and Sphacelus.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Indicia. lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

CHAP. XIIL

Of the cure of Gangræna cauſed of great inflammations, and of the deſtroying or curing of Sphacelus, which is ingendred of Gangræna.

BEcauſe the abundance of bloud doth ingender a Canker, the order of the cure thereof muſt be ſtraightway attempted by a plentifull and copious euacuation of the corrupt bloud, which is packed together in the affected member. But in the meane ſeaſon, you muſt not neglect thoſe things which ſhall ſeeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require) and ſtrengthening of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian muſt take the aduiſe of ſome learned Phyſition, who knoweth how to inſtruct him therein (as the matter ſhall require.) But there muſt be great plentie of that congealed bloud (which cauſeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part, either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and ſwolne about the ſame member, or in the whole skin of the part affected, together with his ſubſtance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by many deepe ſcarifications. Some to this end do apply horſe-leeches, and they do open a little the veines that be next the ſore; but thoſe deepe and often ſections or ſcarifications are much more effectuall to cure that euill. But becauſe of the greatneſſe of the Canker, we vſe great ſections, or often inciſions (which we call ſcarifications) the one, when the euill is more rotten, the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedy it requireth (as euery man may know.) But when you haue drawne out bloud abundantly by thoſe deepe ſlaſhes or cuts, you muſt waſh the place with ſalt-water, that the thicke bloud which otherwiſe would abound there, may be brought forth. Then you muſt apply ſome medicine that can let and diſſolue putrifaction, as is the meale of Tares or Darnell (which the French men call *Yuraria*, becauſe it doth prouoke drunkenneſſe after the manner of wine:) or if there be ſcarcity of them, you muſt vſe the meale of Beanes with *Oximel* and *Syrupus acetoſus*. It ſhall be profitable alſo to waſh the ſcarified place twice a day with hote vineger, but eſpecially with *Mulſum*. For theſe by reaſon of the drineſſe, do conſume the filthineſſe and corruption, and do cleanſe it; but becauſe of their coldneſſe they do challenge of putrifaction that which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie of the euill ſomewhat remitted and ſlaked, you muſt lay aboue vpon the ſore that ointment which is commonly called *vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, made of Verdigreaſe, Alume, Honie, and Vineger, of each a like quantitie commixed and boiled together. This doth ſtop putrifaction and reſolue it: and it doth diſſeuer alſo the putrified and corrupted humour from the ſound and whole parts, and it doth cauſe it to fall and periſh. Moreouer it procureth a cruſt or ſcarre, and preſerueth and defendeth the whole parts from any infection. But if you will apply a more ſtrong and effectuall medicine, mingle Salt with the aforeſaid things: or if the euill ſhall increaſe yet more and more, miniſter ſome of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being throughly brayed & beaten together

Emptying of corrupted bloud.

After ſcarificatiō you muſt waſh the place with ſalt water.

Medicines putrifactiues.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Burning Trochiskes.

together, and then washed in Vineger and Wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Musa*, or one of those which are called of the latter sort *Calidicon*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Asphodelus*, which by reason of the burning force do separate the corruption from the sound parts. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praised and allowed of, which they call *Sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which must be dissolued either in some powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotton (which the Frenchmen call *Coton*,) and so applied betweene the sound and corrupted member: for this doth straight way stay the euill, and that truly without paine. But if necessitie requireth you must deuide the good from the euill with a certaine instrument called a probe, or slice. But in ministring medicines (that the matter may be handled more without care) you must be diligent to know the nature of the sicke body (as *Galen* hath well taught vs saying:) If the body be rusticall and hard by nature, it requireth very vehement medicines: but if it be tender and soft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infants also or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleasure in idlenesse, must haue gentle medicines ministred to them. Moreouer the nature of the parts which are euill affected must be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are some sores, which very quickly do come to matter and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and some very slowly: some also do slowly feele the force and benefite of medicines applyed, and some very soone.

Arsenicon.
Sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

When adustion is to be vsed.

Furthermore if (notwithstanding these burning medicines) the euill shall yet remaine, you must burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all these remedies are wont sometime to profit nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celsus* saith) it be a miserable helpe, that is, to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that so the other parts of the body may be without danger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching, it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and sound, after the manner of poyson. But if at any time you shall cut off this putrified and dead member, or shall lance off that which is corrupted in any member euen to the sound flesh, then by the counsell of *Galen* for more quietnesse sake, you must seare or burne with some bright instrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and sound body, for so you shall quickly stay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now adustion being done and ended, you must vse the iuyce of leekes, or (as *Paulus* saith) you must apply salt with the leekes, or some of those remedies which we haue spoken off a little before. For these do dry and bind the corruption, and do also stop the fluxe of humors. But when by vsing these remedies, rottennesse or corruption shall seeme to ceasse: that the crusts and scurfe may soone fall away, you must vse a Cataplasme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *Hydreleon*. Also that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. These through their cleansing or scouring, do resolue the crust from the flesh which lieth vnder it. Moreouer that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that also called *Macedonicum*, by moning and mollifying the matter, do bring the scurfes from the parts that lye vnder them,

If the Canker turneth into Sphacelus.

Lib. 2. Ad Glauc.

Lib. 4.

Remedies that can loosen the crusts from the seared members.

them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lieth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed in *Apium*, or *Otinum*, thorough their cleansing doth mightily draw the crusts from the whole parts without erosion or gnawing; of the like vertue also is *Iris*, or the roote of *Panax*, or of *Aristolochia*, or of *Acorus* mixed with Honie. But they are cõmonly wont to vse Butter or some other annointing thing to resolue the crusts. But when the crust is fallen off, they wash the place with Vineger, and apply this Plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Gulielmus de Saliceto*. ℞. Honie, ℔. ß. raw yolkes of egges, three or foure, of Barley meale, ℔. ß. mingle these together, and bring them to the forme of an Emplaister. But two or three dayes after, that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this Emplaister, of chosen Mirrhe, ℥. x. But in tender and yong bodies for the separation of the crust, and detersion of the filthy corruption, the meale of Tares mingled with Honie, or Frankinsence (which was vsed of *Galen*) doth abundantly suffise. These things being rightly ordered, such kind of vlcers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health with such kind of medicines as can draw together the flesh, & procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *Synulotica* and *Epolotica*. 1. Emptie out abundantly the corrupted bloud, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scarifications or sections, wash the affected member with salt water; then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores. 3. When the furie of the euil is somewhat slaked, minister *vnguentum Ægyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hote iron that place which is betweene the filthy and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, and now *Gangræna* is changed into *Sphacelus*, cut off that member very speedily which is so perished, euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behind 6. When you haue cut off that which is putrified, you must vse some hote burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the very root of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of Leekes, and other such things as do drie, binde, and stop fluxe. 8. Make no great speed to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hote instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of bloud.) 9. When rottennesse or corruption is ceassed, and you feare no more the flowing of bloud, apply those things which can draw off the crust. 10. When the crusts or scurfes be fallen from their places, you must vse the same cure as in other places.

Butyrum.

Emplastrum Gulielmi à Saliceto.

Lib. 2 ad Glauconem.

The summe of the cure of Gangræna & Sphacelus.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of bloud: and draw it out abundantly, if it flow plentifully. 3. Purifie the bloud with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularis*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of Hoppes, and Fumitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defend the heart (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those corrupted and filthy smelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified members.

Aphorismes pertaining to a Physition.

1. 2. 3. 4.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Eryſipelas and other tumours cauſed of Choler.

Fleame in the generation of humors is next vnto bloud.

ALthough fleame in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto bloud, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body, next vnto blond, then of other humours, yet becauſe tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commonly call cholericke apoſtemes) do in many things greatly conſpire and agree with bloudy tumours, it followeth (after the determination of *Phlegmone*, and other tumours conſiſting aboue nature, which proceed of bloud) that we now ſpeake of thoſe ſwellings which are cauſed of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Eryſipelata*, but of the ancient Latines *Ignes ſacri*. *Eryſipelas* therefore is the branch or bud of cholericke fluxe moſt abiding about both the skinnes, that is, both about that which outwardly couereth all the parts of the body, and alſo about that filmie and thinne skin which inwardly compaſſeth the internall parts. But oftentimes alſo it occupieth ſome of the fleſh that lyeth vnder it, as *Phlegmone* (which is the iſſue of bloudy flux moſt incident to fleſhy bodies) doth alſo poſſeſſe ſome of the skin. Therefore when very thin choler, or hote bloud, which is thin alſo in ſubſtance, (called of the latter ſort *Cholera naturalis* but of *Galen* χολὴ ξανθὴ) is ſpread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing moleſting the fleſh vnder it, and yet ſomewhat raiſing the mẽber into a tumor with a languiſhing inflammation and yellow redneſſe, and altogether doth yeeld when it is touched; this affect is properly called of *Galen*, a true and exquiſite *Eryſipelas*. But this is for one conſideration, or (as they ſay) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlceration. *Auicen* calleth it *Spina*. But when a humour of bitter choler ſhall be more thicke and ſharpe, then that it can returne againe naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that little outward skinne which the Greekes call *Epidermida*, and ſometime that exulceration of the skin in proceſſe of time pierceth ſomewhat deeply, ſo that it toucheth the inner fleſh vnder it, and then that affect is called alſo *Eryſipelas*, but with vlceration, which (as *Galen* ſaith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholericke fluxe, nor a bloudy humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then *Eryſipelas* onely, but *Galen* termeth it a diſpoſition throughly commixed with *Eryſipelas* and the inflãmation. But of that which is predominant in the mixture, is the title giuen to the euill. For when bloud ruleth, it is called *Phlegmone eryſipelatoſa*: but when choler raigneth, terme it *Eryſipelas phlegmonôſum*. But when neither hath ſuperioritie, but the accidents of them both appeare equall together in power, then that euill ſhall be called a meane betweene *Phlegmone* & *Eryſipelas*. Now alſo of the other mixtures, there ſhall be the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and ſmall humor, either of fleame or melancholy, it ſhall be called *Eryſipelas ædematôſum* or *ſchirrhoſum*. Moreouer when we ſpeake ſimply of choler, or of a bilious humour, after the manner of *Galen* and other Phiſitions, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is ſoure and blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis & certa cholera*, hauing his generation of bloud that is thin and hote. But melancholy we neuer abſolutely do terme choler, but alwaies with an adiection of the humour

Eryſipelas quid.

Eryſipelas exquiſitum.

Spina.

Eryſipelas cũ vlceratione.

Eryſipelas non legitimum.

Medium vitium.

Bilis.

mour, which ioyneth the colour of the name. Choler therefore, which is called of the Greekes χολὴ, and commonly *Cholera*, is a hote and dry humour, proceeding of the thinner and hotter part of *Chylus*, or thin and hote bloud (as we ſaid alate.) And this is two maner of wayes according to the diuiſion of the new Phyſitions, that is to ſay, naturall choler is a hot and dry humor, in ſubſtance thin, of colour yellow, or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like Orenge tawnie, but in taſte very bitter, and ſharpe or ſoure (as ſome vntruly haue affirmed.) Vnnaturall choler is ſaid to be that, which doth degenerate from the aforeſaid bilious humours, and yet it keepeth it ſelfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once paſſe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather ſome other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to tranſgreſſe the limits of his libertie or circuit two wayes. 1. One way (as wee may ſay) by it ſelfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with others. By it ſelfe and in it ſelfe it is alſo two-fold. 1. One way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *Aduſta per putrefactionem*, that is burnt through putrefaction. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *Vitellina*, is throughly concocted euen with a fierie heate, in the liuer or in the ſtomach, or in the veines; & it is made of the colour of leekes, which they alſo call *Praſſina*, or it is cauſed to be ruſty or cankred, which truly are extreame griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through admixtion, is cauſed, when as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many wayes. For if thin and watriſh fleame be mixed with it, it is made yellow, and like vnto Saffron; if thick and vicious fleame be commixed therewith, it is made like to yolkes of egs: but if burned melancholy be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis aduſta per admixtionem*. And ſo after *Auicens* minde and iudgement, there are ſixe kindes of naturall choler; with *Haly Abbas* foure onely; for he maketh no mention at all of two kindes of aduſted choler. But *Gal. 2. de virtut. naturalibus* ſaith, that there is no choler beſides nature, but that which is *vitellina*, very like both in colour & thickneſſe to the yolkes of egs: for he ſaith that *porracea & aeruginoſa bilis* are ingendred oftentimes in the ſtomach, of naughtie and corrupted humours, by reaſon of cruditie or rawneſſe of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called Bete, Onions, Colewortes. And alſo ſometime, when theſe things are not well digeſted, it ingendreth in the very veines, by reaſon of ſickneſſe, or ſome other euill diſpoſition By theſe things therfore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflāmations ingendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apoſtemes;) that is to ſay, of true, ſincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is ingendred that kinde of inflammation, which *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth a true and exquiſite *Eryſipelas*, which is as it were a paſſion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called ἀμιβὲς ἐρυσίπελας. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do ariſe three other differences, *Eryſipelas Phlegmonôdes*, *Eryſipelas adematôdes*, and *Eryſipelas Scirrhôdes*. And of choler which beſides nature is cauſed of aduſtion, by reaſon of thinneſſe or thickneſſe of the ſubſtance thereof, there are ingendred either *Herpetes eſthiomeni*, that is, *enedentes*, which are of the ſame kinde with thoſe *Eryſipelata*, which do chance with vl-

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digreſſe from his owne nature.

Bilis vitellina. Porracea. Praſſina. Aeruginoſa.

Crocea.

Auicenne. Haly.

Foure differences of inflammations coming of choler.

Verum Eryſipelas.

Three vnlawfull Eryſipelas

Herpes enedens.

ceration,

Phagedæna. Cancri vlceratio.

ceration, or there are ingendred *Phagedænæ*, which do somewhat deeply gnaw the flesh together with the skin, & there are cansed exulcerate cankers, & other such gnawing euils: there are also engendred *Cacoëthe*, that is, malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *Pustulæ corrosiuæ*. Therefore in such kinde of humours, that is truly the most thinne, which raiseth the exulcerated *Herpes*: and that most thicke, which prouoketh the Canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thickneſſe, occupieth the next place, which doth ingender *Phagedænæ*, as *Galen* hath noted *Lib.* 14. *Meth. med.* The causes of a true *Erysipelas*, as also of a true *Phlegmone*, are three, *Prægressæ*, which are called also *Primitiue*, 2. *antecedentes*, and *coniunctæ*. But *Erysipelas* is seldome cansed of any primitiue cause: notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministring of attractiue medicines, do oftentimes excite and cause the same.

Causæ veri Erysipelatis

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.

Signes of Erysipelas.

THe marks and tokens of a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, are gathered and known by conferring the same with *Phlegmone*, according to the doctrine of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* and 2. *ad Glauconem*: whereby it plainly appeareth, that a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* is a certaine *Species* of *Phlegmone*, that is, of an inflammation as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *Erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, that is, by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it slideth in againe, a small tumour rather remaining in the skin, then descending deeply, vehement heate causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *Phlegmone*: for *Erysipelas* is farre away more hote then *Phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper symptomate of a great *Phlegmone*. A biting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chanceth in *Phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgement hereof, *Erysipelas* doth chiefly lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose which is commonly called *Lepus*; then straight way it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thinneſſe of the skinne, and lightneſſe of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone *Erysipelas* is a sodaine and maruellous disease, as *Hippocrates* writeth *Lib.* 7. *Aphorisme* 19. that is to say, it is an euill symptomate, if the flesh lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *Erysipelas*, but this, as *Galen* witnesseth, chanceth very seldome. Againe, the same *Hippocrates* writeth in the Aphorisme following, that of *Erysipelas* there commeth corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith *Galen*) neuer do chance to *Erysipelata*, except it be to them which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *Erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also aboue nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *Erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime in *Erysipelas* certaine symptomates, which oftentimes by reason of their greatneſſe do exceed the very cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do

A yellowish redneſſe yeelding to the finger, a small tumour, vehement heate. Small pulse. Pricking paine. Indicia.

hinder

der the order of the cure, that is, they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene said before in *Phlegmone*.) Moreouer also *Eryſipelas* followeth the mouing of a Tertian feauer, with whoſe matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion: for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *Eryſipelas* from the outward parts to the inward, but contrariwiſe from the inward members to the outward parts, as *Hippocrates* hath written, *Lib.6. Aphor.* 25. But thoſe *Eryſipelata* which do ariſe about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* ſaith) are wont to be ſo dangerous, that except they be holpen with ſome effectuall remedie, they ſomewhat ſtrangle and choke the ſicke. *Hippocrates* also writeth, that *Eryſipelas* is very mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with child; for *Eryſipelas* being thus ingendred in the wombe, the child of neceſſitie dieth. For truly a ſharpe feuer (as *Galen* ſaith in his commentaries) oftentimes deſtroyeth it without inflammation.

Eryſipelas followeth the order of a tertian feauer.

Eryſipelata about the head are very hard to be cured.

Eryſipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the child.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the cure of Eryſipelas.

SEeing that *Eryſipelas* (as alſo *Phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and ingendred of the defluxion of humours, the method of the whole curing thereof ſhall alſo be two-fold; that is to ſay, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *Phlegmone* the order of euacuation doth ſurmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration, ſo in *Eryſipelas* refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation; for the one doth trouble and moleſt in quantitie, but the other (which is *Eryſipelas*) in quality. Therefore *Eryſipelas* muſt be greatly cooled and litle emptied, whereas contrariwiſe an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and little refrigerated. Although there be a common Chapter and ſumme of curing both affects, (as *Galen* ſaith) that is, the vacuation of the troubleſome humour: and therefore after that *Eryſipelas* hath bene cooled, we vſe thoſe medicines which can digeſt or diſcuſſe. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuerſall method which we haue ſaid to be two-fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noyſome humour,) it ſhall not be amiſſe, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the conſent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The firſt ſcope conſiſteth in the right obſeruation of a good diet. The ſecond concerneth the auerſion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *Antecedens materia*. The third conſiſteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed alreadie into the diſeaſed part, which they alſo call *Materia coniuncta*. The fourth and laſt is buſied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill ſymptomates that may happen thereunto. We ſhall eaſily diſpatch the firſt ſcope, if the applying of all thoſe things which they call *Res non naturales*, ſhall belong vnto moiſtneſſe and to coldneſſe, as is a feauer Tertian; ſeeing that *Eryſipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therefore chuſe and prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is ſomewhat cold and moiſt. In Sommer let the ſicke be in a very cold houſe ſomewhat within the ground, that is windie, and towards the North. But if there be no ſuch place to be had, and the aire be very hote, make it ready for him

Two generall orders in the cure of Eryſipelas.

Foure particular intentions of curing Eryſipelas.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Primus ſcopus.

Aer.

him your ſelfe by Art. Powre cold water verie often out of one veſſell into another, ſprinkle the pauements of the houſe daily with water that is altogether ycie and cold. Spread vpon the floore Roſes and Violets, Vine leaues and branches, Sallow boughes, and other flowers and buds which are of a cold and moiſt facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the ſicke abideth. Let him eſchue all fat, ſweete, ſowre, and hote meates. Let him eate Lettuce, Gourds, Purſlaine, Sorrell, (which they call *Acetoſa*) Rice, and other things of that kind, which do thicken and refrigerate bloud. Let him altogether abſtaine from wine. Let his drinke be Piſan broth, or Barley water. Let him keepe a temperate diet. Let his bellie be alwayes ſoft and ſoluble. Let him abſtaine from all exerciſe and mouing, eſpecially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eſchue anger, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the mind, as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleane and handſome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let theſe things ſuffice concerning the firſt ſcope. But we ſhall alſo bring to paſſe our ſecond intent about the cure of *Eryſipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away the humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *Eryſipelas* (not neceſſarily as in *Phlegmone*) we muſt draw bloud out of a veine, but we muſt alſo purge the bellie downward with ſome medicine which can expell choler, (called of the Greekes *Cholagogon*) if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth ſeeme to abound whith choler. Therefore when *Eryſipelas* doth accend and kindle feauers, and thoſe more vehement then *Phlegmone*, thoſe medicines which are exceeding hote, as the iuyce of *Scammonium* (called of the new Greekes *Diacrydion*) and that alſo which is commonly called in the ſhops *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*, are in no wiſe meete or conuenient for this diſeaſe, and therefore you muſt vſe either Rewbarbe, or that potion which of *Raſis* is called *Aqua Tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. ℞. Damaske prunes, xxiiij. *Tamarindi* that be new, ℥.x. of broken Sugar, quart. ß. to the which things to make them more effectuall, you may adde Rewbarbe that is well waſhed. But if the euill be very little and ſmall, theſe medicines called *Cholagoga* ſhall not neede, but it ſhall be ſufficient to vſe at that inſtant ſome ſharpe clyſter, (as it pleaſeth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *Eryſipelas* your labour ſhall not be truſtrate, if you ſhall begin the cure with bloudletting (if nothing do let it.) For that kind of *Eryſipelas* doth often lay hold on the face; whereupon *Paulus* commandeth, that by and by in the beginning you muſt cut a veine in the elbow, eſpecially chuſing in it the ſhoulder veine. But if that do not appeare, you muſt take that which is moſt obiect to the ſight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of bloud, he commandeth to vſe a purgation made of ſome medicine which is dedicated and appointed to driue out choler; yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commanded to cut a veine in that *Eryſipelas* which doth riſe about the head and face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *Eryſipelas*, which verie often moleſteth the face: but *Galen* ſpeaketh of a lawfull *Eryſipelas*, wherein he vſed no detraction of bloud. But in *Eryſipelas œdematoſum* or *ſcirrhoſum*, you muſt vſe a purgation which hath a mingled & manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleame, or a melancholy humor.

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus. Animi affectus.

Venus.

Secundus ſcopus.

2. ad Glauc. In a phlegmonous Eryſipelas it is good to let bloud.

And

And truly in all these things the aduice of some wise and learned Physition is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swerue or digresse. And let this be sufficient, that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chyrurgian ought not to attempt any thing at all in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physition, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Physition is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepting those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remaining, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member, and is compacted therein, by applying outwardly digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sense. But of all these kinds of tumours thus consisting aboue nature, there is a double euacuation, (*Galen Lib. 14. Therap.*) one of repulsiues to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing which doth flie the sense. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the very qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation, it doth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *Phlegmone* doth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a little before) we will vse repressiue remedies, cooling as is conuenient the afflicted member, or that part which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without any manifest cause. But the end of refrigeration is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *Erysipelas* doth by and by rest and ceasse with this; but that which is not pure, but after a sort Phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew: but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged body: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no not with digesting medicines, but that some scirrhous tumour will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therefore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigeration and moderating helpes vnto their contraries, that is, vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwaies beware and take good heed, that those things which be annointed, be very liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applied, be often washed with sponges dipped in some liquor: for the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth dry vp these things. But amongst those things which carry with them a refrigerating and repelling force, very conuenient for this affect, *Auicen* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling on of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of Nightshade, of Syngreen, of Purslaine, of *Psillii*, of Henbane, of Lettuce, of *Vmbilicus veneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Cotylidon*) of Endiue and Succorie, of fenne Lintels, of Gourds, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of very cold water, which containeth foure times as much of oyle of Roses with white waxe. ℞. oyle of Roses with oyle of vnripe Grapes made without salt,

In phlebotomy and purging, the Chyrurgian must be taught by the Physition.

Tertia intentio.

Hic Guido deprauatè citat Gal.

How much Erysipelas is to be refrigerated.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Materia refrigerantium ex Gal.

Ceratum.

which being made very ſoft and pliable in a mortar, ſprinkle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commixe a little Vineger that is thin and very cleare, you ſhall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all theſe things muſt be miniſtred cold, and often changed, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth alſo very much & that preſently, to annoint the member annoyed with *Eryſipelas*, with Ceruſe onely, or mingled with Vineger and *Lycium*, or with *Terra cimolia*, or with potters clay, with Nightſhade, or with *Spuma argenti*, with oyle of Roſes, and with *Acatia* with vineger. To this purpoſe alſo this compound following helpeth much. ℞. iuyce of Plantaine, ℥. j. oile of Roſes, ℥. iij. *Litharyri nutriti*, ℥ j. *Ceruſæ lotæ*, ℥. iij. of womans milke, ℥ ß. Let all be commixed together, and brayed in a leaden mortar, and make a Liniment. But *Litharyrum* and *Ceruſa* ought firſt to be beaten and then the oile and iuyce aforeſaid muſt be powred on them ſoftly by little and little, vntill they be throughly incorporated together the one with the other. But if you deſire greater coolers, you may cõmixe with theſe and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* mind) a little *Opium* or *Cicuta*, or Mandrake. But I thinke it good to abſtaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a ſtupefactiue nature, except great neceſſitie doth moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is ſomewhat abated, and the heate of *Eryſipelas* ſlaked, *Galen* (before any blewneſſe did appeare through refrigeration) did vſe to diſſolue the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a Cataplaſme of Barley meale, or of *cruda Polenta* (called in Greeke ὦμηλόνη) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *Phlegmone*. For euen as the ſignes of *Eryſipelas* were deſumed and knowne by the analogie of the tokens of *Phlegmone*: ſo alſo the remedies of the cure of *Eryſipelas* are to be fetched frõ the proportion of the remedies of healing *Phlegmone*. Furthermore of ſuch kind of medicines which haue a diſſoluing & breathing qualitie, very neceſſarie in this euill, there are very many, both ſimples and compounds, rehearſed of *Paulus Ægineta*, *lib.4.cap.* 21. and of *Ætius*, *lib.* 14. *de re Medica*. But now it ſhall be ſufficient to rehearſe among ſo many, one onely remedie, which of all the reſt ſeemeth in my opinion to be moſt excellent, ℞. of the tender leaues of *Althæa*, ℔. j. boyle them in *Hydrelæum*, and being well boyled, bray them well together, putting therunto of oile of Roſes ℥. iiij. *Argenti ſpumæ*, and *Ceruſæ*, ana. ℥. ij. ß againe plaine or ſmooth thẽ with the iuyce of Coriander, or Syngreene, or Nightſhade: then put thereunto a few crummes of bread, and annoint them after the manner of an Emplaiſter. But if peraduenture blewneſſe ſhall not occupy the place (the skin being cut before) you muſt lay a Cataplaſme aboue vpon it, and ſprinkle the place abundantly, as *Galen* hath commanded, with hote water: for it doth digeſt and waſh the wound. Alſo water and ſalt brine in the meane ſeaſon ſhall auaile to nourish or cheriſh the place, when it is ſomewhat thicke and groſſe, which things do ſcoure and cleanſe the thickneſſe thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Eryſipelas*, which is the correction of the accidents, is perfected (as we haue ſaid in the cure of *Phlegmone*) when as we ſhall returne and driue backe the recourſe of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and

A compound medicine.

Euacuation of the ioyned matter by euaporatiues. ὦμηλόνη.

Hydrelæum is a mixture of water & oyle.

Si liuor iam locũ occuparit.

Quarta intentio.

the

the heate. For these symptomates are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *Phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedy to asswage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues and roots of Henbane, which you must roll vp in tow and seeth them with Prunes; then commixe them with the ointment commonly called *Populeon*, or with Swines greace (as is said before in the cure of *Phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chance to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *Vnguentum album* or *Vnguentū de Lythargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *Scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuall. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our minds and memorie. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of *Galen* these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of blond. 2. If the bodie be full of choler, and the affect be great, purge the bellie downeward with the medicine of *Cholagogon*. 3. If the disease be little and smal, and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole body (as you must) annoint the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderatly represse and abundantly refrigerate, euen to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieued member altered, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceassed, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be throughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries, that is, vnto digestiues, or discussiues & drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelata* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes, you must scarifie, and afterward apply a Cataplasme of Barley meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisite or true, but phlegmonous, you may let bloud without fearing any thing, specially if bloud do abound in the body.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heate.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated

Seuen Aphor. out of Galen concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pushes.

De Herpete.

THOSE tumours aboue nature which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall and hidden choler, that is, which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sort of Physitions and also of Chyrurgians, do call *Mala cholericæ pustulæ*: But the Grecians, as *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and *Paulus*, do call them *Herpetæ*, which word doth almost sound and agree with the Latines, as *Malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For *ἕρπω* in Greeke, is all one with *serpo* in Latine, whereupon *ἕρπης* is called *serpens*; yet *Herpes* doth not perfectly signifie among the Physitions *Malū quod serpit*, but a certaine kind of disease whereof we now intreate: therefore the creeping euill extendeth and stretcheth further then *Herpes*; for *Phagedenæ* are also called

Pustulæ cholericæ vulgò appellatæ Herpetes.

Formicæ Auicennæ. *serpentia vlcera*, creeping vlcers. But *Auicen* called all these kinds of pushes *Formicæ*, and *Galen* numbreth them among inflammations, but *Celsus* seemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *sacer ignis. Lib. 5. cap. 28.* Herpes therefore is caused, when yellow choler, vnnaturall alone, and secret, that is to say, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into some member, and there remaineth: whose substance if it be any thing thicke and sharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skin, euen to the flesh which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of *Hippocrates* and other Grecians, ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος, but of the Latines *Herpes exedens* or *depascens*, an eating or feeding *Herpes*; and it is called 14. *Therap.* of *Galen*, by this absolute name, *Herpes*. But if choler be somewhat thinne, and not so thicke and hote, it exciteth small whelkes outwardly in the superficies of the skinne (for that it doth not onely as it were burne but scald) like vnto the seed of Millet or Hirse: by reason of which similitude and likenesse, the affect is then termed of the Latines *Miliaris herpes*: but of certaine of the Grecians after Hippocrates time, it was called for the same reason κέγχρια: for κέγχρις in Greeke, is called *Milium* with vs. And this kind of species of *Herpes* (*Galen* witnessing the same, *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*) doth borrow his name or title of the generall word, seeing that the same *Galen* calleth it *Herpes* simply and without addition. Notwithstanding in another place by the name of *Herpes*, *Galen* calleth it *Herpes esthiomenos*, that is, *exedens*, as afterward shall be said. But this kinde doth not altogether cause the vlcer, as the other doth which is called *exedens*, but as hath bene said, it exciteth little small pushes to the likenesse of *Milium*, which pushes in processe of time, when they are broken out, do turne vnto an vlcer. Therefore not without great reason or cause did *Oribasius* and certaine other also before *Galens* time, iudge and thinke, that in this kind of euill, there was mixed with choler some thinne fleame, which did bring forth those little pushes, whereupon it was called of some *pustulosus Herpes*. But the other which is called *Esthiomenos*, is not so mixed with fleame, but seemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with erosion, which continually affecteth the skin, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For *Esthiomenos* is all one with *erodens* or *exedens*. And truly this euill is of one and the same kinde with a pustulous and exulcerate *Erysipelas*, from the which notwithstanding it somewhat differeth by reason of the thinnesse of that bilious humour (whereof both of them do take their beginning.) That is that which *Galen* testifieth in these words: It is (saith he) a very thinne humour which raiseth *Herpes*, and so thinne truly, that it passeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euery where of a fleshie substance, but also through the very skin, euen vnto the outward little skin (which is called of the Greekes *Epidermida*) which onely because it stayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it should also pierce through this, after the manner of a sweate, it should in no wise excite any vlcer; for that is a common thing vnto vlcers which do arise of a biting humor, which vlcers they call *Spontanea*, because the humour which causeth them is stayed, and tarrieth still in their going out or issue: hitherto *Galen*. When he nameth *Herpes* simply and without any addition, he meaneth *Herpes esthiomenos*, as it is easie to be knowne by the ioyning together thereof, by the signes and cure; and so

When Herpes is caused.

Two kinds of Herpes.

1. ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος. i. *exedens, vel depascens.*

2. κέγχρια, *siue Herpes miliaris.*

Lib. 14. Ther.

Ex Paulo & Gal.

Lib. de tumoribus præter naturam.

Lib. 4. Metho. medendi.

The cholericke humour, which causeth Herpes is very thinne.

in

in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is simply and absolutely called *Herpes*, as in that little booke *de Tumoribus præter naturam*, where the same *Galen* writeth thus of that same kind of *Herpes* word for word; *Herpes* also feedeth and gnaweth vpon those parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skin onely. But almost all the barbarous sort of Chyrurgians, euen those of late time, do comprehend both these kinds of *Herpes*, viz. *Miliaris* and *Exedens*, vnder this title of *Formicæ*, to whom both in this thing, and in many other also, *Auicen* first gaue the occasion of error; who being deceiued by the likenesse of the name, because the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ*, that is, *Formicæ*, a certaine kind of *Verrucæ*, hath through a maruellous ouersight, euen in the same Chapter, confounded those *Verrucæ* with *Herpetes*. *Guido* notwithstanding maketh a difference betweene *Herpes* and *Formica*, and confoundeth the name of *Formica* sometimes with *Verrucæ*, which the Greeks call *Myrmeciæ* and *Acrochordonæ*, sometime with *Herpes exedens*, which (I meane *Herpes comedens*) is sometime named of the same *Guido Herpestes*, somtime absolutely *Herpes*, who also thought this *Herpes* to be nothing else but a pustulous and vlcerated *Erysipelas*, when this notwithstanding, as we haue alleadged out of *Galen*, doth differ from the other by reason of the thinnesse of the humour. For that choler which exciteth *Herpes*, is thinner then that which causeth an vlcerate *Erysipelas*. Furthermore *Erisipelas*, which chanceth with vlceration, doth not onely occupie the skin, but with it also it annoyeth some part of the flesh vnder it. But *Herpes*, whereof we now intreate, layeth hold on the skin onely & exulcerateth it. Therefore although these euils are of one and the same kinde, (as *Galen thought*) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Those whelkes also which the interpreter of *Auicen* and the vnlearned companie of Physitions, do terme *Morbili*, *Hippocr. lib. 3. Epidemiarum* hath comprehended vnder *Herpes*. But these *Morbili* are caused of a more thin and slender matter, then those pushes which are commonly called *Variolæ*. For these (as *Auicen* writeth) proceed of bloud, but the other are caused through the admixtion of choler & bloud. But if any man do long or desire to know what name the ancient Physitiõs did bequeath vnto these pustulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latin they are called of *Plinie*, *Papulæ*, and sometime *pituitæ eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of *Hippocrates lib. 3. Epidemiarũ*, *Ecthymata*, of *Galen*, *Exanthemata*. But the signes, iudgements and causes of both kinds of *Herpes*, may sufficiently be knowne by those things that went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing these euils called *Herpetes*, (as in other such like voluntary vlcers which haue their originall of a biting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obserued and marked. The first is, that the confluxion of the humor vnto the affected part be stopped and letted. The second is, to make euacuation, of that, whatsoeuer is flowne already into the aggrieued member, and sticketh fast in the same. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finish our first intent, by purging the whole body with some medicine that can bring forth the humour whereof the euill doth grow, and when the body is throughly emptied, by repressing & driuing backe the humor that floweth. Therefore in *Herpes exedens* we must vse some medicine which can prouoke choler downward, seeing (as

Herpes exulcerateth onely the skinne.

Auicen confoundeth myrmeciæ with herpetes.

Herpes Esthiomenos and Erysipelas vlceratum, are all one.

Morbili sunt ex Herpetum genere.

Variolæ.

Papularum eruptiones.

Ecthymata.

Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of Herpes.

1. 2. 3.

Primus scopus.

Herpes requireth the medicine Cholagogon.

we haue (aid before) a pure and ſincere bilious humor doth procreate this euil. It hapneth therefore that in reſpect of the emptying of the whole body, *Comedentes Herpetes* muſt be cured like vnto *Eryſipelata*. Therfore becauſe it is a thin and wateriſh humor which cauſeth this euill, *Galen* hath ſufficiently declared to mollifie & ſoften the belly gently, or to prouoke vrine with thoſe things which can moderately cauſe the ſame. But in the other kind of *Herpetes*, which by reaſon of the ſimiliude which it hath with *Milium*, we haue ſaid to be called in Greeke *Miliaris* and *Cenchria*, there is required ſome remedie which is of a mixed faculty, that is, which can purge forth both choler and fleame. For ſome haue thought, and that not without great reaſon, (as *Galen* ſaith) that in this euill there is ſome fleame commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the body and cauſeth the euill, being emptied out (as it is required) you muſt apply thoſe medicines which can repreſſe & keepe backe the flowing of the humour; for then miniſtring of them ſhall be more without danger, and more conuenient alſo, ſeeing that (as *Galen* ſaith) if one do thruſt backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging remaineth yet in the bodie, to the bowels and great veines, it will not cauſe any ſenſible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantity of the humour be great, it ſometime coucheth it ſelfe in ſome principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not euacuated, either by purging downeward, or by vrine, or by the skin, which includeth the whole body. But repreſſiues and repulſiues be not onely thoſe which do bind, but alſo thoſe which can refrigerate without any aſtriction. Of which nature are theſe, Lettuce, Knotgraſſe, fenne or pond Lintels, Purſlaine, Endiue, Syngreene, and other of that ſort, which were very conuenient alſo for *Eryſipelas*. But thoſe medicines which beſide their cooling, are alſo apt by nature to moiſten *Herpetes*, eſpecially *depaſcentes*, do in no wiſe require, but they do onely admit thoſe refrigeratiues which can alſo greatly drie vp. For thoſe remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and drie, as is Nightſhade, are not ſufficient for them. Therefore by *Galens* counſell you muſt in the beginning lay vpon them the yong tender buds of the Vine, Bramble leaues, of *Rubum caninum*, and Plantaine. After apply alſo with theſe Lintels, ſometime Honie & Barley meale. Alſo miniſter that Cataplaſme *ſine Semperuiuo*, which is appointed for thoſe phlegmonous tumours which proceed of fluxe; for it doth repell that which floweth, and it drieth vp that which is contained in the affected member, and it ſtrengtheneth the parts about it. The beginning of the being paſt, this remedy auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplaſme of the rinds of Pomegranates ſodden in wine, and of *Rhu* or *Rhus*, that is, of the ſeeds of the ſhrub *Coriarium* (which of the late Phyſitions is called *Sumach*) and of the meale of Barley. But by this Cataplaſme you ſhall very wel accomplish the ſecond intention or ſcope of curing *Herpes*, becauſe it is of ſufficient power to digeſt that which is flowed already into the affected place: for it appeareth euidētly, that thoſe remedies which haue a repreſſing faculty, ought to exceed in the generation of the vlcer; but when the vicious humour doth ceaſſe to flow any more into the affected part, then thoſe medicines are requiſite which do digeſt. As concerning our third intent, which declareth the

Herpes miliaris requireth a remedie which can purge both choler and fleame.

Reprimendi tempus.

Lib. 14. Therap.

Repreſſiues are not to be vſed if the humour be plentifull.

Reprimentium materia.

Theſe remedies which do coole & moyſten are not meete for herpes exedens.

Repreſſiues meete for herpes exedens.

Cataplaſma.

Sumach.

Theſe things do accompliſh our ſecond intention.

cure

cure of the vlcer, it behoueth you briefly to know these things following, viz. That euery vlcer whether it cometh of the owne accord, or be caused of some accidentall cause, doth desire to be dried vp by some medicine (as *Hippocrates* saith) that is not sharpe, byting, or vehemently prouoking except, when the vlcers be malicious and full of corruption; for such euils (saith *Galen*) require more sharpe medicines, and those which haue euen the power of fire, as is, *Mysos* and *Chalcitis*, and *Arsenicum*, and Lime, and *Sandaracha*, and other things of that kind, which burne as hote as fire. Those places therefore that are exulcerated in *Herpes exedens*, must be tended with Pils, and Trochisks, written for the cure of *Herpes* in those bookes which are called *Pharmaceutici*: which remedies, when necessity compelleth vs to vse thē, must be throughly washed in *Passum* or in some other sweete wine, or if sweet wine be not ready at hand, in thin and somewhat sharpe wine, which is not too old (that is, which for age hath no sharpe taste) or else in *Posca aquosa* (which they call *Oxycratum*.) *Paulus* in *Herpes* which annoyeth vnder the skin, vseth these remedies; the scowrings of Lead steeped in the iuyce of smooth Rew, or a Cerate of Mirtles in stead of Rew. Another of old wooll, washed and burnt about a torch, ℥ xij. ß. of Waxe, ℥ xxv. of the scourings of Lead, ℥ j. of Goates tallow, trimmed and washed with water, ℥ xxv. of Mirtles, ℥ v. But for those *Herpetes* that do gnaw and bite vehemently, called *depascentes*, he chargeth to vse this remedie. ℞. of the rind of sweete Pomegranats, ℥ vj. *Argenti spuma*, ℥ vj. of washed wooll cleauing to the torch or to some sweete wood, and that burnt, ℥ iij. of Waxe, ℥ xij. of Ceruse, ℥ viij. of Frankinsence, Alume sciſſible, ana. ℥ j. let them be steeped in wine or in oile of Mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long continuance, those Trochiskes abouesaid, and other such like medicines which are appointed to cure *Herpetes*, must be washed neither in sweet wine nor in *Posca aquosa*, but rather in wine that is somewhat sharpe, especially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you must vse white wine But those medicines which are most effectuall and most meete at that time, when the vlcers be inueterate, are the Pils of *Musa*, *Andron*, and *Polyida*, whose descriptions are set downe in the end of the cure of *Carbunculus*, and those Trochiskes also, which of *Auicen* and the later sort of Physitions are called *Calidicon* and *Aldaron*. But those *Herpetes* which do onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *Miliares*, must in no wise be enioyned to any of those medicines before rehearsed (if we wil credit *Galen*) for they be very vehement and do greatly drie. But those medicines whatsoeuer they be, which haue the nature and force of *Glaucium*, that is, of *Memytha*, shall suffice these vlcers, and you must wash them with this, but specially with water. But if these things shall nothing auaile, you must also commixe Vineger therewith. Also if you annoint it with iuyce of Nightshade, or Plantaine, you shall helpe it greatly. Hitherto haue we spoken of *Herpes*. Now because in that which we haue said, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *Formicæ*, which both the Arabians, and the latter sort of Physitions do erroneously, as we haue said, confound with *Herpetes*: this place doth require that we set downe a few words, both of them and of other tumours and increasings appearing in the skin, which the Latines call *Verrucæ*.

The cure of the vlcer in herpes is our third scope.

Euery vlcer must be dried vp.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

How exulcerated places must be looked to.

Posca.

Remedies take out of Paulus.

Aliud.

Ad herpetes depascentes.

For inueterate vlcers.

What is to be done in pustule miliares if they turne into an vlcer.

Lib. secundo ad Glauconē.

Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ.

Verrucæ. Porra.

THose little tumors, or low ſwellings, which are ſeene to appeare in the skinne like little hillockes, the Latines haue fitly called *Verrucæ*; for *Verruca* ſignifieth properly the higheſt part of a mountaine or hill: but the common ſort call them *Porra*, Leeks, becauſe ſometime they haue certaine threads lying betweene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of Leekes. The Greeks haue no name wherein they may comprehend all thoſe kindes of *Verrucæ*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be theſe, μυρμηκία, ἀκροχορδόνες, ἄλφος, Θύμιον. *Verrucæ* therefore of them be called *Myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were ſitting iuſt to the ground, and when they be touched, they are felt painefull like vnto the biting or ſtinging of an Ant; whereupon their name is giuen vnto them; for the Greekes do call μύρμηκα, *Formica*. Wherefore the Latins applying the name thereof to the Greeke word, haue called *Formicæ*, *Verrucæ*, & for their forme and faſhion, *Seſſiles Verrucæ*. Theſe euils, ſaith *Celſus*, *lib.* 5. do grow either in the palmes of the hands or in the ſoles of the feete: but theſe take deeper roote, and are lower and harder then a wart, and do cauſe greater paine: & they ſend forth more ſtore of bloud, and they ſcarce at any time exceed the bigneſſe of a Hop. But *Acrochordon* is a *Verruca* that is as it were hanging, & of a more narrow foundation, that is, a certaine round bigneſſe or growing vp in the skin which hath the foundation, that is, the neather part, very ſtraight to the skin. It is ſo called becauſe it ſeemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a ſtring. By this difference therfore *Acrochordones* are diſtinguiſhed from *Myrmecia*, becauſe they are very ſmall at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large & broad: contrariwiſe *Myrmecia* (as hath been ſaid) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very ſmall and ſlender. But theſe oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *Acrochordones* do alwayes appeare aboue the skin, (as *Gal.* 14 *lib. de morbis curandis* hath manifeſtly declared.) Beſide theſe things *Acrochordones* (as *Celſus* ſaith) do grow vp thicke and many together, and do moſt trouble children, and oftentimes they fall againe ſodainly, and ſometime they cauſe but meane inflammation: there are ſome alſo which are turned into corrupted matter, but they ſeldome paſſe the greatneſſe of a Beane. They be called of *Auicen*, *Claui*, but the Latins do terme *Claui*, *Verrucæ albæ*, becauſe they be like to the round heads of nailes. Theſe do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the ſoles of the feete, where they do cauſe great paine: the Greekes call them ἄλφους, but *Auicen*, *Almiſmar*. Theſe be often cauſed of a bruiſe, and ſometime otherwiſe. But *Thymion* or *Thymon*, in Engliſh a wart, is called of *Celſus* and of the Greeks *Verruncula*, a litle hillocke, appearing aboue the body, which at the neather part next the skinne is verly ſmall (as *Acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is alſo ſomewhat hard, and very ſharpe in the top, which doth repreſent the colour of the floure Thyme, whereupon the name is giuen vnto it, and alſo it is eaſily ſpread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth ſome bloud, and is almoſt as great as an Ægyptian Beane, ſeldome

There be diuerſe kindes of Verrucæ.

Myrmecia.

Seſſiles Verrucæ.

Acrochordon penſilis verruca.

The difference between Acrochordon and Myrmecia.

Claui.

ἄλφοι.

Almiſmar.

Thymion.

Thymij magnitudo.

ſeldome bigger, but ſometime leſſer: ſometime there groweth vp one alone, ſometime many together, either in the ankles of the feete, or in the handes, or in the ſoles of the feete. But the worſt *Thymia* of all are in the filthie parts of the body, where they do commonly bleed. *Auicen* ſeemeth to haue named this kinde of *Verruca*, *Tuſium*, or (as another tranſlation hath) *Tarſeum*. Of this kinde of *Verrucæ* be thoſe euils alſo, which *Auicen* called *Cornua*, not much differing from the other ſorts, but that they be ſomewhat long, and are turned crooked againe, like vnto hornes. The euils called *Calli* (called of the Greekes alſo Τύλλοι) do not much differ from the aforenamed *Clani*, but that they be of themſelues without griefe and nothing painefull, and of the colour of the skin wherein they are reſident; neither do they ingender of themſelues or of their owne accord, but of the hardneſſe of the skin cauſed by labour.

Thymia in obſcœnis peſſima.

Cornua.

Calli. Τύλλοι.

CHAP. XIX.

The iudgement and cure of Verrucæ

AMong all theſe euils *Acrochordon* and *Thymion* are oftentimes (as *Celſus* reporteth) ended, and do heale of themſelues, and the leſſer they be, the ſooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Clani* do ſcarce at any time ceaſſe without curing. If *Acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behind it, and therefore it groweth not againe. But where *Thymion* and *Clauus* be cut off, there riſeth vp vnderneath a little round roote, which deſcendeth downe ſomewhat deepe into the fleſh, and there abiding, it doth cauſe the aforeſaid euils to grow againe. *Myrmecia* do holde faſt with verie broade rootes, and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is profitable to cut off *Clauus*, and then ſprinckle it ouer with hoate water; for ſo it doth waxe ſoft and tender without any more ado: and if it doth bleed, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaſſeth. It is alſo taken away, by cleanſing it round about, & by laying on it Roſin mixed with the beaten powder of *Lapis molaris*. But the other kindes (as the ſame *Celſus* affirmeth) muſt be cured with hote medicines. Now the fitteſt remedy for the other euils, is that which is made of the dregs of wine; and that medicine is good for *Myrmecia* which is made of Alume and yellow Oaker. *Paulus Ægineta lib. 4. cap.* 15. rehearſeth very many remedies, which do take away and vttetly aboliſh theſe *Verrucæ*, eſpecially thoſe which be *Seſſiles* and *penſiles*. Of the which kinde are *Elaterium* (which is the iuyce of wilde Cucumbers) rubbed on with Salt, the barke of Frankinſence with Vineger, rathe ripe Figges, which are ripe before their time, with Vineger, meale and *Nitrum*. Alſo the iuyce of *Tythymalus*, in Engliſh Spurge, the head of the fiſh *Smaras* ſalted and burnt, the ruſt of ſome mettall with quicke brimſtone, that is, which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *Ocymum* with ſhoemakers bleach, (which the Greekes call *Chalcanthum*,) the water of the greene twigges of the Vine burnt in the fire, ſheeps doung with Vineger, goates gall annointed, the fruite of the great herbe *Heliotropium* applyed by it ſelfe, or miniſtred with wine. Rew with *Nitrum* and Pepper, *Nitrũ* with the vrine of a yong boy not yet accuſto-

Acrochordon, Thymion. Lib. 5. Myrmecia. Clani.

Myrmecia.

The cure of Verrucæ out of Paulus.

Aqua ex ſarmentis diſtillans.

Stercus bubulum. med with venereous acter, oxes dung ministred in Vineger. But these which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *Myrmecia* & *Acrochordones*, are greatly also effectuall for those euils called *Clani* and *Thymia*. They *Lacertæ caput.* do vse also the head of a Lisard to take away *Myrmecia*, *Acrochordones*, and *Clani*. There are some which do boile the heads of salted fishes in that water which distilleth out of greene branches, while they be burning: which they do declare to be a most excellent remedie for the aforesaid euils. Other some to extinguish these diseases, do make a Liniment of the rust of brasse, (which of the late Phisitions is called *Viride æris & flos æris*) of Brimstone, and of the distilled water of Vine branches. And this is the onely method of curing which they are wont to vse in racing out of *Verrucæ*, that is, by gnawing and scalding medicines. But this one thing is most diligently to be obserued in administring such kinde of medicines, which *Celsus* doth admonish vs of in his fift booke: namely, that those parts which are about the euils, ought to be couered with leaues, lest they also be exulcerate; for which cause some do annoint the places about the diseases, with ointment of Bolearmoniacke, with *Terra sigillata*, with Rose water and Vineger. Furthermore we abolish *Acrochordones*, *Myrmecia*, and *Thymia*, not onely with these aforesaid burning medicines, but also with the flame of fire, or with some hote instrument rightly *Other orders of curing.* applied to them. Oftentimes also we cut them off. But sometime we do take them away and vtterly destroy them, by a ligature cunningly made and prepared for them, (as it hapneth in that true disease called *Ficus*) or else by setting too the foreteeth, as some at Rome in *Galens* time were wont to do. But if you shall apply fire or some hote instrument to *Verruca*, you must prouide that a plate of Iron or some such thing, being bored through, be made ready *How Verrucæ are safely burned.* for the burnt sore, the hole whereof must so fitly comprehend the same, that none of the skin about it may be seene. A dustion being now made, you must resolue the crust with Butter, or with some other annointing medicine. Afterward you must cure the sore like vnto other vlcers. But how *Myrmecia*, which *The cure of Myrmecia being equal with the skinne.* do not appeare out of the skin, but altogether equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off, *Galen* teacheth very well *lib. 14. Metho. Med.* where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuised a new *A new cure of Myrmecia out of Galen.* order to cure these *Verrucæ*; first, he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them, or by sucking them, and then (which did seeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote; afterward setting too his foreteeth, he vtterly destroyed them. But *Acrochordones*, appearing aboue the skin, he straight way *Another cure of Myrmecia, Lib. 14. Meth. Med.* bit off with his teeth, and so quickly dispatched them. *Galen* also setteth downe another double manner to cure these euils saying: But a Chyrurgian being somewhat exercised in manuall practise may easily cut off these *Verrucæ*, both *Scalprum.* with that instrument made to the forme of a Mirtle leafe, and with that also *Scolopomacherion.* which the Greekes call *Scolopomacherion*: this alwaies prouided, that the sore be kept and separated from the skin or parts about it. We also bring forth *Another cure inuented, by a quill.* *Myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle thereof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equall with the thicknesse of *Myrmecia*, that it may pinch it round about in euery place, which being afterward turned about the sore, and enforced downward, it will quickly bring

forth the whole *Myrmecia* together with the very roote; but you must marke, that the very end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not only thin & slender, but also sharpe & strong. The quill therfore of an old Cocke, or rather of an Eagle is very fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off onely towards the roote, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehend *Myrmecia*. And truly by this abscession, if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Art. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vlcer which remaineth (*Verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp and brought vnto a scarre, as other vlcers be.

Prima scitè radicem versus abscindenda.

CHAP. XX.

Of Oedema, and other cold, flegmaticke, and flatuous tumours.

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours, we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their original of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *Oedema* For as *Erysipelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *Oedema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humour. *Oedema* therefore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vnpainfull tumour: or it is a certaine thinne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmatick humour that floweth into some member of the body, so that the same *Galen in lib. 14. Ther.* thought of *Oedema*, that it was a disease and no symptomate. For truly we know (sayth he) that *Oedema* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, that is to wit, of a flegmaticke humour or vaporous spirit, gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges and feete, which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euils called *Phthoe*, and *Cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformites of the body. For in those dangerous dispositions, *Oedema* is an accidentall symptomate of that affect which oppresseth the man, that is, an accident necessarily following, which, requireth no seuerall or proper cure (as afterward shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences, that is, by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *Oedema*. A true *Oedema* cometh of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else but a raw bloud not throughly digested, which is found in a lumpe of bloud, very fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *Oedema* proceedeth of vnnaturall fleame. That we may not deale herein any thing obscurely, naturall fleame is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour inclining to a certaine whiteneſſe; but in taſt, and (if I may speake it) in smell, it is sweete and pleasant: vnnaturall fleame is that which doth degenerate and differ from that fleame before described, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite and liberty, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *Phlegma* or fleame, but some other humour. But this fleame chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his own naturall and proper substance it is changed, without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly hapneth very often: for it is turned either into a waterish

Oedema quid.

Oedema est symptoma.

Oedema duplex.

Verum.

Illegitimum.

What fleame is

What, & after what sort, fleame doth degenerate from his owne nature.

wateriſh ſubſtance, or into a flatuous ſubſtance, or into a very thin matter, and then it is called *Phlegma aquoſum, flatuoſum,* or *tenue:* or it is turned into a thicke and viſcous ſubſtance, which maketh the fleame very groſſe & clammy, and through a greater, or (as we ſay) through a further induration, it is cauſed to looke like a Plaiſter, or like glaſſe; or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both ſalt, nitrous, and corroſiue. The other way vnnaturall fleame is cauſed through admixtion, that is, when as ſome other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either bloud, or choler, or melancholie. If bloud be commixed with fleame, it is ſweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is cauſed to be ſalt: if melancholie, it is made ſoure and ſharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of naturall fleame after the opinion of *Auicen. Haly Abbas* appointeth foure onely. But *Galen* (ſaith *Guido*) ſeemeth to aſſigne vnto it onely two kinds, that is, ſalt and ſowre, although in his ſecond booke of the differences of feuers, and in his ſecond booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places alſo he maketh mention of the fleame called *Vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyne it ſelfe with ſowre fleame, by reaſon of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By theſe things therefore it is gathered, that of fleame there are ingendred eight *ſpecies* or differences of tumours beſides nature. For, firſt of fleame that is naturall cometh a true and a lawfull *Oedema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleame, by reaſon of admixtion, there proceed three other differences of tumours, becauſe that three other humors may be commixed therewith; and theſe be they, *Oedema phlegmonôdes, Oedema eryſipelatôdes*, and *Oedema ſcirrhôdes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleame, through the alteration of his naturall ſubſtance, there ariſe foure other differences of tumours. For firſt of windy and vaporous fleame doth come that tumor, which of the Latines is properly called *Inflatio*, but commonly among the Phyſitions it is termed *Apoſtema ventoſum*, a windie apoſteme. Secondly, of wateriſh fleame there proceedeth a wateriſh apoſteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, & groſſe fleame, there are ingendred thoſe tumours which ſome do call *Lenes nodi*, and there are alſo ingendered flegmaticke abſceſſions, which they do commonly call *Exituræ phlegmaticæ*. But theſe are called of the interpreter of *Auicen, Dubelet frigida*, of which ſort are theſe, *Steatomata, Atheromata*, and *Meliceridæ*: *Ganglia* alſo, which be called of *Auicen, Glandulæ*, & other of that kind which ſhal be ſpoken of in that which followeth. Now of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may ſay) of caked fleame, there do ariſe all thoſe hard knots, which are moſt found in the ioints, and thoſe euils alſo called *Strumæ*, which are cõmõly called *Scrofulæ*. Fourthly of corrupted & putrified fleame, there do come *Fiſtulæ*, & other vlcers which they call *Scrufuloſa*. The cauſes of *Oedema*, as alſo of other tumors beſides nature are threefold. Firſt, primitiue cauſes are theſe: a fall frõ ſome high place, a ſtripe, a naughty diet. Secondly, antecedent cauſes, as the abundance of a flegmatick humor running downe into ſome mẽber of the body. Thirdly, *coniunctæ cauſæ* is the very fleam which is already ſtuffed in the member that is beſet with a rumor. The ſignes of *Oedema* are theſe, a looſe and ſoft tumor, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the maner of a caue or den, and riſeth not vp againe at the remouing of the finger, but retaineth the very footſtep or marke of that which preſſeth it. There

Galen appointeth two kinds of fleame.

8. *Differences of tumours beſide nature coming of fleame.*

Three cauſes of œdema.
1.
2.
3.

Signa œdematu.

is felt very ſmall paine, or almoſt none at all; very little heate, a very white colour, or (as ſome will haue it) a meane betweene whiteneſſe and paleneſſe, and other ſuch like ſignes, which do teſtifie the dominion and power of fleame. *Oedema* (as other tumours alſo) hath foure times, the beginning, the augmenting, the ſtate, and the declination of the tumour. This kind of tumour is moſt cured by reſolution, or exhalation, but ſeldome by ſuppuration, very often by turning and changing them into knots or kirnels called *Nodi*, or into other increaſings (as they call them) which are termed of the Grecians *Apoſtemata*, but of the Latines *Abſceſſus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finiſhing of theſe kinds of tumours are handled before in our generall diſcourſe of tumours. Theſe œdematous tumours are rather excited in the winter time, then at other ſeaſons, for then very much fleame is gathered together in mens bodies. Theſe tumours alſo do greatly and very often trouble old men, and them which be giuen to gluttony. *Indicia.*

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema cauſed of a flegmaticke humour flowing into ſome member.

BEcauſe *Oedemata*, after the manner of other tumours, are raiſed through the fluxe of humours into ſome member, the ſcope and order of their cure ſhall be alſo twofold. 1. The one is, to diſſolue the ſubſtance of thoſe humours which now do occupie the member. 2. The other is, to withſtand and reſtraine the fluxe. And as the one ſcope doth excell the other, ſo the remedies of their cure muſt be commixed together the one with the other, either ſomewhat plentifully or ſomewhat ſparingly. When therefore the order of reſtraining ſhall ouercome that which counſelleth vs to vſe euacuating and digeſting remedies, the force of reſtrictiues muſt be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of reſtriction, the nature and vertue of digeſtiue or diſcuſſiue and drying medicines muſt of neceſſitie excell in the mixture. Moreouer, both the plentifull fluxe, and the ſmall deale of matter in the affected part, doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of reſtrictiue medicines muſt be more effectuall, and of greater force. Contrariwiſe you muſt vſe a greater meaſure of drying and digeſting medicines, when matter aboundeth in the member very plentifully, and the fluxe very little. But in an old and inueterate *Oedema*, and that which is alreadie ingendred, you ſhall not vſe any longer this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you ſhall apply ſuch things as can diſperſe and diuide the matter. Which thing is alſo diligently to be obſerued in all other continuall vlcers. But *Oedema*, which is an euill ſymptomate following other dangerous affects, as leanneſſe of the body, the Dropſie, and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *Cachexia*, doth deſire no proper, peculiar, or ſeuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill affect wherof it firſt groweth. Yet ſomewhat is to be remitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the ſtrength or increaſe the chiefe affect, or elſe hinder the cure. It ſhall therefore be ſufficient (if it ſhall need any cure) to rub diligently the ſwelling place, ſometime with *Oxyrhodinum*

Curandi œdematis ſcopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

The order of curing an old œdema.

Oedematis ſpecialis eſt curatio.

Oxyrhodinum, sometime with oile mingled with Salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* and salt. For this kind of friction doth slake the tumour, and mitigateth the paine, if it be prouoked through too much distention (as sometime it chanceth:) *Oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oile with salt hath power to digest and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *Oxyrhodinum* with salt, doth partly digest and drie vp, and partly restraine and stop the affluxion of humours. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawfull *Oedema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thinne fleame: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say. 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the flegmaticke humour, which they call *æquatio*, an equall diuision, and in purging the same. 3. In repressing, dissoluing and drying vp the humor that is flowed already, and now doth occupie the member. 4. And last of all, in correcting and remouing the symptomates or accidents which do follow *Oedema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions whereby we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of sixe vnnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applyed to the sicke body, if they shall all decline vnto heate and drinesse, with a certaine attenuation or diminishing.

Foure particular orders to be kept in curing a lawfull Oedema.

Prima intentio.

Aer. Therefore chuse and prepare a thinne and drie aire.

Potus. Let him take for his drink wine that is fined, and cleane from dregs, cleare, white, or somwhat red, which they call Claret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and allayed a little with water.

Cibus. Let his bread be very well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheepe, or the flesh of the birds of mountaines & of the plaines, and those rather rosted then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, potherbes, and other fat meats. Let him abstaine from things that be vnleauened, raw, and verie moist. Let him not eate of any kind of pulse or cheese, nor of vntimely and vnripe fruits, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in gravellie places, and those also either rosted or boiled in wine.) Rosted meates generally are better then sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the Baker can prouide. Let him eate little, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the bellie be bound, loose it with Figs, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore fiue or sixe drie Figs, and fill them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning, or before dinner. Let the bodie be exercised moderately, if so be the affected member can permit the same without hurt.

Somnus. Let his sleepe be little and short.

Balneum. Let him altogether auoid bathing, and all other moistning things.

Secunda intentio. The second intention is accomplished by preparatiues, or by remedies equally deuiding (which they commonly call digestiues) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter wherewith the body of the sicke doth abound. Therefore you must giue him some kind of *Oximel*, which can cut, and deuide, and purge forth the fleame that lurketh in the bodie. Afterward the matter going before the expulsion being thus prepared, at the appointment of some cunning Physition, must be emptied out with some medicine that can purge fleame, called *Phlegmagogon*. But if (saith *Guido* out of *Cauliacus*) abundance

be

be present in the body, you may safely open a veine, but yet not without the aduice of some expert Physition. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are scarce at any time seene any *Oedemata*, especially those which be lawfull; for fleame doth not abound in it more plentifully then other humours do. Therefore it being simple and alone, not commixed with others humours, it can seldome flow into any part of a plentifull bodie; wherefore letting of bloud especially in a lawfull *Oedema*, may seeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finished in the beginning by applying repercussiues, and not by those remedies which by binding vehemently with their naturall coldnesse do repell and driue backe, but by those which haue power to drie greatly, and digest well, which they call prouokers of drinesse and resolution: but in the increase by vsing discussiue remedies somwhat more forcible. And in the state thereof, especially about the end, the fluxe being alreadie stayed, by pure medicines, and by those which do very strongly digest and resolue. But in the declination by consuming and drying helpes, if the cure be to be dispatched by resolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into abscessions which they call *Exituræ*, it shall be cured by ripening medicines, and by other helpes which are set downe for the cure of Abscessions. Moreouer, repressing remedies endued with a drying digesting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *Oedema* coming of the influxion of a flegmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three speciall rules. The first is out of *Galen, lib. 14. Therap. & 2. ad Glauconem*, where he saith, that if *Oedema* doth consist of a flegmaticke humour flowing into some member, a sponge wet in water wherein is a little vineger, shall sometime abundantly suffice. But these must be so well tempered and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you must bind the sponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, and ending aboue. Let the sponge be very new. And if there be not a new to be gotten, you shall cleanse and scoure the old very diligently, by washing it in *Nitrum* and *Aphonitrum*, and in lye. *Auicen* commandeth, that in steade of a sponge, you sometime apply a double linnen cloth, or some such like thing. The second rule is mentioned of *Auicen* himselfe. ℞. *Baurach* of the decoction of water, that is, of Salt peter, or of the fome of Salt peter, of Ashes, of Vineger, of each as much as shall suffice. The third rule is described of *Razis* after this manner. ℞. *Aloes*, Mirrhe, *Licium*, *Acatia*, *Sief*, *Memitha*, that is, of *Glaucio*, of *Cyperus*, of *Crocus Orientalis*, of Bolearmoniack, of each a little quantitie; powder them, and commixe them with the iuyce of Coleworts called *Brassicæ*, and with Vineger, and make an Emplaister. Furthermore those remedies which were of late rehearsed, do also helpe much the increasing of this œdematous tumour, if you do put vnto them a good quantity of Vineger, and a little Alume, especially in strong bodies, which haue a hard skin, and when as *aquosior Posca* shall not anaile. Therefore if *Oedema* doth not ceasse or rest with these helpes mentioned a little before, when you bind it too againe, you shall cõmixe a little more Vineger, that the *Posca* may be the stronger; or you shall lay on a little Alume, and apply a new Sponge: for this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, & doth long continue very effectuall, and with the substance it drieth the affected member. If there be no plentie of new

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be vsed in the beginning of Oedema.

1. *Posca aquosa.*

2.

3. *Emplastrum Razis.*

Remedies to be vsed in the time of increasing.

sponges,

Lib. 14. Ther. & 2. ad Glau.

ſponges, it is better (ſaith *Galen*) to vſe that which the common ſort call *lychnion*. But aboue all things let it be ſoft, which kind is vſed at *Tarſis*, whereof if there be any plentie: you may boldly vſe: for you ſhall trie it to be more profitable then the vſing of ſponges, but let it be wetted in *Poſca*, and a little Alume therewith. Then (as it is ſet downe already) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather parts, & end aloft. Let the binding be meane and ſmall, as in the ſetting of a bone. But truly the firſt caſting about of the ſwathing band, which muſt begin beneath, ought to be tyed ſomewhat ſtrait; but all the reſt muſt be ſlacked by little and little, but yet not ſo, that any part of the binding be looſe. Now the remedies which are miniſtred after the vigour of the ſtate, when the fluxe is ſtayed, and in an vniuerſall declination (if *Oedema* doth require reſolution) are wont alſo to be deſcribed and contained vnder a threefold rule; 1. The firſt is of *Auicen*, which is a ſponge dipped in lye of the aſhes of the figge tree, of the vine, and of the holme, which is a kind of oake; apply theſe to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to drie and cleanſe. 2. The ſecond is of *Brunus*, which *Theodoricus* alſo vſed. ℞. of Alume, Brimſtone, Mirrhe and Salt; of each a like quantitie: commixe all theſe with oyle of Roſes: and with vineger, and make a Liniment, which yet doth dry more ſtrongly then the former remedy 3. The third is of *Auicen* likewiſe, whoſe deſcription is this that followeth. ℞. of cowes dung, ℔. ß. of *Olybanum*, of *Styrax*, of *Vſnea* that is, of the moſſe of trees, which is called of the Græcians *Bryon*, of *Calamus aromaticus*, of Spikenard, of Woormwood, ana. ℥. ß. apply all theſe with vineger, and with the decoction of Coleworts, & make an Emplaiſter. And this truly is the way to cure *œdema* which is finiſhed by reſolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digeſtion, but do come vnto ſuppuration, you may apply, and that very profitably, *Vnguentum è ſuccis* called *Diachylon*, and that ointment eſpecially which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the ſame purpoſe alſo this Emplaiſter following is very effectuall. ℞. Mallowes, branke Vrſine, or *Hircina*, which is called *Achantus* and *Achanta*, roote of *Althæa*, roote of Lillie, roſted Onions, Snailes, leaues, Lineſeede ſodden and kneaded, & mingled with ſwines greaſe, or with butter, bring them into the forme of an Emplaiſter, or rather of a Cataplaſme. Another for the ſame purpoſe very effectuall. ℞. of the iuyce of Elder, or Walwort, (which our late writers do call *Lapatium acutum*) of *Leniſticum* or *Liguſticum*, and of Fenel, of each of them as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight; boyle them with *Dialthæa*, with hony, oile, and butter, and of them make a Cataplaſme. The Apoſteme being ripe, do not tarrie till it open of the owne accord, for that happeneth ſeldome, or peraduenture neuer; but let apertion be made with ſome hote iron, or ſome burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the maner and forme before expreſſed. Then let the filthineſſe be cleanſed out & wiped away with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, or with a mundificatiue of *Apium*, and with the iuyce of Wormewood, or with this ointment following which doth draw and cleanſe the thicke and groſſe matter. ℞. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of Roſin, *Terebinthina*, Pich, of bullocks tallow, of oile, ana. a like quantity: diſſolue the gummes in vineger, and let them melt or boile

Remedies for the ſtate and declination.

1. *Spongia aqua lixiua imbuta.*

2. *Linimentum.*

3. *Emplaſtrum Auicennæ.*

Vſnea quid.

Concoquentia ſeu maturantia.

This is giuen by Theodoricus.

Apertio.

A mundificatiue ointment which is attributed to Diuus

vpon

vpon the fire with the reſt, and make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthy vlcers. But we diſpatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and quality of the accidents that chance very ſuddenly, as if paine doth happen, it muſt moſt eſpecially be mitigated, by applying moiſt oile of wooll (after the doctrin of *Auicen*) or by boyled Wine, or by a cerate made of the oile of Cammomil, of the oile of Wormewood, of the oile of Spike, & of Waxe. But if hardneſſe be preſent, it muſt be diſſolued and mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with Harts marrow, or with ſome ſuch like thing, as hereafter ſhall be ſaid. But *Galen* in an inueterate *Oedema* did annoint the ſore with oile, and then miniſtred a ſponge dipped in Lye, & binding it ſomewhat iuſt or ſtraite, did perfectly cure the euill.

Quarta intentio.

Li. 2. ad Glau. Oedemata diuturna.

Now it remaineth that we ſet down the ſumme of the cure of *Oedema*. 1. Firſt therfore vnto an *Oedema*, which is a ſymptomate happning & coming ſuddenly with other diſeaſes (as the Dropſie, leannes of the body, and that euil called *Cachexia*) apply ſuch medicines as can diſcuſſe & dry vp without griefe 2. Therefore rub the ſwolne place diligently with *Oxymel*, or with *Oxyrhodinũ*, or with oile & Salt, or elſe with *Oxyrhodinum* & Salt: for by this friction you ſhall both mitigate the paine (if any be cauſed through diſtention) & remit the tumor alſo. 3. But to an *Oedema* that cometh of the influxion of thin fleame, if fluxe doth not yet ceaſſe, apply thoſe medicines, which partly digeſt, and partly conſtraine and reſtraine. 4. Therfore bind a new ſponge, or ſome other dipped in Lye, or wetted firſt in alayed *Poſca*, eſpecially in ſoft and tender bodies, and if (the tumour doth poſſeſſe the members of the body) binde about them ſoftly ſome ſwadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vſe to do in ſetting of bones. 5. But if by theſe remedies the tumour doth not ſlake or yeelde, put a litle Alume with *Poſca*. viz. with *Oxycratum*. 6. But if the affect ſhall be of any continuãce, you muſt not vſe any more thoſe remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to ſay, digeſting and reſtraining) but rather digeſtiues. 7. Therefore the member being firſt annointed with oyle, you muſt miniſter a ſponge (as we ſaid) dipped in ly, & bind it with ſwathing bands ſomwhat iuſt & ſtrait.

Capita curationis ædematis.

1.

2.

Oedema morbum.

3

4

5

6

Oedema inueteratum.

7

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are commonly called windy Apoſtemes, Apoſtemata ventoſa.

IT is now very requiſite for vs to diſpute of the Tumours called *Inflationes*, whoſe cure is diuerſe from the cure of *Oedemata*. For they (as *Galen* ſaith, *lib. 14. Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore do yeeld vnto touching and handling, and our fingers being laid thereon do deſcend ſomewhat deepely into them. But inflations do come of a flatuous ſpirite gathered together, breeding ſometime vnder the skinne, ſometime vnder the thin filmes which are compaſſed about with the bones, or they do ſhut in and include the muſcles, or elſe ſome part of the bowels. Furthermore ſometime there is alſo not a little of this humour gathered together in the belly and in the inward parts, and alſo in the middle ſpace of them and of the

The difference between inflatio & œdema.

Lib. 4. the *Peritonæum*, as in that kind of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne, which euill we call a Tympany. These also differ from *Oedemata*, because they being touched with the finger do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes very great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weakenesse of the naturall heate, which is placed in a flegmaticke matter to prouoke windinesse. For truly heate may take vp such a vapor of a moist substance, but it cannot deuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the Northwind bloweth) doth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the aire pure & cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause clouds, so it happeth in liuing creatures. For heate, neither by extreme weakenesse, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane between these affections. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Auicen* saith) either because of the thickenesse of the member, or of the grossenesse of the vaporous spirite. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thickenesse of the members, and the grossenesse of the spirit or vapour, doth cause that the same vapour is not dispersed abroad.

Inflationum causæ.

Lib. 6. de morbis & symptomat.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum notæ.

The signes of inflation are these; a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling: it appeareth very cleare and bright, and when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a Bottle, or Tympany. Moreouer there is felt oftentimes windinesse throughout the whole body, sometime running this way, sometime that way, which causeth extensiue paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirite, which is not dissolued and dispersed, doth procure many discommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and downe within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawn from some venimous matter. But now seeing these three things, viz. the moist matter, the imbecillity of the naturall heate, and the thickenesse of the pores of the body, do concure together to the generation of *Inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this; first, to strengthen the substance of the heate, to extenuate the vapour and flatuous matter, and to preuent or open the thickenesse of the pores of the body (wherein this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained) Now we make perfect and finish the two latter things, that is the rarifying of the thicke body, and the extenuation of the grosse vapour by one & the same kind of medicines, which is by vsing those remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members, and by applying those helpes, which can heate either more or lesse according to the inflation of the afflicted members, according to the thickenesse or thinnesse thereof, and according also to the grossenesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or facult of those medicines which are ministred, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not very thicke, are but meanely to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which cõtaineth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly

Inflationum prognostica.

Inflationum curatio.

extenuate

extenuate and heate them. But if the ſubſtance of naturall heate ſhall periſh or diminiſh, it muſt be repaired againe, regarding the greatneſſe of the loſſe thereof. But if it ſhall be altered, you muſt bring it vnto a certaine mediocrity. But if griefe ſhall there vexe or moleſt the ſicke, you muſt haſten vnto thoſe helpes which can mitigate paine. Very well therefore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of inflations (which they call *Apoſtemata ventoſa*) is diſpatched by three intentions. The firſt conſiſteth of a iuſt and due obſeruation of diet. The ſecond of a good concoction or digeſtion; & the third dependeth of the diſcuſſing and diſperſing of the windy ſpirite, which is aſſembled in the member. Therefore let the inſtitution of diet be after this manner. Firſt of all you muſt abſtaine from all groſſe, viſcous, raw, flegmaticke and windy meates: as are, ſweete meates, all kinde of pulſe, raw fruite, Rape roots, Cheſt-nuts, and other things of that ſort, which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You muſt vſe hote and dry things, and thoſe remedies alſo which can attenuate and diſſolue windineſſe, as is bread made of Barley with a little Salt and Commin ſeed. Let the patients drinke be ſmall Ale or Beere, Let him vſe the decoction of Cicers mixed with Onions. Let him take *Apium hortenſe* (which is commonly called *Petroſelinum*, Parcely) Calamint, Rew, Commin. Let the fleſh which he eateth on, be rather roſted then ſodden, and eſpecially the fleſh of birds (as hath bene ſaid in the former Chapter.) But now, that you may diſpatch the ſecond intention, you muſt ſtrengthen and corroborate the vertue concoctiue with ſome ſweet and odoriferous ſauours, and by confections, and electuaries appointed for this purpoſe, as be theſe, *Diaçuminum*, *Diacalaminthe*, *Aromaticum roſatum*, and this decoction following which they call *Drageta*. ℞. of Anniſe, of Fennell, *Cornus*, *Daucus*, Commin, of Laurell berries beaten together, ana. ʒ. j. of Liquorice, Galingale, white Ginger, ana. ʒ. ß. of Cloues, Cubebs of long Pepper, ſeed of Rew, ana ʒ ij. of Anniſe ſeede couered ouer with Sugar, ʒ.i. j. of Sugar ℔ j ß. make a powder. But outwardly let the ſtomacke be annointed with oile of Spike, of *Coſtum*, and oile of Rew: or make an Epitheme of thoſe things which can diſcuſſe winde, and which are appointed to helpe concoctiõ, and let it be applyed to the ſtomacke. But theſe things do rather appertaine vnto Phyſicke then vnto Chyrurgery. The third intention is accompliſhed by applying ſome medicine which hath a double vertue, that is, which can both concoct, digeſt, and moderately binde, neither will increaſe paine But to the perfecting of theſe things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro.* 14. *Therapeut.* The firſt is mentioned of *Galen* in theſe words: In the arteries (ſayth he) and in the muſcles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is riſen, if it be without griefe, ſome liquor applied to the thinneſt members ſhall profite greatly, of the which nature is lye miniſtred with a new ſponge. But if griefe doth alſo trouble him, you muſt annoint the member with ſome oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the ſame. Theſe diſeaſes happen through a ſtripe or bruiſe, when as either the muſcle or the filme which compaſſeth the bone, is bruſed or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforeſayd ſponge muſt be layed. The ſecond rule is deſcribed alſo in the ſame place af-

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta helpeth digeſtion.

Tertia intentio.

ter this sort: But vnto the muscles (for they sometime are painefull) you must apply some medicine which can mitigate paine in greater measure, so that to them you must apply not onely Lye alone, but you must put into it both *Sapa*, and also a little oyle. But it shall be more profitable in the beginning not to apply Lye, but to vse *Sapa* with Wine, and a little Vineger, and to put to them a little oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heate them, and lay on vnwashed wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plenty of such wooll, then the oyle of wooll is to be vsed with the former mixture; but if neither oyle of wooll be at hand, you shall commixe very well some cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the bruised muscles must needes be lenified with some medicine which hath a double strength, that is, which can both concoct, digest, and moderatly bind. But if the medicine containeth no astriction, it increaseth sometime *Phlegmone*, and especially in those bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindefull therefore of these three indications already declared (that is, of concoction, digestion, and moderate astriction) in the muscles which are inflated by meanes of some bruise or stripe when great paine doth afflict, you shall the rather vse a more mitigating medicine, and you shall greatly resist paine, by vsing more Oyle and Wine, whose force I know to be mighty, when as paine together with the inflation doth speedily hasten to an end. And truly the time is the shorter, if you minister those things which haue a strong and mighty effect, as are these, Lye and Vineger, and next after them Wine hath a mighty operation. As often therefore as you mind not to asswage paine, you shall cast into the mixture, a greater quantity of Lye and Vineger. Againe when you intend to repell and driue backe, you must put in more of Wine then of other things, which wine shall be more effectuall for this purpose if it be blacke and sharpe. But if you please to digest, you shall minister the greater quantity of Lye. But if you shall mingle Vineger with them, the mixture shall be profitable both wayes, because that Vineger hath a double and mingled faculty. But when the muscle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of Lye vse *Aphonitrum*, but it must not be grauelly, but rather fomie. The third rule is an Emplaister made of the filthines which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrastle, & of vnslaked Lime, boyled together with water and Wine. These are the words of *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* But those inflations (saith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of some antiquity, you shall apply to them those helpes which are made of Lye (as hath bene said before:) and secondly you shall minister some Emplaisters. But I will declare also the example or order how to prepare these things. First, the filthinesse which cometh from mens bodies must be heat, and throughly strained, that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the Lime, which must be brayed as small as meale, and sprinkle it in the vessell where the filthinesse is, and temper it together to the thicknesse of clay. That medicine is also very good for the inflations which is made of *Sycomorum*, and other remedies of that sort do greatly helpe also. But if this flatuous spirit, which causeth the inflation shall be smokie, wicked, corrupt, and excited of a venimous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp

Sapa.

Lana succida.

Oesipus. Ceratum ex oesipe.

Prolixiuio Aphonitrum. Formula tertia.

How an old inflation must be handled.

If the windy vapour shall be venimous.

and

and downe in the members of the body, no more ſafe or better counſell can be giuen, then that (when it is reſident in ſome particular member) that member muſt be ſtraightway bound beneath and aloſt, and in the midſt the tumour be opened with a razor, or with ſome hote inſtrument, ſo that the venimous vapour may eaſily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound muſt be filled with Aloës, and with Bolearmonicke diſſolued in the oyle of Roſes and Vineger. But within three or foure dayes after, you muſt fill vp the wound with fleſh, and bring it to a ſcarre. But in ſuch venimous inflations, a very thin diet muſt be obſerued, and the body muſt be emptied with ſome purging medicine. And if you miniſter *Theriaca* to the ſicke, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth the ſumme of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in theſe words following. Firſt, confirme and ſtrengthen the weake ſubſtance of heate that is in the affected member, reſtore the ſame againe, and when it is altered bring it into ſome mediocrity. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windy humour which raiſeth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skin, and of the whole affected member, with medicines that are effectuall for the thinneſſe of the members: afterward ſeeke to diſcuſſe the flatuous vapour. Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according to the thickneſſe of the flatuous vapour, or thinneſſe of the medicines which are applyed,) intend and remit aſwell the matter as the faculty & vertue of them. 5. Furthermore, if ſuch a vaporous tumour ſhall chance with griefe and with inflāmation (as it happeth in the muſcles which through ſome bruiſe are ſtuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in proceſſe of time, vſe ſuch remedies as haue power to diſſolue, increaſing by little and little the plentie thereof. Sixtly, inflations which through negligence are inueterate, firſt annoint them with Lye, and then lay to ſome plaiſter, which can mollifie, diſſolue and diſcuſſe them.

Victus ratio.
Theriaca.
The ſumme of curing of a flatuous tumour.
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a tumour cauſed of a thin ſubſtance, which they call aquoſum Apoſtema, that is, a wateriſh Apoſteme.

IF fleame doth vniuerſally abound throughout the whole body, that kinde of diſeaſe (which is a wateriſh humour running betweene the skinne and the fleſh, called *Leucophlegmatia*) doth accompanie the ſame, as *Galen* hath noted in his ſixth booke *de Symptomatum cauſis*. But when this flegmaticke humour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendered *Oedema*: for ſo they call a looſe tumour, which is without paine. But if wateriſh excrements do abound, they are wont to bring the Dropſie (which they call *Aſcites*) which if they ſhall couch themſelues in one onely member, they do raiſe in it *Phlyctænæ*, that is to ſay, puſhes or whelkes. Furthermore the latter ſort of Phyſitions haue bin accuſtomed to call this kind of wateriſh tumour, *Aquoſum phlegma*, as alſo they do terme that humour to be fleame which floweth in the feete and legges of them that are troubled with the Dropſie, and aboundeth in the leane parts of the body, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habite (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And theſe kinds of tumors which do pro-

Leucophlegmatia.
Seroſum incrementum.
Phyctæna.

ceed of wateriſh fleame, or of the aforeſaid ſerous increaſing, they do alſo call vnlawfull and vntrue *œdemata*. But in thoſe dangerous diſpoſitions or diſeaſes, they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *œdema* (as hath bene already declared out of *Galen*) doth not deſerue the name of a diſeaſe, but of a ſymptomate, for that it truly needeth no particular or ſeuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *Oxyrhodinum*, or ſometime with Salt and Oyle, or with Salt and *Oxyrhodinum*, doth ſtop it, and many other things of that kinde do worke the like effect. But the cauſe of theſe tumours are theſe, the altering of the vertue or faculty of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the body, and the naughtineſſe of nouriſhment declining to aquoſitie, as you may eaſily gather out of the ſixth booke *de Symptomatum cauſis*. The ſignes and iudgements are almoſt all one with a true *Oedema*. Yet they differ in this, becauſe in the wateriſh tumours the tumor is more looſe then in a lawfull *Oedema*: and therefore it doth not ſo reſiſt touching, neither doth it ſound like winde, but rather as water, and it doth ſeeme to ſhine after a ſort, when one holdeth it againſt the light. Now concerning the iudgements of this kind of tumour, there is no doubt but that a wateriſh tumour proceedeth of a greater coldneſſe then a flatuous tumour doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphoriſmes. But it ſeemeth (ſaith he) that a wateriſh *Hydrops*, which they call *Aſcites*, is engendered of great coldneſſe, but a *Tympanie* of the leſſe cold, which diſeaſe is named of *Hippocrates*, a drie water running btweene the skinne. For a moiſt ſubſtance cannot be changed into a flatuous vapour without ſome heate. Moreouer wateriſh tumours do happen oftener in the feet, in the ſtones and cods, in the head and in the ioynts, then any other parts of the body, both becauſe ſuch a kinde of humour doth readily ruſh into thoſe parts, and alſo becauſe heate is very meane and little in them, for becauſe they be farre off from the hotteſt members. And as a flatuous vapour is ſeldome found without a wateriſh humour: ſo a wateriſh or ſerous humor is ſcarce contained at any time in any member without a windy ſpirit. Hitherto we haue ſpoken of the generation, the cauſes, ſignes, and iudgements of a wateriſh tumour: now we will ſet downe the cure thereof. Seeing that theſe wateriſh tumours are cauſed (as we haue ſaid already) of the flowing of a ſerous humour, there needeth no other meanes, ſpecially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expreſſed already in the cure of other tumours, which are engendered of the influxion of humours into ſome member. The order therefore of remedying ſuch kinde of tumors in the beginning ſhall conſiſt of two points, that is to ſay, firſt to empty out that which is flowed, and ſecondly, to ſtoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diſeaſes, which are yet but in begetting, ſo alſo in theſe affects, the Phyſition muſt be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreſeeing the danger following, that is, both to remedie the diſeaſe and prouide for the fluxe. The firſt order therefore is ſubiect to that part of the Arte of Phyſicke which cureth the diſeaſes: but the ſecond belongeth to that part which preuenteth the diſeaſe to come. But that we may proſite and dispatch this double and generall method, it is neceſſary to recite fiue

other

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem, & 14. Therap.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Iudicia.

Aſcites is cauſed of more cold thē Tympanites.

What parts theſe tumours do moſt occupy.

Aquoſi tumoris curatio.

Curatio duplex.

other particular intentions, expressed of *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* for the cure of a wateriſh tumour, in this manner and order as followeth. The firſt conſisteth in a iuſt inſtitution and obſeruation of a good diet. The ſecond in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the wateriſh humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out the wateriſh humor through the paſſages of the vrine. The fifth and laſt conſiſteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that wateriſh humiditie which is compact and contained in the aggrieued member. But becauſe the foure firſt intentions do rather pertaine to the Phyſition then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whoſe profite we haue taken this worke in hand, and alſo becauſe they may ſufficiently be knowne by thoſe things which went before, I haue ſet downe the cure in the 33. Chapter of my third booke: and am determined to handle in this place the laſt intention onely, which requireth ſome new intended remedies. The firſt intention therefore is ended with thoſe medicines which can dry vp, and reſolue thoſe wateriſh and ſerous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of thoſe remedies there are commonly ſet downe three rules or orders. The firſt is out of *Galen, lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and *lib. 14. Method. medendi*; which is made of *Oxyrhodinum* and Salt (as hath bin before declared.) The ſecond is out of the ſame author, which is a new ſponge dipped in Lye: and to this purpoſe ſerue thoſe remedies alſo which we haue before ſet downe for the cure of *Oedemata*: with the which helpes (that they may drie vp and diſcuſſe the more ſtrongly) you muſt commixe *Aphonitrum*, Alume, and Brimſtone. The third rule is a certaine emplaiſter deſcribed of *Auicen* for the cure of *Scrofulæ*, which emplaiſter he attributed to *Galen in libro ſuo de compoſitione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*. And this emplaiſter (as he ſayth) within one weeke at the moſt, and oftentimes within three dayes, doth reſolue all the hardneſſe of the euill. But although this emplaiſter cannot be found in the booke before rehearſed to belong vnto *Galen*, notwithſtanding we may vſe the ſame very fitly to the diſſolution of a wateriſh and flatuous hardneſſe: whoſe deſcription out of *Auicen* is this that followeth. ℞. of Muſtard ſeede, of Nettle ſeede, Brimſtone, *Spuma maris*, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, and *Bdellium*, ana. ℥ j. of Ammoniacke, old oile and Waxe, ana. ℥ ij. But if the hardneſſe of the tumour be not diſcuſſed by this emplaiſter, you can deuiſe no other more excellent or more preſent remedy, then to open with ſome inſtrument; and then to cleanſe and ſcoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The ſumme of curing a wateriſh tumor is this. 1. Appoint ſuch a diet to the ſicke as can attenuate, heate, and dry vp. 2. Let him vſe a moderate exerciſe of his bodie: let him eate and drinke little: let him not ſleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digeſteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windineſſe. 4. Purge out the wateriſh humour, wherewith the whole bodie of the ſicke doth abound, by the belly and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp and digeſt through breathing that ſerous humour which is included in the affected member. 6. But if it cannot thus be diſcuſſed, put ſome penknife, or ſome other hote inſtrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that place where it is moſt inclined downeward, that ſo the humour may the more eaſily come

Fiue particular intentions in curing a wateriſh tumour.

1 2

3.

4.

5.

1.

2.

3.

Auicens Emplaiſter to diſcuſſe wateriſh tumours.

Capita curationis aqueſi tumoris.

1 2

3

4

5

6

7. forth. 7. Euacuate the humour which did cause the tumour, by some emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertaine vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ.

Enumeratio abscessuum pituitosorum.

GANGLIA so called of the Græcians, *Chærades*, that is, *Strumæ*, which they also call *Scrofulæ*, *Bronchocêle*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia gutturis*, *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Testudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*, which names giuen to tumours were inuented of the late Physitions, & are not to be found among ancient writers. Those tumours also which *Auicen* calleth *Fugillæ*, and *Nodi*, and *Vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumours of that kind, in what part soeuer of the body they do grow, they haue their generation of fleame, and for that cause are iustly referred vnto phlegmaticke tumours. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do degenerate into a stony hardnesse, and into scirrhous diseases, yet the roote & the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleame, (as *Auicen* declareth:) yet we will not deny, but that some other humour may sometime be commixed with fleame, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so there do grow vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of another kinde. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumours shall appeare most euidently: for the one must alwaies be referred vnto the other, as it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said elsewhere.) Therefore all the aforesaid tumours are comprehended vnder the kind of phlegmaticke Abscessions, or (that I may speake after the manner of the common Chyrurgians) vnder the *genus* of phlegmaticke increasings, which diseases haue certaine speciall differences among themselues (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandula* (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans* an acorne, which forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula* (saith he) is euery where soft, one alone, moueable and disseuered from the other parts lying about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane and pure parts of the body. But *Glandulæ* in *Auicen* doth breede either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some other place ioyned to the sinewes and cords of the body, and these *Glandulæ* he would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmos*, the crampe. They do happen also in the palme of the hand, and in the forehead, as *Auicen* saith, who also calleth them sometime *Glandulosa Apostemata*, sometime *Nodi*: for he doth intreate of those euils very rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in his Chapter *de Nodis*, euen vnto the end, and in his treatise *de Glandulis*. Therefore *Auicens Glandulæ* do seeme to be diuers from *Guido* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglia* among the Græcians to be all one with *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie.

Simplicia sunt regulæ compositorum.

Glandulæ Guidonis.

Auicens glandulæ are al one with Ganglia.

Ganglium

Ganglium (saith he) is a gathering together of the sinewes, which is caused of some stripe, or of wearines & that in many parts of ỹ body, especially in those which are alwaies mouing, as in the midst of the hand and in the feete. *Ætius* saith, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib.6.cap.39* declaring what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what members chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompanie it, confirmeth those very words which we spake before, saying *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow, or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hand and of the armes, and in the ankles and ioynts of the feete, although also it ariseth in other parts of the body. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumour is all of one colour, resisting touching or hãdling, & without pain. but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfull, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the very skin next the sides: but again, if you prouoke it by force, it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus Aegineta de Ganglijs*, now we will discourse of other flegmatick tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofulæ* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes, *videlicet Glandulæ*, chiefly appearing in the necke, the armeholes, and in the parts aboue the priuie members, where *Glandulæ* are placed by the vessels of the body that lye vnder them: yet sometime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinity is turned into the nature of *Strumæ*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latins call them *Strumæ*, but the Greeks *Chærades*, either truly because of the stones called *Chærades* growing in the sea, or else because of those beasts called Sowes, that bring forth a great company of pigges at once (for these euils do rise vp many together) which beasts are often infected with that disease. For *Scrofæ*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke and glandulous necks, & commonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith, that *Strumæ* is a tumour, wherein vnder the congealed place there do arise certaine things like *Glandulæ* of matter and bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nostrils, the priuy parts of the body, and the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also, that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Strumæ*, saith he, do arise in the forepart of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Melicerides*. *Lupia* (saith *Guido*) is soft and round like vnto a Hop, and chiefly chuseth his place in hard and dry places of the body, as in the eye lids and in other sinewy members. the Frenchmen call it commonly *vne Loup*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shall be afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongst the Greekes, the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *Lupia*, to be all one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignãt vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes & legs, & it is very hungry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue his title) eating vp the flesh that lieth next vnto it, which without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedæna*. Diseases

Signa Ganglij.

Scrofulæ.

Chærades Græcorum.

Sues.

Struma Celsi.

Lib.6.

Lupia.

Lupus morbus.

therefore are farre diuerse among themselues the one from the other, al-
Nodi. though in name they be somewhat acquainted. *Nodus* (as the knot of a rope)
is said of the same *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the same
place, growing especially about the sinewie place of the body. But *Auicen*
Auicenæ nodi. in a certaine place, defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida* and he compareth this
name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adiposi* and *adipini Nodi*, fat kernels;
and with *Melicerides*, which are called *mellitij Nodi*; and with *Atheromata*,
which consist of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulse, which the Greeks
call *Athera*. But because these three kinds of abscessiõs, that is to say, *Steatoma*,
Meliceris, and *Atheroma*, are most incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* maketh
mentiõ of them in very many places, we think it conuenient (hauing here got-
ten so fit oportunity) to treate of them plainely, to declare their nature, and
their markes, whereby they may be knowne, and in what things also they do
Atheroma. differ and dissent, and wherein they do also conspire and agree. *Atheroma*
therefore is a tumor of one and the same colour, and without paine, contai-
ning within the filme or sinewie tunicle a soft humour like vnto *Athera*, that is,
a kind of pulse which is made of boyled meale. Sometime also in *Atheromata*
together with a soft humour, there are found certaine stonie and hard substan-
ces and other things like vnto small peeces of Brimstone: oftentimes, there
are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and
like vnto haires wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme
and figure very long, and somewhat eleuated in height, which being prested
with the fingers, by reason of clammishnesse and thicknesse of the humour,
doth slowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued it doth slow-
Meliceris. ly also returne againe. And *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of paine also, but
yet it is round, wherin the humor which is also included in some sinewy tunicle
(which they call *Cystis*) is found somewhat thinne, representing the substance
of hony whereupon some of the Latines do call it *Mellifauium*, a hony combe.
Miliceris therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in fashion, and in substance
of the humor; for both the forme is more round, and the substance of the hu-
mor more slender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Athe-*
roma, and by pressing it with the fingers it doth speedily giue place, and when
the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former
Steatoma. place. But *Steatoma* is a tumour also besides nature, all of one colour, and very
gentle to be handled; in the beginning truly it is very small, but in procesle
of time it increaseth and becometh more copious, wherein is contained a
humour very like vnto tallow, which is also comprehended vnder the filmes
of the body. This is distinguished from *Miliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by rea-
son of the hardnesse thereof, for it is both full and plentifull; and it doth so
resist touching, that it will in no wise yeeld to the thrusting of the fingers. But
Testudo. let vs now proceed to declare other kinde of Apostemes which are almost re-
duced vnto these three whereof we haue now intreated. *Testudo* (saith *Guido*)
is a great Abscession, very humerall, soft, and of a broade fashion, after the
manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euill if it groweth
(saith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called
Bocium: if in the stones, *Hernia*: but sometime it is found with matter, or with

certaine

certaine scales, or with a *Fistula* accompanying it. But *Testudines* and *Talpæ*, amongst the ancient Physitions, had neither any proper name, nor yet once intreated of. But some of our dayes do define *Testudo* to be a soft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet somewhat big, in the which is contained a grosse matter lying hid in a certaine tunicle, which doth so cleaue vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a disease incident to the skin of the head) that oftentimes it corrupteth the same. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abscessions, and comprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*. but it rather seemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, because it containeth a white matter is rather referred vnto *Atheroma* then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithstanding *Guido* affirmeth, that it is a kind of *Testudo*, yea also that it is *Testudo* it selfe (as we said of late) as *Hernia* also and *Bocium*, which he also nameth: but these affects haue borrowed their diuerse names according to the variety of the place wherein they are found. But that which the common sort call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) do properly call *Bronchocêle*: we call it *Herniam gutturis*, whereupon they also call them *Gutturosi*, which do labour of that disease. *Bronchocêle* is a great tumour chancing in the necke, very round, betweene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, sometime dead flesh, sometime a certaine humour like vnto hony, or fat, or sodden meale, or water. Sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) there are found in such tumours certain haires mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumor, ful of flesh like vnto ỹ flesh of a mans buttocks, of diuers formes and greatnes, as are Melons & Gourds, & therfore it borroweth sundry names according to the variety of the fashion & member wherin it it placed. Moreouer this tumour which of the latter sort is called *Nacta* or *Napta*, is voide of paine, except peraduenture it be so great, that by the continuall drawing of the parts of that mẽber, it bringeth some griefe to the parts about it. This also is of the number of Abcessions, & doth pertaine vnto *Steatomata* (as we haue said before in enumeration of tumors besides nature. *Bubo* (saith *Galen*) is a disease of the loose members, or of *Glandulæ* (which the Greekes call *Adenæ*) that is to say, a simple inflammation. Wherefore *Guido* hath either vnfitly here rehearsed it among the number of flegmatick abscessions, or else he vnderstandeth some other matter then *Galen* doth. But *Bubones* which are caused through a fall from some place, or by other vlcers & diseases, are without any danger: but those which are wont to happen in pestilent feauers, are the worst of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the nostrils, or the necke. *Fugillæ* (saith the interpreter of *Auicen*) is of the kind of glandulous Apostemes, and this terme (saith he) is appropriated vnto it, because it is a disease chancing behind the eares. By the which description it may easily be coniectured, that *Fugillæ*, so called of *Auicen*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greeks *Parotis*, that is a glandulous disease growing vnderneath the ears. But some do thinke *Fugillæ* to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwise taken of them then of *Galen* and *Paulus*, which is (as they say) a tumour that is deeply planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compassed with any skin or filme: it is very hard also, after the manner of the euils called *Scrofulæ*; & in that signification (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, because he doth register

Talpa.

Bocium.

Bronchocêle.

Nacta.

Nacta or Napta is referred vnto Steatoma.

Bubo.

Fugillæ.

What Bubo is with Guido and other late Physitions.

The differences of flegmaticke abscessions.

register *Fugillinus Bubo* amongst the nũber of flegmatick abscessions. But there are now found out very many titles giuen to these kinds of phlegmaticke abscessions. But we ought not greatly to stand vpon the names of them, so that we know and vnderstand the only differences of them, because it falleth so out, that according to the diuersity of their names, their cures and iudgement do varie. Therefore of such kinds of abscessions, some truly are included within a certaine skin or tunicle (which they call *Cystis*) and some are deeply planted in the flesh: some haue a slender foundation, or small roote, and some againe are very large and broad. Also some are easie to be resolued, and some are farre otherwise: some great and some little. Some also do come vnto suppuration, and some do not. To conclude, some tumours are scalie, fistulous and cancerous, but some do admit or suffer none of these things. The causes of

Of the causes, signes & iudgments of the aforesaid tumours.

these kindes of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*, 1. Primitiue causes, as a fall, a stripe, excessiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent causes, as are vnnaturall humours, especially those which be flegmaticke and true *Oedemata*, which do degenerate into abscessions. 3. *Coniunctæ causæ*, which are the diuerse substances; and properly the matters of euery abscession contained in the affected member. But in these kinds of tumours there are contained certaine humours, which be either serous or wateriſh, as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthy, or dirty: or else humours like vnto hony, or sodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are sometime found within these abscessions, phlegmaticke, and wateriſh, and glandulous flesh, sometime also stones, sand, shels, wood, coales, and other such like solide substances. Notwithstanding these three kinds of tumours do most frequent mens bodies (as we haue sayd before,) whereof euery one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Miliceris*, which are thus called by reason of the similitude of the substances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongst these, like vnto tallow, or some other fat thing, another like vnto honie, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Athera*.

Causes of tumours which pertaine vnto fleame.

The matter of flegmaticke abscessions.

14. *Therap.*

Signa.

The signes and iudgements of such kinds of tumours, which belong vnto fleame, may easily be found out by their descriptions and differences before declared. But the marke whereby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this; there is moueableneſſe and inconstancy of the filme or skin called *Cystis*, which the ancient Phyſitions haue named *Tunica*, and there is a separation of the skinne: but when they be surely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue fast to the flesh, it is an euident token that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, those tumors which are new and tractable, may easily be discussed, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wise be resolued. Redneſſe, paine, and increasing of heate, do declare that those abscessions will either come to suppuration, or else degenerate into a fistula or a canker. *Strumæ numerosæ*, which do affect the outward member, and do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinarie heat, do testifie and declare very plainly, that they will beget and breed those inward diseases called *Charades* as *Arnaldus* hath noted in a certaine place. Those remedies therefore, which are outwardly applyed to them, do profite little or nothing. But these diseases (as

Note abscessus velamento inclusi.

Iudicia abscessuum pituitosorum.

Arnaldus à Villa nona.

Auicen

Auicen thought) are increased and do multiply by some fall, or some hurt or bruise in the body. Now these strumous tumours are greatly helped by vsing purging medicines, diuretic all potions, and Electuaries, (as they call them) which can dry vp. Also the change of aire doth greatly auaile in yong children. But children, by reason of their excessiue eating and immoderate diet, and the slendernes of body, are very often annoyed with *Strumæ*. But old men by reason of the contrary causes are seldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they which haue a narrow forehead, and straight temples, and great cheekes, are subiect to *Strumæ*: for in such the matter is readily brought down to the neck, as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Physitions hath noted very wel. But *Strumæ* (as *Celsus* saith) are wont commonly to weary Physitions, because they procure feauers also, neither do they at any time ripen easily, and they are cured either with some hote instrument, or with medicines, and oftentimes they do rise vp againe besides their scarres, and a long time after they require medicines againe: and moreouer it so cometh to passe that they remaine in the flesh a long season. The incision and corrosiuing of such tumors is greatly to be feared about the belly, the necke & the ioynts, by reason of the affinity and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the sinewes, and also of the internall capacity. In the incision also of great Glandule, it behoueth greatly to eschue that veine which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth bring nourishment vnto them. For oftentimes it bringeth great profusion of bloud, wherupon there ensueth straightway no smal danger. These euils called *Strumæ*, do greatly differ among themselues, but in greatnes, nature, place, biginning, multitude, and ioyning together of the vessels (as *Ætius* hath gathered out of *Leonidas*.) Therefore little *Strumæ* are sooner and more easily cured then the great, euen as the gentle tumours are more tractable then those which are inflamed. Noisome *Strumæ* cannot be remedied; for seeing all such diseases called *Strumæ* are cancerous, and do stuffe vp the vessels of the body, while they are curing, they must needs bring the danger of profusion of bloud, besides that also they are found very deepe in the flesh, and therefore they cannot any way be cut off. For a malicious and hurtfull *Struma* doth possesse the best vessels, that is, the greatest veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as though it should hold by certaine rootes. The superficiall *Strumæ* are more easie to be cured then the internall, by reason of their place, and those are curable which do happen in the necke, where yet you must be very diligent to eschue the loud and great sinewes: for many by cutting *Strumæ* about the windepipe, and by cutting other sinewes, haue caused the sicke all the time of his life after to remaine speechlesse. For besides the excision of that sinew, the great vessels being laid bare and cooled in the cure, do hurt the duty of the tongue. For the multitude of *Strumæ*, it appeareth that one alone may easilier be cured then many together. And concerning the manner of their rising, it is manifest also, that they which hang downward are a great deale sooner healed, then they which are planted in the flesh. Thus much of *Strumæ*, which *Ætius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of these kinds of abscessions, which haue their originall of fleame, is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be twofold, that is to say, 1. Generall, and vniuersally common

In what ages and bodies Strumæ do reigne.

Celsus.

Magnitudo Strumæ.

Natura.

Leons.

Multitudo.

Ortus.

Duplex abscessuum pituitosorum curandi ratio.

common to all, & particular, which is proper in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shall be, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter which causeth such abscessions be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, lest at length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto the matter which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammie humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicen*, let them eschue all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much satietie and immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meates. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoid a moist house, that is either situated in low valleys, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of Alume, or of Brimstone: for such kind of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in taste the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward strumous and flegmatick abscessions, but those also which do outwardly affect the superficiall parts of the body (as *Arnaldus* affirmeth.) But we do perfect the other part of our former proceeding, that is to say, to turne away the antecedent matter, lest it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by some kindes of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge fleame downeward, & sometime by letting of bloud, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inward parts of the bodie. To purge the bodie downeward, the powder of *Turbith* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicen*. ℞. of *Turbith*, Ginger, and Sugar, of each a like portion: but he taketh thereof two Drachmes, and affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleame) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kind of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus Ventris ad Almansorem*, of twenty parts of *Turbith*, of ten of Ginger, and thirty of Sugar, and ministred of it at one time, ʒ. iij. *Benedicta* also and *Hierapicra*, and *Pilulæ de Agarico*, and *Pilulæ maiores de Hermodactylis* do greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont to vse this potion following, which (he saith) he gathered out of the writings of many Physitions. ℞. of *Scrofularia*, *partes* iij of *Phylipendula partes* ij. of Pimpernel, Mouseare, *Tenacetum*, of red Coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica marucina*) of *Rubia maior*, ana part. j: of the root of *Aristolochia*, of *Spathula fœtida* of the roote of Radish, ana part ß. put them all together, and boile them in white wine and hony vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and let it be drunke hot. But in the applying of all these remedies,

Victus ratio.

Aquæ aluminosæ vis.

Antecedentis materiæ euacuatio.

Vacuantia per aluum.

Pulvis Turbith.

Razes.

Hierapicra.

Prouokers of vrine.

Potio Guidonis ê Cauliaco.

remedies, (as also for bloudletting, if at any time it be required) the counsell of some learned Physition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the quality, quantity, and vse of them. But to resolue through breathing, and to digest the humour which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap.* willeth vs to minister *Theriaca*, *Athanasia*, *Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *Cretica Calaminthe*, the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthe*: whose composition is to be sought out in *Lib.* 4. *De sanit. tuen.* Many other helpes are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described, and celebrated of the ancient Physitions; those whereof I do not allow, and therefore I thinke it good to pretermit the declaration of them in these our commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I sted assly affirme, that the Christian King of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderfull a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Strumæ* or *Scrofulæ* to their perfect health againe. King *Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont maruellously to cure Strumous persons onely by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Strumæ*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euery difference: which methode is made not onely diuerse, but also it is changed both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, and by the quantity of them whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, and of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the quality of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib.* 4. *de morbis curandis*.) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered and learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into 6 points which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this manner: imprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Lupiæ*, & of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*) if they be seated in the strong parts of the body, and because they are nor yet inueterate, haue their thin *Custu*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them stay, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of œdematous tumours, whereof we haue before intreated. 3. Ripen, open, and cleanse such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcerous apostemes, which do pertaine vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Strumæ* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, and obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the roote within, corrosiue them about, and cleanse them

Quæ per halitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Strumæ by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmatick.

Tempus quid insinuet.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

them throughly, 6. Those which are fastened but to a thin and slender [illegible] bind them about and pluck them out. The first canon, according to Auicen his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do consume and suppresse vehemently these soft and little abscessions (which *Auicen* doth call *Glandulæ*, and the new Physitions *Lupiæ*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumour, and bind it very strongly in the middest, lest it slide from the place: for this doth digest these kinds of tumours. First therefore let *Lupia* be softly rubbed with the hand vntill it waxe somewhat hote, vntill it be after a sort softer then it selfe. Afterward let the affected member be surely laid hold on with the hands, and let it be so often, and so vehemently stricken, with the bottome of a saucer, or with some other solide thing, that it may be dissevered, and that the inward *Cystis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and so the matter therein contained may be dispersed: which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound very strongly with a swathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the space of nine or ten daies, but let the plate be of that greatnesse (as it was said of late) that it may answer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are some which before the application of any plate of lead do minister this ointment, made of burnt lead, of the barke of the Elder tree, or of the Figge tree, with oile and vineger. Other do first vse an Emplaister made of Aloës, *Acatia*, Mirrhe, *Olibanum*, *Sarcocolla*, putting to them a little vineger, or the white of an eg, as much as shall seeme sufficient to commixe with the rest. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them little flakes (as he and many other Chyrurgians of that sect do call them) made of flaxe, dipped in the white liquor of an eg, with salt & alume *Zuccharinum* vnthicked. Moreouer *Philagrius* almost after the same manner was wont to cure *Glanglia* (as it is in *Aetius*) which diseases are tumors vnequall (as we said before) speaking after this sort. We deny (saith he) the labour of the Chyrurgians, that is, bloudletting in *Ganglia*, especially if they chance in the hands, or in the feete, but we must cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the first with Ammoniack, which must be made pliant to the thicknesse of an Emplaister: afterward we apply a plate of lead equal for the tumour; and lest it should slide away from the place, we bind it in the middest with straight bands. But a few daies after, when we know that *Ganglium* is mollified, we take away the bands, and (not saying any thing to the sicke) while the place is yet hote, we fasten the thombe of our right hand vpon *Ganglium*, and laying fast hold on the member withour other foure fingers we violently breake it, and so *Ganglium* is presently dissolued. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may easily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongst the late Physitions, *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one disease, which the former description of them doth also manifestly declare. *Archigenes* in this disease, commandeth to lay on lime with the fat of a goose, and with Rosin, *Terebinthina*, which is the right Turpentine. The same *Archigenes* also did oftentimes vse that medicine made of the stone called *Lapis Achates*, as Paulus reporteth. But *Oribasius* vsed very often this medicine, ℞. of Ceruce, *Resinæ picea*, old oyle, ana. ℥.j. of Ammoniacke, *Thymiama* and *Galbanum*, ana. a like quantity,

Compressio & attritio.

Lupiæ curatio.

Laminaplũbea

Vnguentum Rogerij.

Ganglij curatio ex Philagrio.

Lupia & ganglion is all one euill.

Archigenes lib. 4.

Oribasius his medicine to mollifie Ganglia.

quantity, of waxe, ℥.iiij. The ſame medicine is to be ſeene in *Ætius*, but the quantity doth vary in certaine things, as thus, ℞. of Ceruſe, old Oyle, and *Reſinæ picea*, ana. ℔.j of Waxe, ℥. ij. of *Ammoniacum*, *Thymiama*, and of *Galbanum*, ana. ℥.j. boile the Ceruſe with oyle till it loſe his ſtaining faculty, then bray the Ammoniacke, and caſt it into the Ceruſe with the oyle, afterward caſt in the *Reſina picea* and the Waxe, and laſt of all the *Galbanum*, which firſt muſt be made very ſoft and tender. Moreouer that famous Phyſition of Greece, I meane *Oribaſius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicen*, and other late Chyrurgians were accuſtomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglium*, a thicke round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which doth hang vpon womens ſpindles to make them turne round, which was more large and ample for the diſeaſe. For truly, ſaith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more ſpeedily diſſolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Glanglia*, it is far better to vſe ſuch mollifying and diſcuſſing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian (with exciſion of the tumours,) eſpecially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the body. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut oft, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But thoſe diſeaſes which do occupie the head or the forehead, may ſafely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off or pulled vp by the roots. Therefore deuide the outward skinne with a penknife, and then (if the tumours be ſmall) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of pinſers, or ſome ſuch like inſtrument, and cut them off from the roote. But if they be great, thruſt them through with a hooke, and liſt them vp and wind them round about, vntill you haue plucked and drawne them foorth: laſt of all, ſew vp the ſides or brims of them together, and vſe thoſe medicines which are appointed for bloudy vlcers. But theſe things belong vnto the fourth canon. The ſecond canon (becauſe I will be ſilent in thoſe medicines which are appointed for flegmaticke and œdematous tumors, which we haue deſcribed already, and yet together with theſe remedies following, they be very profitable and expedient for theſe Abſceſſions whereof we now intreate, and alſo for all kind of *Hernia*) is finiſhed by the applying of a certaine Emplaiſter, which is deſcribed of *Galen libro ſexto de compoſitione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*: which Emplaiſter (as he himſelfe teſtifieth) doth digeſt though breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuall againſt the diſeaſes called *Struma*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auaileable alſo againſt the gowte, and it beneſiteth many other diſeaſes. The Emplaiſter is this. ℞. of old Oyle. ℥. 100. *Spumæ argẽti*, *Picis ſiccæ*, ana. ℥. 50. of *Ladanum*, ℥. 52. of *Æruginis raſa*, ℥. 8. of *Galbanum*, ℥. 4. let *Argenti ſpuma*, which they call *Lithargirum*, be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are ſomewhat thickned together, put in the Pitch and the ruſt of the ſcourings of braſſe, commonly called verdigreace, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a mortar, and bray them and mollifie them, and reſerue them to your vſe. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke ſomewhat brown, do commixe with them alſo the offal of braſſe, ℥. viij. for otherwiſe it would be very blacke. This Emplaiſter is found otherwiſe deſcribed in *Guido* his commentaries, vnder this forme. ℞. of old oile, ℥. xij. of the ſcourings of braſſe, ℥. xiiij. of dry Pitch, ℥. vj. of *Ladanum*, ℥. iij. of

Verticillum plumbeum.

Gangliorum per Chyrurgiã curatio.

Secundus canon.

Diſcuſſion by digeſtiues.

Emplaſtrum.

Diachylon. *Litharg.* ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*, ℥. iij. For the same purpose *Diachylon* also which is called *commune & ireatum* doth profite much, whereof you must take one pound, and commixe therewith the powder of the roote of Ireos, ℥ j. The same effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Mesues*, whose description shall afterward ensue. Some counsell vs for the digestion of these abscessions to apply vnto the aggrieued place, the olde dung of a Goate with hony and vineger, which must be heat ouer the fire vntill they be well incorporate together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaister: also an emplaister made of Fenugreeke, of the seed of flaxe, and of coleworts, with the scraping of the roote of *Althæa*, which medicine (if there be any hope of suppuration) doth ripen it notably *Haly Abbas* also for the same purpose doth greatly commend this emplaister following. ℞. of Beane meale, and Barley meale, ana. ℥. v. of the roote of Liquorice, of the roote of *Althæa*, and pitch, ana. ℥. x. of white waxe, goose suet, ana. ℥. x. bray them, and mingle them together with olde oile, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tried Venus sports, and ouer a soft fire make an emplaister. Another out of *Auicen* which *Guido* vsed. ℞. of Oxes dung ℥ ij. of the root of Coleworts, of the roote of Capers, of the fish called a shrimpe, of fat Figges, ana. ℥. ß. of Hops and *Bdellium*, ana ℥. ij of vineger, hony, Sowes tallow, of the dregs of old oile, of each as much as is sufficient, whereof make an emplaister. *Brunnus* approueth this remedie, following, whose opinion *Theodoricus* also doth confirme. ℞. of Ammoniacke, *Bdellium*, *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: steepe them three daies in vineger, whereto (when they be dissolued) you may adde of small bran as much as shall suffice, and make an emplaister. *Rogerius* was wont to vse this remedie for *Strumæ* (which they commonly call *Scrofulæ*,) ℞. of the roote of brakes of Daffadil, or of Walwort (if you please) of each as much as you thinke good, let them be boyled in the best wine, and then brayed in a mortar, and adde to them a little quicke brimstone, and make an Emplaister. *Guido* his maister *in Monte Pessulano*, hath often tried this emplaister to be most effectuall, which is made of xij. Snailes (which they also call *Limaces*) boiled in wine or in lye made of ashes, commonly called *Clauelata*. But that which is more profitable, he did minister euery day to the sicke to be eaten one Snaile, either dry or otherwise prepared, and as they terme it, made ready to chew. *Paulus* also was wont notably to discusse *Strumæ* with vnslaked lime, steeped in hony, or in the filthinesse of mens bodies that doth arise either in exercising themselues, or in bathes, or else in oile, or Sowes Grease. The like vertue, saith *Ætius*, hath the filthinesse of exercising places scraped from the walles, which must be vll beaten together and spread vpon a linnen cloth, and applied after the manner of an emplaister. For the same purpose this helpeth effectually. ℞. of lime and *Nitrum*, ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and Fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaister. Also the meale of bitter Hops boiled and annointed with *Oximel* doth discusse *Strumæ*. For the same purpose also Oxes dung boiled in vineger and annointed, doth notably auaile, which being applyed after the manner of a Cataplasma, doth marueilously dissolue all hard and scirrous tumours. Rath ripe Figgs also, especially, of the wild

Stercus caprinum vetus.

Haly Abbas emplastrum.

Emplastrum Auicennæ.

Brunni & Theodorici emplastrum ad strumas.

Rogerij emplastrum.

Emplastrum præceptoris Guidonis ex limacibus.

wild fig tree, applyed with Hogs greaſe, do diſcuſſe all kinds of tumors. Therefore by this our methode of curing, you ſhall heale all kind of *Struma* which are but newly begun, & not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuall practiſe, euen by the applying of ſuch medicines as can diſſolue, and digeſt, & diſcuſſe. But firſt you muſt labour to mollifie and afterward to diſſolue, or elſe vſe ſome medicine of a double quality, which can work both theſe effects together, of which kind are all thoſe remedies almoſt which are before deſcribed. Now if digeſtiue medicines ſhall nothing preuaile in theſe Abſceſſions, they muſt be either brought vnto ſuppuration, or conſumed, or elſe cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it ſhall be ſaid hereafter. But here we muſt not omit that thing which is recorded of ſome very diligently: namely: that they which are diſeaſed with *Strumæ*, & with any leproſie, are maruellouſly holpen by the vſing of Vipers & Serpents, and by drinking of the gumme called *Laſer*, euery day faſting to the quantitie of a cich peaſe. Therefore caſt the dead Serpent into a pot, and ſtop the mouth thereof very iuſt with ſome plaiſter, and ſet it in the fire, then take the aſhes of the burned Serpent, and mingle them with the like quantity of Fenugreeke, and vſe them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be ſtrumous. Alſo in them that labour with *Struma*, you muſt prouide that the belly be made ſoluble, and a ſlender diet obſerued: you muſt dayly prouoke vomiting, & indeuour to purge fleame vpward: you muſt dry the head, and apply Cataplaſmes to the forepart thereof, which can raiſe vp litles puſhes in the skin, as is, the root of Capers, with *Polenta*, and other ſuch like things. And you muſt vſe purging medicines and fine powders that be of like vertue. We alſo do generally diſpatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vſe of the former remedies: for all mollifying and reſoluing medicines, if they finde any place of matter diſobedient vnto reſolution, they doubtleſſe do ripen the ſame matter, and bring it to ſuppuration, eſpecially if the ſaid matter be gentle and tractable, or commixed with bloud. But *Haly Abbas*, that he might bring theſe kinds of Abſceſſions vnto maturity, miniſtred a plaiſter made of Barley meale, pitch, and *Olibanum*, & of the vrine of a yong child, all well incorporate together, But *Auicen*, to repreſſe the vehemency of the heate, willeth to commixe the decoction of Coriander with the aforeſaid vrine. But if theſe things do nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuall remedie, take of Myrrhe part j. of *Licium* parts ij. and mingle them with the aforeſaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Strumæ* vnto ſuppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Æginetа, lib.* 4. ℞ of Myrrhe ℥.x. of *ammoniacum Thymiama*. ℥. vij. of *Viſcus quercinum*. ℥. viij of *Galbanum*, ℥. iiij *Propelis*, ℥ j beate them in a mortar. But when theſe Abſceſſions be ripe, and brought vnto ſuppuration (which you ſhall eaſily perceiue by theſe tokens of matter) they muſt be opened & cleanſed with that ointment cõmonly caled *Vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacy in maligant and vlcerated *Strumæ*. To this purpoſe alſo the ointment called *Vnguentũ Aegyptiacum* is very profitable, & the *Emplaſtrum de ſuccis* (which they call *Dyachylon* & *Diapalma*, which the Greeks cal διαπάλμη whoſe deſciptions are to be found in other places. But if theſe Abſceſſions ſhall poſſeſſe any member, wherein there ſubſiſteth any putrifaction: & cor-

The vſing of vipers and ſerpents doth maruelouſly helpe them which are ſtrumous.

3

Tertij Canonis declaratio. Suppurantia. ſeu maturantia.

Pauli medicamentum ad ſtrumas ſuppurandas. Detergentia.

Vnguentum Apoſtolorum. Vnguentum Ægyptiacum Diachylon. Diapalma.

ruption of the bones, or any euill ſymptomate ſhall haue acceſſe to them, they muſt be cured after the manner of vlcers, with which they haue ſome affinity and acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you ſhall eure gentle obedient, ſuperficiall, and curable *Strumæ*, very cunningly and ſhortly, after this ſort. Firſt, command the ſicke to lie downe: for that when he ſitteth his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus laid, bind his legs ſurely together, and tie them to the bedſtead, and charge the ſeruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compaſſeth the tumour, either with a right or a little ouerthwart ſection, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, becauſe in it the veſſels and ſinewes are extended right forth. But you ſhall not cut the whole thickneſſe of the skinne haſtily at one time without ceaſſing: for our minde is to vſe no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in little tumours, that is in ſmall *Strumæ*, make but a ſimple inciſion, or deuide them with a ſmall line: but in great Abſceſſions cut the skin to the forme of a Myrtle leafe: then thoſe veſſels which are vncouered (as the veines and arteries) put them ſoftly and eaſily aſide. After theſe things, diſtend & ſtretch out the ſides of the ſection, or the edges of the deuided skin with pinſers, or with other ſuch inſtruments, and plucke out the ſilmes within, either with your fingers, or with ſome other inſtrument appointed for that purpoſe, and ſo by litle and little picke out *Strumæ*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *Strumæ* ſhall be wound about the veſſels, you muſt handle the cure with great attention, leſt through negligence there followeth a copious profuſion of bloud. Therefore in diſpatching this cure draw one onely ſide of the ſection at once with the pinſers, and ſo by little and little ſeparate it with the point of a penknife from the other parts thereunto adioyning: and when you haue drawne & looſed the connexion on the one ſide, do the like alſo on the other ſide, and then cut out the whole foundation or groundworke, becauſe of the ſinewes and veſſels lying vnderneath. But in thoſe *Strumæ* which do chance about the armeholes, and about the priuy members, you muſt make an ouerthwart incision, by reaſon of the doubling of the skin. Moreouer, in that ſection which is made in *Strumæ* that poſſeſſe the necke, you muſt haue a ſingular care, leſt either the arteries, which they call *Carotides*, or the quiuering ſinewes be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any veſſell when you make incision, the profuſion of bloud doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the veſſell with a ſmall cord, or (if it be not very great) cut it quite off, (as *Paulus* counſelleth) or elſe, (if it burſteth not out with great violence) apply ſuch remedies as are appointed to ſtanch the bloud. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterpriſed labour. Therefore when the foundation of *Strumæ* is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handſomely, and then put in the forefinger, and ſearch the place diligently, whether there be any other *Strumæ* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you muſt alſo draw forth after that manner which we haue before expreſſed. Moreouer you ſhall eaſily repreſſe a meane fluxe of bloud by applying thoſe things which haue power to dry vp, as flaxe, ſponges, or liniments made of cotton, infuſed in cold water, or in Vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *Oxycraton*) & afterward

4.

The way to cure and deſtroy Strumæ, out of Albucaſis and Leonidas.

ward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloodshed, fill it vp with the powder of Frankinsence, and apply liniments, and for the longer preseruation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if any ful veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottome of *Glandula* or *Strumæ*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the very ground, but to take it vp and bind it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without danger. In which fall the cure must be followed with liniments: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Sericæ*, or small lute strings: for those bands which do quickly rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But if when the worke is finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behinde, *Albucasis* willeth it to be drawne out, first, by filling the wound with cotton, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those relicts which remained behinde, did fill vp the gaping vlcer, first with the white of an egge, and with Alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiuing medicines which are described in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must apply such medicines as can lenify paine: but amongst all other things, we do commonly lay on flaxe dipped in the white of an eg, and in oyle of Roses. You shall finish the scope of our fift rule after this sort: breake the skinne with some burning hote medicine according to the greatnesse of the abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, lest that the scalding medicine do touch the others parts lying about the tumours. You shall notably dispatch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lime or sope, which things do happily execute their effects within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no danger or discommodity thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and the crust procured in the place thereof, you shall deuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest of the crust: but you must make incision somewhat deepely almost to the very quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessions, yet Arsenike in this case obtaineth the preheminence, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantity of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therfore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomates. Besides that also the ministring of a small quantity doth performe a maruellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding the common measure or quantity thereof, is the mediety of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall parts: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principall members, a lesse quantity must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and more

What is to be done, if a veine be annexed vnto Struma.

Cords made of silke.

Albucasis.

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Causticum ex calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas Arsenici.

ruption of the bones, or any euill symptomate shall haue accesse to them, they must be cured after the manner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinity and acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shall cure gentle obedient, superficiall, and curable *Strumæ*, very cunningly and shortly, after this sort.

4.

The way to cure and destroy Strumæ, out of Albucasis and Leonidas.

First, command the sicke to lie downe: for that when he sitteth his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus laid, bind his legs surely together, and tie them to the bedstead, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour, either with a right or a little ouerthwart section, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vessels and sinewes are extended right forth. But you shall not cut the whole thicknesse of the skinne hastily at one time without ceassing: for our minde is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in little tumours, that is, in small *Strumæ*, make but a simple incision, or deuide them with a small line: but in great Abscessions cut the skin to the forme of a Myrtle leafe: then those vessels which are vncouered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the deuided skin with pinsers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and little picke out *Strumæ*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *Strumæ* shall be wound about the vessels, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence there followeth a copious profusion of bloud. Therefore in dispatching this cure draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinsers, and so by little and little separate it with the point of a penknife from the other parts thereunto adioyning: and when you haue drawne & loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or groundworke, because of the sinewes and vessels lying vnderneath. But in those *Strumæ* which do chance about the armeholes, and about the priuy members, you must make an ouerthwart incision, by reason of the doubling of the skin. Moreouer, in that section which is made in *Strumæ* that possesse the necke, you must haue a singular care, lest either the arteries, which they call *Carotides*, or the quiuering sinewes be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make incision, the profusion of bloud doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not very great) cut it quite off, (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the bloud. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterprised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *Strumæ* is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *Strumæ* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw forth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreouer you shall easily represse a meane fluxe of bloud by applying those things which haue power to dry vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotton, infused in cold water, or in Vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *Oxycraton*) & afterward

ward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloodshed, fill it vp with the powder of Frankinsence, and apply liniments, and for the longer preseruation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if any ful veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottome of *Glandula* or *Struma*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the very ground, but to take it vp and bind it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without danger. In which fall the cure must be followed with liniments: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Serica*, or small lute strings: for those bands which do quickly rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But if when the worke is finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behinde, *Albucasis* willeth it to be drawne out, first, by filling the wound with cotton, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those relicts which remained behinde, did fill vp the gaping vlcer, first with the white of an egge, and with Alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiuing medicines which are described in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must apply such medicines as can lenify paine: but amongst all other things, we do commonly lay on flaxe dipped in the white of an eg, and in oyle of Roses. You shall finish the scope of our fift rule after this sort: breake the skinne with some burning hote medicine according to the greatnesse of the abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, lest that the scalding medicine do touch the others parts lying about the tumours. You shall notably dispatch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lime or sope, which things do happily execute their effects within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no danger or discommodity thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and the cruft procured in the place thereof, you shall deuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest of the cruft: but you must make incision somewhat deepely almost to the very quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessions, yet Arsenike in this case obtaineth the preheminence, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantity of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therfore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomates. Besides that also the ministring of a small quantity doth performe a maruellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding the common measure or quantity thereof, is the mediety of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall parts: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principall members, a lesse quantity must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and

What is to be done, if a veine be annexed vnto Struma.

Cords made of silke.

Albucasis.

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Causticum est calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas Arsenici.

more safe, to minister a little at once and often, then at one time to apply an immoderate quantity. The operation or effect of Asenicke remaineth three whole dayes, in all which time the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it, both for the owne defence and to stop the fluxe (which immoderate heate may cause) ought to be annointed, and all to washed with the ointment called *Populeon*, with water also, or with the iuyce of Nightshade, and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainely assured, that *Glandula* is destroyed and wasted away (which you shall know by the hardnes and swelling of the procured crust) then the crust must be resolued euen from the quick, by washing it with butter, & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together, and by some other fat and vnctuous thing that is not salted, as swines greale and such like. But when the crust is fallen from the tumour, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *Lupia* or *Strumæ* do yet remain behind, it must be fetched out with some gnawing medicine, as with powder of *Asphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, or with some such like thing. But if there remaineth nothing behind, it must be brought vnto a scarre after the maner of other vlcers.

Quando crusta à vino resoluenda.

6 *Ligature & reuulsio.*

But now that we may also accomplish the intention of our sixth canon, these abscessions which haue very narrow bases or foundations, must be fast bound either with a cord of silke, or with horse haire, and they must be bound dayly more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cords, vntill they appeare very drie, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue said of those Abscessions which are deepely planted, and folded about the great vessels.) But the band must be ayded with some consuming & drying medicine. The paine also must be asswaged with the white of an egge, with oyle of Roses, with *Vnguentũ Populeon*, or with some other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cord shall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour must be cured after this manner which we haue before expressed. And thus much generally concerning those abscessions which vniuersally consist aboue nature, especially of them that haue their originall of fleame. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to set downe the proper & particular method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*, which diseases are alwayes & often incident to mens bodies, and do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes & differences of tumours besides nature, called of the late Physitions after certaine new titles and names, which among the ancient sort were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Testudo*, *Nacta*, and others of that kinde, which we haue expressed in our former chapters: in those three kinds of Abscessions which do most frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in the tunicle which they call *Cystis*, may be discussed, or that the whole tumour together with the very tunicle may be consumed by medicine, or taken away by section. But some of those tumors require a threefold method of curing, as those which containe a more liquid humour, as is *Meliceris*. Some againe are cured two waies, as *Atheroma*, which is destroyed by section, and consumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be discussed nor consumed, but it is cured by the onely labour of the hand, that is, by section

Curatio Atheromatis, Steatomatis & Meliceris.

How many wayes these Abscessions may be cured.

ction onely. Moreouer of medicines which in these affects haue power to discusse and disperse, you shall finde plentie among those remedies which we before haue set downe for the cure of *Strumæ*. But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly discusse *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth of pressed Grapes (the kernels being taken out) xx. of the scourings of Brasse, ℥iiij. which medicine must not be applied before the member be nourished with foments. Another Emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Ætius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. ℞. of pressed Grapes (the kernels being detracted) ℔. j. of Comin seede beaten very small, ℥.vj. of *Nitrum*, ℥.iij. bray al together in a mortar, and bind them to the tumour. Another discussiue medicine expressed of the same writer, very profitable against *Melicerides*. ℞. *Salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse, ana. ℔.j. of Waxe *Terebinthina*, *Chalbana*, *Opoponax*, ana. ℥.j. of *Rubicra sinopica*, ℥ vj. of Vineger, ℥.vij.ß. boyle the scourings of siluer, Ceruse and Salt beaten very small together, then cast in the *Rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in Vineger, and melt them together: last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *Opoponax* and *Chalbana*, both dissolued in Vineger, and conserue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to waste the humour by applying of gnawing medicines (which the Græcians call *Septica*) it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *Strumæ*) by hote burning medicines applyed to the skinne, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that which consisteth of quicke Lime, that is, which is not yet quenched with water; of Sope, and of the ashes of Lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. ℞. of vnslaked Lime, ℥ iiij. of *Sphecle*, that is, of the burnt dregs of Wine, Liquide *Nitrum* parched in the fire, ana ℥.ij. of *Minium* or *Rubrica sinopica* ℥.j. Let them be brayed with the distilled ashes of Lye, and when you haue brought them to the thickneſſe of Liquide Hony, heate them thrise ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *Pixis plumbra*, with the distilled Lye aboue, lest it dry vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skin that is beset, with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, apply consuming remedies, among which this remedy following doth notably waste without gnawing and biting. ℞. of the offal of brasse, ℥.iiij. of *Sandaracha*, that is, of red Arsenike, and of *Helleborus niger*, ana. ℥.ij applie them with oyle of Roses. Another remedie very effectuall for the same purpose. ℞. of a burnt Hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of Orpine or Arsenicke, ana. an equall portion, commixe them with oile of Roses. But the parts which lie about the tumour and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with Ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kinds of Abscessions by making incisions, that is, by Chyrurgery, truly in that method of curing (whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony, or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be, which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely, to take away the tunicle wherein the tumour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be very attentiue and wary (as we haue said before of *Strumæ*) that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein,

Lib. 4. Curatio per digerentia.

Lib. 15.

Curatio per exedentia. Lib. 4.

A medicine to waste without byting.

Curatio per chyrurgiam.

gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation, and some portion thereof also remaineth still behinde. For if (when the tunicle is deuided, and the humour issued) the tumour shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared that the disease will grow againe (as doth *Struma*) when as any portion thereof sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happé, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the relicts thereof, either with those consuming medicines which we haue before expressed, or by some such remedies. Now, if *Steatoma* hath a very broad top, and a very narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous medicines) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very roote; for so the labour of the Chyrurgian may be quickly ended, the vlcer made plaine and equall with the other parts, and the cure shortly dispatched.

Ætius lib. 15.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and scirrhous tumours, engendred of melancholy.

WE haue hither discourſed of those tumours which are cauſed of bloud, choler, and fleame: of *Verrucæ* also, and of the abscessions which are excited through a wateriſh humor, and a flatuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a flegmaticke substance, and of other tumours generally consisting aboue nature. Now it remaineth that we intreate of those Abscessions which do proceede of a melancholike humour, as are *Scirrhus*, indurated cancerous tumours, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrhus* therefore (as also to *Phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *Oedema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, *videlicet*, *Scirrhus verus*, *& Scirrhus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrhus* is said to proceed of naturall melancholy. Also naturall melancholie is the dregs of good bloud, and as it were a certaine slimy superfluity, and very grosse bloud, whose colour is blacke, but the taſt thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same:) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humours are contained, and appointed of nature to nourish the melancholike members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholy. And vnnaturall melancholy is that which differeth from the former description of the naturall humour, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his liberty, which if it shall once pretergresse (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholy, but some other humour. But melancholy (to enter into the generall definion thereof) is a cold and dry humour, proceeding (as *Guido* saith) of a very grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholy there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholike humour which is called naturall, and doth dayly engender in the body, euen when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For

Scirrhus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrhus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentiæ 4. non naturalis melancholiæ.

that

that (as *Galen* saith) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glistreth like vnto Lime or Pitch. But this is soure, & being powred vpon the ground, it is hote like Vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also very vnpleasant to all creatures liuing, so that neither mice nor flies will taste thereof. It sheweth likewise like vnto abundance of Salt, wherein no liuing thing can vphold his life, as the sea which is said to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred, when as that slimie bloud (which we haue said to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the body, and is purged out neither by any sensible nor secret fluxion, but is transformed, corrupted, and rotten. For truly this humour (saith *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feauer, it causeth melancholy: which truly is cold, because it resembleth the nature of the earth, but yet it is not void of heate, as is ashes and vineger; and when it is purged downeward (as it appeareth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud which we do call a melancholious humour. *Lib. 4. Aphe. Lib. 14. Therapentices.*

2. The second *Species* or difference of vnnaturall melancholy is that which cometh through the adustion of other humours, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raiseth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholy. But the flies also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud also or fleame shall be vehemently heated in the body, and burnt, there is also caused a melancholike humour, which *Auicen* because of the adustion, termed to be vnnaturall: but these two last kinds, which do come of the adustion of bloud and fleame, *Auicen* hath thought to be very milde and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that the kinde of melancholy which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of Wine in the bottome of a vessell or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile; for this is more gentle and milde, yea and especially when as it tarieth not long within the body with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholy, it passeth first into a yellowish forme, secondly into leekie substance, and thirdly into a rusty colour. *2 Melancholy cometh by the adustion of other humours. Com. 29. lib 3. predict. Hip.*

3. The third *Species* of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stony concretion, as when through the ignorance of the vnskilfull Physitions or Chyrurgians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the Græcians call *Phlegmone*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinary medicines: or else when those medicines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was very small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dried, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. *3 Bilis atraper congelationem (vt vocant) & indurationem.*

4. The fourth difference of vnnaturall melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholy: which thing while it hapneth, it is made sweete, and doth waxe milde, vntill such time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith; for then it waxeth sharp and *4 Melancholy through admixtion of other humours.*

Foure differences of tumours caused of melancholy.

bitter,& is made partaker of immoderate gnawing. We may gather therefore by our former words, that the 4. differences of tumours aboue nature do proceede of melancholy: for first of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in sound bodyes) there is caused a true and lawfull *Scirrhus*, called of the Arabians *Sephiros*, of the Greekes σκιῤῥος and σκιῤῥος ἀκρίτος, that is, *Scirrhus*, or *Scirrhus non exactus seu non exquisitus*, which kind of tumour truly is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auicen* calleth it *impurum*. Yet *Galen lib.* 14. *Meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumours, calleth it a tumour conflated of a melancholious humour, and then properly *Scirrhus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sence: but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a scirrhous tumor, then *Scirrhus* it selfe. Secondly of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtion of other humours there do grow three other differences of tumors, that is to say, *Scirrhus phlegmonôdes*, *ædematôdes*, and *erysipelatôdes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly, of vnnaturall melancholy caused through a certaine stony hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *Scirrhus*, hard, and void of sense and paine: it is called of *Auicen purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnaturall melancholy through deustion, are all these kinds of cankers engendred, as well vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kind is *Scirrhus cancrosus*. *Scirrhus* therefore properly is a tumour very hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a naturall melancholy, and vncorrupt humour; which definition the late Chyrurgians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *Scirrhus*, as of other tumors besides nature, are three. First primitiue, as an euill diet, ingendring and gathering grosse and melancholike bloud. Secondly antecedent, as a melancholike humour collected in the body, which is drawne from the splene (whose duty it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy bloud) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be.) Thirdly *Coniuncta causa*, is the melancholike humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *Scirrus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumour, and mighty resisting, a middle colour betweene a red and a blacke, which is a browne colour. This *Scirrhus* when it happeneth in the parts of the body, many of the Physitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *Pelidnon*, that is to say, blacke and blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meane of thicke and black bloud, such as is sometime purged downeward in them which labour with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *Scirrus impurus & cancrosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *Scirrus*, do properly agre with the signes of Cancer, as *Galen* writeth 14. *Meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *Scirrhus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely that *Scirrus* hath not such swelling and full veines as Cancer hath, except *Scirrhus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancrosus*: for *Scirrus* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceede of one matter, that is, of a melancholicke humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *Scirrus* are these: a hard and stony tumour, very obstinate, and resisting touching

Verus scirrhus non exquisitus.

Sirrhus phlegmonôdes, ædematôdes.

erysipelatôdes.

Scirrhus exquisitus.

Scirrhus cancrosus.

Scirrus proprie quid.

Causæ 3. Scirrhi legitimi.

Signa.

14. Metho. med.

Guido not as Cancri tribuit Scirrho.

ching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholy humour in ỹ body. Such tumors as are truly *Scirrhi*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare very small, but in processe of time, they do grow and increase by litle and little, and become great and mighty, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the said tumors do leaue that member which they did first infect, & afterward do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it hapneth, then *Auicen* calleth the euill *Ferinos*. Furthermore, these kinds of melancholious tumors if they be rightly handled, they are cõmonly cured by resolution; oftentimes they continue indurated and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*.

Indicia Scirri

Ferinos.

The cure of a true & lawfull scirrhus, yet not exquisite, and grown into a stony hardnes, altogether insensible.

But now we will prosecute that absolute cure of these kinds of hard tumors aboue nature, which are called true *Scirrhi*, and not *exquisiti*, by three speciall intentions. The first prescribeth a conuenient order of diet. The second admonisheth vs to take away the antecedent matter, which is ready to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprise the vacuation of that coniunct matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore (to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrhus*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moisture in those things which they call *Res non naturales*, as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good bloud. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneaded, and baked in an ouen with a soft fire, and let it haue some leauen, and Salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small ale or beere, giue him rere egges, the flesh of chickens, capons, henne, and the brother of them. Let him also eate the flesh of Partriches, Phealants, Quailes, yong Kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare old. For pot herbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Aspanar*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it Spinach; also Lettuce, Hops, Borrage, Bugloss, & other herbes of that nature which can purge forth bloud, and make it more pure. To conclude, let him flie and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike bloud, which thing *Galen in libro tertio de affectis, capite sexto* hath described vnto vs; as are, the flesh of Goates, and of Oxen, and of Buls, but especially the flesh of Asses, and of Camels, of Foxes and of dogs, of Hares also and of Bores; furthermore Snailes (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with salt. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunie, of the fish called *Balana*, the sea Calfe, the Dolphin, the Dog fish, and all kind of Whales. But of pot-herbes, Coleworts are wont onely to engender this kind of bloud. The buds also of trees, when they are seasoned either with Brine or with *Oxalme*, especially of the tree called a Mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the Brier, and of the wild Eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynosbatos*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted among the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of bran, and that which is made of Rie and of other corrupt and naughty seedes, which other countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreouer, thicke and blacke wines are very fit to engender a melancholious humour: especially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occasion keepe his body in great heate.

Carnes.

Oua.

Lacticinia.

Panis.

Potus.

Carnes.

Olera.

Carnes.

Limaces.

Pisces.

Olera.

Oxalme is made of vinegar and salt.

Legumina.

Panis.

Typha.

Vinum.

Caseus.

Finally

Finally, old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the body, doth easily breed this kinde of humour. These things haue we hitherto rectied out of *Galen*. Furthermore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, rosted, and fried, which do vehemently dry vp; of salt meates also, and those which are sharpe and sowre, as Onions, Garlicke, Pepper, Mustard, and of other things of that kinde which do burne the bloud. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse, watchings, heauinesse, carefulnesse, and immoderate exercise. Quietnesse and tranquillity of minde, with mirth and gladnesse is greatly to be desired: and you must diligently endeuour euery day to empty the belly. Hitherto concerning the first scope. 2. Now that we may accomplish that which our second intention doth propound, let vs somewhat consider the precept of *Auicen*, who willeth vs to euacuate the whole body both by bloudletting, if too blacke and grosse blould shall appeare, and also by some purging medicine, which can repell melancholy, as are those which follow out of *Mesua*; *Epithymum*, *Sene*, *Polypody*, *Fumus terræ* (which of the Græcians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *Fumaria*) *Lupulus*, and the herbe called *Volubilis*. Also *Cassia fistula*, *Myrobalani Indi*, *Lapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *Cyaneus*, the Romanes *Cæruleus*, *Diasene*, *Diacatholicon*, *Hiera Ruphi*: all which things do purge forth melancholike humours. But these things which pertaine vnto Physicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the professors of the art of Physicke, we will hasten to the third scope, which we shall very speedily dispatch, if we labour to empty out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principall indication of all tumours which consist aboue nature: in which that leeky matter (as we haue said before) is not yet engendred. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be very circumspect, and attentiue. For truly the matter of such kind of tumours, is naturally so malignant and stubborne, that it will turne into a stony hardnesse if it be rashly resolued. Againe, if it be mollified more then is requisite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We must therefore in this case follow the counsell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicen*,) namely, that in such scirrhous affects, we must not apply any vehement, hote, and drying medicine, neither any thing else which hath the power onely to mollify and moisten. For that tumour which hath a superfluous humour, it doth nothing at all dissolue: but that which hath a small flute it doth more dry vp the neede requireth. Hereupon *Auicen* did well admonish vs, to apply to these indurated tumours by turnes, sometime mollifying, and sometime digesting remedies. But because that order was very tedious and hard to be done, it pleased *Galen* to vse for the cure of these euils, such medicines as had a mixed and double faculty; which deuice was more safe, and lesse dangerous. For by this meanes we shall both mollifie and digest the indurate and hard substance all at one time: yet in the beginning we must commixe something with them which can moderately represse. For this purpose *Auicen* hath set downe many kinds of remedies, which because they are rather appointed for these *Scirrhi* which proceed of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* when they

Sanguinem adurentia.

Animi pathemata.

Exercitatio, 2

Vacuatio materiæ antecedentis.

3 Vacuatio materiæ cõiunctæ.

Materia scirrhorum cautè tractanda.

Gal. 2. ad Glauc.

Medicines good for scirrhus.

they be exceedingly cooled (as we wil declare in the chapters following) we will omit them, making choyce of that medicine which *Razis in libro ſepti mo ad Almanſorem* hath deſcribed, vſing notwithſtanding at the beginning ſome equall repreſſion of the flowing of humours (by applying ſome moderate repelling remedy.) The forme of the medicine is this. ℞. of *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: beate them in a mortar with oyle *de ben*, which the Greekes call *Balanum myrepſicũ*, the Latines, *Glans vnguentaria*, or with oile of Lillies. Then take of the filth of Fenugreeke, of Lineſeed and Figges the weight of the former things: bray them all together till they be throughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the barke of the roote *Althæa*, which the common ſort (ſaith he) doth call *Anadendro malache*, as though one would ſay *Arboreſcens malua*, melted with the fat of a gooſe or of a cock, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a Cataplaſme. But if the tumour doth belong vnto ſupuration, you muſt be very warie, leſt the affected member be incended or ſtirred vp with hote medicines, or by any other meanes, for ſo *Cancer* ſhould eaſily be procured: but if the tumour be opened, and the ſubſtance thereof already turned into matter, you muſt vſe the helpe of that ointment which is called *Diachylon*. Againe, if it ſhall degenerate into a ſtony hardneſſe, you muſt ſtraightway repaire vnto thoſe remedies which ſhall be deſcribed in the chapters following.

Razis medicamentum ad ſcirrhos emolliendos & diſcutiendos.

Galeni cataplaſma. Therap. 14.

If Scirrus will matter.

But now when as through the vnskilfulneſſe and ignorance of Phyſitions, thoſe inflammations which the Græcians call *Phlegmone* or *Eryſipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or elſe raſhly reſolued, through the miniſtring of ſuch medicines as can vehemently draw and digeſt by their vapour, then all that ſubſtance which is any thing thinne and ſlender in them, is diſſolued, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together & maruellouſly dried vp, doth take vnto it a ſtony hardneſſe, and at the laſt commeth to that diſeaſe which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus* But it chanceth ſometime, that ſome member is hardned through extenſion of the fleſh which cometh by reaſon of winde or by ſome wateriſh humour (as we haue ſayd before in our Treatiſe of flatuous and wateriſh humours.) Oftentimes alſo there ariſeth vp in certaine members a ſtony hardneſſe cauſed of the priuation of the moiſture of the body, and through too much dryneſſe, as it happeth in the hardneſſe of the ioynts, and in the pores of the body, when the gowte or ſuch like diſeaſes do reigne. But here we will onely diſcouſe of *Scirrhi*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *Phlegmone* or *Eryſipelas*, or elſe from *Oedema*, when as they be often refrigerated and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without ſome reaſon *Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati*, that is, *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnity, being as it were a double diſeaſe incident both at one time. The ſignes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus* which is not exquiſite or perfect are theſe: a hard tumour, ſcarce ſenſible, that is, as though it were without feeling and paine, perfectly repreſenting the colour of the body, drawing his beginning from vnnaturall melancholy. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no eaſie cure, neither is it eaſily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force, is

Scirrus illegitimus & non exquiſitus. Quando generetur.

The cauſes of hardneſſe in the parts of the body.

Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati.

The ſignes of an vnlawfull Scirrus.

Indicia. is clammish, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* saith) a partaker of both kinds, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humidity thereof is throughly resolued, then that which remaineth behinde is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone.

Scirrus exquisitus curationem non admittit. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue any cure. But if it may be holpen any way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which cometh through too much exsiccation, and when the moisture of the body is cleane extinguished, is also incurable; for it is sufficient if you stoppe it, that the drinesse may proceed no further. But those *Scirrhi* also, wherein there do grow certaine haires, and which are great and very hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie,

Scirri incurabiles. are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Auicen* hath declared.

Summa curãdorum scirrorum. The common and generall declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is contained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib.* 14. *Metho. med.*) is this, euen to cleanse and draw out that corruption which stubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently draw and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying and moistening remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within very few daies greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truly when the whole substance which is very thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behind is turned into a certaine stony concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and scirrhous affects, but such remedies onely which can fitly both mollifie, and also digest, as are these things following: the marrow

Medulla cerui. of a Hart and of a calfe, also Goates suet, Bulles suet, the tallow of a Lybard

Adipes. and of a Lyon. Among the fat of birds, Goose grease is greatly commended,

Gal. 14. meth. med. next that the fat of a Cocke and of a Phesant. Also *Ammoniacum Thymiama*, *viz. Suffimen*, perfume, *Galbanum*, and *Bdellium* of both kinds, but rather that which is called *Scythicum*, because it is somewhat moist. *Styrax* also which is something moist and fat. Moreouer the roote of *Althæa*, and of the wild

Anadendro malache. Mallowe, which groweth almost euery where, the leaues whereof must be moderatly boyled with Goose or Cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse Swines grease: these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicen* warneth vs not to commixe any Hogges tallow that is salted with the former things, and to vse Masticke, *Labdanum*, oyle of wooll, *Strigmenta gymnasiorum* (which they call the filthinesse of bathes) Asses dung, and the dregs of oile of Lillies, of oile of *Alchanna* which they call *Cyprinum*, and of *Cherua*, which of the Greeks is called *xiriov*, but of the Latines

Oleum recinii. *Recinium*. But that cure which is administred by Vineger is profitable for this euill, that is, for *Scirrhus* which is full growne, and when the member is pre-

14. Meth. med. pared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly

Vsus Aceti. saith he, the force of Vineger, if it be vsed moderatly and in due time, is very wholesome

wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resolue the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applied immoderately and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner parts, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become very hard; also if it be vsed long, it will diminish and corrupt the very substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore we must not very often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of Vineger. Wherefore *Galen* did cure the child of one *Cercilius*, who through too much cooling and vehemēt binding of *Erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrous tumor remaining in his thigh, after this maner. First, he annointed his thigh with *Oleum sabinum*, which of all oiles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these dayes *Oleum sambucinum*, oile of Elder, which the common sort call *Iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the member, he applied *Ammoniacum Thymiama*, which must be grosse and not very old, commixed with the aforesaid suets and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with very fat *Ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe Vineger, and commanded the child to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment might be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could releale and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderate and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the child. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawne together & couered with *Scirrhus*, you must vse Vineger after this sorte as *Galen* counselleth vs: Take a stone and heate it very hote in the fire, and quench it in very sharpe Vineger: if it be possible, let the stone be that which we call *Pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *Lapis molaris*, which the Greeks call *Mylites*; then let the affected member be holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the Vineger, that it may receiue the steming vapour, which doth dissolue *Scirrhus*; and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day euen from the beginning throughly annointed with oile and not with water, which oyle must not be astrictiue in any case, but of a thin substāce, as is oile of Sauine. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *Althæa*, and of the wild Cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this method of curing, many men truly haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainely appeare, that with that cure which we accomplish by mollifying remedies as well in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and deuide, among which number Vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnes of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing, hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *Scirrous* tumors which we haue drawn into a cōpendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kind of *Scirrhus* which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growne into a stony hardnes, and is altogether destitute of sence, (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus Scirrhus*) of such a *Scirrhus* I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an

Historia. Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

Oleum sabinū.

Suffimentum.

The cure of scirrhus, sinewes, and veines, out of Galen and Paulus.

Lapis mylites.

Lapis pyrites.

Oleū sabinum.

2. ad Glauconē.

The summe of curing scirrhous tumours.

1

euill incurable. 2. To *Scirrhuum exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feeleth any thing, apply such medicines as cary with them a maruellous heate, and a meane moisture, that is to say, which by mollifying, can also moderately digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *Scirrus* minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, and immoderately dry vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abideth still behind is dried vp and turned into a stonie hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members, which are annoyed with *Scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and deuide, as is Vineger, with those remedies which can mollifie and moderately digest. 5. Also command that this scirrous member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *Scirrus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *Lapis molaris* burnt in the fire, and quenched in Vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggrieued member be euery day annointed with some thin oile, wherein either the roote of the wilde Cucumber, or of *Althæa*, or greene and fresh Dill, or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaid scirrous members such medicines as can drie, deuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately, that is to say, neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such scirrous tumours as are not indurated and of a stony hardnesse, let them be cured with such medicines as can fitly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a scirrhous splene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisedome of the Physition.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.

Cacer pertaineth vnto two kinds of diseases.

THe name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, among the Physitions and Chyrurgians hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the nouifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kinds of diseases, that is to say, vnto a cancerous tumour (which they commonly call *Cancer Apostematosus*, as well that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body, as in the hips, the roofe of the mouth, and in the pappes of a woman.) The other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate *Cancer*. But both these euils are engendred of melancholie, that is to say, of such a humour as resembleth the dregges of Wine, and the filthinesse of oile, which thing *Galen libro decimoquarto Therapeutices*, and in his little booke, *De tumoribus præter naturam*, doth plainely testifie. Now this aforesaid humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *Cancer* without any vlcer. But if it happeth to be sharp, fierce and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a Cancer with an vlcer. But here we will openly discourse of that kinde of Cancer which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not

Of what humour cancer is engendred.

Cancer sine vlcere.

Cancer cum vlcere.

yet

yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a prime Cancre. That Cancre therefore whereof we now intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about swolne and puffed vp: it is blew or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then an inflammation: it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are; it sodainely increaseth, and greatly wearieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in the Greeke it is called καρκῖνος, and καρκίνωμα, which title aswell the Latines as the Grecians haue assigned to this disease of the fish called a Crabbe, because the veines about this euill are filled and stretched out, very like vnto the feete of Crabs, descending from the round compasse of their bodies. But some haue giuen it this name, because it is very hardly pulled away from those members which it doth lay hold on, as the sea Crab doth, who obstinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumour doth also represét the colour of a Crab, whose hew is very blacke. But the first beginnings of these Cancres are sometime so confused and so small, that the common sort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do begin, they do scarce resemble the greatnesse of a pease or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruell (saith *Galen*) though the common sort do not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that arise out of the earth, which are not discerned but of skilfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into such huge greatnesse, and do bring with them so vehement, great, and manifest symptomates, that a child may easily discerne them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, seeing all men with one consent do terme this kind of disease *Cancer*, because (as we haue said) the veines in this euil do swell on euery side, and are greatly stretched out, and they do represent the forme and likenesse of a Crab. A cancerous tumor (as we haue sayd before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainly appeare. It hath a blew or browne colour, which is a meane betwene red and blacke, called of the Greeks μέλαν ἐρυθρόν. About the place where Cancer is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulse, and as it were a pricking, sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) the tumour is asleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to swell and rise vp, like vnto the Cancer in the armes. Oftentimes also in some they are secretly hidden, and when the place is touched, it is felt in some very painefull, but in other some it is contrary. This tumour also is maruellously stout, and resisteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine strange and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *Carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious disease, for it can scarcely be healed any way, by reason of the grosnes of the humour, neither can it be represſed or discussed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice also of this disease is so great, that it contemneth all gentle and easie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to thē, (as the prouerbe is) but it must be stirred and chafed, and ouercome with very vehement remedies (as we are wont to do in the euil called *Crabro*.) This disease is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but especially in the vpper parts, about the face, the nosthrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and those chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menstruis.

Cancros tumoris descriptio.

Cancri nomen à Cancro aquatico.

Cancri notæ per initia confusæ, & obscuræ.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Notæ Cancri euidentis non vlcerati.

Iudicia. Lib. 14. Ther.

Celsus lib. 5.

Gal. lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

But Cancres do also commonly haunt men, whose accustomed purgings are suppressed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them that grosse and thicke bloud (wherupon this euill taketh his first beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer whē this melancholious humor, resembling in portion the dregs of wine, doth descend and flow into any member, and there abideth compact together, it causeth sometime the disease called *Varices*, and sometime it breedeth a Cancre, as when the same is somewhat cooled. But when it is thrust out to the whole skin, it causeth that euill which they call *Elephans. Cancer* therefore is a certaine particular *Elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *Lepra*, the Lepry. But the thicker and the blacker the bloud is whereof Cancre proceedeth, the more dangerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full growne (as they say) and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be plucked vp by the roots, either by section or by adustion: but those Cancres which haue their constitution in the inward parts of the body, do not desire any such kind of cure, as that ancient *Hippocrates*, simply the Prince of Physitions, hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward Cancres: for when they are cured, they do soone perish againe, but when they are not cured, they remaine a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vpon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these Cancres either by section or vstion, do rather increase their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those Cancres therefore are onely curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and so do weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chyrurgians: and these tumors also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name the rootes of *Cancer*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veines which are full of melancholicke bloud, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate Cancre there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumour, when as in processe of time the humour doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred. This exulcerate Cancre of all other is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist the true cure, which attempteth and worketh all thinges to bring the sicke member vnto health; for this tumour, to cure it perfectly and absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked and stirred to anger, & therfore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by thē. It shall therefore be sufficient to hinder the increasing of vnulcerate Cancres, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also admonished vs in his former Aphorisme. For those tumours which do weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward Cancres, wherein both their vehement heate and their great pulse or beating, do threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a Cancre which is not yet vlcerate, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions,

Aphor. 38. lib. 6

What Cancre must be rooted out, and what not.

An exulcerate Cancre worst of all.

What things do foretell exulceration.

Curatio Cancri non vlcerati.

tions.1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholick humour. 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour dispersed throughout the whole body. 3. The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen and confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust and due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before described in the chapters *de Scirrho legitimo*. But among other things this is chiefly and principally to be obserued, namely that such nourishments be giuen to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which do engender good and slender iuyce, as are these; the iuyce of Barley steeped in water and pressed, fishes of graueIly places, birds of all kindes, saue those which liue in fenny grounds, the yolkes of egs, but specially of rere egs, (which the Græcians call ῥόφητα) and other things of that sort. But if any extreme heate shall infect the aggrieued place, and yet without a feuer, you may safely giue him heifers milke, from the which the butter is taken, or else the whey of milke. Pot-herbes also which haue a coole and moisting nature, as Mallowes, Orach, Spinage, and when time serueth, Gourds: Citrons also and Borage may be giuen him in meate. The second scope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humour, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accomplished by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholie, whereof you may finde plenty in the Chapter of *Scirrhus*: amongst the which *Epithymum* (which the Romanes call *Inuolucrum*) as a present remedie, doth obtaine the preheminence, wherof you must take foure drammes steeped in the whey of milke, or in *Mulsa*, (as *Galen* cõmandeth *lib.14. Meth. med.*) But this quantity of *Epithymum*, or somewhat more, must be offered euery third day, that the melancholicke humour which is gathered together in the veines, and causeth the generation of Cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, because it is impossible to euacuate all at one time. But we cannot alwaies prohibite the fluxe, lest afterward the like humour be engendered in the body, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter must be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of some simple medicine: afterward (if the matter so requireth, and the ministring of simples doth little auaile) you may vse the helpe of some compound remedies, as is that medicine of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholie, which consisteth of two & thirty simples, or *Hiera Ruffi*, or *Hiera Auicennæ*, which is made of blacke *Helleborus*. But you must not desist from those former rehearsed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humor which is stuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beset with this cancrous tumor, be throughly reduced to his natural state. But if nothing do let it, as age & strength, it shall not be amisse in these Cancres to let bloud, and then to purge (as we haue said before:) and if they be women, you must labour to purge menstruis, if they be not aboue fiftie yeares old (as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib.2 ad Glauconem.*) This second indication (saith *Galen*) is the first and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the first place, doth rightly chalenge the second degree. The generall manifestation therefore (saith he) of the cure of a Cancre consisteth in the speedy emptying out of that humor whereof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and

Primus scopus.

Victus ratio tenuis sit & probi succi.

Secundus scopus.

Humoris melancholici vacuatio.

Epithymum.

Hiera Ruffi.
Hiera Auicennæ.

Sanguinis missio.
Lib.14. meth. medendi.

stopping thereof, and to foresee, (if it be possible) that this melancholious humour be not collected in the veines by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to passe, you must euacuate the humour by turnes, now some and then some: and you must also endeuour to strengthen the member, lest the abundance of the humors do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is generall to all such diseases coming of the flowing of humours, doth will vs to digest the humour which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the same, lest the humours abundantly haue accesse thereunto: moreouer you must appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowne, and that in the beginning, as well in the very time of purging, as before; but now when the whole body is throughly purged, then may you lawfully endeuour to digest, and if there went before but a small & meane purging, then you must apply some remedie which hath a mixed faculty, that is to say, which can both represse and digest. Now, that we may iustly accomplish these intentions, we must make choise of those medicines which are of a meane force, and of a gentle quality, for such remedies are most conuenient for these diseases. For those which cary with them a weake and feeble power, do worke no effect (as *Galen* saith) but are easily ouercome: but such remedies as are strong and mighty, do vehemently either digest or thrust backe the thinne bloud which lieth in the veines: but the grosse and melancholike parts, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge foorth nor represse, but rather do make them more obstinate and more hard to be dissolued and discussed. Therefore to cure these Cancres but yet beginning, you must vse medicines of a meane and moderate strength, which neither for their imbecillity can be vanquished, nor for the vehemency can mightily thicken the bloud. Furthermore you must apply (as it is said) such medicines as are gentle, and which do not gnaw or bite: because the maligniy of the euill through such vehement medicines is stirred and prouoked, & made more fierce and sauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter whereof these Cancres do come, is for the most part grosse, and thicke, and disobedient to resolution, and partner also with many other vicious humours, we shall deale sufficiently in this case (especially when we feare the danger of Chyrurgery, & that the euill cannot otherwise be cured) if we by the vse of the former remedies, which are made of burnt & washed mettals (as *Galen* counselleth) shall stop and hinder their growing and increasing, especially if they be great tumors; or else after the opinion of *Auicen*, if we seeke to defend the ſro vlceration. For the which intentions, *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauton.* doth greatly commend the iuyce of Nightshade, & that medicine which is made of *Phompholygos*, or that which consisteth of *Chalcites* commonly called *Diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoricus* also for the same purpose, appointed the ointment named *Diapõpholygos*, which is made of oile of Roses, of white waxe, ana. ℥.v. of the iuice of red Pomegranats, & of Nightshade ana. ℥.iiij. of Ceruse washed, ℥ ij. of lead burnt and washed, of *Phompholygos*, which is commonly called *Tuthia*, ana. ℥.j. of Frankinsence, ℥.ß. *Galen* also reporteth *libro primo de compositione pharmacorum secundum locos*, which booke is intituled of the ancient interpreter *Myamis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Apollonius* for vlcers appearing in the

Tertius scopus.

Quod aptum medicamentũ cancris. Lib. 14. Ther.

Succi Solani, Diapompholygos. Diaphenicon seu diapalma. Vnguentum Diapompholygos Theodorici.

the head which the Greekes call *Achore*: which oyntment he affirmeth to be very effectuall against the cancrous tumours. The medicine is this: R'. of oile of Roses, or of vnripe Oliues, *Hemina*, which the Greekes call *Cotyle*, viz. ℥.vij.ß. which must be infused or put into a leaden mortar, and stirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or else brayed with a leaden pestill so long till it waxe thicke and blacke resembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it selfe *Litharg yrum lib.*1, of Ceruse as much, and commixe them with the oile, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all such cancrous dispositions, especially that which is burnt and washed, all men may sufficiently know, which haue had some experience thereof, and which haue studiously perused those things which *Galen libro nono de simplicium medicamentorum facultate*, doth write of lead, which he himselfe calleth in Greeke *Molybdos*. For this cancrous disease *Paulus* and *Auicen* do greatly commend the Emplaister made of sea Crabbes, especially if it be mingled with an equall quantity of the scourings of Brasse. Take therefore of sea Crabs burned, and of the offall of brasse an euen portion, beate them to flower and strew thē vpon the tumour, or else lay on the ashes of the Crabbes with a searce cloath or cerate. But the same *Auicen* willeth to plucke vp these little cancres hard by the rootes, or else to cut them off, and then to wring and crush out the thicke bloud on euery side, and afterward seare the place with some hote instrument. For this doth dissipate the relictes of the matter, and consumeth them, it strengtheneth the member and stoppeth the fluxe of bloud. *Galen* also before *Auicen* his time, did allow that cancres might sometime be cured by Chyrurgery. But truly although *Galen* and *Auicen* do permit this manuall cure by Chyrugery, yet to auoide the danger of immoderate fluxe of bloud and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the sicke, omitting those things, we ought to follow the prescript rule of curing, which is onely accomplished by gentle and milde medicines, as a more safe way and lesse troublesome, and to content our selues with that onely methode: because that if such a cancrous tumour which is growne to a mightie bignesse, should be cut round about in those places which are ioyned to the whole parts, the danger of immoderate profusion of bloud would straight follow, by reason of the greatnesse of the vessell and wideneſſe of the arteries, which parts (saith *Galen*) if you should take and binde them with cordes, the other members by reason of their neare acquaintance would be troubled and greatly grieued. Moreouer *Celsus* sayth, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a scarre, yet they will returne againe, and giue occasion of death. But if you intend to seare off the rootes of this euill, yet truely you cannot do this neither without hurting of the next parts, especially if you make exulsion neare vnto the principall members. Great Cancres therefore, and those which are inueterate must neither rashly be burned with any instrument, nor cut off with a penknife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue said before.) For many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicines to take away this euill, but by the onely ministring of easie and gentle remedies, which can as it were please or delight, haue so hindered the tumours, that they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripenesse. Now followeth the

Appolonij medicamentum.

The force of lead is marvellous in cancred tumors.

*Paulus lib.*4. *ex Archigene.*

*Lib.*14. *Meth. med.*

Chyrurgery not rashly to be vsed in cancres.

*Lib.*5.

Capita curationis Cancri non vlcerati.

ſumme of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet in beginning, and doth occupie the outward parts of the body, briefly in theſe words. 1. Inprimis in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which conſiſteth of no very thicke humour, nor cauſeth the veines to ſwell greatly, purge out the melancholicke humour which cauſeth this euill vniuerſally throughout the whole bodie. 2. If age and ſtrength do ſuffer it, cut a veine in the elbow, and draw out as much bloud as need requireth. 3. Afterward miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as can purge melancholie downeward: in the beginning let them be gentle and eaſie, but afterward ſomewhat vehement, increaſing their force by little and little. 4. If the purging of menſtruis in women before fiftie yeares of age, or if hæmorrhoides both in them and in men be ſuppreſſed that bloud aboundeth not at times now and them, you muſt prouoke them by all meanes poſſible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the ſicke a thinne diet which can engender good iuyce, and cauſe no melancholicke bloud. 6. If you cannot auoide it, but that a groſſe and melancholious humour be gathered together in the veines, you muſt euacuate the ſame by turnes, both with ſimple and compound medicines. But theſe former Aphoriſmes do pertaine vnto the Phyſition: now we will declare the duty of a Chyrurgiã. 7. Apply vnto the affected member both before purging, and in the very time of purging, ſuch medicines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuerſally purged, then vſe digeſtiue remedies, but let them be ſuch as are of a moderate ſtrength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore miniſter to the aggrieued place iuyce of Nightſhade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which conſiſteth of *Calcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that ſort. 9. But if by the art of Chyrurgery you dare enterpriſe the cure of *Cancer*, you muſt firſt (taking the Phyſitions counſell) purge forth the melancholicke humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and ſuffer a good quantity of bloud to come forth, and wring the thicke bloud out of the adioyned parts, and afterward cure the diſeaſe after the manner of other vlcers.

The end of the fift Booke.

THE SIXTH BOOKE,

CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBVS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

Of the diuerſe names of the griefe which I minde to ſpeake of, and where it had beginning.

HAuing promiſed to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now ſpying many faults in the firſt print and in the ſecond, I will performe my promiſe, and amend the faults eſcaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my countrey: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth reigne in all the world at this day, in great fury and raging manner: in ſo much that it ſpareth none of what degree or calling ſoeuer they be of, (if they ſeeke for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it ſearcheth them. This griefe hath gotten many names, and ſo many as come to my memory I wil rehearſe, and where they were firſt begotten. Firſt, the Spaniardes borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in ſtead of their gold, and afterward *Charles* the eight, King of France, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in ſhedding of bloud, ſparing neither man, woman, nor child; in ſo much that he ſpoiled a great part of Italy, and ſubdued the Dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and ſpoile to all the common wealth of Florence: and at the laſt he came to Rome and Naples with his whole hoaſt, ſpoiling all as he went with great cruelty: and for his hire, this diſeaſe began firſt to ſhew it ſelfe plentifully among his people, and ſpecially becauſe his ſoldiers were much giuen to venerie. The Frenchmen at that ſiege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the firſt finding of this grieuous ſickneſſe, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his coming home, ſo that all Chriſtendome may curſe that King and *Columbus*. This griefe at the firſt was ſo extreme, cruell and ſo mercileſſe, that it moleſted thoſe which were infected therewith, euen the head, eyes, noſe, palate of the mouth, skinne, fleſh, bones,

ligaments, and all the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* trauelled a-gaine, and brought with him litle gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: in so much that the Physitions in those daies did not know what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were spoiled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the Spaniards for friendship they bare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their curtizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian countrey. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kind hearts) fel in loue with them, and (being rauished with their beauty) dealt with them to their great cost and trouble to this dty. Now to the variety of the names: First, the Italians call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicam*, because it first appeared among the Frenchmen at the siege before named. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victory, & for that they had this sicknes. And they also call it, *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the Spaniards first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans call it *Menium*; why they should so terme it I know not wel, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuy parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*: the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patnysa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interpret it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendenlagra*, because it first infecteth the priuy parts both of men and women: and we in our country call it the French disease. But howsoeuer it be called it skilleth not, so that we know how to helpe it, which I minde to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

BVt first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those that are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease; as by the effects following it may appeare; and after the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion, it resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the causes of the sickneſse, or also of some symptomates or consequents thereof; and because it chiefly beginneth in the Liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signe as *Analogia morbi*. for all signes that can giue certaine testimony and shew thereof, are contained vnder the affects, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, some are *Symptomates*, and some be *Morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be these, falling of haires, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I call *Morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumours of the shins, and other parts of the body, with pustules, &c: which follow this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vpon the sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, increase, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kind of long disease, great reason there is why it should haue his distinct times, and according to the diuersitie of those times there

happeneth

happeneth diuerſe *Symptomata*. For one kind of ſymptomates happen at the beginning of this diſeaſe, another kind to the ſtate or vigour, &c. And therefore I will deuide all ſymptomates into two ſorts, to wit, thoſe that follow and properly belong vnto this griefe, beginning at thoſe which follow the ſame being inueterate & confirmed; & theſe next enſuing be of the firſt ſort. Straight waies after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himſelfe a certaine laſſitude or wearines come vpon al his members without any outward occaſion, as walking, or mouing, &c. which foreſheweth this cruell diſeaſe, and happeneth vnto them which are moſt ſtrong & luſty before. There is perceiued alſo a lumpiſh heauines in the whole body, a dulneſſe, faintnes, lithernes, or ſlownes to moue in all the members. The occaſion of this, is the infection of the naturall ſpirits, which are the immediate inſtruments of the faculty ſuſtaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whoſe infection, the body waxeth more heauy and wearieſome then it was before. Moreouer, there is a certaine paine or ach, which wandreth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this laſſitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by and by, it leaueth the head and goeth into the ſhoulders, and from the one ſhoulder into the other. Out of the ſhoulder it fleeteth into the legs, the one of thē or the other, and in like ſort may it be ſaid of all other members. The cauſe of this is a certaine vapor which beginneth to riſe vp from the liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begottē: but by reaſon of that feruent heat of the liuer cauſed by infectiō, there is engendred a certaine ſmall vapor, whereof do grow theſe wandring or fleeting pains. Thirdly, whē the diſeaſe hath begun, & hath a litle preuailed, the colour of the face is changed; you ſhall ſee the moſt beautiful, liuely, and cleane cōplexion of the skin, in three or foure daies ſpace changed into a much worſe courſe then before; and what maner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a little from that is was before, the colour is altered, the liuely ſpirits in the eies be changed, the mouth, lips, & cheekes ſometimes are changed from their naturall comelines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement & knowledge therein) there is vnder their eies a wan-coloured or blewiſh circle, ſuch as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding theſe things in him, conſider with your ſelfe whether he paſſed meaſure in drinking, in watching, or ſleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care; & if it happen not through one of theſe, thē may you iudge he is taken with this diſeaſe. Fourthly, there is wont to breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the hands, and the ſoles of the feete, yea euen in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporous ſpirits, taking their beginning of the liuer, which being infected, the face alſo is affected, and the extreme parts or vttermoſt members are ſore diſtempered with heate. Fiftly, you may adde a drouſineſſe, or a diſpoſition to ſleepe oftentimes interrupted: and this is cauſed through a turbulent vapour, which is increaſed through the infection and heate. Sixtly, you may adde beauineſſe, and ſadneſſe of the mind: for though a pleaſant and merrie nature ſhould be infected with this diſeaſe, yet he ſhall ſtraightway be ſad, and giuen to penſiueneſſe, and euen grone therewith. This infection increaſing, burneth the blood, which ſendeth vp troublous and noyſome vapours vnto the head,

7 and ſeate of the mind. Seuenthly, the patient ſometime hath a feauer, becauſe of
the heate which is about the diſtempered parts: but this ſeldome chanceth.
8 The eight is the appearance of ſome putrified matter, and this is *ſignum Pathognomicum*, a ſigne to diſcouer the maladie. Therefore as oftentimes as you
ſhall ſee this putrified matter, yet ſmall in quantity, about the priuie place, and
know no occaſiõ to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the Frẽch
diſeaſe. And what is the reaſon? This *caries* or matter cannot happen but of
two cauſes: either becauſe the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten
and gnawne the fine skinne of the yard; or elſe becauſe the contagion is com-
municated and imparted vnto the Liuer by the naturall ſpirits, and the Liuer
expelleth thoſe infected ſpirits and ſanious matter vnto the priuy parts. Of this
caries, how it may be knowne when it cometh of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when
9 it is cauſed otherwiſe, I will ſpeake afterwards. In the ninth place ſucceedeth
Bubo, and that not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after
which act there came vpon him a heauineſſe of his members, and a ſadneſſe of
the mind, and after two or three daies there appeareth *Bubo paruus*, that is to
ſay, a ſmall tumor in the armeholes or ſhare, which is painefull, not growing to
any greatneſſe: this ſignifieth that the diſeaſe is yet gentle, and in the begin-
ning, but the cauſe of this is the greatneſſe by the purging places of the Liuer,
10 and therefore the Liuer disburdeneth himſelfe by ſending the diſeaſe vnto
them, and hereof cometh *Bubo*. The later ſigne of this diſeaſe at the begin-
ning is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Pro-
teus. After the firſt coming of this diſeaſe, for the ſpace of forty yeares, there
was not ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*: but the nature of the diſeaſe is to
be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoia Gallica* hath not bene ſeene aboue
theſe fiue and thirty yeares. Therefore we may looke for new and ſtrange
Symptomates, I pray God they be light and eaſie to be holpen. Now how this
Gallica Gonorrhoia is to be diſcerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will
hereafter declare, to auoid tedioufneſſe in this place. The cauſe of this *Go-
norrhoia* is *labefactatio ſpirituum*, weakning and ſubuerſion of the ſpirits which
rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the teſticles & ſpermaticke veſſels, by
reaſon whereof the ſtrength of thoſe parts is diſſolued: ſo that they cannot
keepe their ſeed but it cõtinually droppeth forth. But now let vs ſpeak of thoſe
ſignes which are appropriated to the diſeaſe in his progreſſe or confirmation:
and firſt, of hard puſtules in the whole body, and the ſame grieuous and de-
formed in the head and beard, ſometime with ſanious matter, ſometimes
without it. And know you, the diſeaſe cannot be aboue the age of fiue or ſixe
moneths at the moſt when theſe *ſymptomates* appeare. And if the diſeaſe be-
ginneth in the Winter, it ſhall bring forth his cruſts in the beginning of Sum-
mer: if it begin in the Spring time, his cruſts appeare in Autumme, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the cauſes of the breaking out of Puſtules.

1 AND the chiefe cauſes of this breaking out of puſtules are theſe: Firſt, be-
cauſe the matter infected is ſent thither from the liuer. Secondly, becauſe
2 the parts infected do not digeſt and expell (by way of tranſpiration) his excre-
mẽtary

uents, and therefore they remaine in it still; and grow vnto crusts. The third signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy parts, which either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and therefore as often as you see the *caries* in the priuie parts healed, and that there remaine *Calli* or hardnesse about the place where it was, be you assured that this is *Gallicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wish that you remember this, when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesses be most manifest and certaine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the *vuula*; the *vuula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so, much moisture cometh to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *raucedo vocis*, a great hoarsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth, when you shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *vuula* full of moisture, and (if the patient haue no catarrhe) say that it is *morbus Gallicus* confirmed. The cause of the humectation or moistnesse of the *vuula*, is the naturall spirits infected and changed, which is caried with the bloud of the veines, throughout the whole body, and because it is so infected and weakned, therefore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomach, and maketh euil digestion. Therefore the same stomach aboundeth with fleame in the braine, and it doth not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mucus*, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by reason of the weakenesse of the spirits, engendred of flegmaticke boud, with vnnaturall humours. If they be afterward by accesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very grieuous and vehement. No marualle therefore, if this abundance of moist humours fall to the *vuula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the bloud be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haires be consumed, so that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the nose: it perisheth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other *Symptomates*. The cause of hoarsenes of the voice, is humidity and excrements which do stop and let the waies of the voice. Fiftly, you may adde the tumors of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this, be you out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For the infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emunctory* places, that is, glandules. And sixtly, adde thereunto the corruption of the palate of the mouth, and of the teeth: and when you see these, looke not to any greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seuenth place I put outragious and continuall paine, making the patient euen to crie out: this beginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth not fully vntill midnight; and these most orgueilous and extreme paines are caused of a very moist and maligne vapour, which riseth vp from the liuer, and from the excrements be acquired and gathered by euill nourishment in euery part, & especially aboue the *perioſtion*, that is, the rims which couer the bones of euery part. And in the eight place, I remember corruption of the bones in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcer. How you may know the bones to be corrupted, the skin remaining whole and sound, I will hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromatous*, that is, tumours which yeeld a tough slimie matter. These of some times are

called *Bumbata* or *Gummata*, by a similitude take of trees. For in *Morbo Gallico* tumors do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth either because the party himselfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the liuer communicateth and sendeth vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, maligne vlcers in all the parts of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensiue matter. To conclude, there succeed this disease sometime their effects, as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to be past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in processe of time following, the wayes how to asswage and cure all the *Symptomates*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such waies and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without danger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them, by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOw after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceed and declare also the cure. And vnderstand you, that the wayes of curing thereof are manifold and diuers, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any method of curing, but was alwayes opened by the experiments of Empericks; for *Hap* and *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse waies of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which is in yong men, strong and lusty, able to endure sweate, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing, or playing at tennise, or such like, hath bin a sufficient remedie for this euill in the beginning: for by the heate so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renewed and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be maruelled, if by this meanes the liuer sometimes purgeth himselfe, when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *Febris putrida* ceasse and take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *Febris hectica* the parts are healed by medicines alwaies which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning, and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts, it is possible that the spirits may be restored of themselues; for this affect is in the spirits. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeede by procuring a great sweate haue bene cured, but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

THere is another way that Empericks haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is *per Suffumigia*. The Ancients cured indeed diuerse affects by such fumigations

migations: but the Emperickes trying all waies to helpe this effect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex Cinaberi*, yet this oftentimes hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the waies of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them.

CHAP. VI.

Of purging Morbus Gallicus.

HAuing thus farre proceeded in this matter, we will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present *in substantia*, wherewith is ioyned *feruor*, out of the which groweth a hote distemper and excrementous matter; first therefore naturall, and that whensoeuer you go about to cure this disease: for the very Emperickes do that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humours may offend either in quantity, or in quality, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantity onely, first we must giue him a lenitiue medicine, either of *Cassia*, or *sirupe Rof. sol.* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of bloud in the liuer may so be tempered & asswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterward to be expelled. Thirdly, for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagiō infecteth the liuer, vnto the which as their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse, it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward parts vnto the outward, as in bloudletting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth Phlebotomy: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloudletting, and the veine that is to be opened is *Hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that sometime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease (for the most part) the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnnaturall matter vnto his emunctory place, if we should cut the veine the patient hauing them vpon him, we might haply thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the liuer, to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined among learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, lest the matter (as I sayd before) should be drawne againe vnto the liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painefull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humors.

AFter the patient hath bene let bloud, as his strength may permit, the time well seruеth to prepare his humours: and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwayes the same mixture of humours that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*, this *pituita* ought to be prepared, first by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines you shall finde plenty in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmatick and melancholike humors and mixt humors, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.

IN the cure of this disease, after euacuation is made, the state and temperature of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered, the body prepared by the medicines before sufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed and comforted againe as before we haue declared: if we see the disease continue still, and not yeeld to all this ministration, we ought then to come vnto that which maketh the true and certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of it selfe hath a knowne vertue, both to alter and restore the Liuer to his naturall estate: and this is the decoctiō of *Lignū Guaicum*, otherwise called *Lignum Indicum*, and *Lignum Sanctum*, which medicine was found by chance, and confirmed by great experience to cure this disease, the patient obseruing a very slender diet, and drinking the decoctiō in which there is a vertue to attenuate, and power to ouercome this disease.

CHAP. IX.

What sort of that wood is to be chosen as best for this purpose.

NOw sithence it is determined that for this purpose to vse this wood is best, it is necessary to shew also the maner of vsing this wood, concerning
1 which you ought to obserue these things. First what maner wood, and what
2 3 maner rind is to be chosen for the best. Secondly the preparation: Thirdly the way of giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vsed in ministring it. First
4 concerning the election or choise of the wood, I say it is not to be doubted, alwaies to choose that which is of most vertue, and that is *Lignum Sanctum*, which is yellowish and fatte, hauing no blacknes in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs vse *Guaicum*, whereof there is more plenty. Moreouer, in both kinds of this wood the meane sort is best: we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane sort, which is not altogether blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither slender, nor grosse. I choose this middle sort, because it hath more vnctuosity and oylishnesse in it then the other which is growne vnto age. For if the same vnctuosity doth more abound in the yonger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we ought to choose that which is best in respect of the disease, to wit, in a confirmed disease, the most vertuous and efficatious, as is *Lignum sanctum* of middle age: but if the disease be not so greatly confirmed, but light and easie, we may vse that which is of a more weaker operation, both in *genere* and in *specie*. Furthermore, regard must be had also of the patient his age, for in an old body, the old plant is most conuenient: for one that is yong and strong, the middle sort is to be chosen. Fiftly, in choosing this wood, we
5 must consider of the time of the yeare: for in a cold season, as in the Winter, we ought to vse the hotter, sharper, and bitterer kind, which we may iudge by our senses: in the Summer time, that which is lesse sharpe, and least of all bitter, either of an old or yong tree. And the markes whereby we may discerne the best from the other, of the wood of the old tree, which hath in

it great quantity of blacknes, are these: it is very bigge, and hath a grosse and thicke rinde, which so cleaueth vnto the wood, that vneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rind to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistened with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wish you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceede from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by, is, if in raping it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you must taste of that you haue raped in your mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fiftly, take and rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worse sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in taste. Sixthly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous & heauie. Seuenthly, see that it be such as hath not the whitish colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white parte blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last proofe of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, very bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rind are these: First, that it be taken of a tree which is old, or of middle age, for that which cometh of a small bough is naught; and we know when it cometh of a middle age or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinckled with an ashe colour: and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking it appeareth blacke but not like vnto *Ebenus*, be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaicum.

THe wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euerie ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or stripling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in Sommer season, we must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therefore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood, and twelue pounds of the water, except in the Sommer season when the syrupe cannot be kept: and then we take *Lignum*, ℥.vj. of water, ℔.vj. Also in the Winter time we take of the wood raped, ℔.j. ℥. of water eighteene pounds. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these, one pound of the wood, & twelue pounds of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the wood twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water,

but I like not that way: for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of cold water, and that which is made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shal find the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water which is made euen seething hote. Moreouer, I wish that you stoppe your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst Branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the said Branne: for by this means it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompasse it round about with linnen clothes, that it may be perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requisite strength and to be boiled in a vessell of stone, or of earth well glased within; those vessels of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse wayes, to wit, by dry fire, or in *Balneo Mariæ*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be farre better, and worke better effect, and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopped, and keepe it in boiling continually: let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is: some will boile it till three pints be consumed, to haue it dry more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, sometime is suffered to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boyling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I thinke it no matter whether it be cleansed hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose, which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise: we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) and boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is) that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to increase the quantity of this water: for sometime we adde eighteene pounds of water, sometime fifteene; and this we are accustomed to do when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly, we increase the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the Sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunke at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuertheless ye shall vnderstand, some Physitions do giue the first decoction euen at dinner and supper also, and so they make but one decoction onely: but this vse is but rare, and when they will dry vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of Veale, of a Chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fat. It is boiled after the manner aforesaid: and this I thought necessary to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boiled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded

sed therewith diuersly. First I will declare vnto you those decoctions which be made of this wood most singly; afterwards others, which because they haue more things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The most simple or single decoction is made of the rinde of the wood, and pure water onely. And this simple decoction the best Physitions do vse, when they will make the decoction strong. The forme of making it is this. We take the same quãtity of the wood *Guaicum*, & the some of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the same the barke or rind of *Guaicum*, which hath no determinate quantities; for sometime we put 2. sometime 3. sometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, and for halfe an ounce of the rinde we adde 4. pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. ℔. the quantity of the rind, ℥. ij. the quantity of water shall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & strength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rinde, vj. ℥. of water, ℔. 18. we beate the rind into grosse powder, & afterward steep it in the water 24. houres, then boile we it to the consumption of the 3. part, in such wise as is said of the simple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine: the forme of preparing it is this: ℞. *Guaici*. 1. pound, *corticis eius* halfe a pound, water ℔. 18 let these be infused together according to art, afterward boile them to the consumption of 2. or 3. parts, so that 6. pounds onely of the decoction do remaine. This done, they adde thereto of strong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then straine it, and vse it as before. Sometime it happeneth (by the weakenes or vice of the patient his stomacke) that the whole decoction is cast vp againe: therefore that it may pierce the sooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue and retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: ℞. *ligni Guaici* ℔. j. *corticis eius* ℔. ß. *aquæ* ℔. 18. these be infused according to art, then they boile to the consumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Cardunus benedictus*, which is much vsed, *Camedrios*, *Betonicæ*, of each of these herbs a handfull. Againe they boile it euen till the one halfe be wasted: so that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pints, and after 1. walme or 2. boyling we cleanse or straine it. ℞. the same wood, the same rind, and the same water in quantity, infuse and boile them after the same maner: then adde of Rosemary, *Fæniculi*, *Stœchadis*, *Betonicæ*, ana. M. j *Seine*, Annise, ℥. j. let these boyle to the consumption of the halfe part, so that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pints of wine, after the maner aforesaid. Lastly, we make it another way, as thus. ℞. the same quantity of the wood and rind whereof we spake before, and adde of the rootes of *Enula campana*, of the roots of *Althæa*, of the dry roots of *Ireos*, ana. ℥. j. of Maidenhaire, of Liquorice, *Stœchados*, ana. ℥. ß. Boile these together to the consumption of halfe, then put vnto it three pints of wine, and so the decoction is made perfect by boiling, as is aforesaid. And these be the formes and descriptions of those decoctions which are vsuall with practitioners and others. They which vse to minister these manner of decoctions, make no second decoction, but prepare some other liquor for their dinner and supper at their discretion. I my selfe haue bin

wont in this decoction to put purging medicins, and specially to those which haue such stomackes as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vsed the foresaid compound decoctions, but not alwayes; but especially in cold griefes, as *Asthma* & coldnes of the stomack, *Sciatica*, & Palsey, in Fistulaes, & other soule sores and paines in the ioints, and in affects of the feet coming of cold distemper: in these cases I haue vsed the said decoction with good successe. But the most simple decoction, I say, doth best against *Morbum Gallicum*, so that there be no compound disease ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vsed according to the direction of them which do practise.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BVt at what time is this decoctiō to be giuen? Certes the most meete time is the Spring time; for although we require in the working thereof, heate, sweate, and much digestion of excrements, yet the heate of Sommer is too great, the bodies are thereby resolued and made faint. Therefore the middle Spring, & the beginning of Sommer is most conuenient. Next vnto the Spring is the Autumne; as for the Sommer and Winter they be seasons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his excesse of cold. And if of these two I must needs chuse one, yet I would rather chuse the Winter; for in the Winter season we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made close and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwayes the Spring is best, the Autumne next, the Winter next, and the Sommer worst of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

WE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our ancestors the Physitions that liued before the last 40. yeares, were wont to keepe their patients in darkenesse, as it were in a dungeon, for the space of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones: and they did well, so cruell, so fierce, and outragious was then this disease. But now sithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Physitions ought not to deale so hardly with all. Therefore we keepe our patients in a chamber, where is somewhat drier ground, not open vnto the winds, the windowes cloted in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept close.

CHAP. XIIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN measuring the quantity we obserue these things. First, how great the affect is; for if it be great and rebellious, then must a great quantity of this potion be giuen: if the affect be not great, the quantity should be lesse. Vnto a child we minister a smaller quantity then to one of full growth. Also consideration ought to be had of the complexion of the patient; if his temperament be hote, a litle quantity; if it be cold, a great quantity is to be giuen. If the stomacke be weake, we giue a very small quantity: if the stomack be strong, we giue a great quantity. This quantity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. sirups, but when it is lesse by one sirupe onely: our limits are frō ℥. iiij. vnto ℥. x. In a child, frō 4. vnto 6.

if he be strong & valiant of stomack, you may proceed to ℥.viij. In the strõgest person, the disease also being rebellious, we proceed not aboue ℥. x. and that quantity we seldome vse in any. Moreouer, you must obserue another rule, that is, to giue a greater quantity alwayes of the sirupe in the morning then in the euening, because in the morning the stomack is empty: & in the night because of sleepe, the force thereof is greater. Againe this is to be obserued, in the 1. & 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning, and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twise a day, to wit, morning & euening, at a certen hour, without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many daies this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum* the space of forty daies, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erronicus*, a lõg disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *Morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolõg the vse of this decoctõ til the thirtieth day, or the fiue & twentieth day; but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *Veratro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainly when to leaue the vse of this decoction? Truly when we see that all *Symptomata* be ceassed and gone, & if they be ceassed at the sixteene daies end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke: if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *Symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it forty dayes, the *Symptomata* ceasse not, yet leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still, prescribing to the patient *victus nobilium*, and let him till an hundred dayes be expired drinke of the decoction, lest the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *Symptomates*, which if they remaine, hope you not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we Englishmen terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scars like indeed vnto buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwaies to be feared, that the disease will againe returne. The other rebellious *Symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which if it ceasseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty daies, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing the decoction, and things to be obserued therein.

NOw coming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say that the Physitiõs giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or foure houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe only, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreouer, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be takẽ very hote, to the end it may prouoke sweate: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient

lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to do, that it may the better be digested and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the doore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by committing this act but once in this cure, haue failed of remedy through the same. There be diuellish women desirous to be handled & deale withall, who will beautifie themselues, to inflame mens hearts to lust towards them; abandon these your company, and thrust them out of the doores and house: let none of that hue be seene in your diet, beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the mind, which to auoide, flie cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nourish fraud and couetousnesse, which doth inflame the bloud & stirre cholericke humours.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure.

CErtaine accidents also in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine loathing of the stomacke, or disposition to vomite, called of the Latines *Nausea*. This coming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is resisted and helped by mixing pleasant things with the decoction, as is some pleasant iulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cause therof: some hauing a hote stomack do abhorre it; therfore let them vse in the decoction cold waters, as *Cichery*, & such like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which case we permit vnto them good common bread, made of the best floure of the best wheat. Moreouer sharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be past; which we endeuour to qualifie and lighten two waies. First by perswading with the patient to sustaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will soone be at an end, to his great commoditie and much comfort. Secondly, by fomenting the parts, and annointing thé, whereof I will speake more at large, when I treate *de doloribus*. Another inconuenience that followeth this cure, is costiuenesse, & the patient cometh into lassitude or wearinesse: this is holpen by clisters giuen euery third day. Againe some do abhor clisters: vnto such we giue once in the day of the sirupe *cum duabus radicibus* or *mellis rosacei*. And if it be such a person as will not be scoured by common *mel rosaceum*, then in stead thereof we adde vnto the sirupe *ros. soluti* ℥ j. Some vse to giue pils of Aloes, but *mel ros.* in my iudgmét is best. Also otherwhiles it happeneth that the patient fainteth or swoundeth; & this happeneth after foure and twenty daies, through the slendernes of the

the diet. Then grant him a large diet, as an egge euery day, morning and euening, or some other thing at your discretion. And otherwhiles the cause of this their faintnesse and swounding cometh, for that they are not nourished, or because they take little of their bisket, in which case (as I said) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge reare. But if their stomackes will not digest bisket, let him haue good fine bread. And you shall know this weakenesse of the stomackes digestion by these signes: When either the said solutiue sirupe or clisters be giuen them, (if their stomacke be so weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowish, somewhat resembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and somwhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedie for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a large diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some Iulep, it is the better. These be the *Symptomata*, and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOw am I come to that part of my Treatise wherein I haue to speake of Excrements. And concerning this matter, first you shall vnderstand, there be two kinds of Excrements which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siecum*, that is to say, the ordure, whereof I haue spoken. The other kinde of excrements whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts, is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweat, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine: very good it were indeed, but no Physitions haue attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matter vnto the reines, especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoia:* for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated, and more hurt then commodity wil thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweat, Physitions do their diligence, for a large sweat dissolueth the matter of that disease. Some therefore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient well with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hote bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that will do hurt or nay.) I can commend it in such patients as haue not the head very hote and sweating already: also such as haue pustules, and do feare the shedding of their haire. Others take bread hote out of the ouen, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heate thereof, they might the more easily sweat. I like not this deuice, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme bricke sprinkled with wine or veriuice, and wrapped vp in clothes, and this is a good commendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feet: in such you must lay no brick to their feet in any wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to expell them by the siege. And the *Guaicum* potion is wont

ſometime to worke that effect, but ſometime it doth not. The moſt part of Phyſitions do (in this caſe) cõmend euacuation made with conuenient diſtance of time by purgatiue medicines: wherefore if very great euacuation be made by ſweats, let them euery eight day be purged: if they ſweate not plenteouſly, then purge them oftener, euery third or fourth day, in the name God: and the purgations which we in this caſe do vſe, be according to the humors which do moſt abound, as ſometime with pils, with *Sena*, *Epithymo*, *Hermodactylis*: and ſometime with Electuaries, as *confectio Hamech*, *Diacatholicon*, & ſuch other like, as you may find plenty in the firſt and ſecond bookes, if you looke carefully in them for medicines for the purpoſe which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of Diet to be obſerued in this cure.

NOw are we come to ſpeake of the diet to be vſed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwaies ſlender touching the quantity, and drying: and it conſiſteth in bisket, which we giue vnto the patient firſt and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after it might the leſſe moiſten, (and ſo it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours which belong to this diſeaſe) and alſo becauſe this bisket bread tarieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is ſomewhat ſtayed: and if the ſtomacke be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very beſt. His meate muſt be roſted and excellent good; Chickens, Rabbets, Mutton, Partriches, and ſuch like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boiled that day: once, twiſe, or thriſe in the weeke let him haue to his ſupper bread and great Raiſins, as you like his ſtrength. Some do miniſter Corants, which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by abundance of ſweat, ſo that we may hope the patient ſhall that way be perfectly purged, then I thinke beſt to giue no purging medicines; for nature her ſelfe expelleth them to the skin, to be euacuated that way by ſweate, whoſe worke ſhould by purgatiue medicins partly be hindered. If his ſweate be not ſufficient, then it is beſt to vſe purging, of what kind you thinke beſt (as before.) For his ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vſe the ſecond decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleeue, the more they drinke the ſooner they ſhall be cured of this diſeaſe. And if they cannot drinke the ſecond decoction, we muſt ſuffer them to take ſome ale or beere, but let it not be very ſtrong in any caſe. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obſerue whether the liuer be too hote yea or no: if it be ſo, then preſcribe a medicine to qualifie the diſtemper, as thus. Take conſerues of Roſes, of Borage or of Violets, or ſuch like, whereof you may find plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOw haue we to treate of the roote of China, whereof ſome Phyſitions do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus Gallicus*, but alſo for the cure of *Phthiſis*, vlcers of the lungs, conſumption of the members. In *Lepra*

Granatus

Græcorum, *i. scabies*; *Elephantiasis*, *i. Lepra*, proceeding of the melancholick humor; *Podagra* (in all which affects they vse it) the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to trie the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the Dropsie: also to represse and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eyes coming of a hote distemper: moreouer, in an exceeding hote distemper of the stomacke and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe; for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP. XXII.

The way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise: we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥. ij. thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water: we heate the water, and infuse the China in it, for a whole nights space, or foure and twenty houres. Afterwards we set it to the fire, and boile it to the consumption of halfe, so that sixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction, which forthwith we cleanse, and spread out the said thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserued to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coales, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sowre. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth: and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction we giue in maner of a sirupe in the morning ℥. x. or xij. in ỹ euening as much. The stomacke liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meate, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and rosted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made: for of two pound (which, as we told you in the end of the last chapter, is the full *Dosis* of the roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue daies. Afterward we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day, ℥. iiij. and so it lasteth sixe daies more, till the space of eighteene daies be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if need be be, we do as before. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you will chuse the best China, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not worme-eaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among a hundred rootes, vneath you shall find foure good; for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongious and light, another that they be corrupt & worme-eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeed to be found) rather chuse those that be eaten with

wormes, for that they are leſſe euill of the two. And ſpongious roores ſoone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no ſtrength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the ſecond way or manner, whereby ſome Phyſitions endeuour to vanquiſh this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with Salſa and the wood, and without the wood, and ſometime with the barke.

IHaue alwaies obſerued and followed this rule: I take of *Salſa periglia*, ℥.iiij. of water, x. pintes. I cut the *Salſa periglia* into ſmall parts: afterwards infuſe it in hote water, by the ſpace of foure and twenty houres. When it is infuſed, it is boyled to the conſumption of the one halfe, afterward it is ſtrained, and this decoction kept for the firupe. Then we take the ſame *Salſa* againe, and put thereto of water fifteene pints, and without any more infuſion we boile it vnto the conſumption of the third part: and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and ſupper. Truth it is, I ſometime make the decoction with wine, in this wiſe: The firſt decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene pounds or pints, and the ſame quantity of *Salſa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be waſted; then before I take the veſſell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine, not ſtrong, but pleaſant in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boiled a little, I cleanſe it out: and this wine I vſe to put vnto it when I ſee the patient not much infected, and ſo he may walke abroade if it pleaſe the patient; or elſe when his ſtomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, ſometime I vſe to mixe the wood, and ſometime the rinde, and then I take of *Salſa*, ℥.iij. of the Guiacke wood as much, and ſometime of his rinde, ℥. ij. (but not both at once, very ſeldome.) Sometime I vſe the one and ſometime the other; after this forme. ℞. *Salſa*, ℥ iiij. *ligni Guaci*, ℥. iij. ß. or elſe of the rinde, ℥. ij. to which I put of water thirteene pints, and let them boile together till halfe be waſted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and ſupper, I take of water eighteene pints, and boile it to the conſumption of the third part: when I vſe the barke, I take euen the ſame quantity of water, although there be of it but ℥. ij. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him theſe decoctions, in this caſe I boyle the *Salſa* in thirteene pints of water, vnto the conſumption of halfe: and when it is thus boyled, I haue a veſſell either of the raped *Guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I beſt like of, and into it I cleanſe the decoction of *Salſa*, as hote as is poſſible; and ſo it is infuſed for thirteene houres, and then I ſtraine it, and thus I prepare this firupe. At dinner and ſupper, I giue onely the ſecond decoction of *Salſa*. The reaſon why I thus admixe them, is becauſe the decoction of *Salſa* doth little offend the ſtomacke, but ſometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *Guaicum* therewith. Another cauſe why I mixe them, is to eradicate the diſeaſe, wherefore *Salſa* is needfull. Thirdly, when I haue one that hath had this diſeaſe long time, I vſe both *Guaicum* and *Salſa*, yea and ſometime the rinde

but that I do very seldome, and I vse this decoction in all points as the other in quantity and time. And sometimes if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vse this decoction following: I take *Guaicum*, ℥ vij. of *Salsa*, ℥.iij. and infuse them in fourteene pints of warme water, foure and twenty houres; then boile them vntill there be left seuen pints, and towards the end of the boyling, adde to of Liquorice, ℥ j. Raisins of the sunne, the stones picked out, ℥.ij. the rootes of *Consolida maior*, ℥.ij. ß. of the seeds of *Cardus benedictus*. ℥.ß. and when it is cold straine it. This decoction take for the first morning and euening, ℥.viij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to sweat if it be possible. For the second decoction, take that which is strained, and adde thereto of fresh *Guaicum*, ℥.iij. of *Salsa*, ℥.j. put of water sixteene pints; let it infuse thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pints, and adde in the end of the boiling Barley, ℥.ij. Liquorice and Raisins of the sunne, the stones taken out, ana. ℥. j. Violet flowers, ℥ ß. and then when it is cold, straine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure dayes, if there be need. And let him take this decoction thirty dayes, or fiue and twenty dayes at the least, as you see cause, and as the vlcers do heale, remembring to wash or bathe the places grieued, morning and euening with the first decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath.

BVt you shall vnderstand, that this *Salsa* doth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the same is good for many other affects, as in a Catarrhe or distillation from the head, being sharpe and salt, in Cancres not vlcerate, and in tumours which are hard to be resolued: and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *Scrofule*, commonly called the Kings euill. I minister it in this wise: for the space of forty dayes, I take of the powder of *Salsa*, and the powder of *Ruscus*, called of some *Bruschus*, of both alike portion, and euery day I giue of this powder, ℥ j. with white wine, or ale, as I see cause; and it cometh well to passe thereby, sometimes purging the body as I see cause, and let the patient go abroad at his pleasure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the splene, but I adde thereto the iust quantity of *Tamariscus*, which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.

THis disease sometime is cured of practitioners by Suffumigations, otherwise called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongst those wayes before named. The cause is this; often and many times sore inconueniences come thereupon, and it cureth not with so small danger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwayes held it the best (as much as may be) to shunne this way of curing, for as much as in some it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane persons, such as haue a hote and dry tem-

perament; also in those which haue streightnesse in the breast, either through obstruction of the vessels, or somewhat distilling from the head. Moreouer, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue spitted bloud: furthermore such persons as haue *Peripneumonia*, if they vse suffumigations, it costs them their liues. To be short, all such as are troubled with *Dysenteria*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbeare these suffumigations. I my selfe neuer vsed them, but in one case or two at the most; and maruell you not thereat, for I vterly mislike of them. But I will speake a little of suffumigations; they haue in them these faculties, and strengths: First they opé all the conduits of the body; for their nature is such, that immediatly they pierce the body, in piercing they alter it; they mundifie or scoure the inward parts, and first the heart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the nosthrils vnto the braine, as by the veines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience; for *Suffimenta* alwaies loosen the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needes be that they pierce or penetrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming the whole body.

First, there is none so ignorant or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body before the vse of these Suffumigations, by one, two or three purgations, with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sickenesse. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong; which rules of euacuation you may find before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body, both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the sunne riseth, they giue the patiēt a couple of rere egs, & straight after he hath eaten them, a sop of bread infused in Malmesey; then they let him drinke a little quantity. Lastly, after all these, they let him take ℥. j. of *Saccharum ros.* and lye still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a litle chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pauilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth; within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient himselfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a litle seate for the purpose. And they haue their things ready at hand, which by little and little they strew vpon the coales, and the smoke thereof being closely kept in, flieth about the tent, drying and drawing out of his body. And when that which they haue already cast vpon the coales faileth, and is gone, they strew on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue (if he can) the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre, as he can abide it. But let them alwaies take heed, so long as he is vnder the pauilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth; for sometime they swound and fall downe within the tent, which is very dangerous: and if he answereth very faintly, take him out in all the haste you can, then wrap him in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him in bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space.

And

And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three dayes together, and rest one day; and then other three daies, and so to nine daies. Sometime we vse this Suffumigation more daies, euen as the disease requireth: for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exulcerated, or sore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off; or if a laxe cometh vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth day. If once in the day, we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweate, and let him eate his meate, and drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large, and at his pleasure, to his best liking.

A good signe to know the time to leaue off.

Diet.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euil *Symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roofe of the mouth, sometime loosenes and shaking of the teeth. All which are wont to follow the annointing with quicke siluer: and when we shall come to treate of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *Symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.

I Told you before that there are two sorts of Suffumigations; one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venimous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort.) ℞. *Thuris masculi, Aloes, Myrrhæ*, ana ℥.j. *Cinamomi, Storacis siccæ, Spicæ nardi, Moschatæ*, ana ℥.ß. *Ambræ vel Charabæ*, ℥.j. *Moschi* gra.ij. These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a litle spoone it is strewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is described thus. ℞. *Santal. alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum*, ana ℥.j. *Nucis moschatæ, Macris, Squinanthi, Cariophyllorum, Camphoræ, Assari*, ana ℥.ß. *Corticum mali apioli, siccatorum ambræ*, ana ℥.ß. They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with *Terebinthina* made into a paste, which paste is afterward deuided into round bals, which by litle and litle are laid vpon the fierie coales. The third compositiō being yet more strong in this. ℞. *Storacis siccæ, Belzoni, ligni Aloes, Gallia moschatæ*, ana ℥.ß. *gummi Hederæ*, ℥.j. *Ladani*, ℈.ij. *Squinanthi, Cinamomi*, ana ℥.ß. *Albiani-me Charabæ*, ℥.ß. *misce*. These are beaten, and with *Storax liquida*, made into a paste, which paste is made into litle round bals, *vt suprà*.

1

2

3

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

Morbus Gallicus is ouercome by Suffumigations, which piercing through the whole body, do dry the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole

habite: these be of two sorts; the one sort particular, the other common. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they be that consist of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former Chapter; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which do consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are now in vse, and the principall things in them be *Cinaberis artificialis*, *Sandaracha Græcorum*, and *Auripigmentum*; and these be those which (for as much as they be poisons) of their owne nature, do inspire a certaine venimous vapour into the body. But to be briefe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effect consisteth in *Hydrargyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum*, *Sandaracha*, and *Cinaberis artificialis*, or *Præcipitatum*. These things be mixed with Aromaticks to strengthen the inward parts, for otherwise they should be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of these Aromaticke things be *Resinæ* and diuerse kinds of gums. The first forme of this sort is this. ℞. *Cinaberis*, ℥.iij. *Myrrhæ*, *Thuris*, *Mastiches*, ana. ℥.j. *Aloes hepaticæ*, *Sandarachæ Arabum*, *Stiracis siccæ*, *Belzoni*, ana. ℥ iij. These be beaten grosly, and thereof is made a powder, which is sprinckled vpō the fierie coales. The second forme is this. ℞. *Cinaberis* ℥.iij. *Sandarachæ Græcorum*, ℥.j. ß. *Myrrhæ*, *Thuris*, *ligni Aloes*, *Ladani*, *Ammoniaci*, ana. ℥.j. These be beaten in grosse wise, and mixed with *Terebinthinæ*, and thereof are made small bals to cast vpon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this. ℞ *Cinaberis*, ℥.iij. *Auripigmenti*, *Sandarachæ Græcorum*, ana. ℥.ß. *Præcipitati*, ℥ iij. *Thuris*, *Aloes hepaticæ*, *Mastiches*, *Myrrhæ electæ*, *Belzoni*, *Stiracis siccæ*, *Ladani*, *Ammoniaci*, ana. ℥.ß. *Miscentur*. Of these make a grosse powder which is strewed vpon the burning coales. And these be the descriptions of those Suffumigations which haue a venimous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quicke siluer.

THe first way that experience found out to heale this disease in Italy, was by *Argentum viuum*. For when this disease began to spread in that countrey, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, because they had read that Quicke siluer should be of great vertue against an old rebellious scab (for at the first coming in of this disease, it had alwaies vlcers ioined therewith) they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good successe, for some thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Marasmus* by this annoinring, many lost their teeth after it: some had the palate of their mouth rotted away, some had the bones of their head eaten, which so doth continue still; one hath his mouth in like sort, another his face set awry thereby. For if it healeth not, it drieth the whole channell of vicious humors into the head. I haue take in hand some, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeeres before; and when they haue had sores (called *Gumata*) vpon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bene discouered, I haue seene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cause I commend not this medicine. I haue vsed it sometime when I could not attaine my purpose, by the said waies of curing called

Harmes following the vse of quicke siluer.

called *Regiæ*. I ſaw once a young ſtripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforeſaid *Regiæ curationes* had bene practiſed, and he neuer the better therefore; yet he afterwards was cured by the wayes of annointing. Wherefore in ſuch as haue rebellious affects, and are to be deſpaired of, I vſe it, when I haue proued all waies, and all ſorts of medicines before. And when I vſe it, I obſerue this order. Firſt, to purge the humour that doth abound, and if the humours be mixt, then all the body: I giue the *decoctum Guaici* by the ſpace of ten or twelue dayes, to ſtrengthen the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer; and then the venimous medicine hurteth not ſo much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this ſort. Firſt three dayes if the ſymptomates do not appeare; then to foure, fiue, ſixe, yea ten dayes, till I ſee the ſymptomates do appeare: then I annoint no more. Of theſe *Symptomata*, ſome happen commonly very much, other ſome very litle: it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate ſwelled and raw, their tongue growne bigger, ſo that ſometime they can neither ſpeake nor ſwallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding ſore by reaſon of great inflammation, and ſuch abundance of corrupt and ſtinking ſpittle flowing vpon it; all their teeth are looſe in their head, and do ſhake, ſometime they loſe ſome of them. Finally, ſuch a quantity of corrupt matter is gathered and brought to the mouth, that ſometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth and there ſeeketh to breake forth. In this caſe you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things eaſie to be digeſted, as ſome cullaze of delicate fleſh. Let the drinke which he drinketh be pleaſant, and if he hath bene vſed to drinke wine let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough, of broth, and good ſtore of fine bread in it, and ſo nouriſh him largely and plentifully: for the euacuation which he ſuſtayneth is great, ſo that I haue bene compelled to cut the *Cephalica* veine for the ſwelling of the tongue.

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the Symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.

AND amongſt other things this alſo is to be obſerued, as much as is poſſible to draw out the *Hydrargyron* which lieth ſoaked in the palate and the teeth. The way to do it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twiſe or thriſe; and if it chaunce to looke white, lay it on the coales, and it will come to his colour as before: and then put it in and ſo keepe it at his pleaſure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vſe to waſh his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vſe Barley water and ſirupe of Myrtle, or *Diamoron*, or *Nenuphar*, and ſometime we vſe *aqua Solani*, or Plantaine. Sometime we vſe of repercuſſiue iuyce, as *ſuccus foliorum Rubri, foliorum Plantaginis*; ſometime of the iuyce of Vine leaues. Sometime we vſe Barley water, with *mel roſ.* ſirupe *Myrti*, *Diamorum ſimplex*, to ſcoure withall the mouth. Another *Symptoma* yet followeth vpon this way

of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the bellie; for sometime the patient voideth by the siege pure bloud, or strings of bloud, as we see in *Dysenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe, but moderate it, and cause that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby increase. First by ministring clisters of milke, wherein haue bene quenched red hote gaddes of steele, or litle blacke flint stones; or by the iniection of the iuyce of Ptisan, or pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum Myrtinum*, or, *oleum Omphacinum in clistere*, also the iuice of Plantaine, or of the hip Briar. Sometime we put in our clisters also *Bolus Armenus*, or *Lapis Hematitis*. Moreouer, we vse astringent waters: sometime we open a veine, sometime we vse ligatures and other meanes or wayes of reuulsion: now if none of these *Symptomata* shal come vpon them, we nourish them with good meates (as it is said) and so end the cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.

THere be diuerse kindes of vnguents: I will set forth but two of them. ℞. *oleum Petroleum*, ℥.ß. *olei Lumbricorum*, *olei Spicæ nardi*, *olei Tartari albi*, *olei Turpentini*, ana. ℥.j. *vnguentum Dialthææ*, *vngu. Marciaton*, *Axungia Toxsion*, *Storax liquida*, *Turpentini*, ana. ℥.ij. *Axungiæ porcinæ*, ℔.ß. *Armoniaca*, *Opoponacis*, *Bdellij*, *Elemnij*, *Ladani*, *Styracis*, *Calaminthæ*, *Belzoni*, ana. ℥.j. *Tartari albi combusti*, *Aluminis combusti*, ana. ℥. iiij. *Vitrioli Romani combusti*, ℥.j. quicke siluer. ℔.j. *Minium*, ℥.ß. mixe all, and beate them in a mortar 2. houres at the least (if it be three it is the better) without ceassing. ℞. *Pinguedinis gallinæ*, *Axungiæ porcinæ*, *Axungiæ vrsinæ*, ana. ℥. iiij. *olei Liliorum albi*, *olei Laurini*, ana. ℥.ij. quicke siluer, ℥. viij. In this composition, the fattes are not melted at the fire, but the filmes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a mortar very diligently; then by litle and litle the quicke siluer is put into the mortar, and the medicine is wrought in the mortar, by the space of two or three houres at the least. Afterward put in these powders: *Thuris*, *Mastiches*, *Myrrhæ*, *Ammoniaci*, *Styracis*, *pulueris Saluiæ*, *pulueris Stœchados*, *Lythargiry*, *Cerussæ*, ana. ℥.ß. Of these is made a very fine powder, which by litle & litle is put into the mortar, continually beating till al be wel incorporated. Thus these two ointments be made, the first is strongest and best. If there be many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing commonly the *Symptomata* will appeare, they vse no more annointing.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Præcipitatum giuen by the mouth.

Dosis. FVrthermore you shall vnderstand, that some practitioners vse to cure this disease, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue spoken before) but by giuing *Præcipitatum* by the mouth. Some giue the common *Præcipitatum* so prepared: It is giuen in weight, gra. seuen, or tenne at the vttermost: they

they mixe this quantity with medicines to alter the colour, that it may not be knowne. Some mixe it with *Aloes*, *Myrrhæ*, *Maſtiches*, gr. iij. Some mixe it with conſerues of Roſes, ſome with *Mithridatum*, and ſuch like. But there is a more ſafe curing then this, by *Turbith mineralis*, which the *Chymiſts* haue inuented in ſtead of *Præcipitatum*, which I better allow of, and it is very dangerous for the better ſort of men: of the which I mind to ſpeake hereafter as followeth. Firſt, the vſe of *Turbith mineralis* is betwixt graines xviij. and xx. graine, or xxv. graines at the moſt, after the ſtrength of the patient: they vſe it in this maner. Firſt they take the doſe as they themſelues beſt like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum*, one part or two as they will: ſome mixe with it conſerue of Roſes, ſo that there be not in all paſt ℥.j. or ℥.j.ß at the moſt. They make it into a ball: ſome make three or foure pils and gild thē, other ſome rolle it in powder of *Diambre* or ſuch like. The patiēts body muſt be prepared by ſome eaſie meane, and eate a light ſupper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning: after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the leaſt, and ſleepe after it, if it be poſſible; then let him ariſe and apparell himſelfe warme, and ſit by the fire. Let his chamber be very warme, ſo that he may ſweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the ſaid Bole, cauſe him to eate ſome warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be throughly whole or cured. Let his diet be very good warme meates. Two mornings next following giue him a litle *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cauſe him to ſweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the *Turbith* as before, and let him keepe the order aforeſaid: and if his mouth grow not ſore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the ſecond time: do ſo till his mouth be ſore, then ſeeke in the former chapter to heale his mouth as is taught there. Thus haue you all the waies and means to helpe this pernicious griefe.

The doſis of Turbith mineralis.

Libri ſexti finis.

THE VII. BOOKE, TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND MEDICINES, WHICH OVR PHYSITIONS DO commonly vse at this day, and to know after what sort their proportion and quantity is distributed and noted, with the names of each medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppositaries.

A Suppositary is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which it put into the fundament, that it may auoid the pricking, and moue and prouoke the vertue expulsiue to the auoiding of the excrements, compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries especially for three causes: the first is for bringing out ordure, which when it lieth in the right bowell, it requireth no clister. The second is, when one or two clysters haue bene put into the body, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chance in passions of the cholicke, then it is very perillous to put in other clisters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clister. A suppositarie is made of hony that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common salt is mixed with the hony: but if you will make it more sharpe and quicke, take of salt Gemme, the dung of a Mouse, Agaricke, or elle *Hiera simplex*. ℞. a Suppositary made of hony, which if you thinke so weake that it will not moue the compost or ordure, adde too these following. ℞. to make a common Suppositary of sharpe hony, *sal Armoniacke*, ℥.ß. or of salt Gemme, ℈.ß. or of Mouse dung, ℈.ß. or ℈.j. or of *Hiera simplex*, ʒ.ß. Also make suppositaries of white sope, tallow of beasts, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of Beets, or Mercurie, or their rootes annointed with oyle or hony, and strewed with powder of salt, specially for children and sucking babes, for who one corne of salt put in is sufficient. ℞. Thime, or *Cyclaminum*, or Wormwood, or Sothernwood, stamped in a mortar, ℥.j. or ß. of boiled hony so much as sufficeth, and make a suppositary. Suppositaries are good against the Palsey, made of Pellitory & Pepper, Napy (that is, a kind of rapes called a Nauew) Satorie, Bitumen, that is, a kinde of lime, the roote of *Panax*, Hysope, *Galbanum*, mixed with dry Rosin, or Pitch & Waxe. Let a Suppositary be round, and 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vse no Suppositaries to them which haue the hemorrhoides, or any other swelling in the fundament.

A suppositarie to bring forth the ordure.

A suppositarie against the wormes called Lumbrici.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.
Of making Nodulus.

NODVLI be those which are called of *Ætius* in Greeke ὑποβολαι they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoid and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steads. Their matter is the same that suppositaries be. ℞ Flockes mingled or beaten with hony, and put into the tuel: and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a Beane, and put into the uell with a threed hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.
Of making Pessaries.

A Pessary is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the womb. It is made of Waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in an ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward wind them in silke, and hang a threed thereunto, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuel and into the wombe to ceasse the inflammations and vlcers of them both. Priuatly it is put into the wombe to prouoke the menstruis and the secundine, or to stop immoderate fluxe of menstruis, or to mollifie the hardnes of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the womb. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *Vnguentum rosatum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *Opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astonied, therefore his quantity ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a little time, lest through his coldnesse the parts which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. ℞. a pessary dipped and wet in *Vnguentum Pomphoiges*, put it into the tuel or into the matrice that is greeued. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out with his powder, as thus. ℞. *Hierapicra composita*, ℥.j. of *Euphorbium*, and the apple of *Coloquintida*, ana. ℈. ß. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with *oleum Nardinum*, or with the iuice of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentime of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis: as. ℞. Mercurie, Neppe, or Mugwort, or Sothernwood, M. ß. bray them, and rolle them in silke, and make a pessary. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist: the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloden, because the matrice is in the middest betweene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouermuch straightnesse may be retained and made slow in coming out. If immoderate menstruis do flow, do thus: ℞. a pessary wet in *Vnguentum comitisse*, and put it into the matrice: or thus: ℞. of Plantaine, or Knotgrasse, or Brier, of Mirtle or other that can

To ceasse inflammation.

To dry vlcers.

To bring forth menstruis.

To mollifie the hardneſſe of the wombe.

flop menſtruis, M. ß. bray them, and roll them in ſilke, and make a peſſa-
Peſſaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a Calfe, & a Hart, of Re-
ſin, Terebinthine, fatneſſe of a Gooſe, or porke, and of Gumme Armoniacke
diſſolued in water.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Cliſters or Enema.

A Cliſter or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is caſt and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquide and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe reſtrained with hardneſſe. 2. To prouoke the violence deteſtable and aſtonied. 3. To auoide all kind of humours. 4. To put away ventoſities. 5. To ceaſſe dolours and paines. 6. To bind and reſtraine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guts or bowels. 8. To make ſound the ſame. There may be alſo added to alter and change, as here followeth. ℞. of Lettuce, Scarioll, *Roſtrum porcinum*, leaues of Sallow, ana. M. j. flowers of Violets, and Nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the ſtrayning let one ounce of *Caſſia fiſtula* be diſſolued, oyle of Violets, and of Nenuphar, ana. ℥ j. ß. Camphire ϑ. j. and make a cliſter ℞. the foure kinds of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, Pellitory of the wall, ana. M. j. ß. the rootes of the Mallowes called *Althea*, and white Lillies, ana ℥ j. ſeede of Flaxe, Fenugreeke and Anniſe, ana. ℥ ß. of fat Figges, iiij. make a decoction of ℔ j. in weight. In the ſtraining thereof diſſolue therein of *Caſſia fiſtula, mel Violarum*, and freſh butter, ana. ℥ j. oyle of Violets, ℥ iij. and make a cliſter. If you will make a cliſter mollificatiue lacking the things aforeſaid, do thus. ℞. oyle made warme ℔ j. and make thereof a cliſter, or thus. ℞. oyle and freſh butter, ana. ℔ ß. and make a cliſter. ℞. the foure remollitiues, ana M. j. ſeede of *Carthamum*, ℥ j. of Anniſe, Fennell, and *Careum*, ana. ℥ iij. and make a decoction of ℔ j. and in the ſtraining diſſolue *Hiera ſimplex*, or *Benedicta*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Electuarium de ſucco*, or *Electuarium Indi maioris*, ℥ ß. of clarified hony, or iuyce of Squil, ℥ j. or common Salt, ℥ ij. or ſalt Gemme, ϑ. j. or ℥ ß. Many do adde to cliſters, ℥ j. of the iuyce of Beetes, which do moue and grieue the belly, or iuyce of Beets and Coleworts, ana. ℥ ß. of common Salt, ℥ ij. or ℥ j. which bite and gnaw the belly, or leſſe; but the iuſt weight muſt be as you coniecture to be eaſie or hard for the ſicke. Alſo ſuch a cliſter expulſing the deteſtable faculty or matter, may very well be made onely of hony, or hony with iuyce of *Squilla*, or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulſiue, be aſtonied and dull through the hardneſſe of the ordure, then make a cliſter partly of mollificatiues, & partly of expulſiues aforeſaid. Cliſters which auoid humours are made ſo, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is groſſe and cold, euill diſpoſing the bowels, let it be made thus. ℞. the foure remollitiues, ana. M. j. Cammomill, the tops of Dil, Origan, Calamint, Sothernwood, ana. M. ß. Anniſe, *Careum*, Comin, Ammeos, Seſeleos, ana. ℥ ß. berries of Lawrell, ſeed of Rew, ana. ℥ ij make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue *Catholicon*, and *Diaphœnicon*, ana. ℥ ß. or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta*, ℥ vj. or of both, ℥ ß. of red Sugar, and *mel Anthos*, ana. ℥ iij. ℥ ß. oile of Dill and Cammomill, ana. quart. ß. or oyle of Rew, ℥ j.

A cliſter mollificatiue.

A cliſter prouoking & making voide the violence aſtonied.

A cliſter auoiding humours.

oyle

oyle of Dil, ℥.ij. or oyle of Lillies, ℥.ij. make a cliſter. If ventoſity be preſent, adde Calmatiues; if paine be preſent, take a medicine releaſing griefe by prouoking ſleepe, as hereafter ſhall appeare by examples. If a cholericke and gnawing humour muſt be brought out with a cliſter, then let the cliſter be made of ſuch things as will auoid that humour, and mixe it partly with ſuch helpes as do ceaſſe inflammation, as thus. ℞. Mallowes, Biſmallowes, Violets, Pellitory of the wall, Endiue, Succory, Lettuce, Purſlaine, ana. M.j. and if there be ſo much neede of coldneſſe, take the foure great cold ſeedes bruiſed, ana ℥.iij. or ℥.ß. of whole Barley, p.j. make a decoction of one pound. In the ſtraining diſſolue *Caſſia fiſtula* and common Sugar, ana. ℥.j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of Roſes, or of Violets, or common oile, quart j. make a cliſter. If ſuch a paſſion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. ℞. the foure molliſicatiues, the leaues of Bugloſſe and Borage, the tops of Dill, *Lupoli*, and Fumitory, ana. M.j. Melilot and Cammomill, ana. M. j. ſeede of *Carthamum*, and Polypodie of the Oke, ana ℥.j. Anniſe, and Fennell, ana ℥.ß. make a decoctiõ. In the ſtraining diſſolue *Hiera Ruffi*, which is not in vſe, or *confectio Hamech*, ℥.ß. or *Catholicon*, ℥.j. red Sugar, or *mel Roſarum*, or Violets, ℥.j. oyle of Dill, Lillies, and Violets, ana. ℥.j. make a cliſter. ℞. Mallowes, Biſmallowes, Pellitory of the wall, Origan, Calamint, Cammomill, the tops of Dill, ana. M.j. Anniſe, *Careum*, Comin and Fennell, ana. ℥.ß or ℥.vj. of Lawrell Berries, ℥.iij. or ℥.ß. ſeede of Rew. ℥ ij. or iij. and make a decoction. in the ſtraying diſſolue *Benedicta*, or *Diaphœnicon*, or *Electuarium Indi maioris*, which we do not vſe here, ℥.ß. confection of Lawrell berries, ℥.iij. or ℥.ß. red Sugar, ℥.j. oile of Dill, Cammomill and Rew, ana. ℥.j. make a cliſter. Into theſe cliſters which put away ventoſities, oile of Nuts is wholeſome to put in, and alſo (as *Galen* ſaith) *Vinum maluaticum Cretenſe*, may well be mixed with a cliſter as is aforeſaid. The ſignes of ventoſities and wind contained in the bowels, be often farting and noiſe in the guttes, becauſe it chanceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as *Galen* teacheth *Particula 2. Aphoriſm. ſtrangulati nondum mortui, &c.*) be cauſed of aire ſhut and encloſed with the humour. Cliſters to ceaſſe paines are made many wayes, for if the cauſe be a hote gnawing humour, the example is ſhewed afore by cold things, where he intreateth of a cliſter to auoid humours: if the paine be of a cold cauſe, take the ſame that is giuen againſt ventoſity laſt before: if the paine do come of moe cauſes, make a cliſter of many of thoſe things which are meete for the cauſes: and when the cauſe of the paine is not knowne, make it thus. ℞. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, the toppes of Dill, ana pug. ij. make a decoction in milke. In the ſtraining diſſolue therein white Sugar, becauſe the red is biting and pricking, ℥.j. ß. whites of egges ij. oyle of Dill and Cammomill, ana quart. ß. and make a cliſter. Or thus. ℞. oile of Cammomill, Dill and Violets, ana ℥ iij. caſt it in with a cliſter, and when we want ſuch oile, we make it of quart. iij or ℔.j. of oile Oiiue. ℞. milke ſoden, quart. iij. or ℔.j. *Amylum ſive Amydum*, halfe a dramme, or a dram at the moſt, Gumme Arabique, or Tragacanth, or both, a litle burnt, ana. halfe a dram, or a dram, or two drammes: Bolearmoniacke, and *Sanguis Draconis*, ana. ℥.ij. oile of Roſes and Cammomill, ana. one ounce and a halfe: make

A cliſter to put & driue away ventoſities.

A cliſter to ceaſſe paines. 5

A cliſter reſtraining. 6

A Cliſter profitable againſt a hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

a cliſter. ℞. the iuyces of Plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, that is, a kind of Plantaine, Knotgraſſe and Purſlaine: let theſe iuices be cleanſed either by ſeething or reſidence; take of all theſe, or of one of theſe, as much as ſufficeth for a cliſter, adding of the powder aforeſaid, and with thoſe oiles make a cliſter. Note that when there is need, then you may make cliſters of thoſe herbes ſodden, or of the waters diſtilled out of them, adding Roſe water, as: ℞. the water of *Arnogloſſa*, of Plantaine, of Roſes, of Purſlaine, of Knotgraſſe, as much as ſufficeth, and diſſolue ſome of the aforeſaid things therein. It is to be noted, that ſometime there are put into the aforeſaid decoctions, ſeedes and fruits that be ſtipticke, to make hard, and to bind, ſo that they lacke ſharpneſſe, becauſe elſe they would pricke, prouoke and expulſe; therefore we can mixe together the ſeeds of Myrtle, Sorrell, of Purſlaine, Plantaine, Cypreſſe, *Cauda equina*, Horſtaile, and ſuch like. Moreouer note, that oile muſt neuer be put into cliſters, if the bowels be vlcerate, as they be in *Dyſenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the body) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oile is an enemy to vlcers (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi.*) Truly wine is a ſpeciall friend, the creame or curde of a Hare or of a Goate, in weight ℥. iij. *Sorbus*, Proynes Medlars, Quinces, ana. ℥. j. more or leſſe, do reſtraine and bind. ℞. of the whole Barley, p. ij. of red Roſes and Cammomill, and Plantaine if paine be preſent, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue therein *mel roſarum*, ℥ j. the white of one egge or two, make a cliſter. Such a cliſter is to be giuen alwaies before cliſters reſtraining, binding and conſolidating, by meanes whereof the thing is made prompte and eaſie. A cliſter conſolidating is made when the filthineſſe of the bowels is not purged and tried out, becauſe that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no cliſter, but that prognoſtication is ſufficient. ℞. of the iuyce of Plantaine, *Arnogloſſa* and Purſlaine, ana. ounces three, of Bolearmoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum*, ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme, or one ounce & a halfe, and make a cliſter. And becauſe Goates tallow cannot well diſſolue, but almoſt alwayes it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowelles of the ſicke, therefore it may be and ought to be diſſolued with a little oile of Roſes, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Alſo ointments conſolidating (as is *Vnguentum album*) ſometime are made liquide and mixed, and ſpecially when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the ſtead of iuyces may cliſters be made of milke very well for his whey portion, which doth reſtraine and conſolidate. Oftentimes both in theſe and in reſtrayning cliſters, the whites of egges hard ſodden are diſſolued. And thus finiſheth the making and vſe of clyſters or *Enema*

A Cliſter to ſcoure and cleanſe vlcers in the guttes.

A cliſter conſolidating. that is, making ſound of vlcers.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines a iuyce with Sugar or honey molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the meaſure of that Sugar. Practitioners do put a double vnderſtanding in ſirupes, that is, *ſimplex*, which is called vſuall; and *compoſitum*, which is called magiſtrall. Simples or vſuals be theſe, ſyrupes of

Violets

Violets, of Roſes, of Endiue, of Nenuphar, of Maidenhaire, of Wormewood, of Mints, *Oxymel ſquilliticum*, ſirupe of Eupatorie, of *Epithymum*, and of *Byzantijs*. They are called ſimples, as well becauſe they conſiſt in one ſimple medicine, as alſo becauſe they are ordained for one ſickneſſe and for one vſe. *Syrupus compoſitus* which is called magiſtrall, is compounded of diuers medicines being good for ſundry diſeaſes, as in example: if any man compound together ſirupe of Wormewood and Stæchados, being taken in euen portions or quantity, there would come thereof a ſirupe good for the ſtomacke, becauſe of the Wormewood, and good for the head becauſe of the Stæchados. A Syrupe is good and profitable to digeſt humours before a purgation, that they may the eaſier and better obey the purgation. Therfore they are vſed of many Phyſitions to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practioners did obſerue it, but they did commit the digeſtion of humours wholie to nature. Looke the comment, *Aphoriſm.* 9. *Lib.* 2. When any man will purge the body, it behoueth to make it flowing. Truly *Hippocrates* would do thus, ſaying, that the concoct and digeſt matter ought to be healed and moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glauconem libro primo*, ſpeaking of the cure of *Tertiana Notha*, would not haue Wormewood to be giuen till the ſeuenth day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth that ſirupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digeſtion and coction But many do obſerue and vſe, that humors being groſſe and clammy and viſcous, may by ſirupes that do attenuate, cut, and deuide, be prepared and made eaſie to auoiding and purging; they call this digeſting of humours. Cold and cleauing humours are prepared with ſirupes that be hote, cutting and ſcouring; as to digeſt rheumy matter, ſuch as is a feauer quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging, ℞. the fiue rootes apertiue, made cleane, and tempered in vineger foure houres, ana. ℥.ß. or ℥.iij. or the rinds of the fiue roots, Origan, Calamint, Hyſope, Betony, and Germander, ana M.ß. of Anniſe and Fennell, ana ℥.ß. of Raiſins the ſtones picked out, ℥. iij. both the Stæchados, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the ſtrayning, diſſolue of good hony quarts iiij. of white Sugar, ℥. iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly ſodden. Miniſter three ſpoonefull with double as much of water of Liquorice, or with Ptiſan, or with water of Raiſins or Anniſe. Humours that be moueable and thin, muſt be prepared to the auoiding and purging by ſirupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be carried to the waies of expulſion, or be kept and contained in the waies and conduits by which an apt and ready expulſion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if thoſe humors be reſtrained and kept out of the places aforeſaid, then they ſhall be rectified and remedied with cold ſirupes, the making whereof doth follow.

A ſirupe digeſting of rheumy matter.

A ſirupe againſt thinne and moueable humours.

℞. ſirupes of Purſlaine, Sorrell, Endiue, Nenuphar, of Ribes, of Barberies, of *Agreſta*, of Quinces, of Roſes, take of one of theſe or mo, ℥. vj. miniſter it with double as much of well water ſoddden. There may alſo conueniently be made a lulep in this wiſe. ℞. ſirupes of Roſes, Purſlaine & Sorrell, ana ℥. j. ß. or ℥. ij. water of Roſes, *Arnogloſſa*, Succory, or Endiue, or Purſlaine, or Sorrell, ana. ℥. ij. water ſodden or burnt, ſpecially if fluxe of the bellie be preſent,

A ſirupe to make humors groſſe and thicke.

Note. ℥. vj. make a iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℥. ij. of Cinamon electe Furthermore, if those humours do not make and cause fluxe of the belly, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither sirupes stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold sirupes lacking stipticity, as be sirupes of Endiue, Purslaine, Violets, of *Nymphæa* called water Lillies, of Maidenhaire But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more easily, we do vse cold sharpe sirupes, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold: also *Oxysaccarum simplex* and *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, and of Limons, which if the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then sirupes that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rase, and flay; but syrupes of Ribes, Barberies, Quinces, and iuyce of Sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpnesse and acetosity. But against hote humours, make potions of sirupes magistrall in this wise. ℞. Endiue that is yong, or new set, and not growne long, wash it not; *Adiantum*, Maidenhaire, Succory, Purslaine, Lettuce, Singreen, Scarioll, Plantaine, of all, or of some of them, two or three, ana. M. ij. the foure great cold seeds, ana. ℥. iij. the roote of Succory, the roote of Sorrell, of Gramen, and Nightshade, that is, the lesse Sorrell, called *Solatrum*. ana. halfe an ounce, or ℥ iij. make a decoction, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbes afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the strayning dissolue Sugar Taberzet, ℥. vj of wine of Pomegranates, ℥. j. ß. of vineger, ℥. ß make a sirupe clarified & aromatized with ℈ ij. of white Sanoders, or red, or both, ana. ℈ j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde too Sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor, as water sodden, water of Liquorice, or the water of some of the herbes aforesaid distilled; yet I do not much praise and allow the vse of distilled waters. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing else, neither shall the iuyces be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden.

A sirupe for melancholie humors. Like formes and vses may be made of sirupes, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Syrupe of *Epithymum*, sirupe of Fumitory, which is made two waies: one way is of the onely decoction or iuyce of Fumitory, and then it is *Syrupus de Fumiterra simplex*: another way is according to the description of *Mesue*, and such a sirupe hath Myrobalanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound for that cause: sirupe of Bugloss, sirupe of Borage, sirupe of Harts-tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of Violets, because it moistneth very much.

The simple medicines wherewith these sirupes are compounded be these: Borage and Bugloss, Fumitory, *Lupulus*, *Epithymum* and such like that do help and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the aforesaid things may be made sirupes, potions & iuleps, decoct and boiled to the satisfying of these intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made sirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of the matter that is rheumie and filthy, and also melan-

cholike matter, when long continuing diſeaſes be bred of them, partly to the digeſtion of raw matter or humours, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humours which be rotten, as in long feauers.

A ſirupe laxatiue againſt rhumy matter and feauers Nothæ.

℞. the roote of *Apium*, Fennell and Parcely ſcraped and made cleane, ana. ℥.iij. of Hyſope, Origan, and Calamint, ana. M.ß. of ſeede of *Carthamum*, ℥.iij. greene Polypody of the Oke, ℥. ij. of Anniſe, Fennell and Dill, ana. ℥.j.ß. of Liquorice ſcraped, ℥. iij. of Raiſins the ſtones pulled out, ℥. ß. of the three cordiall floures, ana. p j. make a decoction ſtrained to ℔ j. or ℔. j. ß. in the which infuſe new trochiskes of Agaricke, ℥ j ß leaues of Sene cleanſed, ℥.ij. after ten houres make a ſtrayning, wringing it ſtrongly, whereto adde ſirupe of Violets, *ſirupi de Bizantijs*, and white Sugar ana ℥.iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly ſodden and aromatizate with ℥.j. of Cinamon elect, and with one ſirupe ℈. j. *Xyloaloes*. The doſe of this ſirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be ℥.j ß. which alſo the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromel, that is, water and hony ſodden together, or *aqua Mulſa*, or of ſome other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this preſent ſirupe be increaſed or diminiſhed, by reaſon of the quantity making of the ſirupe; for this preſent ſirupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or more doſes, therefore the forme and faſhion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1. 2. 3. or moe doſes. Moreouer by like reaſon a ſirupe laxatiue is made for matter cholericke and filthy (as one would ſay) vitelline, the which cauſeth feauers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

A ſirupe laxatiue againſt filthy cholerick matter.

℞. the roots of *Apium*, and of Fennell cleanſed, and ſcraped, and tempered in vineger one nights ſpace, ana. ℥. ß. of Hyſope, Maidenhaire, *Adiantum*, *Polytricum*, ſome call it wall-ferne, Harts-tongue, Endiue, Succory ana. M.ß. or M.j. the 4. great cold ſeedes bruiſed ana. ℥.ij. or ℥.iij. Raiſins the ſtones pulled out, ℥.ß. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction, in the which infuſe Agaricke newly made in trochiskes, ℥. vj the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥.j. in the ſtraining diſſolue ſirupe of Maidenhaire and Violets, ana. ℥.iij. of white Sugar, ℥.iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the ſtrayning of it ℥ ß. of Reubarbe elect infuſed as it ought to be, which thing after it be ſtrained, let it boile on a ſoft fire without flame or ſmoke, vnto the perfection of the decoction: the doſe of it is, ℥ ij. or ℥.j.ß. with double as much of the decoction of Endiue, and Succory, or Liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of Goates milke. This ſirupe is for fiue or ſixe doſes. And if the firſt doſe will not ſatisfie your intent, then you muſt diſſolue ſomewhat therein that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldeſt haue brought out: as for example, ℞ of the ſirupes aforeſaid, ℥.j.ß. of whey made of Goates milke, ℥.iij. make a doſe. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *Caſſia fiſtula*, ℥.ß or of *Diaprunis laxatiue*, ℥. j or ℥ ij. or *Diaphœnicon*, ℥ j.ß. or alſo ſome Rewbarbe. You may alſo do the ſame in the example of the ſirupe made to auoid rheume.

A ſirupe againſt melancholie.

℞. of the iuyces of *Lupuli* (that is) Hops, and of Fumitory, but it is vnpleaſant, of Bugloſſe, of Borage, and of ſweete Apples cleanſed, ana. ℥.ij. or iij. let them be twiſe cleanſed, either by decoction & clarifying, or by reſidence of greene Polypody of the Oke, ℥.ij. or iij. of fat Tamarinds, ℥ j *Epithymũ Cretenſis* put

in the end of the decoction, ℥. ij. of *Adiantum*. Harts tongue, and the fiue cordiall floures ana. p. j. make a decoction strained to quarts iij. in the which infuse the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥.iij. make a straining, and mixe it with the aforesaid iuyces: afterward adde thereto sirupe of Violets, ℥.vj. sirupes of Bugloſſe, and Sugar, Taberzet, ana. ℥.iij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden, and Aromatizate with, ℥.j. of Cinamon, and ℈. j. of white Ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of Bugloſſe, or Hops, or Fumitory, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making sirupes.

CHAP. VI.

Of making Iuleps.

A Iulep doth not much differ from a sirupe, but that it is lesse boiled then a sirupe is, and becauſe also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as sirupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuyce of some simple medicine, as thus. ℞ of the water of infusion of Roses, or the water of infusion of Violets, ℥.v. Sugar, ℥ iiij. boile it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus. ℞. water of Roses, ℥.viij. of Sugar ℥.iiij. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus. ℞. the iuyce of Roses, or the iuyce of Violets, ℥ vj. Sugar, ℥ iij. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and loose, or that do restraine and bind. But yet Physitions commonly do call a sirupe, dissolued in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, ℞. sirupe of Roses, and the sirupe of Violets, or sirupe of Maidenhaire, or of any other sirupe, ℥. iij. of sodden water. ℔. ß. mixe them together and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dolis, siue Potio.

Dolis, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue, dissolued in some kind of liquor, and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, becauſe of the diuersitie of humours that they voide and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring forth rheume or fleame, as be these, *Agaricke*, *Turbith*, *Carthamus*, *Colocynthis*, and other often sought out by *Mesua*. The compounds be *Diaphœnicon*, *in forma opiatæ*, *Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*, and *Hiera simplex*, *Hiera composita*, and such like. But these be compounded, not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humour, as choler mixt with fleame or melancholy. Medicines are ministred in diuerse formes and fashions: as first in the forme of a potion, for one only dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, wherof shall be spoken hereafter; in the forme of an Electuarie liquide, as *Opiatæ*: whole in forme, as lozenges, in the forme of sirupes of Iuleps, also in the forme of powder and pils. ℞. *Diaphœnicon*, ℥.ß. or ℥.vj if the sicke be strong, dissolue it with the water of the decoction of Liquorice, Raisins and Anniſe, as much as sufficeth. Make a dose with sirupe of Violets, ℥.vj. or ℥ j. or dissolue it with common strayning,

The forme of a potion.

ning, and make a dose, or dissolue it with Hydromel, or dissolue it with certain distilled waters, as waters of Hops, Bugloss, Succory, or such like; or dissolue it with the decoctiō or broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: ℞. the three cordiall flowers, ana one handfull, of Proines Damascene, *Iuiubarum* and *Sebestes*, ana foure in number, Liquorice scraped, ℥.j.ß Annise, ℥.j. make a decoction strained for one dose: in the which dissolue *Diaphœnicon*, ℥.ß or ℥.vj. sirupe of Violets, ℥j. and make a dose. If you will adde to it another Electuarie laxatiue, take of one a quantity away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is said, take of *Diaphœnicon*, ℥.vj. you may say take of *Diaphœnicon* and *Carthamum*, ana. three drams, and so likewise of other.

The forme of a potion or dose, whose decoctiō doth auoid certaine rheume and fleame.

℞. Raisins the stones pulled out, ℥.ß. the seed of *Carthamum* and Polypody of the Oke, ana. ℥.ß or ℥.vj. of Annise, Fennell, and Liquorice scraped, ana. ℥.j ß. leaues of Hysope, ℥ j. make a decoction, in the which infuse Agarick newly trochiscate, ℥.j. or ℈ iiij. or ℥.j ß. In the straining dissolue *Diacarthamum*, or *Diaphœnicon* or *Benedicta*, ℥.iiij. or ℥.ß. sirupe of Violets, ℥.j and make a dose. These things auoid choler: iuyce of Roses, Violets, Tamarindes, Manna, *Diagredion*, that is, Scammony prepared, *Psillium*, Reubarbe and Myrobalanes. *Cassia fistula* purgeth as well choler as rheume: iuyce of Roses and Ireos do bring forth thin choler and yellow water. Compounds to auoid choler are these *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, *Diaprunis laxatiuum*, *Diaprunis simplex*, trochiskes of Violets, which be seldome in vse.

Smples to auoid choler.

Compounds.

The forme of a potion loosing and resoluing choler.

℞ of fat Tamarinds, ℥.j. the three cordiall floures, ana p. ß. Liquorice scraped, ℥.j.ß. of Proines Damascene, number vj. make a decoction in a litle quātity of water, in the which let the Tamarinds be strongly wrong out. In the straining dissolue *Cassia fistula* that is new, ℥.j or ℥ x. make a dose. In the like decoction you may dissolue, ℥.ß. or ℥.vj of *Diaprunis simplex*, with ℥.j.ß. or ℥.ij. of *Diaprunis* laxatiue. If it be feared that *Diagredion* will do hurt, and if the sicke be rich, in the stead of *Diaprunis* laxatiue may be dissolued, ℥.j. or ℈. iiij. or ℥.j.ß. of Rewbarbe. Take heede and note, that such a potion is good in cholericke feauers, and in those feuers in which the Frensie is feared; and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eschued the auersion, and also the refrigeration and the cooling. In stead of this present decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be dissolued in a common decoction, or with water of fruits, or with Hydromel, or with waters distilled either with Endiue, Succory, Hops, or with the broth of a Chicken, or with the whey of milke. ℞. Raisins the stones picked out, ℥. iij. Liquorice scraped, and Annise seedes, ana. ℥.j. Proynes Damascene, in number vj. Tamarinds ℥.ß. the three cordiall floures, Succory, yong set Endiue, ana. M. j. make a decoction boiled for one dose, in the which dissolue new *Cassia fistula*, ℥.j. or ℥.vj after the straining, infuse ℥.j. or ℈. iiij. of ℥ j.ß. of Rewbarbe elect as it ought to be, of sirupe of Violets ℥.ß. or ℥.j. make a dose. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is least afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleame, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do looten choler, and such things as dissolue rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwaies to be ioyned with Reubarbe, is vnpleasant to the belly, for it looseneth oppilations and stoppings vehemently. Also it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child,

The forme of a common dose, in the beginning of cholericke feauers, especially in tertian feuers.

it prouoketh menstruis strongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with Rubarb in medicins that are giuen to women with child, or to those which be apt to vomite. For that cause if it be mixed, 3. or 4. graines are sufficient for ℥.j. of Reubarbe. For delicate persons which do abhorre all medicines, make a dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for two or three times, or for one dose after this sort, specially for Tertians exquisite and deinty. ℞. Endiue yong set, and Succory, ana. M.ß. the three cordiall floures, ana p.ß. Liquorice scraped, ℥ j.ß Proynes Damascene vj. in number, fat Tamarinds, ℥.6. Anise, ℥.ß make a decoction boiled to ℨ. iij. or else you may make a decoction for one dose, in which dissolue sirupe of Violets, and Endiue, ana. ℥. vj. or ℨ.ß. of white Sugar, ℨ j. the wringing and straining of ℥.ij. of Reubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be without Spikenard, make a long sirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apozema* (which is a decoction so called of the Greekes, and vsed of them in stead of our sirupes. Let it be boiled vpon the coales without any smoake long time together, wringing the Reubarbe strongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromatizate it, and make a dose of ℥.j. ß. it may be multiplied for two or three doses (the proportion of all being kept and obserued.) But if you will made a sirupe to last long, seeth it to the perfection, and of that sirupe minister, ℨ j.ß. or ℨ ij. with whey of milke, or with the decoction that serueth for thy purpose. Also you may adde some Sene in the infusion, especially if you thinke choler adust doth reigne, or if you desire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine: ℞. of young set Endiue, of Succory of *Adiantum*, and of Harts-tongue ana. M.j. the foure great cold seeds. ana. ℥.iij. the seede of *Carthamum*, ℨ j.ß. Polypodie of the Oke, ℨ.ij. fat Tamarinds, ℨ.j ß. seede of Endiue, Scarioll and Liquorice scraped, ana ℥.ij. of Raisins the stones plucked out, ℥. ij. Proynes Damascene 12. in number, the three cordiall floures, ana. p.j. make a decoction of ℔.j. or ℨ viij. in the which infuse the leaues of Sene cleansed, ℨ j ß. Agaricke newly trochiscate, ℨ.j. In the strayning of the decoction dissolue sirupe of Violets, and Maidenhaire sirupe, ana. ℨ.iij. white Sugar, ℨ ij. make a sirupe boiled vpon a lent fire, without smoke, putting vnto it the straining of ℥.vj of Reubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be. make a sirupe perfectly boiled and aromatizate with, ℥.ß. of Cinamon, & ℈.ij. of Red Saunders, reserue it in an earthen or glasen vessell. The dose of the aforesaid sirupe shall be the fourth part of it (that is to say, ℨ.ij.) the which may be dissolued with whey of Goats milk, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctiõs of distillations of Succory or Endiue. But *Igorreus* doth not allow distilled waters. And if the aforesaid doses do not sufficiently moue the belly & cause it to be soluble enough, an infusion may conuenintly be added to the second dose, ℈.ij. or ℥ j. of Reubarbe elect, or some *Diaprunis laxatiue*, or *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, as in example. ℞. of the aforesaid sirupe, ℨ ij the straining of two scruples of Reubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxatiue*, ℥.j. ℨ or ℥. ij. of whey made of milke, ℨ.ij. or as much as is sufficient, & make a dose. It is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministred to those that haue *Tertianæ Nothæ* (that is, bastardly Tertian feuers) rather then to those that haue feauers exquisite, dainty, and lawfull; for these be of fewer

A dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for delicate folke.

A dose against bastardly feuers, especially Tertians.

fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the feauers *Nothæ* and bastardly do come of filthy and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge rheume, the leaues of Sene which do purge melancholy, and also Rewbarbe, which doth purge choler, may be put together to the aforesaid sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth feauers *Nothæ* of long continuance, is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more daies must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicen de Cura Tertianarum Nothatum*. These do purge melancholy: Hops, Fumitory, *Epithymum Cretensis*, Polypodie of the Oke, the leaues of Sene, *lapis Lazuli*, *Myrobalani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis Armenus*, blacke Hellebore, and a thousand other are to be sought out of *Mesue*. The compounds that purge melancholy be *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *Diasena*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Ruffi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *Pilulæ de Fumitoria*, Pils of *lapis Lazulus*, pils of the fiue kinds of Myrobalanes, of *Epithymum*, of Hellebore pils; whereof the dose is ℥.j. We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitternesse that they haue in taste: All Electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting, & therefore they are confected & made in forme of potiõs. ℞. Fumitory, & the tops of Hops, ana. M.j. ß the three cordial floures, ana p.j. of Raisins the stones picked out, ℥.iij. or ℥ ß. of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ℥ iij. of *Cuscuta*, & *Epithymum*, ana. ℥.iij. of Annise and Liquorice scraped, ana. ℥.j. ß. make a decoction, in which infuse the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥.ij. or ℥.iij. In the straining of the decoctiõ dissolue, *Diacatholicon*, ℥.j. or ℥.x. sirupe made of Violets, ℥.j. make a dose. In this dose sirupe of Violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the drinesse of Sene and *Epithymum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie, we do put in *Hierapicra Ruffi*, whose dose is, ℥.ß. in which Hellebore is entred, which is not in vse at Paris Or else take *confectio Hamech*, ℥.ß. the which is exceeding bitter for the plenty of *Coloquintida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines loosing and purging choler, or rather melancholy, may conueniently be dissolued with the whey of Goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesaid, putting in the dose before written, as in example. ℞. of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesaid, afterward make a decoction in the whey of Goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of Sene, &c. And with some of the aforesaid Electuaries confect and make a dose according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. ℞. the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥. iij. infuse them in the whey of Goates milke all one night, and in the strayning of the decoction dissolue *Catholicon*, ℥.j. or ℥.x. or ℥.j ß. and make a potion. Note that *Epithymum* doth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus, ℞. *Epithymum Cretensis*, ℥.j. let it boile with whey of Goates milke, afterward straine it, & wring it out strongly, and with ℥.i. of sirupes of Violets make a dose, which if it seeme not to be sufficient, adde to it some *Catholicon*. *Galen* doth counsell to take this potion,

Simples to purge melancholy humour.

The forme of a dose against melancholie.

13. *Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that Cankers, and all melancholy like diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, and to be eschued: but he putteth in but ℥. iiij. which drams do shew to be of no effect, because, (as I thinke) we haue not the good *Epithymum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantity, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All others do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is cõmonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Many do thinke and iudge that the decoction of an old cocke is very good and wholesome for diseases growne and begun, as well of melancholy, as also of rheume and fleame. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholike, caused of rheume, & partly of winde, & also against diseases of the breast, as difficulty in breathing, and moreoner against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of rheume, and partly of ventosity and wind. It is thus as followeth. ℞. of Hysope, Calamint, ana. M. j. Raisins the stones picked out, ℥. j. ß. of Annise, Fennell, and *Carui*, ana. ℥. vj. of the seed of *Carthamũ*, ℥. ij. of greene Polypodie of the Oke, ℥. j. ß. the three cordiall floures, ana. p. j. of the floures of Cammomill, p. ß. and make a decoction, putting all together into the belly of an old Cocke, prepared as it ought to be; infuse in the end of the decoction, the leaues of Sene made cleane, ℥ ij. ß. of Agaricke newly trochiscate, ℥. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserue it to your vse. ℞. of the aforesaid decoction, ℥. iiij. sirupe of Violets, ℥ j. ß. make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and stubburne, there may be put in the dissoluing some *Diaphœnicon*, as ℥. j. ß. or ℥. ij. or as much *Benedicta*. Take heed also, for Agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtfull to those that haue the cholicke: because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clister, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long at the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre parts of the body; and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witnesse) called it *Medicinam familiæ*, the medicine of his familie or household. Therefore it may not well be giuen to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe that would not be vnlesse that caused, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away Agaricke. Furthermore note, that Cammomill may aptly and well be put into those decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldome seeme among Physitions, yet it is manifest, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a Chicken or Capon, is excellent profitable against all inward griefes, and specially for those which haue the Cholicke and the Frensie (as many haue proued it, to the great preseruation of their health.) The water of the distillation of Cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more and better effect then the distillation of it. The bitternes of the decoction may be mitigated with Sugar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a Cocke may conueniently be giuen for diseases in the breast and of *Dyspnœa*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with it: as, ℞. of Hysope, of *Enula Campana*, of

The decoction of an old Cocke

of each the third part of a handfull, of Sauory the fourth part of a handfull, of Horſehooſe, called *Vngula caballina*, which is an herbe called of ſome, little Clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; ſeed of *Carthamum*, and greene Polypodie of the Oke, ana. ℥.ij. of Aniſe and liquorice ſcraped, ana. ℥ ß. roots of Ircos, and rootes of *Enula*, ana. ʒ.iij. or ℥.ß. of fat Figs not putrified, foure or fiue in number; of fat Dates, the skins and ſtilmes taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and Sebeſten, ana. twelue in number, of Raiſins the ſtones picked out, ℥.j. the three cordiall floures, ana. p.j. make a decoction in the belly of an old Cocke that is hunted, prepared and dreſſed as it ought to be, putting into it at the end, of Agaricke and of the leaues of Sene, as much as you thinke will be ſufficient for your purpoſe: but note, that here Agaricke may conueniently be vſed and miniſtred. There are other medicines alſo which be made againſt all ſuperfluities in other formes, that is to ſay, in the forme of liquide Electuaries, that is, *ad formam Opiatæ*: or in forme whole, that is, like an Electuarie made in lozenges or in tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in Engliſh is called a morſell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and faſhion it is meanely whole, and it is ſwallowed by little gobbets. It is made of diuerſe things, by reaſon of auoiding and purging diuerſe humours: but the plaineſt and ſimpleſt way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Caſſia fiſtula*, new drawne out of a cane or reede, ſixe drammes or an ounce, of Sugar ſo much as ſufficeth, and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Caſſia* will do hurt, as if great paine be in the bowels, whereby many times it prouoketh ſwounding, as ſome do that haue but weake and tender bowels: to ſuch *Caſſia* is not to be miniſtred, neither by bole nor by cliſters. And for that cauſe the ſicke perſon muſt be asked how he feeleth himſelfe before *Caſſia* be miniſtred vnto him. Truly many Authors do thinke, that this hurt which *Caſſia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it ſome graines of Barberies, or Sugar roſet: for they are of this mind, that through their ſtipticity the bellie and the bowels are ſtrengthened, and the paine impedite and letted, which *Caſſia* doth cauſe by his clammineſſe and mollifying ſoftneſſe. There be others that do mixe ſome laxatiue with *Caſſia*, that it may quicken the ſlowneſſe of his operation, & that it deſcending, may the ſooner ſlide away & be auoided. Boles chiefly are thus ordained & made, being very profitable remedies againſt the diſeaſes of the reynes. ℞. *Medulla Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* dewly drawne, ℥.j. or ℥.x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of Barberies, ϑ.ß. and with Sugar roſet, make a bole. Others do adde. ϑ.ij. or ʒ.j. or ʒ.ij. of *Diaprunis laxatiue*, or *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*: as in example following. ℞. *Medulla Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawn, ʒ.vj. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, ʒ.ij. of Sugar roſet tabulate as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, becauſe of the ventoſity which *Caſſia* doth engender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of Aniſe, ϑ.j. or ʒß. which auaileth much. ℞. *Caſſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawne out of a cane or reede, ʒ.iij. or ℥.j. the ſoft matter of fat *Tamarindes*, ʒ.j.ß. of choſen Rewbarbe, ʒ.ß. or ϑ.ij. or ʒ.j. Sugar as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. If the ſicke perſon be

The formes of a bole purging cholar.

poore, in ſtead of Rewbarbe, make a bole with ℥.ß. or ℥.vj of *Caſſia* and ij. of *Diaprunis laxatiuæ*, and with Sugar. ℞. *Catholicon*, ℥.j. or ℥.x. and with white Sugar make a bole: or thus. ℞. *Catholicon*, ℥.ß. or ℥.vj. of *Confectio Hamech*, ℥.j. or ℥.j.ß. and with Sugar make a bole.

The forme of a doſe againſt melancholy.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pils.

PILLES are miniſtred for the auoiding of euery humour: viz. againſt rheume or fleame reigning, and alſo againſt *cholera notha*, which is vile and filthy choler hauing dominion in man. *Pilulæ Aggregatiuæ* after the deſcription of *Meſua*, *de Agarico*, *de Rheubarbaro*; *Stomachicæ*, *de Hiera ſimplici*, *de Hiera compoſita*, which reſpecteth the head; *Cocciæ* or *Cocchiæ*, which are ſo called of *Granis Cocci* and not of the head, as ſome thinke; *Pilulæ aureæ Elephangine*, *Sine quibus*, *de Hermodactylis maior & minor*, *de Serapina*, *de Sarcolla*: Truly the foure kinds of pils laſt recited, are moſt appropriate and agreeing againſt corrupt and ſtinking humours: of the which vertue alſo be *Arthritica maiores & minores* when rheume reigneth, but theſe when choler reigneth in the diſeaſes of the ioynts: then alſo the pils of *Hermodactylis maior* and *minor* are dedicated and miniſtred. Pils that do onely void pure choler, and purge it, there are a thouſand to be found, but many of them haue more reſpect to the auoiding of filthy and baſtardly choler, or that which is greatly mixed with rheume, as *Pilulæ de Rheubarbaro*, *de Hiera ſimplici*, *Aggregatiuæ de Agarico*, *Ante cibum*, *Imperiales*. In a manner the chiefe doſe of Pils is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pils, and with ſome conuenient ſirupe, as ſirupe of Endiue, ſirupe of Maidenhaire, ſirupe of *Stœchados*, or alſo with *Oxymel* or *Hydromel*, or with ſome other licour.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction and digeſtion of humours, or for preparation of them, and ſometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerſe, and for diuerſe intents and purpoſes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moiſt and to make dry, to looſen and open, to reſtraine and bind, too attenuate and make thinne, to make groſſe and thicke, to prouoke menſtruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their roots, fruites, and ſeeds (and other, as it ſhall ſeeme meete and expedient for your purpoſe.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a ſirupe, but in boiling; for ſirupes are wont to be boyled long and to the perfection, but an *Apozema* is boiled eaſily and little. Therefore ſirupes may be long kept, and Apozemes may be kept but a few daies. ℞. of Succory, Endiue, *Cuſcuta* and *Adiantum*, ana. M.ß. of the rootes of Sorrell and of Gramen, ana. ℥.ß. the foure great cold ſeedes made cleane, ana. ℥.j. of the three cordiall flowers, ana. p.j. make a decoction of ℔.ß. In the ſtraining diſſolue ſirupes of Violets, of *Syrupus acetoſus*, or ſirupes of Limons, or alſo white ſugar, ℥.iij. and make an *Apozema*, and clarifie it, and aromatizate it with ℥.j. of Cinamon elect for two doſes, likewiſe *Apozema* may be made againſt

The forme of an Apozeme againſt cholericke humours.

ther humours, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the sirupes. Note that in the confection and making of *Apozema*, for ℥.lj. or at the most for ℥.iij. of the decoctiō, it is sufficient to adde, ℥.j. of Sugar or sirupe. Also there be made Apozemes laxatiue, as there be sirupes laxatiue, adding to laxatiue things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Looke in the title of sirupes for the example, for they be like them (this onely excepted as we said before,) that an *Apozema* after the dissoluing of the Sugar or sirupe in it, ought not to be boiled any longer.

CHAP. XI.

Of making Mulsio.

MVLSIO is made of seedes cleansed, or of fruites, or of both sometime, to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and lungs, and against diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria*, that is, retention and witholding of vrine, and of the strangury, that is, the voyding of humours by causing of vrine to issue out by drops with burning in the yard. ℞. of the 4. great cold seeds new and cleane, ana. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. of sweete Almonds blanched in cold water, ℥ j. beate altogether in a stone mortar with wel water first sodden, and make a decoction of ℔. j. and reserue it & keepe it in a glasen vessell. The aforesaid *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the strangury, if ℥.iiij. or vj. be giuen in the morning 3. or 4. houres before dinner, and 2. or 3. houres before supper, the same quantity of the premisses, or a little lesse, with one Lozenge of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesaid seeds, and Gums, and many other things. But if in the aforesaid cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling, mixe with your *Mulsio* the seedes of Purslaine, of Lettuce, and white Poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde to new Pine apples, sweete Almonds, & fresh Figges that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diairis simplicis*, or *Diairis Solomonis*; let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulsio*, there may conueniently be mixed some quantity of Sugar, or some sirupe apt and meete for the purpose (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt bloud in the vrine of a man:) as thus. ℞. the seed of white Poppie and the foure great cold seedes, of sweete Almonds, ana ℥ ß. stampe all these in a mortar with as much water of the decoction of Liquorice as sufficeth. In the straining dissolue the sirupe of Violets, of Maidenhaire, and of Myrtles, ana. ℥.j. make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the grieued person take it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

The forme of Mulsio.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

A POVVDER is made of seedes, rootes, and minerals, powdred and beaten finely, and Sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes, and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stop and keepe downe vapours which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes,

A powder to help digestion.

as it often chanceth. ℞. the seedes of Annise, and Fennell, ana ʒ. j. the seedes of Citron, Cinamon, Liquorice, and Roses, ana. one scruple, of chosen Pearles and the scraping of Yuorie, ana. ʒ. ß. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stop and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion, as is this that followeth. ℞. Coriander prepared, ʒ. j. ß. the scraping of Yuorie, red Corall, the horne of a Hart burned, ana ϑ. j. of Cinamon ϑ. ß. of Sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder, which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the belly, and for strength, and against the plague coming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feauers, and in great imbecillity and weakenesse of strength. ℞. the scraping of an Vnicornes horne graines 4. 5. or 6. the scraping of Yuory, of chosen Pearles, and of Harts horne, ana. gr. 6. seed of Citron, and *Cardus benedictus*, ana. gran. 4. and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquor, as with white wine, distillation restoratiue, water of Scabious, of Bugloss, or of some other like. And such powders for the most part are ministred about midnight, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue, as is Diasene, and Diaturbith, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times or foure times as much Sugar; and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a Chicken, or of Liquorice or of Ptisan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practitioners.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Electuaries, and Conserues: of Lozenges, and Manus Christi.

AN Electuary is ordained and made two waies, that is, either liquide, as in *Forma Opiatæ*, or whole, as in tables or lozengs; or in fashion foure square and long, which they call *Manus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate and strengthen, & for that cause they be called *Tonica*, as affoording strength to the members, that is to say, they roborate and strengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to strengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they must be administred to a fasting stomack. If the vertue digestiue be weake through coldnesse, minister them after meate. But if any matter arise through moistnesse, then minister one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholesome substance. But if the vertue vitall requireth strengthening, you may minister them very well in a manner at all houres; but if you intend to strengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently minister in the houre of sleepe or about midnight. The formes of Electuaries are in this order as followeth, and first, of a liquide Electuarie which is profitable to strengthen the naturall vertue when the substance of the belly is made feeble by coldnesse & moistnes. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which Galen describeth)

An Electuary strengthening the naturall vertue.

scribeth) ℥.ij. powder of *Electuarij aromatici Diacalaminthi*, ℥.j. of Diatrion piperion, ℈.ij. of *Conserua Anthos*, that is, of flowers of Rosemary, & of Roses, ana. ℥.ß. of Sugar taberzet, ℥.j.ß. of sirupe of Mints as much as sufficeth, make a liquid Electuary in *forma Opiatæ*, and minister it before dinner or breakfast an houre or an houre and halfe, or two houres: the dose is, ℥.ß. or rather ℥.ij. *Electuarium aromaticum rosatum* being ministred fasting, taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being ministred after meate, it strengtheneth the vertue digestiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or fashioned like *Manus Christi*, against hote distemper of the liuer, and against obstructions of the same, as thus. ℞. of the powder of *Tria Sandalorum*, ℥.ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ℥.j. of conserues of Succory and Roses, ana. ℥.j.ß. of Sugar taberzet or white Sugar dissolued in water of Succory, or Endiue, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozẽges of the weight of ℥.ij. or ℥.ij.ß. or ℥.iij. minister one before meate. Many times conserues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euery draghme of powder, to put to ℥.j. of Sugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more strong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for ℥.j. of Sugar. If the stomacke be troubled with the presence of melancholy abounding and flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplyeth it, or by diseases of the spleene, as be stoppings which hinder the receipt thereof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *forma Opiatæ*, with things following, as in example. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium lætificans Galeni*, ℥.iij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*, ℥ j. the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Diamoschi dulcis*, or *Diambræ* may be put in, seeing that they haue the same vertue: of conserues of Bugloss, and Borage, and Violets, ana. ℥.j.ß. the barke of Citron sealoned, ℥ j. of as much white Sugar dissolued in water of Bugloss or Borage, as sufficeth; make an Electuary in Lozenges, or in little gobbets, or like *Manus Christi*, in weight ℥ iij. or ℥ ß. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuary, put to it twise or thrise as much more of the conserues, and some powder of white Sugar, or Sugar rosate, that is to say, ℥ ij as is shewed in the example aforesaid, with some sirupe hauing respect to the melancholicke humour; as is sirupe of Bugloss, or Borage, of Roses, of Harts-tongue, of *Epithymum*, of Fumitory, of which adde to as much as sufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquide forme.

An Electuary against hote distemper of the liuer.

An Electuary against melancholy.

An Electuary for the strong stopping of the liuer or the spleene, wherein there is danger of the Dropsie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, that is, a spice of consumption: such an Electuarie (I say) is made of the powders of the Electuaries, *Diagalangæ*, *Diacucumeris*, *Diacapparis*, *Dialaccæ*, and of conserues; which if you will commixe together, conserues of Succory may conueniently be mixed with them. Note also that Electuaries be made of Trochisks, or of powder of Trochikes, hauing respect to the disease, as in a hote cause take *Trochisci Diarrhodon*, Trochiskes of *Carolus*, Trochiskes of Bolearmoniacke, of *Terra sigillata* (specially if we would restraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabe*, if we would stop the fluxe of bloud. But if we would open or loosen the obstructions of the liuer or spleene, we must bring this to passe with Trochiskes of Rewbarbe, or of *Capparis*. Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggrieued

with cold, may be made of *Electuarium Diambræ*, *Diamusci dulcis*, *Electuarii de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muscatum*, *Aromaticum Rosatum maioris Gabrielis*, *Lætificans Galeni* or *Rasis*, *Electuarium Conciliatoris*, of Alkermes confection and making. Conserues for the same intent be these Conserues of Roses, Bugloſſe, Borage, Anthos, barkes of Citron, Ginger condite, Orenges condite, and other of that sort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and laboureth of heat, take the Electuarie *Rosata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vse them often. These be the conserues that be good, conserues of Roses, of Violets, of Bugloſſe, and of Borage, and also of *Nimphea* or *Nenuphar*, that is, water Lillies. If the cough be present, and if the humour contained in the breast be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will cause it to auoid and come forth, minister *Diatragacanthum frigidum*: if the humour be clammish and thicke, minister *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diairis simplex*, or *Diairis Salomonis*. And if there be suspition of venimous substance, then with the powders of Electuaries cold or hote, which do resist poyson, we do commixe Maces, and Muske, *Zedoaria*, Saffron, Cinamon, and *Xyloaloes* in cold causes. But in hote causes there may conueniently be mixed Pearls, Coral, Christal, Roset and *Camphora*. In causes mingled one with another, either hote or cold, by a certaine property, these do corroborate and strengthen and defend, Pearles, leede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Dictamus*, the bone of the Harts heart one in number, or if you will weigh it, ℈.j. or ʒ.ß. as in this example following against a pestilentiall feauer. ℞. the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargariton frigidum*, ʒ j.ß. or white shining Pearles elect and powdred in a marble mortar, ℈.j. of *Camphora*, gran.ij or else Trochiskes of *Camphora*, ℈.j. or ℈.ß. the rootes of *Dictamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barks of Citron, ana ℈.j. of conserues of Bugloſſe, Borage, *Nimphea*, and Roses, take of these either one, two, or three, or all, to the quãtity of two or three dragmes: of white Sugar dissolued in water of Roses, or of Bugloſſe, or Borage, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquid Electuarie in the forme aforesaid. ℞. the three kinds of Saunders, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana ℈.j. the bone of the Harts heart one in nũber, Sugar Rosate tabulate, of white Sugar dissolued in Rose water as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure gold in weight, ʒ.ß. Also there be made Electuaries laxatiue against all superfluities and diseases, that together with the purging we may also strengthen, as in example, against long diseases coming of rheume, or some clammy humor breeding the cough, ℞. *Cassiæ* that is new, ʒ.ij ß. *Diacarthami*, ʒ.vj. new *Penidios*, and *Diairis simplex*, ana ʒ ß. of conserues of Violets, ʒ.iij. of sweete Annile powdred, and powder of Liquorice, ana ʒ. ß. sirupe of Violets as much as sufficeth: make a liquide Electuarie, in *forma Opiatæ*. The dose is, ʒ.j. or ʒ x. or at the most ʒ.j. ß. the which may be ministred an houre, or an houre and a halfe (swallowing it) or he may take it foure houres before dinner, because it may not conueniently be giuen a little before meat, because of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagridium* in it. Also you may dissolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in Ptisan, or in a common pectoral decoction, and make a potion, and minister it foure or fiue

houres

An Electuary for the vertue vitall.

An Electuary against a pestilent feauer.

An Electuary for the vertue animall, in a hote cause.

An Electuary against diseases of the breast, and against the cough.

houres before meate. And this note, that you muſt appoint the wayes and meanes of the miniſtration of Phyſicke, according as you ſee the nature and condition of the ſicke perſon. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be pleaſant in taſte, the forme and faſhion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthamum*, and *Electuarium de ſucco Roſarum*, after which faſhion you may make other very meete and ſeruing for your purpoſe.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conſerua.

CONDITA be made as Electuaries be made, to ſtrengthen the might, and the primitiue and worthieſt members. They rather haue reſpect to the ſubſtance and matter or breathing, then to the beauty and ſoundneſſe of the fleſh. But foraſmuch as the weakneſſe of ſtrength, cauſeth ſores and diſeaſes to grow in their inſtruments, therefore it is miniſtred to thē that begin to recouer and wax ſtrong. ℞. *Conſeruæ Anthos*, that is, of Roſemary, conſerue of Borage, Bugloſſe, Maidenhaire, and Succory, ana. ℥.ij the Barke of Citron condite, ℥. j.ß. the powder of *Electuarium pliriſarcoticō*, the powder of *Electuarium Ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triaſandali*, ana. ℥. ß. the leaues of gold in number vj. of white Sugar as much as ſufficeth, & make a *Conditum*. Of the ſame powders of Electuaries is made a whole and a hard *Conditum*, as thus. ℞. the powder of *Electuarium Pliriſarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Ducis*, *Diarrhodō Abbatis*, and *Triaſandali*, ana ℈.ij. conſerues of Roſes & Succory, ana. ℥.j. white Sugar diſſolued in Roſe water, as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuary in Lozenges or morſels like vnto *Manus Chriſti*, of the weight of ℥.ij. In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to ſtrengthen all kind of vertues, as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electuaries & conſerues either hote or cold, hauing reſpect to the vertue, according as the owne diſtemper or the cauſe of it deſireth. Now there followeth theſe hote Electuaries hauing reſpect to the vertue vitall: *Electuarium Diambre*, *Diamargariton calidum*, *Diamuſcum amarum*, *Diamuſcum dulce*, *de Gēmis*, *letificans Galeni*. Cold Electuaries, *Electuariū Diamargariton frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which be temperate, *Triaſandali*. Conſerues reſpecting both the diſtempers, that is, hot & cold: as *Conſeruæ roſarū*, *Boraginis*, *Bugloſſæ Violarum*. Cold conſerues, *Conſeruæ Nimphæ*, *Violarum*. Hot *Condita* reſpecting the vertue vitall, as, *Cortex Citri conditus*, which may be miniſtred in both caſes, *Confectio de Cinamomo*, *confectio de Xyloaloe*, *cōfectio Alkermes*, which is cōmon to the Phyſitions: of *Montiſpeſſulari*, Ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, & ſo for other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue annimal be theſe, *Pliriſarcoticō*, *Dianthos*, *Diamuſcum dulce & amarum*, *Mithridatū* and *Triacle*, which be *opiatæ*, that is liquid. Hote conſerues reſpecting the vertue animall be theſe, *conſeruæ Anthos*, *Acori*, *Roſarū*, which is temperate, almoſt all *Opiatæ*, that is, liquid things, as *Mithridatum*, *Triacle*, *& Aurea Alexandrina*. Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be theſe, *Diacalaminthum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Aromaticum roſatum maioris*, (which *Gabriel* deſcribeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which is very temperate, and neceſſary in both cauſes,

A conditum to ſtrengthen all vertue and powers.

Hote Electuaries reſpecting the vertue vitall.

Cold Electuaries.

Condites reſpecting the vertue vitall.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall.

Hote conſerues.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall.

Hote conserues respecting the vertue naturall.

Cold Electuaries.

Cold conserues.

A conditum against the hot distemper of al kindes of veines.

Another for the same distemper.

Diairis Salomonis, or *simplex Dialacca*, and *Diacucurma*, the which are good against oppilations in the liuer, and against the Dropsie. Hote conserues respecting mightily the vertue naturall be these: *Conserua Eringiorum*, *Conserua Satirij*, *Zinziber conditum*, *cortex Citri conditus*, meate of Quinces condite, Peares condite, and such like. Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*. Cold conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum*, *Cichoreæ*, *Nimphea*, &c.

℞. the powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum*, ℥.ij. the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, ana. ℈.iij. conserues of Succory, and Violets, ana. ℥.j.ß. white Sugar dissolued in water of Endiue, or Succory, or Roses, as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in Lozenges, in weight ℥.ij. or ℥.iij. or thus: ℞. conserues of Succory, of Violets, of *Nimphæa*, and of Bugloss, ana, ℥.ij.ß. conserue of Roses, ℥.j.ß. powder of *Tria sandali*, & of *Diamargariton frigidum*, ana. ℈.iiij. the leaues of Gold viij. in number, white Sugar as much as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one siluer spooneful. Many in these condites, where there is suspition of some venimous matter, as in pestilent feauers, or in swounding, they do adde to the seede of Citrõ, the seed *Cardui Benedicti*, the roote of *Dictamus*, and Tormentill: and for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it, (but onely the opinion of the common people:) as for example, in the aforesaid *Conditum* take away some portion of the aforesaid Electuaries, that is to say, the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. ℞. of the seed of *Cardui Benedicti*, of the seede of Citron, of the roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill, ana. ℈.j. or ℥.ß. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and Condites, as in example: to stop the fluxe, take Trochiskes of *Diacoralliti*, *Diarrhodon*, of *Terra sigillata*, of Bolearmoniacke, and of *Carabe*. And to keepe the temperature of the heart, take Trochiskes of *Camphora*, of the which take as much in quantity as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no Sugar put into them.

CHAP. XV.

Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.

PASTA *Regia* is a confection, so called by the Physitions of late time, which is especially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to driue away the causes of leanesse: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being very effectuall against both the causes, that is, the diseases of the breast and the lungs, and against leanesse: as thus. ℞. sweete Almonds blanched, ℥.iij. of new Pines cleansed, and tempered ten houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose, ℥.ß. of *Pistacium*, that is, a kinde of nuttes; let them be new cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesaid waters, ℥.j. *Amylum*, *Diatragacanthum*, and of Gumme Arabicke, ana. ℥.ß. of the meate of Dates, Prunes Damascene, and Sebesten, & Raisins, one or else more of these, to the quantity of one ounce, white Sugar dissolued in Well water, or in Rose water, or in water of *Enula*, as much as sufficeth; make a *Pasta Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer

or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great seeds (the barkes being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.

A LOHOCH or *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomacke by litle and litle. It is good against diseases of the breast and the lungs, (as is) *Dyspneas Apneas*, short and hard breathings, sighings and coughes, whether it cometh by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarrhes, and rheume, which chance oftentimes. ℞. *Electuarii Diairis Salomonis & Diairis simplex*, ana. ℥. vj. Lohoch *de Pino*, ℥ j conserue of *Enula campana*, ℥. ß. *Oxymel Scylliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch & let the sicke vse it with a Liquorice sticke: licking or swallowing a little at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring, then there is of incision and cutting, you must augment and increase the quantity of the scouring receipts, & in stead of *Oxymel Scylliticum* put too Syrupe of Liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassium*, or of Iuiubes, or else of Hysope: many do thinke syrupe of Hysope to be absterstue, only for the saying of *Auicen*, which (*as Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *compositum*, Lohoch *de Pino*, Lohoch *de caulibus*, *sanum* and *expertum*, Lohoch *de Scylla*, these may conueniently be ministred by themselues. But when a feauer is present (as in the pleurisie) then to auoid and bring out from the breast the materiall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is already flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sort and fashion. ℞. of *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi*, ℥ 2. new Penidies, and white pils, ana. ℥. iiij. Syrupe of Violets, or of Iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch & vse it with a Liquorice sticke, swallowing it by little and litle. If the matter be partly flowed, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. ℞. *Electuarium Diairis simplex*, ℥ j. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, ℥ vj. new Penidies. ℥. iij. Syrupe of Iuiubes, or Hysope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowed or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against defluxion or flowing of humours that be hote and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtilty thereof may be made thicke and grosse, and the parts to the which the fluxe cometh being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any document or hurt (as in example.) ℞. *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frgidi*, ℥ j. Bolearmoniacke washed in Rose water, ℥. ij. Trochiskes of *Terra sigillata*, ℥. ij. Syrupe of Poppy as much as sufficeth, and make a Loboch. In stead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantity. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in which is put some *Opium* may be added to them, if there be no cause that *Opium* be suspected to do hurt. These Lohochs be giuen against the Ptisicke in the houre of sleepe; *Electuarium Diapapaueris*, *Lohoch* of Poppy. All the pils of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Catarrhe and rheume, may be mixed and giuen the same houres, and for the same intent.

A Lohoch against rheume cõgealed together, clammish, hard & thick.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.

BALNEVM is a baine, the vse whereof was common and often among old practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall Goute, in the Palsey, and in consuming Feauers. But against the Goute and the Palsey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared, with boiling together in water, herbes, roots, seeds floures, and also many mettals, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But *Semicupium*, which in Latine is called *Insessum*, is a particular bath, which is applied for paines of the Nefresie, for the Cholicke, and for the Iliacke, so that they come not by reason of an impostume. It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distemper of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of *Semicupium*, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the body enlarged, and made soft and plaine, and also to ceasse the paine as thus: ℞. the rootes of *Althea*, ℥.iiij. the leaues of *Malue*, *Bismalue*, and Parietarie, the floures of Cammomill and Melilote, the tops of Dill, ana. M. ij. of Origan, Calamint, Betony. and Sothernwood, ana. M. j. seedes of Flaxe and Fenell ana. ℥.ij. of cleane Branne. p. iiij boile all these in a bag in sufficient water for a *Semicupium*. Note also that one who hath the Nefresie may enter a bath before he hath receiued a clister. If the paine of the Cholicke or the Nefresie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue need of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse, with incision and cutting, make a *Semicupium* thus. ℞. Origan, Calamint, tops of Dill, and of Cammomill, ana. M. iiij. Fenugreeke, Carawayes, Annise and Fennell, ana. ℥.ij. Laurell berries, ℥. ß And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforesaid griefes, you may adde too such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as if there be any need of mollifying & making soft, the leaues of *Malue*, *Bismalue*, Parietary, and Violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessary to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the body, adde too of the roote of Spinach, *Bruscus*, and *Apium*; knit them in a little bagge, and seeth them for a *Semicupium*. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Insessu* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as Mugwort, Sauein, Horehound, *Nux Cupressi*, and Iuniper berries; of all these there may be put in two handfuls.

The forme of Semicupium.

Aliud Semicupium.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Epithema or Fotus.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it, & *Fotus* is a medicine nourishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hote distemper of the liuer, the making whereof is this as ensueth. ℞. the waters of Endiue, Succory, Rosen, & Peniroyal, & Nightshade, ana. ℥.iij. of vineger, ℥ j. the powder of *Electuarii Triasandali*,

Triasandali, ℥.ij. or ℥.j.ß. mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or woollen cloth, or a sponge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and laid against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and a halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbes, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. ℞. Succory both the roote and the herbe, yong set Endiue, Agrimony (which is) Eupatory, ana. M.j. floures of Succory. p.j. the foure great cold seedes, and litle cold seeds, ana. ℥.ß. of Cypresse, ℥.ij of Lupins, ℥.iij. all the Saunders ana. ℥.j. of Squinant. ℥.ß the toppes of Wormewood, M.ß. make a little bagge, and boile it in foure quarts of water, and one of wine, and a litle Vineger, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessell, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesaid: such an Epitheme is very good for diseases depending vpon oppilation or stopping, and misfortune coming by oppilation and stopping, as is a fluxe; and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseates for the most part which come and go by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempers and stoppings of the liuer: moreouer against the beginnings of knobbes and kernelles, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applied mollificatiues, and things that do loosen and vnbinde. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomacke: first to strengthen the stomacke that it receiue not the superfluities coming from other places, and then the Epitheme is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distemper of the stomacke. And thirdly they serue to ceasse the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that griefe: ministring duely to the contrary of the matter, as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomacke may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preserued safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. ℞. red Roses, p.ij. of Arnogloss and Plantaine, ana. M.ß the toppes of Wormewood, M. j. the third part, all the Saunders, ana ℥.ij. red Corall, ℥.iij. put all these in a little bagge, and make a decoction in sufficient quantity of water with a little Vineger, to which may be added a little Rhenish wine, and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Achymum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause; for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomacke, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intents and purposes, may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomacke made of oile, as oile of Roses, Cammomill, Wormewood, Masticke, and Mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent soeuer they be ministred, you must mixe something with them that may preserue and keepe the essence and strength of the member that the Epitheme is laied too, as *Galen* commandeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Fotus* be all one, yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is onely that which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Fotus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes, and rootes. *Epitheme.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of making Sacculus.

SACCVLVS *videlicet* a litle bagge. It is miniſtred for the ſame cauſes that *Fotus* be vſed for. It is made of herbes, flowers, ſeedes, and other ſuch like things; they be layed to either drie, or elſe wet in ſome liquor. The drie be chiefly made of ſeedes and herbes: the wet muſt be firſt preſſed before it be laid to the place. ℞. *Milij vſtulati.* p. iiij. *Orobum* (which ſome thinke to be tares) and of leaue Branne, ana. p. ij. floures of Cammomill, and the tops of Dil, ana. p j. of Comin and Caraway, ana ℥ ij. of Laurell berries, ℥ iij. make thereof two litle bags, and ſew them into two linnen clothes, of a competent bigneſſe, and baſte them throughly. Let them be ſo bigge that they may couer the belly, and let one after another be laied hote to the belly againe and againe.

A dry bagge againſt the windie cholick or Tympanites

A moiſt bagge

Now followeth the forme of a moiſt bagge for the digeſting, mollifiyng, and diſſoluing of raw humours, as thus. ℞. the flowers of Cammomil, p. ij. the tops of Dill, Melilote and Origan, ana. p. j. Fenugreeke and flaxe ſeed, ana. ℥ j. the leaues of *Malue*, *Biſmalue*, & Violets, ana. M. ß. make a litle bag, or make two bags, and boile them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a ſponge, or a felt, or woollen clothes, or two bags; let them be laid to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make and apply bagges, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue & diſcuſſe, and lay them to knobs, kernels and hardneſſe of the fleſh. But if the perſon be ſtrong, take other remollitiues, or diſcuſſiues, euen as you ſhall finde the matter that cauſeth the hardneſſe to require.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

SCVTVM in Engliſh is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are miniſtred to the ſtomacke, and made for the ſame cauſes that oiuments and Epithemes be. They are often made of the dry powder of medicines, to correct ſome diſtemper of the ſtomack, and to adde ſtrength to it. Furthermore they ſerue in ſteed of oiuments or Emplaiſters, when the patients do refuſe and abhorre them for their tediouſneſſe. ℞. Mints, Marioram, and Wormewood dried, ana p. j. or ℥. j. ß. of Cloues, Galingale, and *Xyloales*, ana. ℈ ij. of Comin and redde Corall, ana ℥. j. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a litle cotton, ſewed in betweene two little clothes, with ſtitchings betweene, and bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the ſtomacke. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be paſt an ounce and halfe at the moſt, many times an ounce or ſixe drammes is enough.

A Scutum againſt the cold diſtemper of the ſtomacke, with ventoſity and other ſubſtance.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplaſme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaiſter, &c. *Cataplaſmata* be made of herbes, roots, ſeedes, and meale ſodden in water or milke, with ſome greace or oile added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplaſmata* be made for diuerſe intents, ſometime to ceaſſe paines, ſometime to reſolue and bind, ſometime to make ripe, ſometime to mollifie or make ſoft, ſometime to conſume, and ſometime

to dry vp humors and vapours. In commixed affects and cauſes, diuers intents and purpoſes are mixed together in *Cataplaſma*, as remollitiues with diſcuſſiues, and diſcuſſiues with ſuch things as ceaſſe paine, as the examples following ſhall declare. And firſt of the forme of a Cataplaſme for the cure of *Oedema* (which is a botch of flegmaticke matter, or an impoſtume without griefe) in the which euill it is neceſſary to haue remollition with diſcuſſion, or (as they ſay) reſoluing, looſening and ceaſſing of paine, as thus. ℞. the leaues of *Malue, Biſmalue*, and Violets, ana. M. j. or M. ß. the root of *Altheæ*, the roote of white Lillies, & the roote of Ireos, that is, Floure de luce, ana. ℥ ß. or ℥ j. flowers of Cammomill, Melilot and tops of Dill, ana p. j. ſeed of flaxe, and of Fenugreeke, or rather meale of Flaxe ſeede, meale of Fenugreeke, and meale of Barley, ana ℥ ß. or ℥ j. or you may meaſure it by litle handfuls; Comin, ℥ j. Laurell berries, ℥ ij. Saffron, ℈ j. or ℥ ß of Duckes greace, Gooſe greace, the marrow of Calues ſhankes, freſh butter, oile of Lillies, and oile of Ireos, ana. as much as ſufficeth; make a Cataplaſma. In this plaiſter are contained three intents and purpoſes: that is, mollifying, diſſoluing, and ceaſſing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantity of mollificatiues ought to be moſt, if there be greateſt neede of mollifying, and the quantity of diſſoluers ought to be moſt, if there need to be great diſſoluing, and ſo likewiſe of ceaſſing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as alſo in the beginning of euery abſceſſion or courſe of ill humours, you muſt commixe together with mollificatiues ſome repercuſſiue remedie, wherwith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take moſt remollitiues, & feweſt diſcuſſiues In the beginning of the augmenting & ſtate of the diſeaſe, take of both alike much. In the declination, take and apply onely diſſoluers and looſeners. In the making of this preſent plaiſter, you muſt put into it no ſtipticke thing: but if you do put in any, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humor. But what medicines they be that haue ſtipticke vertue, and which do comfort the member, and alſo which do mollifie, and diſſolue, you muſt ſeeke them in the tables of authors, as *Arnoldus* and *Sauanarola*, & ſuch like. Alſo there be plaiſters made without oile or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread ſteeped in cowes milke, and a little ſodden together with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a litle Saffron, as ten or twelue chiues. And this Cataplaſme we often vſe for the cure of the Goute.

CHAP. XXII.

Of making Emplaſtrum.

EMplaiſters are ordained and made for diuerſe purpoſes, and the making of them is common as well to Phyſitions as Chyrurgians. They are made of gummes, oiles, greace, and dry medicines, commixed with ſome ſufficient quantity of Waxe, or without Waxe, if that the materials can thicken, and gather together of themſelues. Emplaiſters are applied to all parts of the body, but chiefly to the ſtomacke, for the ſame cauſe that ointments, Cataplaſmes and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaiſter for the ſtomacke when it is afflicted with a cold diſtemper, by reaſon of the flowing of ſome cold ſubſtance, as thus, ℞. *Cerati ſtomachi confortatiui Galeni*, ℥ ij. of

Galingale, Cloues, and red Coral, ana. ℥. ß. of waxe dissolued, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of Masticke or of Wormewood as much as sufficeth. Then mixe them & make a plaister spread vpon leather like a buckler, with a double linnen cloth, wel stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaid intents, in this manner. ℞. pure *Ladanum*, ℥. vj. Masticke, ℥. ij. Frankinsence, ℥. j. Coriander prepared, red Corall, drie Mints, and Galingale, ana ℈. ij *Xylo* Aloes, and Maces, ana ℥. j. Turpentine, ℥. ij. waxe dissolued with oile of Spikenard, or Wormewood, or Masticke, or Roses, or of two or three of these, as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bands, and lay it to the stomacke as is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolue the Gummes with wine & oile, afterward let him commixe the rest without the vse of any fire. *Ceratum stomachi confortatiũ Galeni*, is made of Roses, Wormewood, Masticke, Spikenard, waxe and oile of Roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as of Mirtles, Coriander, Coral, Masticke which is temperate, *Psidia*, *Balaustia*: also oiles of Roses, Mirtles, Quinces, & of Masticke. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the allaying of euery distemper of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following.

A plaister for the hot distemper of the liuer

℞. *Ceratum sandalinum*, ℥. ij. meate of Quinces, ℥. j. of Masticke, ℥ ß. of Corall, ℥. j. of wax dissolued with oile of Roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lupe, and spread it vpon leather, like the Moone when she is beginning to increase, with a double linnen cloth, and with bands, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to ceasse paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resolue them, as in example. ℞. *Muscilaginis* of the seede of *Althæa*, Fenugreeke, & seede of Flaxe, ana. ℥. iij. Barley meale, ℥. iiij. oile of white Lillies and the fatnesse of a henne, ana. ℥. ij. ß. Butter, ℥. j. Saffron, ℈ j. the white of egges in number ij. boyle the *Muscilagines* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and cold matter, and it ceasseth their paine in what part soeuer of the body they be resident. If you will appropriate this Emplaister to all kinde of cold Apostemes, then adde to it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, *Storax liquida*, ana. ℥. j. and it will worke a maruellous and profitable effect.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making Vnguenta.

VNGVENTA, in Englisn oyntments: and those which appertaine vnto Physitions, are made to lenifie and asswage paine, to represent, shew, and assigne alteration and changing, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene, and in the stomacke. The vertue of oyntments for other purposes and for other members, belongeth to surgery, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomacke caused of colder by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner. ℞. oiles of Masticke, Spike and Wormwood, ana. ℥. ß. Cloues, *Xylo* Aloes, Maces, & Calamus ar-

An oyntment for the stomach.

myrobalens, ana. ℈.j. *gallia muſchata*, ʒ. j. or ʒ j. ß. if he be rich, because of the dearenesse thereof, or new Waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomacke, and a *Scutum* with cotton, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the stomack after the annointing. But to ceasse the paine in the stomacke coming of a hote cause; as of flowing of choler, which often chanceth in feuers, vse this ointment. ℞. oile of Roses, ʒ.j. oile of Mirtles, or elsse of Quinces, ʒ ß. white Saunders & red, ana. ℈.ij or ʒ ß. new waxe washed in Endiue water, or in Rose water as much as sufficeth, & make an ointment for the stomacke. Also make a *Scutum* of cotton, and apply it to the stomake after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantity of ʒ. j. It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbs in a hote cause, or in hote iuyces in a cold cause of disease. Moreouer note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment nor cerate applyed to the stomacke without Galingale, neither to the heart without Mace or Saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or Saunders, or Wormewood, or other such like things, thinking verily the nature of the member to be preserued with restrainers, but yet not alwayes in the forenamed medicines. For that law & methode is to be kept in all causes of contrariety, which should be broken in medicines, if Galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because Galingale is hote. For truly the nature of the stomacke is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperate in heat, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knobs of the liuer or spleene, wherewith those two members are most in danger, in this forme. ℞. the roots of *Althæa*, and the rootes of white Lillies, ana. ʒ. j. leaues of *Malue*, *Bismalue*, and Violets. ana. M. j. of the flowers of Cammomill, Melilot, and the tops of Dill, ana. M. ß. meale of Fenugreeke, of flaxe seed, ana ʒ. j gum *Ammoniaci*, called *Serapni*, ʒ. j, *Bdellium* that is soft and whitish, ʒ. ß. Turpentine, ʒ. iij. Gum of pines trees, ʒ ß *Storax liquida* ʒ. ij or ʒ. iij. the marrow of Calues or Harts shankes, if you can get it, Hennes greace, and Duckes greace, oiles of sweete Almonds, and of Ireos, ana. ʒ. j. ß. or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolue the Gummes with wine and a little vineger, and to the aforesaid oiles, adde to new waxe as much as sufficeth; then afterward take the said greaces and powders, or meales, or herbes, first sodden and brayed, and mixe them all together, and make an ointment. In this said oyntment there be more things that do mollifie then there be that dissolue, because the matter of scirrhous knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liuer, you may adde to it of the branches of Wormewood, of Roses, of Squinance, or of Spikenard to preserue the strength & nature of the member. If you will minister it to the Spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of Capers, or such like: if you minister to the hardnesse of the stomacke, adde to Wormewood, red Roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, Mints & Galingale.

Aliud.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquide, which hath in it little waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to ceasse paine (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. ℞. oile of Cammomill, and Capons greace, ana. ℥.ß. fresh new Butter without salt, ℥.ij. a little waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE, or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to ceasse paine in the forepart of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to ceasse paine in the head caused of a hote distemper, as it oftentimes chanceth in feauers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red Roses steeped and soked in vineger, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion. ℞. red Roses, p. j. ß. flowers of water Lillies and Violets, ana. p. j. Betony, and Melilote, ana. p. ß. put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two course linnen clothes if he be poore: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead and the tempels: if you wil prouoke sleepe, adde to the aforesaid *Frontale* the leaues of Lettuce, or new white Poppy, or of *Mandragoras* in the places & times that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these cold things. At all times you may put in the seeds of white Poppy, or the barkes of the heads of white Poppy, or Lettuce seeds, or Henbane seede, as in example. ℞. flowers of water Lillies, Violets, & Melilot, ana. p. j flowers of Lettuce, or white Poppy, ana. the 3. part of M. j. or of each of them. M. j. ß. seed of white Poppy ℥. ij. Lettuce seed, Dil seed, and white Henbane seede, ana. ℥. ß. bray al together and make a *Frontale* betweene the course or fine linnen clothes well sewed & basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* Melilot and Dil seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hurt with cold things. In the disease called *Cephalalgia* coming of a cold cause make *Frontalia* of hote herbes & flowers, as Sage, Rosemary, Cammomil, Betony, Briony, Melilote & such like. *Frontalia*, before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some licour powred vpon them, or to be aired with some vapour; as in exmple. ℞. the waters of Roses, Betony, and Balme, ana ℥. j. of vineger ℥.ß. commixe them, and of the aforesaid waters, powre a little portion vpon a burning tyle, or some such like thing, & hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the steame & smoake of the said waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments serving for the same vse and purpose that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *Vnguentum Populeon*, *Rubea trochiscata* dissolued in water, is very meete for this purpose, & yet is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physitions in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mithridatium* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, & such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12. *libro Therapeutices*) you may conueniently annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of Roses and fiue times so much vineger, as in example. ℞. oyle of Roses, ℥. j. vineger, ℥. ij. commixe them,

them, ſtirring them in a plate: or elſe thus in hotter cauſes, when as without foreſight the Frenſie will breed, then we commixe cold things as thus. ℞. oyle of Roſes, ℥ j. oyle of Nenuphar, ℥. ß. oyle of Poppy, ℥ iij. iuyce of *Solatrum*, or Lettuce, or white Poppy, water of Roſes and vineger, ana. halfe an ounce; commixe them together, ſtirring them very long in ſome peece of plate: and annoint the forepart of the head therewith, yea all the head if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CVCVFA is more for the cure of the euill called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine of the head coming of cold; and many times alſo to ſtop rheume, as in example: ℞. *Sampſucus*, that is, Marioram, Roſemary, Stæchados both of Araby, and yellow, ana. p. j. of red Roſes, p. j. drie Citron barkes, graines of Alkermes, ana. ℥. iij. Maces, long Pepper, Quibibes and Cloues, ana. ℥. ß. Make a powder, & make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a litle cotton baſted betweene, or with flaxe, or ſcarlet ſcraped, and giue it according to the meaſure. And if the paine lyeth moſt in the forepart of the head, put moſt of the powders or ſpices in that place: likewiſe if it be in the hinder part, do ſo alſo, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commixe them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we prouide but for one part of the head. If we will ſtoppe rheumes, then we mixe with it ſtipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of ſtipticke things, either cold or hote as the cauſe requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *milium* burned, or not burned, Mirtles, Cypreſſe nuts & *Sandaracha* (commonly called vernice) viz. yellow Oker, the barke of Frankinſence, and ſuch other like ſtipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of making Suffitus.

SVffitus (in Engliſh a perfuming) is made of drie things, to ſtop diſtillations which fall from the braine into the lower parts, and it is made of reſtraining medicines, as thus for example. ℞. red Roſes, p. j. Maſticke, ℥. ß. vernice, that is, yellow Oker, ℥ j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head; or thus: ℞ *milium*, p. j. red Roſes, p. ß. of vernice and *Olibanum*, ana. ℥. ß. commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the diſtillation falleth to the lungs, and thereof cometh ſpittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, becauſe it ſhorteneth the breath, and letteth the ſpitting, and maketh the humours groſſe and thicke: but you muſt perfume the couering of the head, or elſe perfume ſome wooll, and apply it to the head.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of making Collyrium.

COllyrium is a medicine that is miniſtred in a liquide forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore becauſe there be diuerſe euils in the eyes, the Collyries are made of diuers faſhions; for you muſt vſe one kind in the beginning of *Opthalmia*, and another in the ſtate of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is alſo commonly vſed in the inflammations of other members. Therefore in

in the beginning you muſt make it of cold and ſtipticke repercuſſiue things, as whites of egges, the ſappe of Quince ſeed, and *Pſyllium*, and other things of like vertue: miniſter them alone, or elſe let them be firſt diſſolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applied, as in this example following. ℞. the white of one egge, and ſtirre it with Roſewater, or Plantaine water, or with water of Balme, or with all theſe waters, make a Collyrie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus ℞. the ſappe of Quince ſeed drawne out with Plantaine water, or Roſewater, ℥.j. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and ſtirre it a long time with a ſpatter, and make a *Collyrium*. But if there be no paine nor redneſſe in the eyes, but a certaine vncleanneſſe which ought to be dried vp, thē it is good to make Collyries of Tutty prepared, and of Aloes waſhed, and of *lapis Calaminaris*, and other ſuch like things, which ought to be taken with ſome conuenient liquor, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for ſo they drie vp and wipe away the filthineſſe the cleaner.

A Collyrium in the beginning of Ophthalmia.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of making Naſale or Errhinum.

NAsale & *Errhinum* be medicines which be caſt into the noſe for many cauſes and intents, as to ſtop bleeding at the noſe, to prouoke ſneeſings, to cauſe child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which muſt be ſnuffed or blowne vp into the noſe, or it may be made liquid, and then you muſt annoint the noſtrils within: or you may make it whole, and hard, and then it muſt be put vp into the noſe. ℞. the haires that be in a Hares belly. p.ſ. the ſaw duſt, or moſineſſe of Willow, p.ſ. Bolearmoniack, & *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. ℥.j cut the haires very ſmall, and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the noſe, or diſſolue them all with ſome ſtipticke water, or with the iuyce of ſome hearbe, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them alſo (if you pleaſe) *Balauſtia*, or the rinds of Pomegranates, or *Acatia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath make a *Naſale*, and dip it in the aforeſaid medicines, and put it into the noſe. Sneeſings are prouoked by drie powders, ſnuffed or blowne into the noſe, which be ſharpe and biting, as be theſe, Pepper, Pellitory, Stauefacre, and roote of flowre de luce powdred. You may commixe the ſaid things with ſome liquor: annoint the noſtrils, or take cloth of ſilke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforeſaid liquor, annd put it into one noſtrill, or into both.

A Naſale to ſtanch bleeding at the noſe.

A Naſale to prouoke ſneeſing.

CHAP. XXX.

Of making Apophlegmatiſmus.

APophlegmatismvs is a medicine which cauſeth one to vomit vp fleame: it prouoketh rheume out of the braine into the mouth, and is good to purge the braine. Maſticke is commonly vſed in this caſe, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth rheume and fleame. Alſo Sage leaues holden in the mouth do likewiſe purge rheume by the mouth. Alſo make *Noduli* of Pellitorie, Pepper, Stauefacre roote, of Iren, and

and Panax, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore make gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roote of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heate and tartnesse, do draw fleame and rheumes into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making distillations restoratiue.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kind, that is to say, they are partly foode and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purposes: for some be made to restraine, as in the flixe of the belly; some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for feauers to refrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some do resist poyson and malignant humours, as in pestilent feauers. And they are made after this manner. ℞. conserues of Succory, of Roses, of *Symphytũ*, that is, Comfery, of *Cornelus*, of *Mirta*, & of quinces, ana. ℥.ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, & *Tria Santali*, ana. ℥.ij. Trochiskes of *Carabe*, of Barberies, and *Terra sigillata*, ana. ℥.ß. of red Corall, & *Lapis hæmatitis*, ana. ℥.j. water of the decoction of one Capon or of two, altered with Plantaine, Knotgrasse Moleine, Lettuce seed of Barberies, *Sumach*, & *Omphacium* ℔.viij. put all together in a Limbecke with the flesh of two Chickens, or two Partriches, or of two turtle Doues, or of one Capon, or of more of these, and with the crums of one white loafe, or of two wet in Rosewater, and make a distillation in *Balneo Mariæ* with a soft fire. ℞. of the aforesaid distillatiõ. ℔.ß. iuyce of Pomgranats ℥j. or ℥.j.ß. Sugar rolet, ℥.ij. Cinamon elect, ℥.j. straine them (as *Hippocrates* teacheth) through a sleeue, and let the sicke vse it euery houre. *A distillation restoratiue restraining.*

But if you will make a distillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwaies obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as doe coole, as conserues of water Lillies, of Violets, of Roses, Succory and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*: also alter the decoction of the flesh with Lettuce, Sorrell, Purslaine, Scarioll, and such like. Moreouer you shall make a distillation restoratiue against malignant and pestilent feauers in this sort, ℞. conserues of Violets, water Lillies, Balme, Borage, & Bugloss, ana. ℥.ij. barke of citron condite, ℥ j. roote of *Dictamni* & Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of Gentian, ana. ℥ ß. powder of *Electuarium Diamargaritõ frigidum*, all the Saunders, Bolearmoniacke, Trochisks of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes, ana ℥ij. scrapings of yuory, and Harts horne, Maces, Cinamon, Cloues, and seed of *Cardui Benedicti*, ana. ℥. j. of old triacle, ℥.iij. the water of the decoction of two Chickens, or of Capons altered with Sorrell, Scabious, Lettuce, Borage, Bugloss, quar. iij. put altogether in a glasen Limbecke, with the flesh of some things, and with the crummes of two white loaues infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lent & soft fire, in conuenient order as is requisite. Another, or thus. ℞. of the aforesaid distillation ℔ ß. *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*, ℥ ij. commixe them together, and let the sicke vse it euery houre. *A distillation restoratiue cooling, against malignant & pestilent feauers.*

Another.

The end of the seuenth Booke.

THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

The Preface.

WE haue found by experience, that noble men in times past which haue become famous in the practise and exercise of Phisicke and Chirurgerie, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vp for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard malady both to increase and preserue the worthinesse and renownednesse of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them prouided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets; yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or intreaty, or for mony, or through change, or other manifold meanes, they haue bene made knowne and published. Whereupon others the rather minding the publike vtility of men, thought good to gather together the dispersed compositions of medicines then euery where knowne, and endeuoured thēselues to transfer out of the most famous authors, the best & most receipts into their books of Physicke. And by these meanes truely did Scribonius Largus, Actuarius, Nicolaus Myrepsus, and Nicolaus Præpositus, make their workes. By this industry it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse authors many receipts not much vnlike, were taken tending to one end, as sirupes of like effect and many medicines of Aloe, nor fewer of Scammony or Colocynthide, or Turpetho, all which differ onely in way of compositiō, or for the variety of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries also there be many, whose chiefest force is of Ærugo, & which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out the best, & the other vnprofitable and vnnecessary omitted. But euen in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases

remedy

remaine void of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inuented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery where medicines (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible griefe ioyned to the sickneſſe, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kindes of remedies according to the diuersitie of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no vse, neither pleasant or vnsauory; but receiueth and alloweth for the most part such receipts, as haue bene vsed of vnlearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue peruerted and depraued, euery man according to his iudgemẽt, so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Physicke (as it is not ratified and established (which is most necessary for the cure of diseases: and whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endeuour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to Art, as the simples haue bene in the bookes before. And whatsoeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were either redounding or wanting, necessary to take away the diseases affection, incident thereto, and cause thereof. Therefore I do not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best onely: and oftentimes I put too new, to fill my work with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vnder those, make a confused heape: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and doses euery where: for as much as certaine in many things were to be changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasant for the cure of the malady. And at length, to do the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in another the Electuaries, in another the potions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may be easily taken againe, and applied to the practise and vse of curing.

OF SYRVPES.

Syrupus acidus simplex.

Syrupus acidus simplex: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hote as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withhold or restraine the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and asswage the burning of agues and thirst, setteth at liberty, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all parts, and also after a purgation it moueth sweate and vrine. ℞. *Aquæ purissimæ*, ℔.iiij. *Sacchari albi*, ℔.v. Boyle them so long as they cast vp a some or skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi*, ℔.iij. Boile thē then againe to the thickenesse of a sirupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guiliel. Plantij.

THe barbarous titles and names do apparently argue, that sirupes and Iuleps, and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Gratians had of the same matter, and for the same vse, their *Apozemata* (that is, decoctions, of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were fitly applied, as well to prepare the body as humours to purging, were of them termed *Propotismata*, as if you would say, potions before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicines. So *Galen* in *Mulso*, that is, wine and hony sodden together, and *Oxymelite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, Hysope, Penitroyall, and Calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius Musa*, and many other ancient Physitions did make such like sweete potions for sicke folke, of the iuyce of Cicory, Dill, Flowerdeluce, and Celidony, and such like herbes, tempered together with wine and hony by decoction for diuerse diseases of the liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the roots, leaues, & tops of plants, and did straine the Liquor boiled, and thē ministred it either alone or else sweetned with *Mulso* or hony, or that they might be kept, did decoct it to the thickenesse of hony. So that these three, *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasant to the taste. For in *Apozemate*, because that vpon occasion suddenly and out of hand, for the most part, it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweetnesse, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of Sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of Sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuyce. But the sirups, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction, and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very little lesse Sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuyce. But because the Iulep is more thinne, penetrating, and pleasant then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixt part of Sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then the two parts of the

Sugar

Sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuyce of plants, and fruites, Sugar and hony be mingled, not onely for their preseruation, or for their sweetnesse and pleasantnesse in taste and sauour, but also for the proper force of hony and Sugar, which they impart vnto these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vsed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both wayes the potions to which these shall be mingled, do quicken and stirre vp the naturall strength astonied, or dulled, and languishing in sicknesse, and do comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diseases; and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimie, and making a riddance of obstruction, they cause easie purgations. And these faculties come to the decoctions or potions by reason of the Sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of themselues do much auaile to diuerse vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing each of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doth require, and the method of curing doth prescribe. For seeing the simple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of ministring medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be propounded and vsed before another, he beginneth first with those that are more simple medicines, & of such as by direct order of curing are vsed before others; minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with *Sirupus acidus simplex*, the sharpe simple sirupe. For in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and Iuleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries: and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called Conserues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well seasoned iuyces, called of the Græcians χυλισματα, be more simple then sirupes, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before; yet because for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the parts, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the method of curing so requiring. Now sirupes were inuented to haue in a redinesse so oft as occasion chanceth, because that herbes, and other rootes, and fruites be not alwaies ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessity so vrgeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata* and Iuleps. In the first place the composition of sirupes is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging; then after, such as be meete to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preserue their strength. And this generally of sirupes. Particularly the sharp simple sirupe was not to be made onely of vineger and Sugar, as other sharp syrupes be, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpenesse of vineger. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vineger, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heede likewise must be taken that no more quantity of vineger be put in: for this measure was thought meete and equall. But if any suspect the sharpenesse of the vineger, lest through his piercing cold, bodies of tender constitution, as of children, and specially of women, their wombe should be harmed, (for according to *Hippocrates*, vineger is noisome

to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of [illegible] led water, or some meete decoction, make the sirupe more dilaied, or in stead of that vse *Oxysaccharum*, a sirupe of vineger and Sugar.

The sharpe compound sirupe is not here described, lest I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse; for by putting too a portion of sirupes to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was the purpose of the author, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kind of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedie. But to take together a vaine and friuolous heape of medicines from all places, after the fashion of those which do fill papers vnconsiderately, with vnknowne and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too great a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo Limonum.

THe sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, doth lesse extenuate & pierce then the sharpe sirupe, and yet the vehemency of choler and heate of the bodie and thirst it more asswageth, and doth more restraine the corruption of hote seauers, and the maladie of pestilent Agues; it defendeth likewise the streogth of the mouth of the stomacke, and heart, and principall parts, it expelleth loathsomnesse, vomiting, defection of the mind, and swounding for feeblenesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. ℞. *succi Limonum* purified, and going through a woollen streiner without compulsion freely ℔ vij, *Sacchari albi* ℔ v. Boyle these with a soft fire into a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupe of Limons, *de Acetositate Citri* or of the sharpnesse of Citrons, of tart Pomgranats, *de Aurancijs*, or of Oranges, of vnripe grapes, of the iuyce of Sorrel, of the iuyce of Barberies, and of *Ribes*, and all other tart or sharpe sirupes, be made of iuyces, which either by setling or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuyces is added like quantity of Sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water: because the sharpe tartnesse of the sirupe is nothing noisome, but pleasant and comfortable to the heart: and it should be dilaied likewise with lesse Sugar (as in Iuleps) if the iuyces could be long preserued. There be some which purifie the iuyces by setting, or by setling them in the heate of the Sun, and fining them with the forming whites of egges, or else onely by wringing them out lightly, as in wine coming of the grapes, before they be pressed, called in Latin *vinum protopum*: and then with fined Sugar, that is boiled with the like quantity of water, and after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by litle and litle the one with the other, they stirre them with a spatter vntill they come together, and become as one, or they boile it a litle with Sugar throughly and well sod, or else with the best Sugar, such as the *Maderanum* is, they boile it so long, vntill the Sugar be melted & dissolued altogether. And hereof the sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple sirupe, and the rosat Iulep become very white. As for the simple sirupe of Pomgranats, Barberies, of *Ribes*, of red vineger, to keepe the finenes of their naturall colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestle. And this order of composition in the iuyces, chiefly of tart fruits, taketh place: for other iuyces of herbes,

of

of roots,&c. require more preparatiō to the making of a ſirupe; for they muſt be boiled twiſe, once by themſelues almoſt to the conſumption of the 3. part: after, when they haue bene purified with ſtreining and ſetling, they muſt be concocted with the beſt Sugar to a ſirupe, otherwiſe they do ſoone corrupt, and become hoary and mouldy.

The ſirupes that follow made of ſharpe iuyces, are in force like to the former, as the ſirupe of the tart iuyce of Citrons, the ſirupe of ſharpe Pomegranates, the ſirupe *de Aurantijs*, the ſirupe of *Omphacio*, that is, vnripe grapes, the ſirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell. But peculiarly the ſirupe of ſharpe Citrons doth quench the heate of an Ague, and reſtraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The ſirupe of Pomegranates doth corroborate the ſtomack, and the chiefe entrailes of a man, as the ſpleene, the liuer, the lungs &c. it reſtraineth vomiting, & mitigateth ſwounding. The ſirupe *de Aurantijs* doth more comfort the heart, & is more pleaſant. The ſirupe *de Omphacio* doth more quench thirſt. The ſirupe of the iuyce of Sorrel doth allay choler, and open obſtructiō. The ſirupe of *Ribes* is more ſweet in taſte, and more aſtringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for in the iuyce of euery one of them purged, a litle leſſe Sugar muſt be diſſolued, and theſe two put in a tinne veſſell, muſt be ſet on the fire, and boiled by litle and litle to a ſirupe.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good againſt a diuerſe mixture of humours, and vnſtable agues ariſing thereof. ℞. *Succi Mali punici acidi*, that is, ſowre Pomegranates, ℥. viij. *Aceti*, ℥. iiij. *Sacchari albi & puri* ℔.j. Boyle them to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Oxyſaccharum hath the ſame vertue that the ſowre ſirupe hath, but not in like force, ſauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vſe thereof is more ſafe in diſeaſes chancing in Sommer, and tender bodies, then of the ſharpe ſirupe. Leſt ſo great variety of ſirupes ſhould be retained in vaine, I omit *Oxyſaccharum compoſitum*, *Oximeli compoſitum*, and *Oximeli ſcyllitijcum*, that is, made of *Scylle*; for when they are thought good to be vſed, the Phyſitions may make and preſcribe them ſpeedily and fitly, *Oxyſacchari*, ℥.j. *Sirupi maioris è radicibus*, ℥.ij. *vel ſirupi Adianti*, ℥.j.ß.

Oximel ſimplex.

Oximel ſimplex, doth extenuate groſſe humours, and doth ſcoure out ſlimy matter, doth open old obſtructions, doth expell from the cheſt thicke matter, and is good againſt *Aſthma*, that is, obſtructions of the lungs with fleame, whereof ariſeth ſhorteneſſe of wind, and rebellious agues. ℞ *Aquæ puriſſimæ, mellis optimi*, ana. ℔. iiij. Boyle them vntill with the exhaling halfe the water be conſumed, and then poure in of *Aceti acerrimi*, that is, very ſharp vineger, ℔.ij. and let them be boyled againe by euaporation to a meete conſiſtence. That which is made more liquid, hath *aquæ puriſſimæ*, ℔.j. *mellis optimi*, ℥.iiij. *aceti*, ℥.j.ß. Let theſe be boiled by ſometing out eaſily their corruptiō

to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweete or dist-
led water, or some meete decoction, make the sirupe more dilaied, or in stead
of that vse *Oxysaccharum*, a sirupe of vineger and Sugar.

The sharpe compound sirupe is not here described, lest I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse; for by putting too a portion of sirupes to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was the purpose of the author, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kind of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedie. But to take together a vaine and friuolous heape of medicines from all places, after the fashion of those which do fill papers vnconsiderately, with vnknowne and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too great a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo Limonum.

THe sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, doth lesse extenuate & pierce then the sharpe sirupe, and yet the vehemency of choler and heate of the bodie and thirst it more asswageth, and doth more restraine the corruption of hote feauers, and the maladie of pestilent Agues; it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomacke, and heart, and principall parts, it expelleth loathsomnesse, vomiting, defection of the mind, and swounding for feebleneesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. ℞. *succi Limonum* purified, and going through a woollen streiner without compulsion freely. ℔ vij. *Sacchari albi* ℔.v. Boyle these with a soft fire into a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupe of Limons, *de Acetositate Citri* or of the sharpnesse of Citrons, of tart Pomgranats, *de Aurancijs*, or of Oranges, of vnripe grapes, of the iuyce of Sorrel, of the iuyce of Barberies, and of *Ribes*, and all other tart or sharpe sirupes, be made of iuyces, which either by setling or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuyces is added like quantity of Sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water: because the sharpe tartnesse of the sirupe is nothing noisome, but pleasant and comfortable to the heart: and it should be dilaied likewise with lesse Sugar (as in Iuleps) if the iuyces could be long preserued. There be some which purifie the iuyces by setting, or by setling them in the heate of the Sun, and fining them with the forming whites of egges, or else onely by wringing them out lightly, as in wine coming of the grapes, before they be pressed, called in Latin *vinum protopum*: and then with fined Sugar, that is boiled with the like quantity of water, and after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by litle and litle the one with the other, they stirre them with a spatter vntill they come together, and become as one, or they boile it a litle with Sugar throughly and well sod, or else with the best Sugar, such as the *Maderanum* is, they boile it so long, vntill the Sugar be melted & dissolued altogether. And hereof the sirupe of the iuyce of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple sirupe, and the rosat Iulep become very white. As for the simple sirupe of Pomgranats, Barberies, of *Ribes*, of red vineger, to keepe the finenes of their naturall colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestle. And this order of composition in the iuyces, chiefly of tart fruits, taketh place: for other iuyces of herbes,

of

of roots,&c. require more preparatiō to the making of a ſirupe; for they muſt be boiled twiſe, once by themſelues almoſt to the conſumption of the 3. part: after, when they haue bene purified with ſtreining and ſetling, they muſt be concocted with the beſt Sugar to a ſirupe, otherwiſe they do ſoone corrupt, and become hoary and mouldy.

The ſirupes that follow made of ſharpe iuyces, are in force like to the former, as the ſirupe of the tart iuyce of Citrons, the ſirupe of ſharpe Pomegranates, the ſirupe *de Auraniçijs*, the ſirupe of *Omphacio*, that is, vnripe grapes, the ſirupe of the iuyce of Sorrell. But peculiarly the ſirupe of ſharpe Citrons doth quench the heate of an Ague, and reſtraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The ſirupe of Pomegranates doth corroborate the ſtomack, and the chiefe entrailes of a man, as the ſpleene, the liuer, the lungs &c. it reſtraineth vomiting, & mitigateth ſwounding. The ſirupe *de Auranciijs* doth more comfort the heart, & is more pleaſant. The ſirupe *de Omphacio* doth more quench thirſt. The ſirupe of the iuyce of Sorrel doth allay choler, and open obſtructiō. The ſirupe of *Ribes* is more ſweet in taſte, and more aſtringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for in the iuyce of euery one of them purged, a litle leſſe Sugar muſt be diſſolued, and theſe two put in a tinne veſſell, muſt be ſet on the fire, and boiled by litle and litle to a ſirupe.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good againſt a diuerſe mixture of humours, and vnſtable agues ariſing thereof. ℞. *Succi Mali punici acidi*, that is, ſowre Pomegranates, ℥. viij. *Aceti*, ℥. iiij. *Sacchari albi & puri* ℔. j. Boyle them to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Oxyſaccharum hath the ſame vertue that the ſowre ſirupe hath, but not in like force, ſauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vſe thereof is more ſafe in diſeaſes chancing in Sommer, and tender bodies, then of the ſharpe ſirupe. Leſt ſo great variety of ſirupes ſhould be retained in vaine, I omit *Oxyſaccharum compoſitum*, *Oximeli compoſitum*, and *Oximeli ſcillitiçum*, that is, made of *Scylla*; for when they are thought good to be vſed, the Phyſitions may make and preſcribe them ſpeedily and fitly, *Oxyſacchari*, ℥. j. *Sirupi maioris è radicibus*, ℥. ij. *vel ſirupi Adianti*, ℥ j. ß.

Oximel ſimplex.

Oximel ſimplex, doth extenuate groſſe humours, and doth ſcoure out ſlimy matter, doth open old obſtructions, doth expell from the cheſt thicke matter, and is good againſt *Aſthma*, that is, obſtructions of the lungs with fleame, whereof ariſeth ſhorteneſſe of wind, and rebellious agues. ℞ *aquæ puriſſimæ, mellis optimi*, ana. ℔. iiij. Boyle them vntill with the exhaling halfe the water be conſumed, and then poure in of *Aceti acerrimi*, that is, very ſharp vineger, ℔. ij. and let them be boyled againe by euaporation to a meete conſiſtence. That which is made more liquid, hath *aquæ puriſſimæ*, ℔. j. *mellis optimi*, ℥. iiij. *aceti*, ℥ j. ß. Let theſe be boiled by ſometing out eaſily their corruptiō

Oxymel Scylliticum.

OXymel *Scylliticum*, doth more forcibly attenuate groſſe matter, & is good for al things we haue ſpoken of; and it is made of Vineger of *Scylla*, which is put to hony boyled and clarified by ſoming, and ſod as the other, both become cõpound by putting too double portiõ of the ſirupe *è radicibus Maiorũ*.

PLANTIVS.

Aceti mulſi. We haue leſſe vſe of *Oxymel*, that is, ſweete vineger then the ancient Phyſitions had, who then had not inuented the ſharpe ſirupe, which (the power of cleanſing onely excepted, wherein hony excelleth Sugar) hath other vertues not much inferiour to *Oxymel*, and beſides other effects, is very good againſt agues. But ſweete vineger which euery where is in vſe in Apothecaries ſhops, is very vnſauory, whether it be full of the too much groſſeneſſe coming of ouerſeething thereof, or of the too much ſharpeneſſe which is not ſo much qualified and dulled with the mixture of our hony as of Sugar. For although you delay and diſſolue that thicke *Oxymel* with ſweete water, or ſome ſet decoction, yet you ſhall neuer make it ſo pleaſant to drinke as the ſoure ſirupe. That which is made by many, more thinne for preſent occaſion, and is called *Galẽs oxymel.* *Oxymel Galeni*, is more piercing into euery part, and more pleaſant. For whereas for the little boyling it doth not thicken, but the thickneſſe of the water is therein retained, which the thickneſſe of the vineger doth further, and all the filthineſſe of the hony partly by skumming, partly by claryfying is take away: therefore it becometh moſt thinne, and moſt cleare, eſpecially if it haue bene made with white vineger, and white hony; and with the little ſharpneſſe of vineger, it becometh nothing vnpleaſant to the taſter: but it is found by experiẽce, that by too much vſe, and too great a draught thereof, the ſtomacke is annoied chiefly in thoſe, whoſe mouth of the ſtomacke is by nature feeling and ſenſible. Wherefore there is no ſafe vſe thereof in agues, whether you make it lowrer or ſweeter. *Note of the beſt hony.* Chooſe good hony which is betwixt thicke and thin, moſt ſweete and ſharpe in taſte, and therewith making a ſweete taſte, and biting the tongue, as it were, with pulling; in colour pale, or ſomewhat red and cleare, moſt fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his clammie humour, is not diſſeuered or pulled into parts: heauy in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the veſſell is better then that which ſwimmeth aboue, and it doth caſt vp little skum in boiling. But in our dayes there hath bene brought the white and ſweeteſt hony, & aromaticke, indeed, moſt liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard cruſt vpon it, out of *Luſitania* or *Portugall*, & *Gedano*, to *Antwerpe*, hony as good as either the *Attick* or *Siculum*. But they counterfeit that hony (as many other things elſe) and forge another inſtead thereof, by often waſhing and whiting, which deceit of theirs you may eaſily find out by the vnſweetneſſe of ſmelling, and vnſauorineſſe of taſting. Then next this both in goodneſſe, and in colour, is the *Narbonenſe* hony; and in thoſe regions alſo our countrey hony, that which cometh out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is beſt. The worſt hony by boiling is made better, and the vſe of the skummed is alwaies fitter, except by long abiding in the ſtomacke it ſwell it, and become vehement hote, and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no

wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, & stirreth vp and preserueth naturall heate, prolongeth old age, and is euill for cholericke and young men, because it is easily turned to choler.

Syrupus è Cichorio.

Syrupus è Cichorio doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the *viscera*, that is, principall parts within, as the heart, liuer, and lungs, with an easie binding, and doth set at liberty the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening; it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation: in the beginning of hote, pestilent, and vehement feuers, it is meete and wholesome. ℞. *totius Intubi agrestis*, that is, of the whole Cichory, ℥.iiij. *radicum Oxalidis, graminis, & Asparagi*, bruised ana. ℥.ij. *Lichenis, Eupatorij, Intubi satiui*, commonly called Endiue, *Seriolæ, Cicerbitæ, Lactucæ satiuæ, & agrestis, Adianti albi, Adianti nigri, Adianti simplicis, Saxifragi, Lupulorum Cassuthæ*, ana. M.j. Boile them in x. ℔. of water, vntill it come to vj. In the streined decoction dissolue *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔. vj. and boile all these together to a clarified sirupe.

Plantivs.

Whereas the sirupe of *Cichory*, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus*, or *Gulielmus Placentinus* is oft in vse, and both their sirupes do consist of a cõfused heap of simples as wel cold as hote without order, & of Reubarbe, that it is hard to tell to what vse they may be applied: not without good reason, the description is here changed & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot roots. If it be desired to be somwhat tart or sharp, there may be mixed to it the third part of *Acetosus sirupus*, or *Oxysaccharũ*; or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or halfe so much of the sirupe of roots: if reubarb must be at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meet to be put in thereto, at the time of vsing then making thereof, because the vertue of Reubarbe to purge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth away; and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in Reubarbe, then that well doth agree to a preparatiue potion. But neither in the time of ministring can Reubarbe commodiously be intermixed, *viz.* the grosnes of the sirupe hindering the operatiõ of purging, either by making it very litle or else none at all: & for the same thicknesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectuall for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolued and made more sweete, with some conuenient decoction: therefore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but only of losse, which to euery pound of the sirupe do employ ℥.j. of Reubarbe, and do not onely double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe times so much, contrary to the credite of all bookes, which for euery pound do bid & wil only, ℥.iiij. to be mingled. And they also be farre wide which do affirme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuyce of Cichory, no otherwise thẽ the sirupe of the iuice of Citrin: for although therein they haue the truth, whẽ they accoũt a heap of cõpound simples contrary one to another, to be reiected in the cõposition of medicines, and therefore do refuse the compositiõs of *Gulielm. Placenti.* & *Nicola. Floren.* of Cichory, as cõtrary, & made rashly, &

without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuyce of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truly be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auaile: for whether when choler must be prepared to purgation, or the stopping of the liuer and other parts must be opened, or you haue occasion to coole, and moderately roborate, as in the beginning of vehement & pestilent agues; which of these I pray you can this sirupe do or bring to passe, which first by much and long beating and hard streining is made thicker, and then after by it selfe boiled to the consumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with Sugar to the grossenesse of a sirupe, by euaporation hath almost lost all the vertue, as much almost as becomed meere Sugar? It is far otherwise in the decoction & iuyce of fruites, especially sharpe, as the iuyce of Orenges, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and such like, for they shed their whole force vpon sirupes, whereas neither by pressing their tenuity, neither by concoction, they leese their faculty, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctions because they haue the force of many simples, and for the water be more thin & fluxible, do not thicken, and leese their vertue in boiling: whereupon the sirupes consisting of these decoctions, be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging; but they which be made of their iuyces after purgation (the body being now open and pliant) be better adiudged to those vses, which he (I thinke) doth repeate in describing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domestici.

Syrupus Intubi domestici, doth allay choler, doth coole the liuer, and purge and strengthen it, and cureth the laundies and diseases comming of the obstructions of the liuer, very commodious after purgations: & when the matter of an ague and other diseases is after a sort well and throughly digested. ℞. *Endiuiæ recentis, Seriolæ, Lichenis, Lactucæ, Agrimonij. Cicerbitæ, Hieracij*, ana M. j ß. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum*, ana ℥. j. *Santali albi, & rubri, contusorum, Rosarum rubratum*, ana. ℥ ij. Boile them in ℔. viij. of water to the halfe; to the strained liquor put of white Sugar, ℔. iiij. Seeth them together all againe, & skum & fine them as they boile, adde thereto of the iuyce of Endiue purged by setling ℔ j. Afterward of the pure iuyce of Pomegranates without dregs, ℥. iiij. Boile them all together to the height of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought this sirupe of Endiue meet to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Authour, because it seemed to be described vpon good ground of reason, & therefore will be more effectuall then if it were made of the sole iuyce of Endiue as many would haue it. After the body is purged, it auaileth for the diseases of the liuer; and to purge the residents of cholericke maladies, and chiefly necessary for the scab & the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

Syrupus Byzantinus hath a mixed vertue both to addresse & purge the liuer and spleene, and that after purgation; for the yellow and blacke laundies, and the remnants of agues, especially good. ℞. *Succi Intubi sativi, & Apij*, ana. ℔. ij. *Succi Lupi Salictarij & Buglossi*, ana ℔. j. In seething cleanse them till they ware cleare, and make a sirupe with iij. pounds of Sugar.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

The interpreter of *Mesua* denieth the vse of sirupe *Bizantine* in Agues before the seuenth day, for commonly immediatly at the beginning of compoũd Agues, the Physitions vse *Sirupus acetosus simplex*, with the decoction of Fennell, and the third part of hony roset. But after purgation, because it mightily scoureth the relickes of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Splenaticke*, this sirupe *Byzantinus* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued, and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke and yellow laundies especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*. The compoũd is omitted, because it doth depraue the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Syrupus Scolopendriy.

Sirupus Scolopendriy doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent grosse and earthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the spleene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is specially good for melancholy Quartanes, and continuall agues. ℞. *Polypody è quercu, radicum vtriusque Buglossi, corticis radicum Capparis, corticum Thamarisci, singu.* ℥.ij. *Scolopendriy veri*, M. iij. *Lupi salictariy, Cassuthæ, Capilli Veneris, Melissophylli, singulo.* M.ij. *Coquantur in aquæ*, ℔.ix. vntill there remaine, v. Put to the strained decoction, of white Sugar, ℔.iiij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus Scolopendriy, the Author here to this place hath referred well, & for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Physitions description meet to prepare earthy & massie melancholy. The true *Scolopendrium* or Harts tongue is, *Asplenium Dioscoridu* and *officinarum Ceterach.*

Syrupus è radicibus.

Sirupus è radicibus doth scoure, and extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse fleame, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, & all the other entrals: it assageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of virgins, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued, and old diseases. ℞. *radicum Apiy, Fæniculi, Petroselini, Rusci & Asparagi*, ana. ℥. iij. *radicum Capparis & Rubiæ*, ana ℥.ij. *Coquantur in* ℔.x. *hydromelytis diluti* (that is, dissolued) vntill they come to ℔.vj. and *cum sacchari*, ℔.v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of roots two sirupes, one of the two rootes of Parcely and Fennell be omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuall, and easie to be come by, if need require, and thought meete to retaine the other of fiue, as of greater vertue: to which he hath vpon good consideration added the roots of *Capparis & Rubiæ*, that it might be more effectuall for diuerse vses. He omitteth vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it, and if need require, a portion of ỹ sharp sirupe may easily by prescript be mingled thereto & somewhat likewise it may be tẽperated with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Sirupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heate easily and gently deuide & scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be, agreable

ble to euery diſeaſe beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with child. ℞. *Adianti albi*, M.iij. *Adianti nigri*, *Adianti ſimplicis*, *Saxifragi*, *Betonicæ*, *Pimpinellæ*, *Aſplenij*, ana. M.ii *Coquantur ex aquæ* ℔.viij. vntil they cõſume to v. And in the preſſed decoction, diſſolue or melt *Sacchari albi*. ℔.iij *melliu optimi expurgati*. ℔.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall deſcription extant of maidenhaire, this is commodiouſly entermingled amongſt the other which is compound of choſen ſimples auailing altogether to diuerſe effects by their temperature. Wherfore this ſirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerſe vſe, is of moſt operation, *polychreſtus*. i. very good for the diſeaſes of all parts, eſpecially of the breaſt, the liuer the ſpleene, the kidneis, and all diſeaſes of the wombe in all ages and natures. And the prerogatiue alſo thereof is ſuch, that it doth make ſoluble whoſoeuer vſeth it any ſpace; and it doth not onely prepare humours, but alſo purge them when they be prepared, & eſpecially groſſe fleame & choler, as certaine new Phyſitions and we alſo haue obſerued in practiſe oftentimes: the which effect likewiſe the decoction *omnium Adiantorum*, but eſpecially the white hath, although contrariwiſe *Dioſcor.* teacheth that it bindeth. But they which do mingle either Raiſins or Liquorice with *Adiantis* into the ſirupe, do reſtraine the large & ample nature thereof for diuerſe vſes, to ſome peculiar effect, and by mixture dull the force thereof in extenuating & ſcouring. They ſhould therefore more fitly make this ſirupe of the ſole decoction of *Adiantorum*, which might be reſerued as a common matter for euery kind of griefe, & then they might apply it as need required to the diſeaſes of this or that part. As for example, to the breaſt affected, with Raiſins and Liquorice decocted; for the liuer, with the decoctiõ of *Agrimonij* or *Cichory*; for the ſplene, *Aſplenij aut Tamariſci*; for the kidneis, ſuch things as prouoke vrine, and breake the ſtone. For ſo by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the ſirupe may likewiſe be applyed to ſome one part, and his ſtrength augmented, which in the ſole ſirupe deſcribed is very much effectuall.

Theſe cõpoſitions of ſirupes haue bene meete to prepare bodies to purgatiõ: now we muſt teach what ſirupes be good to purge the relicks of euery part.

Syrupus è Stœchade.

Sirupus è Stœchade is wonderful good againſt cold diſeaſes of the braine, and nerues or ſinewes, as *Paralyſis*, i. the Palſey, *Epilepſia*, the falling euil, *Conuulſio*, the Crampe, *tremor*, i. quaking, & diſtilling out of the head when it lieth. ℞. *florũ Stœcados*, ℥.iiij *Thymi*, *Calaminthes*, *Origani*. ana. ℥.j.ß. *Saluiæ*, *Betonicæ*, *florum Roriſmarini*, ana. ℥.ß. *ſeminis Rutæ*, *Pæoniæ*, *Feniculi*, ana. ℥.iij boile thẽ in x. ℔. of water till the halfe be conſumed: when the decoction is ſtrained, boile it againe to a ſirupe with hony and Sugar, of each ij. pound, and condite it with Cinamon, Ginger, *Calamus aromaticus*, of each, ℥.ij which being bound vp in a courſe cloth with open threeds, muſt be hanged in the ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus è Stœchade, becauſe it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cauſe put certaine other thinges, as Sage, Betony, Roſemary, the ſeeds of Rew, Piony, & Fennell, very profitable for the ſundry diſeaſes of the braine

braine and sinewes; otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *Stœchas* which is the chief in this descriptiõ, & is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for ỹ splene, then *Cephalica*, that is, good for the head. For it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrailes, the which with his thin and hote substance it doth easily open, and with the other somewhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweet in tast, in stead thereof may be vsed *Nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus Rosarum siccarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doth mitigate the hot diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengtheneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe and stayeth thin defluxiõs. ℞. *aquæ simplicis*, ℔. iiij. in the which being made bloud warme soke xxiiij. houres red Roses dried, ℔. j. & after this be strained, dissolue therein white Sugar, ℔. ij. this done, boile them to the substance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Physitions thinke good to renew the infusion of dry Roses twise or thrise, to the intent (as they suppose) the force of the sirupe might be augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectuall: for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of Roses, viij. pounds of water; otherwise with manifold maceration the water wil either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining will become too thicke: and as for the vertue and strength of Roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp by one infusion as by many, as it chanceth by salt when it is dissolued in water. This sirupe is auaileable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthening the parts of the body; in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildly, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nymphæa.

THis sirupe of *Nymphæa* mitigateth the heate of the head, Frensies, and watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpnesse of distillations. ℞. *Florum Nymphæe, recentium*, ℞. ß. *Florum Violarum*, ℥. ij. *foliorum Lactucæ*, M. ij. *semi. Lactucæ*. ℥. ß Adde to these before the boiling, *Portulacæ*, ℥. ß. & *Cucurbitæ*, ℥ ß. Boile thẽ in foure pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled Rose water ℔. ß. white Sugar ℔. iiij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nimphæa* is omitted as nothing commodious; and as for the compound sirupes, according to the description of *Franciscus Pedemontanus*, by reason of sundry seeds, vineger, and the iuyce of Pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these things, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie & profitable to those vses which are propounded in the description. The flowers of that *Nymphæa* which hath yellow flowers and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Sirupus de Papauere.

SYrupe of Poppy hath the ſame vertue that *Nimphæa* hath, but peculiarly it ſtaieth a grieuous cough, and ſuch diſtillations as do exaſperate the iawes and throate. ℞. *capitum Papaueris albi* not throughly riped and new, ℥. viij. *capitum Papaueris nigri recentium.* ℥. vj. *Aquæ cæleſtis,* ℔. iiij. boile them to the conſumption of halfe, and put thereinto *Sacchari & Penidiorum,* ana. ℥. viij. Boile them to the conſiſtence of a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the ſimple ſirupe of Poppy, there be fewer heads of the blacke Poppy put in, becauſe it cannot ſo ſafely be vſed as the white: as for the compound ſirupe of Poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practiſe, becauſe when neceſſity requireth it may eaſily be prepared, by putting to this ſirupe of Iuiubes, or of Violets.

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procureth ſleepe, ſo it abandoneth the diſtillation of the braine whitherſoeuer it preſſeth, it ſtaieth the *Dyſenteria* and other fluxe of the belly. ℞. *capita Papaueris albi* meanly great and meanly ripe, *numero* xij. *Aquæ cæleſtis.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the third part, and when it is ſtreined put thereto of the beſt *Sapa*, that is, new wine boiled to the third part, ℥. iiij. *Mellis optimi,* ℥. ij. Boile all theſe together: put in the end of the decoction, *Roſarum rubrarum, Balauſtiorum, Acatiæ, Rhois culinarij tritorum,* ana. ℥. ij. *ſeminis Portulacæ, Coralli albi & rubri* ana. ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better forme, ſeruing to ſtay diſtillations, by reiecting certaine vnneceſſary and vnpleaſant things. *Dioſ.* to the ſame purpoſe boileth the heads of Poppy alone in water to the conſumption of halfe, and then putting thereto hony and the iuyce of *Hypociſtis*, he reduceth it to the cõſiſtence of an *Ecligma.* As for the heads of the Poppy, they muſt neither be too greene nor through drineſſe too much voide of iuyce, but when they begin through a greene kind of ripenes to rattle, they muſt be gathered for this compoſition. Whereupon they be termed of the Græcians *κωδεια* & *κωδια*, that is, the whiskling heads of the Poppy. For that this compoſition through too much thickneſſe may be vnpleaſant to ſome, when it is to be taken, it may be dilayed with the decoction of Barley, or ſome other thing of like conueniency: and alſo if ſleepe muſt be procured, or danger be imminent of a ſharpe and thin fluxion of exaſperation, both to ſtay and aſſwage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *Diacodion* with a freſh decoction of the ſeeds of Poppy, or with the thicke iuyce ſtrained out of the decoction of Barley. Neither is it to be dread leſt harme ſhould betide to the body by Poppy, notwithſtanding it be recorded by Authors to be cold in the fourth degree, ſith that ſundry nations do vſe with meats after the faſhion of herbes, the tender ſprings of Poppy, and do feed of an oile preſſed out of the ſeeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they ſprinkle the ſeeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to pleaſe the taſte, without any annoyance or heauineſſe through ſleep. And in ſuch like order the Ægyptians vſe to make the taſte pleaſant, *Oleum*

Seſaminum

Seſaminum & Seſamum: and *Petronius*, grounding vpon that cuſtome vſed in the Latin tongue for an eloquent and pleaſant oration and compoſition of words, to ſay, all his ſayings and doings are as it were ſprinkled with Poppy and *Seſamum*. For both the liquor of Poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuyce wroong out of the leaues and heads, termed in Greek *Meconium*, cõſiſt not of an vniforme, but of manifold ſubſtance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and ſweet ſmelling. The firſt is more apparent in greene and tender Poppies, the two laſt in dry. As for the *Opium* or rather *Meconium* which is brought to vſe, it is altogether counterfeit, and through a ſecret quality is noyſome, & therefore in no caſe to be vſed, though it be neuer ſo artificially corrected. For whereas *Opium* is by great labour in litle quantity confected of the milke of the ſeeds of wild Poppy, and *Meconium* without any trouble is abundantly preſſed out of the leaues, the factors which ſeeke after gaine and lucre, may eaſily counterfeit *Opium*, or in ſtead thereof bring out of *Naples* and *Spaine*, *Meconium*.

Syrupus Violarum compoſitus.

THe compound ſirupe of Violets doth mitigate a ſharpe diſtillation, doth aſſwage hoarſneſſe, grieuous cough and roughneſſe of the arteries, doth eaſe the Pleuriſie, and doth quench thirſt. ℞. *Florum Violarum recentium*, ℥.ij. *ſeminis Cydoniorum, & Maluæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Zizypha, Myxaria*, ana. in number 20. *decocti Cucurbitæ vel ſeminis eius*, ℔. v. Boile them to the halfe, and with ℔.ij. of Sugar, compound them to a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

In this compound ſirupe there is nothing changed, becauſe he thought it compounded artificially ſeruing commodiouſly by ſmoothing, cooling, moiſtening, againſt all the heate and roughneſſe of the arterie, as alſo it appeaſeth vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the reines: for the herbe and leaues of the Violet boiled, haue a ripening faculty in them, the ſeed is good to purge choler in ſuch wiſe as Rewbarbe doth: in the midſt of the floute there is a thing ſomewhat yellowiſh, which is recorded to be helpefull for the *Angina* and the *Epilepſia* in children, if it be drunke with water. The flower of Violet and a ſimple ſirupe made of it, by infuſion once or twiſe, doth mitigate, aſſwage, and ſcoure ſcorching and ſharpe humours; and therfore is very neceſſary in a pleuriſie, and bringeth vnder black burnt choler, and the noiſome vapors ariſing thereof, & thereby doth ſet at quiet the *Symptomata* ariſing thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauines of the heart, it temperateth hotter and drier medicines, by mitigating them commodiouſly. Wheras then theſe qualities be ſingular, the ſirupe confected of the infuſion of freſh Violets, may be iuſtly regiſtred amongſt the ſirupes ſeruing to many vſes. This infuſion wrung out of pleaſant or well ſmelling Violets, dried ſomewhat in the ſhadow, as it behoueth, and ſoaked in luke warme water, if it be boyled with very good Sugar to the conſiſtency of a ſirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the vſes before repeated. and is to be taken both before and after purgation. As for thoſe which reiterate the ſoaking of

the Violets and Roſes nine times in the decoction of the ſirupe of Violets and Roſes, they labour in vaine; for they cannot become leſſe effectuall in working, though they vſe (at the moſt) infuſion but foure times, as we will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicins. As for the ſirupe of Liquorice, it ſeemeth nothing commodious, becauſe it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the ſirupe of Hyſope: and ſuch great variety of ſirupes bringeth rather confuſion then commodity to ſtudents.

Syrupus Zizyphorum, vel Iuiubarum.

Syrupus Zizyphorum accompliſheth the ſame which the ſirupe of Violets doth, but with more efficacy; both of them are conuenient in the beginning of the diſeaſe. ℞. *Zizyphorum num.* lx. *Myxaria num.* xx. *florũ Violarum, Adianti albi, Hordei à cortice liberi, Glycyrrhizæ*, an. ℥.vj. *ſemi. Maluæ, Cydoniorũ ſemi. Papaueris albi, Melonum & Lactucæ, Tragacantha*, ana ℥.iij. The ſeeds of *Cydoniorũ*, of Mallowes, & Tragacanth bound in a courſe cloth, muſt be boiled with the reſt in ℔.v. of water, to the conſumption of halfe, and then with ℔.ij. of white Sugar to the ſubſtance of a ſirupe.

Syrupus de Hyſſopo.

Syrupus de Hyſſopo by a gentle and light mitigation, doth purge and ridde the breaſt and lungs of all hote and cold maladies, doth concoct the ſpittle or fleame, and make it more eaſie to be auoided, by attenuating and ſcouring it. And laſtly it is good as well for the aggrieuances, as approching or inclination of *Peripneumonia & Pleuritis*. ℞. *Hyſſopi arefacti*, ℥.j.ß. *radicum Polypodij quercini, Faniculi, Glycyrrhizæ, ſemi. Carthami*, ana. ℥.j. *Hordei expurgati, Adianti albi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Paſſularum purgatarum*, ℥.j.ß. *Ficus ſiccas, Palmulas pingues*, ana x. *numer.* Boile them in ℔.vj. of water to the conſumption of halfe, and boile the ſtrained iuyce thereof into a ſirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony, and *Sacchari*, ℔.j.ß.

PLANTIVS.

The deſcription of the ſirupe of Hyſope, remaineth vnuaried, ſaue in ſtead of the roote of Smallage, there is ſubſtituted the roote of *Polypodij*, and for the roote of Parcely, the ſeed of garden Saffron, which be much more fit and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abſtracted which be ſufficient enough in the ſirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, the rather to make the force of the ſirupe more ſcouring.

Syrupus de Praſſio.

SYrupe of Horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, ſcoureth, and purgeth the diſeaſes of the breaſt and the liuer; it is excellent good againſt inueterate diſeaſes of groſſe and ſlimy fleame, as for *Aſthma, Tuſſis vetus, Empiema*, and alſo auaileble for *Peripneumonia* and *Pleuritis* already enclined. ℞. *Praſſi albi recentis*, ℥.ij. *Glycyrrhizæ, Polypodij quercini, radicum Apij & Faniculi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Adianthi albi, Hyſſopi, Origani, Calamintha, Stœbes, Satureiæ, Tuſſilaginis*, ana. ℥.vj. *ſemi. Aniſi, & Bembacis*, ana. ℥.iij. *Vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum*, ℥.ij. *Ficus paſſas pingues*, x. *numer.* Boile them in viij. pounds of *Hydromel* dilaied to the conſumption of the halfe; boile the ſtrained iuyce into a ſirupe with

with hony. ℔.ij. and white Sugar, ℔.ij. Season and sweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the roote of the Florentine flower deluce.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe of Horehound seemed cõfused of so great a mixture of lenitiue, scouring, and cutting simples, that it was difficult to declare to what vse it serued; which may be also affirmed of many other sirupes, which be gathered out of diuerse Authors without any methode or reason. Wherefore sith before hath bene propounded the sirupe of Violets and Iuiubes, for moistening and sufficient lenitiue; and the sirupe of Hysope for scouring moderately, cutting and purging the diseases of the breast, the Authour thought it necessary vpon good ground, to annect this sirupe of Horehound, being of a very good deuiding and scouring faculty, thereby the rather to cure extreme and rooted diseases, which notwithstanding who will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Sirupus Symphyti.

Sirupus Symphyti doth purge mildly and easily the quitture and filthinesse of consuming and vlcerated lungs, without feare of any issue out of bloud, and doth corroborate the lungs. ℞. *radicum & cymarum Symphyti maioris & minoris*, ana. M. iij. *Rosarum rubrarum, Betonicæ, Plantaginis, Pimpinellæ, Polygoni, Scabiosæ, Tussilaginis*, ana. M. ij. All being bruised fresh or greene, you must straine out the iuyce which must be boiled and skummed to ℔.iij. and make a sirupe thereof by putting thereto of white Sugar, ℔.ij. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no sirupe yet extant at any time, or set out in vse for the consumed & purulent lungs: in so great scarcity this profitable sirupe of Comfery was vpon good ground of art here to be placed.

Sirupus è succo Buglossi.

SYrupe of the iuyce of Bugloss, doth especially comfort & cheere the heart, and maketh a riddance of the quiuering and swounding thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad persons. ℞. *succi Buglossi defæcati*, that is, purified, ℔.iij. *Sacchari albi*, ij. Boile them to the consistence of a sirupe.

The sirupe of the iuyce of garden Bugloss, of the iuyce of Violets, of the iuyce of Peaches, be all cordiall, and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the sirupe of wild or garden Bugloss, or in the sirupe of the iuyce of Violets, or in the iuyce of Peaches, or of the barke of Oranges: but there was great occasion to adde the sirupe of Mint, becaue there was none in vse which did make a riddance of the diseases of the heart, and take away the annoyance of pestilent and venimous diseases.

Sirupus è cortice Mali Citrij.

THe sirupe of the barke of the Orange, or Pome-citron doth renew and exhilarate the heart being heauy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cause, and driueth away sorrow. ℞. *corticum Citriorum Malorum recentium* infused or prepared in ℔. j. of water. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till iiij.

be

be consumed, and with iij. ℔. of white Sugar make a sirupe, and condite it with gran.vj.of muske.

Syrupus Melissophylli.

SYrupe of Balmemint is of all other the best for the trembling and ouercasting of the heart, and of a peculiar power it abateth the maligntty of pestilent and venimous diseases, and maketh a riddance thereof. ℞. *radicum Dictamni, Pentaphylli, Betonicæ, Doronici Romani*, ana. ℥ ß. *foliorum Melissophylli, Stœbes, & Morsus, florum Bugloss vtriusque, & Rorismarini*, ana. M.j. *Semi. Oxalidis, Citrij mali, Fæniculi, Attractylidis*, that is, *Cardui benedicti, & Ocimi*, ana. ℥.iij. Boile them in ℔.iiij.of water, to the consumption of halfe, and being strained, put thereto ℔.iij.of white Sugar, of the iuyce of Balme and Rose water, ana. ℔. ß. Boile all this into a sirupe, condited of Cinamon and yellow Saunders, ana. ℥.ß.

Sirupus è Menta.

SYrupe of Mint doth heate the stomacke moderately, and doth corroborate it with an easie adstriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth loathsomnesse, vomite, chincough, and lientery. ℞. *Succi Cydoniorum dulcium, succi Cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tarty-sweet, *succi Granatorum dulcium acidorum, succi Granatorum acidodulcium*, ana. ℔.j.ß. Mixe these together, and infuse ℔.j. ß.of dry Mint in them xxiiij.houres, of red Roses, ℥.ij.Boile them to the halfe, and when they be strained, put to them ℔.iiij. of white Sugar; and to condite the sirupe, boile ℥.iij. of *Gallia muschata* bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater sirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied; neither was the other lesse sirupe to be set downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater: and in the sirupe of Wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Absynthij.

THe sirupe of Wormewood either purgeth or consumeth the relickes in the stomacke, and doth recouer a chearfull colour, and get a stomacke to those that be recouered of a disease; it riddeth the liuer of weakenesse, and expelleth the Iaundies. Lastly it corroborateth all the instruments of concoction. ℞. *Absynthij Roma.* ℔.ß. *Rosarum rubrarum* ℥ ij. *Spicæ nardi*, ℥.iij. Bruise them and infuse them xxiiij.houres in old and well smelling white wine, & the iuyce of Quince peares, ℔.ij ß. Boile them with a lent fire to the consumptiõ of the halfe, then boile them againe with ℔ ij. of white Sugar to the thickenesse of a sirupe.

Cydoniorum Mina, that is, the iuyce decocted to thickenesse.

Cydoniorum Mina, doth corroborate the stomacke and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, stayeth vomite and lientery. ℞. *succi Cydoniorum defecati*, ℔. vj Boile it with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, by soming little and little: then poure in of old and good red wine, ℔.iiij, and white Sugar, ℔.iiij and boile them againe to the thickenesse of hony; condite it with one dramme and a halfe of Cinamon, of Cloues, and Ginger, ana ℈.ij.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

This *Mina Cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the ſimple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus Myrtinus, that is, of the Mirtle.

SYrupus *Myrtinus* corroborateth the ſtomacke and the intrails, ſtaieth an old iſſue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery diſtillation of the braine. ℞. *baccarum Myrti*, ℥.ij ß. *Santali albi*, *Rhois culinarij*, *Balauſtiorum*, *baccarum Oxyacanthæ*, *Roſarum rubrarum*, ana ℥.j.ß. *Meſpilorum* ℥.ß. Bruiſe them all, and boile them in viiij.℔.of water to the third part, and to the ſtrained decoction put of the iuyce of Quince peares, and Pomegranates, ana ℔ ij. Sugar, ℔.v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Myrtinus retaineth the old compoſition: and the ſirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation it ſcoureth all the relicks of the hepaticke diſeaſes, may commodiouſly be referred to this place.

Syrupus Fumariæ.

SYrupe of Fumitory ſcoureth from bloud, ſalt and exuſt humors; it taketh away Itch, Scabbe, Tetters, Leproſie, and all the diſeaſes of the skinne, aſſwageth maligne and fiſtulous vlcers, the Canker and *Elephantiaſis* ℞. *Endiuiæ*, *Abſinthij Roma. Lupuli*, *Caſſuthæ*, *Scolopendrij veri*, ana M.j. *Epithymi*, ℥.j.ß. Boile them in ℔.iiij.of water to the conſumption of halfe, and put to the ſtrained decoction of the purified iuyce of Fumitory, ℔.j.ß. *ſucci vtriuſq; Bugloſſi*, ana ℔.ß. *Sacchari albi*, ℔.iiij. Boile this ſirupe to a good conſiſtence.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many deſcriptions of the ſirupe of Fumitory, there ſeemeth none more fitte or more eaſie to be practiſed then this, to purge impure bloud.

The ſirupe of the iuyce of both the Bugloſſes, of the iuyce of Violets, and the ſirupe of Balmemint do alſo appertaine to the ſplene.

Syrupus è Malis odoriferis.

THe ſirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noyſome vapors of melancholy, pacifieth and aſſwageth feare, ſorrow and madneſſe, and exhilarateth the patient. ℞. *ſucci Malorum acidodulcium fragrantium*, ℔. iiij. *ſuccorum Violarum*, *Bugloſſi domeſtici & ſylueſtris*, *aquæ Roſarum ſtillatitiæ*, ana ℔. j. Boile them together, skumme them and ſtraine them, and adde thereto white Sugar ℔.vj. boile them vnto a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were ridiculous to haue the ſirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuyces ſeruing for melancholy or blacke cholet.

Syrupus Althæa.

THe ſirupe of the Water mallow, doth cleanſe mildly & gently the groſſe ohſtructing fleame of the kidneis, the ſlimie and purulent quittare, and their ſandy grauell, without ſenſible heate: Furthermore it aſſwageth the heate of the vrine. ℞. *radicum Althæa*, ℥.ij. *Cicerum rubro*. ℥.j. *Paſſarum Vuarum*

expurgatarum, radicum Graminis & Asparagi, Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ana. ℥ß. *Cymarum*, that is, the tender croppes, *Althææ, Malvæ, Helxines, Pimpinellæ, Plantaginis, Adianti vtriusque*, ana. M.j. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum*, ana. ℥.iij. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till ℔.ij. be consumed, and with ℔.iiij. of Sugar make it a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of water Mallowes or marsh Mallowes was tofore neuer described, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vse thereof, it could not more commodiously be made for the vses for which it is propounded.

Sirupus Raphani.

THe sirupe of Radish doth more forcibly scoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the stone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine suppressed. ℞. *radicis Raphani domestici & syluestris*, ana. ℥.j. *radicum Saxifragi, Rusci, Leuistici, Eringij, Ononis, Petroselini, Fœniculi*, ana. ℥.ß *foliorum Betonicæ, Pimpinellæ, Pulegij, Cymarum vrticæ, Nasturtij, Crithmi, Callitrichi*, ana. M.j. *fructus Halicacabi, Zezyphæ*, ana. *numer.* xx. *sem. Ocimi, Bardanæ, Petroselini Macedonici, Seselios, Carui, Dauci, Lithospermi, corticum radicis Lauri*, ana. ℥.ij. *Vuarum passarum expurgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.vj. Boile them in decent order in x. ℔. of water, to the consumption of foure, of the which with Sugar, ℔.iiij. purified hony, ℔.ij. a cleare sirupe must be made: condite it with Cinamon, ℥.j. and *Nux muschata*, ℥.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no sirupe is found described to breake the stone, and expell grauell, this sirupe of Radish is substituted to great vse, which is aptly and conueniently compounded of these simples, which haue great faculty to breake the stone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and scouring things.

Sirupus Artemisiæ.

THe sirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightily the suppressed floures, or auoiding more sparingly, which also the sirupe of *Adiantum* and Hyssope doth but more mildly: this sirupe asswageth the strangling and ouercasting of the wombe. ℞. *Artemisiæ* M.ij. *radicum Iridis, Hellenij, Rubiæ, Peoniæ, Leuistici, Fœniculi*, ana ℥.ß. *Pulegij, Origani, Calaminthes, Nepetæ, Melissophylli, Sabinæ, Sampsuchi, Hyssopi, Prassii, Chamædryos, Chamæpityos, Hyperici, Parthenij, Betonicæ*, ana. M.j. *sem. Anisi, Petroselini, Fœniculi, Ocimi, Dauci, Rutæ, Nigellæ*, ana. ℥.iij. Bruise them and infuse them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of *Hydromel*, till three be consumed, and then after boile it with Sugar ℔.v. into a sirupe, condite it with ℥.j. of Cinamon, & ℥.iij. of *Spicæ*.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the sirupe of Mugwort without consideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diseases of the wombe were contained, and sundry things which could not be got, or whose strength by boiling wasted, the Author cut off such simples as vnnecessary and vnprofitable, leaning onely the chiefest and best.

Purging receipts.

MEdicines preſcribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerſe formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place; orderly beginning at theſe which be moſt gentle.

Electuarium è Prunis.

THe Electuary of Proins is maruellous lenitiue, mollifying the coſtiue belly, purging midly and gently ſundry humours, very commodious in extreme heate of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirſt. ℞. *radicum Althæa, Polypodij è quercu, Paſſarum expurgatarum*, ana. ℥.ij. *Glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ſem. Cnici*, ana. ℥.j. *Maluæ, Violæ, Helxines, Mercurialis*, ana. M.ij. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vj. In halfe of the ſtrained decoction boile ſweete Proines, Iuiubes, Sebeſten, ana *numer.* xx. *Ficus paſſæ pingues numer.* x. Then let the pulpe paſſe through a ſiene. In the other halfe of the ſtrained decoction boile *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum* ℔.j. ß. and this being ſtrained, mixe it with the pulpe with *Sacchari & mellis expumati*, ana. ℔. ß. then boile them to the conſiſtence of an Electuarie, ſprinkling in the end *Cinamomi tenuiſſimè triti*, ℥.j. *Zinziberis*, ℥.iij. The doſe is ℥.j. the whole compoſition is ℔.iij. The doſes be about xxviij. or xxx.

The ſolid Electuary of Proines hath the ſame vertue. ℞. *Pruna dulcia numer.* x. *Maluæ, Violæ, Mercurialis, Helxines*, ana. M.j. *Polypodij è quercu, ſem. Carthami, radicis Althæa, Paſſarum purgatarum, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ß. *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum*, ℥.x. Boile them in v. ℔. of water till ij. remaine, then preſſe it in a preſſe, put *Sacchari rubri*, ℔.j.ß. boile them againe with a lent fire to the conſiſtence of a ſolid Electuarie, in the end ſprinkling powder *Electuarij Aromatici Roſati maioris ad* ℥.iij. make *tabellæ* in weight, ℥.ß. The whole compoſition is about, ℥.xx. the doſes be about xxx. Compound both theſe Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furtheſt parts of the body all humours, eſpecially both the cholers, in this order. ℞. *Electuarij è Prunis ſimplicis, & recentis & adhuc calentis*, ℔.j. in the which diſſolue *Diacarydij*, ℥.iij. The doſe is from ℥.iij. to ℥.ß. In one pound of the compoſition, the doſes be about xxxij.

Solide Electuary è prunis.

Plantij Scholia in purgantes compoſitiones.

AS the ſirupes, ſo the compoſitions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all art, and put in bookes of Phiſicke, ſo that you may find two, three, or more of like effect, nothing aptly applyed to the cure of diſeaſes: whereof it is that the Author vpon good conſideration, hath very much altered the compoſitions of purging medicines, the rather thereby to affoord a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much thoſe receipts which he hath ſet downe, retaining the ancient names of antiquitie, do differ from the ancient receipts, or how much they be more auaileable for the propoſed diſeaſes, euery man may vnderſtand by eſtimation had of the faculty of the ſimples. For whereas *Diaprunis* both ſirupe and cõpound deſcribed *à Nicolao*, ſhould greatly haue refrigerated and bene appliable

vnto agues, it containeth many vehement hot Aromates, which also in the compound doth exasperate it into the sharpnesse of Seammony.

Catholicum simplex.

Catholicum simplex doth deduce and purge from euery part of the body mildly and gently all humours alike, nothing noysome either to children, old folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *radicum Helenÿ, Buglossi, Cichorÿ, Althææ, Polypodÿ quercini, sem. Cnici contusorum*, ana ℥. ij. *Stœchados, Hyssopi, Melissophylli, Eupatorÿ veri, Asplenÿ, Betonicæ, Artemisiæ*, ana. M ij *Vuarum passarum expurgatarum*, ℥. iij *quatuor sem. frigidorum maiorum, sem. Anisi, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. iij. Boile all these according to art in x. ℔. of *hydromel* til vij. be remanent; in the strained decoction macerate xij houres, *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum* ℔ j ß. *Agarici albi*, ℔ ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥. j. Boile them a little, and in the pressed liquor, dissolue of the pulpe of *Sebestens*, ℔. ß *foliorum Sennæ mundatorum tenuissimè triterum*, ℥. iiij. *Sirupi infusionis Rosarum pallidarum*, ℔. j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. ij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of hony, insperging in the end *Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi electi*, ana. ℥. j. *Santali citrini* ℥ j. *Nucis moschatæ*, ℥. ij. The dose is ℥. j. the whole composition is ℔. iiij the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

This may be truly termed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humours, and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts, purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very little from the extreme parts. But the greater *Catholicum* doth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the composition whereof consisteth of all kinde of medicines which draw as well from the nigher as further celles aptly confused and represſed. In the ancient *Catholicum* the Reubarbe is not fitly boiled, neither the *Cassia*, which becometh sharpe with the Thamarinds, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth also draw the humours vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbance of the body or losse of strength. ℞. *quatuor sem. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, sem. Papaueris albi*, ana ℥ ß j. *Tragacanthæ*, ℥ iij. *Rosarum rubrarum, Santali citrini, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥. ij. *Zinziberis*, ℥ j. *Rheubarbari selecti, Diadacrydÿ*, ana. ℥. ß. *Agarici, Turpethi*, ana. ℥. ij. *Sacchari albi soluti in aqua Rosarum*, in the which ℥. ij. of the leaues of Sene haue bene incocted, ℔. j. Let tables be compounded of weight, ℥. iij. The dose is one table, the whole composition is ℔. j ß the doses be about 50.

Syrupus infusionis Rosarum pallidarum.

Sirupe of infusion of white Roses, doth easily draw from the principallest intrals thin choler & waterish humors, cõuenient in easie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. ℞. *aquæ infusionis Rosarum pallidarum*, ℔. v. *Sacchari expurgati*, ℔. iiij. boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe: soke ℔. ij. *Rosarum pallidarum recentium in* ℔. vj of repide water twelue houres, and couer the vessell; & in stead of this likewise, substitute

other fresh Roses; and these cast away, put in the water other new Roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the Roses, in which the Sugar must be dissolued. Neither truly the sirupe of bruised Roses, or of their iuice, will be effectuall as this. There is also made a sirupe (which draweth & purgeth likewise choler & water, & killeth wormes) of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe *Rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of Roses & *Diacydonion*, keepe their old order of composition without any manifest mutation, but in the Electuary of *Diacarthamum*: for that the adiection of *Mannæ granatæ*, *Mellis rosati*, & *Sacchari geminati* preuerted the perfect order of composition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good cõsideratiõ omitted.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum.

Electuarium è succo Rosarum doth draw forcibly from places far distant, choler, thinne and aquous humours, very commodious and easie to be vsed for those which be troubled with the goute, in case they haue not a vehement ague. ℞. *Succi Rosarum siccarum recentium, Sacchari albi*, ana. ℔.j.ß. Boile them into a solid Electuary with a lent fire, and in the end sprinkle *trium Santalorum*, *Mastiches*, *Cinamomi*, *exquisitè tritorum*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ.j. ß. *Caphuræ*, ϑ.ß. make tables in weight, ʒ.iij.ß. The dose is one table, the whole composition is xxij.ʒ. the doses be about 70.

Diacydonion.

Diacydonion worketh the same that the Electuary of the iuyce of Roses doth, but more moderately & easily. ℞. *pulpæ Cydoniorũ expurgatæ, coctæ & cribro transmissæ*, ℔.j.ß. *Succi Cydoniorum*, ℔.ß. *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔.ij. Boile them to the thickenesse of hony, sprinkling in the end *Cinamomi triti*, ʒ.j. *Zinziberis*, *Maceris*, *Caryophyllorum*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ.ij. The dose is from ʒ.iij. to ʒ.ß. the whole composition is ℔.iiij. the doses be about 90.

Electuarium Diacnicu.

Electuarium Diacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furthest places fleame, and wheyish or wateriish humors, and also choler, and is especially good for paine of the head, sinewes and ioynts. ℞. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthæ frigidi, medullæ semi. Cnici, Hermodactylorum*, ana. ʒ.ß. *Rosarum rubrarum, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Cinamomi*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Turpethi*, ʒ.j. *Diadacrydij*, ʒ.ß. *Sacchari albi, aquæ Rosarum soluti*, ℔.j. make tables thereof the weight of ʒ.iij.ß. the dose is one table.

Diaphœnicon.

Diaphœnicon doth mildly purge choler, crude and slimie fleame, agreable and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diseases arising of crudity, and also for the cholike and flatulent paine. ℞. *pulpæ Palmularum mundatarum*, boiled in *Hydromel*, and fined in a siue, *Penidiorũ recentium*, ana. ℔.ß. *Amygdalarum expurgatarum*, ʒ.iij.ß. Whẽ they be bruised and mingled al together, put into thẽ *mellis expumati*, ℔.ij. Boile them a litle, and thẽ sprinkle *Zinziberis*, *Piperis*, *Maceris*, *Cinamomi*, *foliorum Rutæ siccorũ*, *semi. Fœniculi*

& *Dauci*, ana ℥. ij. *Turpethi tenuissimè triti*, ℥. iiij. *Diadacrydij*, ℥ j. ß. The dose is from ℥. iij. to ℥. ß. the whole composition is about ℔. iiij. the doses about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphœnicon*, *Palmulæ* be rightly soaked and boiled in *Hydromel*, for that the ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauor; many things also be subtracted, as the seed of Louage, *pinei Nuclei*, *Galanga*, *Xyloaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation: and the quantity of Dates, Penidies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humours, and also serous from any part, it reuelleth the matter of the stone, & displaceth the stones themselues, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. ℞. *Turpethi*, ℥. x. *Diadacrydij*, *Hermodactylorum*, *Rosarum rubra*. ana ℥. v. *Charyophyllorum*, *Zinziberis*, *Saxifragi*, *semi. Apij*, *salis Gemmi*, *Galanga*, *Maceris*, *Carui*, *Fœniculi*, *Acimorum*, *Asparagi & Ruscei*, *sem. Milij solis*, *quatuor semi. frigidorum maior*, *Glycyrrhiza*, ana ℥ j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. j. confect them according to art. The dose is from ℥. iij. to ℥. ß. the whole composition is almost, ℔. ij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The author hath vpon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hote, and could not be easily and safely vsed in an ague, *Spicam nardi*, *Macropiper*, *Cardamomum & Crocum*; and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seedes and Liquorice.

Confectio Hamech.

Confectio hamech purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt fleame; it is a peculiar remedy for the Leprosy, the Canker, the Tetter, the *Elephantiasis* and *Psora*. ℞. *corticis Mirobalanorum citrinarum*, ℥. ij. *Cepularum*, *& nigrarum Violarum*, *Colocynthidis*, *Polypodij quercini*, ana ℥. j. ß. *Absynthij*, *Thymi*, ana ℥. ß. *Anisi*, *Fœniculi*, *Rosarum rubr.* ana ℥. iij. Bruise them all and soake them in whey ℔. ij. then boile them to a pound, rub thē in your hand, & wring them. To the strained decoction ad the iuyce of Fumitory, the pulp of Proines & Raisins, ana ℔. ß. *Sacchari albi*, *mellis expumati*, ana ℔. j. Boile thē to the thicknes of hony, sprinkling in the end *Agarici*, *Sennæ*, *tritorum*, ana ℥. ij. *Rheubarbari triti*, ℥. j. ß. *Epithymi*, ℥. j. *Diadacrydij*, ℥. vj. *Cinamomi*, ℥. ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥. ij. *semi. Fumariæ & Anisi*, *Spicæ nardi*, ana ℥. j. The dose is from ℥. iij. to half an ounce, the whole cōpositiō is ℔. iij. & ℥. viij. The doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of *Hamech*, the Myrobalans be twise put in, to none effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised; Rheubarbe leeseth his strength & vertue, being boiled; *Cassia*, *Manna*, and *Thamaryndi* being boiled, do turne to putrifaction. The force of *Scammony* being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set down a much more

conuenient

conuenient compoſition and eaſie to be vſed: this compoſition of all other is the beſt and moſt ſafeſt, for that in them the ſharpnes and fernency of *Turbith* and *Scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of pulpe of Proines or Raiſins, or by *Hermodactilis* and *Amygdalis*, or with Roſes and their iuice, or *Myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not ſo ſafe to be vſed: as *Electuarium Indum vtriuſque*, *Electuarium Eleſchoſ*, *Electuarium de Pſillio*, *Diaturbith*. In the which the ſharpnes of *Scammony*, and other ſtronger medicins is little abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing, which other receipts here deſcribed do not bring to paſſe with ſucceſſe. Wherefore to take away the cauſes of all effects, theſe receipts be auaileable enough.

Hiera ſimplex.

Hiera ſimplex by purging choler and fleame from the ſtomacke, intrails, *Hypochondrium*, and meſentery veins impacted, and arridding forcibly and mightily of redundance, doth mildly helpe all diſeaſes proceeding of crudities and obſtruction of veines. ℞. *Cinamomi*, *Macris*, *Aſari*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Croci*, *Maſtiches*, ana ℥.vj. *Aloes non lotæ*, ℥.100 or ℔.j.ß. *Mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.iiij. confect them according to Art: the powder alone is miniſtred from ℥.ij. to ℥.iij. but being receiued in hony from ℥.j. to ℥.j.ß.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos.

Hiera Diacolocynthidos which hath bene in ſtead of all other deſcribed of the ancient Phyſitions, by purging ſafely and gently all groſſe and viſcours humours, eſpecially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is eſpeciall good againſt the Palſey, quiuering Crampe, Goute, and inueterate diſeaſes of the nerues, and alſo for the Dropſie. Secondly for melancholy, *Mania*, *Epilepſia*, Scabbe, Leproſie, maligne vlcer, Cancre, and *Elephantiaſis*, which diſeaſes do expugne gentle medicines. ℞. *Stœcados*, *Marrubij*, *Camedrios*, *Hyperici*, *Scyllæ aſſatæ*, *Polij*, *Calaminthes montanæ*, *Cinamomi*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Epithymi*, *Polypodij quercini aridi*, *quatuor ſeminum frigido. maio. mundatorum*, ana ℥.j.ß. *pulpæ Colocynthidis*, *Scammonij*, *Hellebori nigri*, *præparatorum*, ana ℥.ij *Euphorbij præparati*, *Aloes*, *Myrrhæ*, *Ammoniaci*, *Opoponacis*, *Sagapeni*, *Caſtorei*, ana ℥.j. *mellis cocti in ſucco Cydoniorum*, *& expumati*, ℔.j.℥.iij. thereof are miniſtred; *Colocynthis*, *Scammony*, blacke *Hellebore*, and *Euphorbe*, being bruiſed, muſt be rubbed with oile of ſweete Almonds, and then are two daies to be ſoaked in a muſcilage of *Tragacanthum* and *gumme Arabicke* drawne out of Roſe water, till they haue drunke vp the muſcilage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient compoſition of *Hiera ſimplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, ſauing *Xylobalſamum*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compoſitions do conſiſt of ſtronger ſimples, ſome of *Scammony*, as *Electuarium è Prunis*, *Diacydonion*, *& Electuarium è ſucco Roſarum*. Others beſide be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diaphœnicon*: others be confected of *Hermodactyles*, beſides the two former, that is, *Turbith* and *Scammony*, as *Diatrion* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their compoſition *Colocynthis*, as the confection of *Hamech*; others likewiſe do further take to their compoſition, *Helleborum nigrum*,

& *Euphorbium*: as *Hiera Diacolocynthides*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diseases, but not vsuall. Hereby then it may be gathered, that there is no simple purging medicine practised or put in vse, of which there is not some receipt extant, so that for such purpose more are not requisite.

Hydragogum minus.

Hydragogum minus, drawing out the water of Dropsie-sicke persons mildly without aggrieuance, may be safely vsed both of children, old folke, infeebled persons, and women with child, whether they be aggrieued with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *succ. Rosarum pallidarum*, ℔.ß. *Sacchari albi*, *Mellis optimi*, ana ℥.xv. Boile them till they cast a fome and become thicke, and then put into them *succi radicis Ebuli*, ℔.j. *Prassii sicci*, *sem. Fœniculi tritorum*, ana. ℥.ij. *Acinorum Ebuli & Sambuci*, ana. ℥.ij.ß. *Cinamomi*, ℥.vj. *Macris*, *Galangæ*, ana ℥.iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thickneſſe of honey, ℥ ß. thereof is miniſtred whey of milke, or decoction of Barley, or of Raiſins. It will be more effectuall by putting thereunto of the iuyce of wilde Cucumber, ℥.ß. or of the roote of wild Cucumber, dried and bruiſed, ℥.vj, or of the iuice of the roote of our Flower deluce. ℔.ß.

Hydragogum maius.

Hydragogū maius of *Laur.* mightily expelling water, ℞. *Seri lactis*, ℔.ij. *Sacchari albi*, *carnis Cydoniorum ex aceto coctorum*, ana. ℥.x. *Mannæ Calabrinæ*, ℥.v. Boile them with a lent fire to the thickneſſe of hony; when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureoll prepared in vineger, and oile of ſweete Almonds, ℥.ij It is miniſtred in the Doſe of ℥ ß.

The maner of preparing it, is in this wiſe, ℞. *Foliorum Laureolæ*, ℥.ij. macerate thē foure and twenty houres in vineger of Pomegranates or Purſlaine, boile them ſoftly, ſtraine them, drie them, and bruiſe them, and then put into them of Roſe water, ℔.ß. of the oile of ſweete Almonds, ℥.j.ß. Boile them againe vntill the water be conſumed, and the powder mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the conſumption.

PLANTIVS.

That there ſhould be nothing wanting in theſe receipts, in the laſt place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compoſitions to expell the Dropſie water, notwithſtanding more ſtronger ſimples, ſpecially *Scammony* and *Euphorbium* do purge; yet the Author his meaning was to haue ſome peculiar receipts extant of ſuch ſimples as haue a proper and accuſtomable vertue againſt ſuch redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues of Laureoll is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not bene applied to the compoſition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixtue of the ſimples, how fitly ſuch kinde of compoſitious be applied to the expelling of ſuch water.

Vnguentum è Lathyride.

Vnguentum è Lathyride ſofteneth & prouoketh the belly, draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall perſons, aſſwageth the ſwelling or diſtention of the outward parts of the body betwixt the nauell and the priuities called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doth ſcoure downeward from the

wombe, if the nauell and the lower parts of the belly, and the parts aboue the priuities and the thighes, be therewith annointed; and it ariddeth all such matter vpward by vomit, if the stomacke therewith be madefied. ℞. *Succi Lathyridis*, ℔ß. *succi Esulæ*, ℥.iij. In the which dissolue *radicis Cyclamini*, ℥.ij. *Scammonij*, ℥ß. *granorum Recini & Lathyridis expurgatorum*, ana. ℥.j.ß. *sem. Fæniculi, Rutæ, Anethi, baccarum Lauri*, ana. ℥.j Bruise thē all, and macerate them a day in the iuice: after that take *Axungiæ*, ℥.viij. & *Ceræ*, ℥.iiij. liquefie them, and dissolue all the rest in them by little and little, and boile thē with a lent fire vntill the consumption of the whole moisture, and vntill they all be come to the temperature of an ointment. If the same matter be boiled in ℥.xv. of oile, to the consumption of the liquor, the strained oile will retaine the same vertue. If either Gum Ammoniack, or Waxe, be concorporated with the same ointment to the consistency of an Emplaister, that will cause issue of the water, being laid vpon the belly, but not so forcibly.

Electuarium Diasaru.

Electuarium Diasaru doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the stomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall insult, but hauing intermission, safely, and with facility to be vsed both of aged persons, and of women with child. ℞. *syrupi Menthæ & Violarum*, ana. ℥.viij. Boile them to the thickneſſe of hony, after they haue boiled, (draw away the fire) insperse in *radicis Peponis arefactæ, semi. Raphani & Vrticæ*, macerated in Rose water, dried and pownded, ana. ℥.j. *radicis Asari contritæ, & Cretæ*, ℥.ij. *Cinamomi, semi. Fæniculi*, ana. ℥.iij. confect them to a liquide Electuarie, and let ℥.iij. thereof be ministred either out of Barley, *Mulsa*, or whey of milke.

Plantivs.

The Author seemed much to haue furthered Physicke by these last receipts, especially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Authour there was any extant wherewith we might safely purge the humours vpward: whereas notwithstanding that kinde of euacuation is most necessary to the curing of any diseases.

Pilulæ è Hiera simplici.

WHereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide & consistēt: so now let vs referre pils to all kind of causes and diseases. *Pilulæ è Hiera simplici* be confected with ℥.j. of powder tempered *cum melle rosato*.

Pilulæ stomachicæ.

Pilulæ stomachicæ, which taken before meate, purge the stomacke, helpe concoction, carry the meate downe, and do mildly purge. ℞. *Aloes*, ℥.vj. *Mastiches, Rosarum rubrarum*, ana. ℥.ij. make them coherent with *syrupo Rosato*, or *Absynthij*.

Plantivs.

Whereas there be vj. descriptions extant of the pils of the stomacke, all (this onely receipt excepted) do hurt the stomacke, and cannot conueniently be vsed before meate, because they retaine in their confection Scammony and Turbith, wherwith the whole body (but especially the stomack) is much aggrieued.

Pilulæ Ruffi, seu communes.

PIlulæ *Ruffi*, which be termed also *Pilulæ communes*, being often vsed, helpe concoction, and do not suffer any putrifaction of the meate, do preserue the humours and body from corruption, whereupon they do much availe against the pestiferous ague. ℞. *Aloes optimæ* ℥.ij *Myrrhæ electæ, Croci syuceri*, ana ℥.j. mixe them with aromaticke wine.

Plantivs.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compositions from pilles which consist of sole Aloe, after he addeth other vnto them which consist of Aloe and Rewbarbe, & immediately such as do consist of Aloe & Agaricke, then such as be confected of Agaricke, Aloe & Rewbarbe. And of those he compoundeth other of Agaricke, Rewbarbe, Aloe, and *Senna;* to which in fine he hath annexed *Pilulæ sine quibus*, in the which beside the foure precedent, the vertue and infusion of Scammony rather then the substance is contained. In confection whereof he hath withholden a portion of Myrobalanes, so that the portion thereof being retained, there would be some redundance especially with other so many astringent simples.

Pilulæ Assaieret.

PIlulæ *Assaieret* for that they containe more Aloe then *Hiera*, be more effectuall in working. ℞. *Pulueris Hieræ simplicis*, ℥.j. Aloes ℥.ij. (or according to *Valerius Cordus*, ℥.ij. to whom I rather encline) *Mastiches*, or *Myrobalan. citrinarum*, ana ℥ ß. reduce them them to a masse with sirupe of *Stœchados.*

Pilulæ de Eupatorio.

PIlulæ *de Eupatorio* do purge choler mildly, and do aridde the liuer of stuffing, and corroborate it, and are to be had in more price then the pils which be described to be make of Rhenbarbe. ℞. *succi Eupatorij, succi Absinthij, Myrabolani citrinæ*, ana ℥.iij. *Rhewbarbari electi*, ℥.iij. ß. *Mastiches*, ℥.j. *Croci*, ℥.ß. Aloes, ℥.v. *succi Endiuiæ*, in quantity sufficient to incorporate them.

Pilulæ Mastichinæ.

PIlulæ *Mastichinæ*, for that they containe Agaricke, do more forcibly purge choler and grosse fleame, then they which consist of sole Aloes. ℞ *Mastiches*, ℥.ij. Aloes, ℥.iiij. *Agarici trochiscati, pulueris Hieræ simplicis*, ana. ℥.j ß. and incorporate them with Malmesey.

Pilulæ ex tribus, be confected of the same simples by addition of *Rhewbarbi selecti*, ℥.ij. *Cinamomi* ℥.ß. and incorporate them with sirupe of Cichory.

Pilulæ Imperiales.

PIlulæ *Imperiales* do mildly and moderatly purge out of the intrailes all humours, and therewithall comfort and strengthen them, ridde them of obstruction, and helpe the confection of all parts, seruiceable to nourishment. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.ij. *Rhewbarbari electi*, ℥.j. ß. *Agarici trochiscati, foliorum Sennæ mundatorum*, ana ℥.j. *Cinamomi* ℥.iij. *Zinziberis* ℥.ij. *Nucis muscatæ, Caryophyllorum, Spicæ nardi, Mastiches*, ana. ℥.j. moisten it with the sirupe of Violets, and bring them into a masse.

Pi-

Pilulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo.

Pilulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo, do draw choler, fleame, and melancholy out of all parts of the body, but eſpecially out of the head, eyes and ſenſes; they aſſwage ſuffuſion of the eyes, and preſerue ſight, they take away paine and noiſe of the eares. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*, ℥.xiiij. *Myrobalan. citri. Chepularum, Indarum, Rheubarbari, Maſtiches, Abſinthij, Roſarum, Violarum, Sennæ, Agarici, Caſſuthæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Scammony*, ℥.vj. ß. diſſolue the *Scammony* in the iuyce of Fennell as much as will ſuffice, and ſtraine it through a cloth, and with the ſame iuyce incorporate the fine powders.

Pilulæ è Fumaria.

Pilulæ è Fumaria do extract bilious, ſalt and ſharpe humours, and do correct what ſo is vicious or vnſeemely in the skinne. ℞. *Myrobala. citri. Chebula. & Indar.* ana. ℥.v. *Diadacridij*, ℥.v. *Aloes*, ℥.ij. When all theſe be bruiſed, imbrue them in the iuyce of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a maſſe.

Pilulæ Aureæ.

Pilulæ Aureæ be more effectuall in working then *Pilulæ è Fumaria*, for *Colocynthis* which they containe: they ſcoure the head, and ſenſes, but eſpecially the eyes, and recouer the quickneſſe of ſight, they expell bilious, and alſo flegmaticke humours. ℞. *Aloes, Diadacridij*, ana. ℥.v. *Roſarum rubra. ſem. Apij*, ana ℥.ij. ß. *Sem. Aniſi & Fæniculi, Maſtiches*, ana. ℥.j. ß. *Croci, pulpæ Colocyntidos*, an. ℥.j. *Muſcilaginis gummi Tragacanthæ*, q ß. and confect thereof a maſſe.

Pilulæ de Agarico.

Pilulæ de Agarico do mightily draw choler and ſlimy humours from all the parts of the body, but eſpecially from the head and breaſt, peculiarly ſtanding in ſtead againſt diſtillations and *Aſthma*. ℞. *Agarici, Maſtiches*, ana. ℥.iij. *radicis Iridis, Praſij*, ana. ℥.j. *Turpethi*, ℥.v. *pulver. Hieræ picræ*, ℥.ß. *pulpæ Colocynthidis, Sarcocollæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.j. *ſapæ quant. ſuff.* the rather to reduce them to a conſiſtent ſubſtance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pils of Agaricke, there be orderly diſpoſed all ſuch excellent ſimples as auaile to draw out of the body groſſe fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre diſtant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pilulæ Cochiæ.

Pilulæ Cochiæ do from all parts of the body purge choler, but groſſe fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braine and nerues, whoſe diſeaſes eſpecially they do cure. ℞. *Pulver. Hieræ ſimp.* ℥. x. *pulpæ Colocynthidis*, ℥.iij. ℈.j. *Diadacridij* ℥.ij ß. *Turpethi, Stœcados*, ana. ℥.v. and confect a maſſe of thoſe with ſirupe of *Stœchados*.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Cochiæ, notwithſtanding they do forcibly purge choler and fleame, yet they do not purge all humours at once, as thoſe pils which be termed

Polychreſtæ, and commonly *Aggregatiuæ maiores*. The compoſition whereof differeth nothing from the ancient receipt, ſauing for reſpect of the doſe certaine ſimples be altered. The confection of thoſe pils is much more conuenient then *Pilularum decocto rebus*, or then the pils of fiue kinds of *Myrobalanes* which notwithſtanding containe the ſame ſimples. The deſcription therefore of thoſe pils in this place, ſeemeth vpon good occaſion to be omitted, for that they ſeeme to be contained vnder theſe, as *Pilulæ de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pilulæ de Hermodactylis*.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis, do draw out ſerous or wateriſh humours mightily from the furtheſt parts, eſpecially from the ioynts, moſt agreable in cold diſeaſes of the braine, nerues and ioynts. ℞. *Hermodactylorum*, *Aloes*, *Myrobalano. citri. Turpethi*, *Colocynthidis*, *Bdellij mollis*, *Sagapeni*, ana. ℥ vj *Caſtorei*, *Sarcocollæ*, *Opoponacis*, *ſemi. Rutæ agreſtis*, *& Apij*, ana. ℥ iij. *Croci*. ℥ j. ß. *ſucci Braſſicæ*, *quan. ſuffi.* to the confection of a maſſe.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis do retaine the ancient compoſition, and be of themſelues more effectuall againſt the inueterate diſeaſes of the ioynts, then thoſe which be termed, *Arthriticæ*, and more ſafely to be vſed then thoſe which be called *Fœtidæ*, or which be confected *de Opoponace*, *de Sagapeno*, or *de Sarcocolla*, ſo that it were needleſſe to ſet downe their receipts.

Pilulæ Polychreſtæ.

Pilulæ Polycreſtæ be very auaileable againſt all diſeaſes of the head, the ſtomacke, the liuer, and other ſundry compound diſeaſes of the other intrails: for they draw out of theſe parts fleame and both the cholers. ℞. *Myrobalano. citri. Rheubarbari*, ana. ℥ ß. *ſucci Eupatorij*, *ſucci Abſinthij*, *Myrobalano. Chebularum*, *& Indarum*, *Agarici*, *Colocynthidis*, *Polypodij*, ana. ℥ ij. *Diadacrydij*, *Turpethi*, *Aloes*, ana. ℥ vj. *Maſtiches*, *Roſarum rubrarum*, *ſalis Gemmei*, *Epithymi*, *Aniſi*, *Zinziberis*, ana. ℥ j. confect them with ſirupe of Roſes: they be miniſtred from ʒ ij. to ℥ j.

Pilulæ è Lapide Cyaneo.

Pilulæ è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and fleame, eſpecially good againſt *Melancholia*, ſadneſſe, and madneſſe: againſt the Canker, *Elephantiaſis* and blacke Morphew. ℞. *lapid. Cyanei abluti*, ℥ vj. *Epithymi*, *Polypodij*, ana. ℥ vjij. *Diadacrydij*, *Hellebori nigri*, *ſalis Indi*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. *Agarici*, ℥ viij. *Caryophyllorum*, *Aniſi*, ana. ℥ iiij. *Pulueris Hieræ picræ ſimplicis*, ℥ xv. and confect a maſſe of them with the iuyce of Endiue or Succory.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo for the blacke Hellebore vſed, be more practiſed then *Pilulæ Indæ* which containe alſo Hellebore: wherefore he hath deſcribed thoſe, omitting others; and for that they be more effectuall againſt melancholike diſeaſes the *Pilulæ de lapide Armeno*, for that occaſion he omitteth them.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ è Thymelæa.

Pilulæ è Thymelæa do mightily draw out of the body ſerous humors & water of hydropicall perſons ℞. *foliorum Thymelææ exiccatorum & aceto maceratorum*, ℥.v. *Myrobalana flauarum*, ℥. ß. *Myrobalanorum Cepularum*, ℥.iij. *Mannæ & Thamarindorum* diſſolued in water of Succory, ſo much as ſufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *Pilulis è Thymelæa*, and to them is added certaine aptly confected of *Eſula*, and which are very effectuall to draw out water. I ſuppoſe he omitted as well *Pilulas Lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confuſedly made of a great and vnneceſſary heape of ſimples, and for that *Pilulæ ſine quibus* be effectuall enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pilulæ ex Eſula.

Pilulæ ex Eſula do purge the wombe from the drop-ſicke water with great aggrieuance, and therefore agree onely to ſtrong bodies, and then onely when they be fre from agues. ℞. *corticis radicis Eſulæleminoris* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of Purſlaine, ℥.ij. *grana Recini* purged and parched, xl. *Myrobalanorum cytrinarum*, ℥ j. ß *Chamedryos, Chamepityos Spicæ nardi, Cinamomi*, ana ℈.ij bruiſe them all finely and incorporate them in ℥ j. of Tragacanth diſſolued in Roſewater, & ſo reduce them to a maſſe. They be miniſtred in the doſe of ℈.ij.

Pilulæ è Cynogloſſo.

Pilulæ è Cynogloſſo were not prouided to purge, but to ſtay diſtillations: whether they iſſue to the breaſt and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or elſe where. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.vj. *Thuris maſculi*, ℥ v. *Opij, Hyoſciami, ſem. radicis Cynogloſſi aridi*, ana ℥. ß. *Croci, Caſtorei*, ana ℥. j. ß. and confect a maſſe thereof with diſtilled Roſewater. They be miniſtred from ℈. j. to ℥. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Caſtoreum* added in *Pilulis è Cynogloſſo*, which with Saffron hath ſingular vertue to correct the maliguitie of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt haue bene inconſiderately omitted.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ hauing great power to deuide & ſcoure, are very auailable againſt *Epilepſia, Paralyſis, Aſthma*, & veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer & reins, *Nephritis*, ſuppreſſing of the flowers: it expelleth the child & Seconds: they be more meete in winter, & for moiſt natures whē the bodies be purged. ℞. *radicis Ariſtolochiæ rotundæ*, ℥. j. *radicis Gentianæ, Myrrhæ electæ*, ana ℥. iij. *Aloes, Cinamomi*, ana ℥. ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥. j. when they be all exquiſitely pownd, put in new oile of ſweet Almonds. It is miniſtred in Dole, ℥. j. ß. and the broth in which they be dilaied is all at once to be ſupped.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ be laſt of all commodiouſly added to the reſt, and be excellently deſcribed, becauſe they haue a great opening vertue. They may be made in ſuch forme that they may be drunke: but becauſe they be very bitter, they be more eaſily deuoured in the forme of *Catapotium*.

Polychreſtæ, and commonly *Aggregatiuæ maiores*. The compoſition whereof differeth nothing from the ancient receipt, ſauing for reſpect of the doſe certaine ſimples be altered. The confection of thoſe pils is much more conuenient then *Pilularum decocto rebus*, or then the pils of fiue kinds of *Myrobalanes* which notwithſtanding containe the ſame ſimples. The deſcription therefore of thoſe pils in this place, ſeemeth vpon good occaſion to be omitted, for that they ſeeme to be contained vnder theſe, as *Pilulæ de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pilulæ de Hermodactylis*.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis, do draw out ſerous or wateriſh humours mightily from the furtheſt parts, eſpecially from the ioynts, moſt agreable in cold diſeaſes of the braine, nerues and ioynts. ℞. *Hermodactylorum, Aloes, Myrobalano. citri. Turpethi, Colocynthidis, Bdellij mollis, Sagapeni*, ana. ℥.vj *Caſtorei, Sarcocollæ, Opoponacis, ſemi. Rutæ agreſtis, & Apij*, ana. ℥.iij. *Croci*. ℥. j. ß. *ſucci Braſſicæ, quan. ſuffi.* to the confection of a maſſe.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis do retaine the ancient compoſition, and be of themſelues more effectuall againſt the inueterate diſeaſes of the ioynts, then thoſe which be termed, *Arthriticæ*, and more ſafely to be vſed then thoſe which be called *Fœtidæ*, or which be confected *de Opoponace, de Sagapeno*, or *de Sarcocolla*, ſo that it were needleſſe to ſet downe their receipts.

Pilulæ Polychreſtæ.

Pilulæ Polycreſtæ be very auaileable againſt all diſeaſes of the head, the ſtomacke, the liuer, and other ſundry compound diſeaſes of the other intrails: for they draw out of theſe parts fleame and both the cholers. ℞. *Myrobalano. citri. Rheubarbari*, ana. ℥. ß. *ſucci Eupatorij, ſucci Abſinthij, Myrobalano. Chebularum, & Indarum, Agarici, Colocynthidis, Polypodij*, ana. ℥.ij. *Diadacrydij, Turpethi, Aloes*, ana. ℥.vj. *Maſtiches, Roſarum rubrarum, ſalis Gemmei, Epithymi, Aniſi, Zinziberis*, ana. ℥. j. confect them with ſirupe of Roſes: they be miniſtred from ℈. ij. to ℥. j.

Pilulæ è Lapide Cyaneo.

Pilulæ è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and fleame, eſpecially good againſt *Melancholia*, ſadneſſe, and madneſſe: againſt the Canker, *Elephantiaſis* and blacke Morphew. ℞. *lapid. Cyanei abluti*, ℥.vj. *Epithymi, Polypodij*, ana. ℥.vjij. *Diadacrydij, Hellebori nigri, ſalis Indi*, ana. ℥.ij. ß. *Agarici*, ℥. viij. *Caryophyllorum, Aniſi*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Pulueris Hieræ picræ ſimplicis*, ℥.xv. and confect a maſſe of them with the iuyce of Endiue or Succory.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ de lapide Cyaneo for the blacke Hellebore vſed, be more practiſed then *Pilulæ Indæ* which containe alſo Hellebore: wherefore he hath deſcribed theſe, omitting others; and for that they be more effectuall againſt melancholike diſeaſes then *Pilulæ de lapide Armeno*, for that occaſion he omitteth them.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ è Thymelæa.

Pilulæ è Thymelæa do mightily draw out of the body ſerous humors & water of hydropicall perſons ℞. *foliorum Thymelææ exiccatorum & aceto maceratorum*, ℥.v. *Myrobalana flauarum*, ℥. ß. *Myrobalanorum Cepularum*, ℥.iij. *Mannæ & Thamarindorum* diſſolued in water of Succory, ſo much as ſufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *Pilulis è Thymelæa*, and to them is added certaine aptly confected of *Eſula*, and which are very effectuall to draw out water. I ſuppoſe he omitted as well *Pilulas Lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confuſedly made of a great and vnneceſſary heape of ſimples, and for that *Pilulæ ſine quibus* be effectuall enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pilulæ ex Eſula.

Pilulæ ex Eſula do purge the wombe from the drop-ſicke water with great aggrieuance, and therefore agree onely to ſtrong bodies, and then onely when they be fre from agues. ℞. *corticis radicis Eſulæ minoris* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of Purſlaine, ℥.ij. *grana Recini* purged and parched, xl. *Myrobalanorum cytrinarum*, ℥ j.ß *Chamedryos, Chamepityos Spicæ nardi, Cinamomi*, ana ℈.ij bruiſe them all finely and incorporate them in ℥ j. of Tragacanth diſſolued in Roſewater, & ſo reduce them to a maſſe. They be miniſtred in the doſe of ℈.ij.

Pilulæ è Cynogloſſo.

Pilulæ è Cynogloſſo were not prouided to purge, but to ſtay diſtillations: whether they iſſue to the breaſt and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or elſe where. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.vj. *Thuris maſculi*, ℥ v. *Opij, Hyoſciami, ſem. radicis Cynogloſſi aridi*, ana ℥.ß. *Croci, Caſtorei*, ana ℥.j.ß. and confect a maſſe thereof with diſtilled Roſewater. They be miniſtred from ℈.j. to ℥.ß.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Caſtoreum* added in *Pilulis è Cynogloſſo*, which with Saffron hath ſingular vertue to correct the maliguitie of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt haue bene inconſiderately omitted.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ hauing great power to deuide & ſcoure, are very auailable againſt *Epilepſia, Paralyſis, Aſthma*, & veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer & reins, *Nephritis*, ſuppreſſing of the flowers: it expelleth the child & Seconds; they be more meete in winter, & for moiſt natures whē the bodies be purged. ℞. *radicis Ariſtolochiæ rotundæ*, ℥.j. *radicis Gentianæ, Myrrhæ electæ*, ana ℥.iij. *Aloes, Cinamomi*, ana ℥.ß. *Zinziberis*, ℥.j. when they be all exquiſitely pownded, put in new oile of ſweet Almonds. It is miniſtred in Dole, ℥.j.ß. and the broth in which they be dilaied is all at once to be ſupped.

PLANTIVS.

Pilulæ Ariſtolochiæ be laſt of all commodiouſly added to the reſt, and be excellently deſcribed, becauſe they haue a great opening vertue. They may be made in ſuch forme that they may be drunke: but becauſe they be very bitter, they be more eaſily deuoured in the forme of *Catapotium*.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as be made in a solide forme, by taking where-of the principall parts of the body be comforted and strengthened.

Dianthon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessiue melancholy, and extreme sadnesse, it taketh away qualming and ouercasting of the heart. ℞. *florum Rorismarini*, ℥. ß. *Rosarum*, *Violarum*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥ iij. *Caryophyllorum*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Nucis muscatæ*, *Galangæ*, *Cinamomi*, *Zyngiberis*, *Maceris*, *ligni Aloes*, *Cardamomi*, *Anisi*, *sem. Anethi*, ana, ℈. ij. *Sacchari albi*, *aqua Saluiæ*, *vel Betonicæ soluti*, ℔. j. ß. make thereof an Electuarie in tables.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon.

Electuarium pleres Archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the senses, recouer the decayed memory, and is very commodious for such as haue the falling euill, & difficulty of breathing: it comforteth such as be sadde, or annoyed with *Melancholia*, or disturbed with idlenesse of the braine: it restoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sickenesse. ℞. *Cinamomi*, *Caryophyllorum*, *ligni Aloes*, *Galangæ*, *Spicæ nardi*, *Nucis muscatæ*, *Zinziberis*, *Spodij*, *Sciænanthi*, *Cyperi*, *Rosarum*, *Violarum*, ana. ℥. j. *folij aut Maceris*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, *Mastiches*, *Styracis*, *Calaminthæ*, *Sampsuchi*, *Balsamitæ*, *Ocimi*, *Cardamomi*, *Macropiperis*, *Myrtillorum*, *corticum mali Cytrij*, ana. ℥. ß. and gr. vj. *Margaritarum spendidarum*, *Ben albi & rubri*, *Corallij*, *Serici combusti*, ana gr. xviij. *Moschi* gra. vj. *Caphuræ*, gr. iiij. *Sacchari albi*, *aqua Melissæ soluti*, x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and strengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly institute their compositions according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at those which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breast and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very commodious in all distempers of the lungs, and breast, & it is good for the *Peripneumonia*, and Pleurisie, a consumption and hote cough with an ague. Lastly, for the roughnesse and sharpnesse of the iawes and arteries. ℞. *Gummi Tragacanthi albissimi*, ℥. j. *Gummi Arab.* ℥. v. *Amyli*, ℥ ij. *Glycyrrhizæ*, *sem. Papaueris albi*, *quatuor sem. frigido. maior. corticis Liberorum*, ana. ℥. j. *Caphuræ*. gr. v. *Penidiorum*, ℥. j. ß. *Sacchari albissimi aqua violarum soluti*. ℔. j. Make thereof an Electuarie in *Tesseras*.

PLANT

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diseases, and hath the vertue of another composition called *Diapapauer*, which therefore was here vpon good occasion omitted.

Diaireos simplex.

Diaireos simplex doth by a mild attenuation arid the breast and lungs of all distempers, and it maketh more easie vttering of spittle, meete for hote diseases increasing, and such cold diseases as be not extreme. ℞. *radicis Iridis Florentini*, ℥. j. *pulueris Electuarij Diatragacanthi frigidi, Sacchari Candi*, ana. ℥. ß. *Sacchari albiss. Hyssopi aqua soluti*, ℥. viij. compound thereof a solide Electuarie.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum, auaileth much in hote diseases beginning to bracke, and inueterate cold diseases, as the cough, *Asthma*, and hoarsenesse. ℞. *Radicis Iridis*, ℥. ß. *Pulegij, Hyssopi, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. iij. *Tragacanthæ, Amygdalarum amararum, Pinearum, Cinamomi, Zinziberis, Piperis*, ana. ℥. j. ß. *sem. Lini, Althææ & Fenugraci*, ana. ℥. ij. *Sacchari albissimi, aqua Tussilaginis soluti*, ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diaireos* is here placed in stead of *Diatragacanthum calidum* and *Diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *Caricis, Passulis, Palmulis & Styrace*, which were vnmeete for this composition, ordaine *seminis Lini, Althææ & Fenugraci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempers of the breast.

Diacalaminthes.

Diacalaminthes doth attenuate rebellious and inueterate distempers of the breast and lungs, and the grosse and viscous humours in these parts. It doth scoure and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and in fine prouoketh the floures, vrine and sweate. ℞. *Calaminthes montanæ, Pulegij, Petroselini, Seselios, Origani*, ana. ℥. ij. *seminis Apij, cymarum Thymi*, ana. ℥. ß. *Leuistici, Piperis, Smyrnij*, ana. ℥. j. *Sacchari albissimi, aquæ Violarū aut Rosarum solut.* ℔. j. ß. make an Electuary.

PLANTIVS.

In this compositiō of *Diacalaminthes*, *Origanum* seemeth very aptly added. In the other simples, the Author hath imitated *Galens* composition, and the weights and doses, saue onely in Louage and in Pepper: for the Author taketh of Louage halfe so much, and of Pepper the sixt part so much as *Galen* did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of *Galen* in his fourth booke *De tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnpleasant either in

taste or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with sixe or eight times so much Sugar, in this composition truly which is very hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a dose of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand for those which be termed *Diabyssopus*, and *Diaprassus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessary, lest the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth and comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from qualming and swounding, and lastly abandoneth sorrow. ℞. *quatuor semin. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, seminis Portulacæ, & Papaueris albi, seminis Endiuiæ, Oxalydis, & Cytrij, trium Santalorum, ligni Aloes, Zinziberis, Rosarum rubrarum, florum Nymphææ, Buglossi, Violarum, baccarum Myrti, ossis de corde Cerui, Eboris, Doronici Romani, Cinamomi,* ana ℥j. *Coralij albi, & rubri,* an. ℥ß. *Margaritarũ splendidarũ,* ℥iij. *Ambaris, Caphuræ,* ana gr.vj. *Moschi,* gr.ij. *Sacchari albi, aquæ Buglossi vel Rosarum soluti,* ℔ij.

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargaritõ* might become more excellent and effectuall, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seeds of Endiue & Sorrell, *Cytrij Ebur, os è corde Cerui, Doronicum Rom.* and *Cinamomum:* all which be apparently good for the heart. There be diuerse Physitions which haue put into this Electuarie, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de Gummis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description thereof, this Electuary containeth, except a few hote Aromates, and many cold simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de Gemmis.

Electuarium de Gemmis doth excellently comfort and strengthen the hart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrifaction, doth release the affected of qualming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadnesse. ℞. *Margaritarum splendidarum* ℥j.ß. *Saphiri, Hyacinthij, Sardæ,* that is, *Corneolæ, Granatorum, Smaragdi,* ana ℈ij & gr.v. *Zedoariæ, Doronici, corticum Citrij mali, Maceris, sem. Ocymi Caryophyllati,* ana ℥j. *Coralij rubri, Succini, Eboris,* an. ℈ij ß. *Ben albi, Ben rubri, Caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, Piperis longi, Spicæ Indicæ, folij, Croci, Cardamomi maioris,* ana ℥ß. *trochiscorum Diarrhodon, ligni Aloes* ℥ij.ß. *Cinamomi, Galangæ,* ana ℈ij.gr.v. *foliorum Auri, foliorum Argenti,* ana ℈j. *Ambræ* ℥j. *Moschi,* gr.xv. *Sacchari albi aquæ Rosarum soluti,* ℥xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium è Gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they be not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stone. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuary some part of the Aromates, especially *Ben albũ & rubrum, Cardamomi maioris, Piper longum, & folium*, which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium

Electuarium Diambræ.

Electuarium Diambræ comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine & the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of aliments, but also of cold humours, and drieth away all the coldnesse of the body & of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conceptiō. ℞. *Cinamomi, Doronici Ro. Caryophyllorum, Maceris, Nucis, muschatæ, folij Galangæ*, ana. ʒ.iij. *Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi maioris & minoris*, ana. ʒ.j. *Zinziberis*, ʒ j. ß. *Santali citrini, ligni Aloes, Piperis longi*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Ambaris*, ʒ.j. *Moschi*, ʒ. ß. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with ℔. j. of Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

Plantivs.

Diambræ seemeth to consist of all kind of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *Diacuminum*, and *Dianison*, *Diacinamomum*, *Diazinziber*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Diaxiloaloes*, *Diamargaritoncalidum*, *Diamoscu seu dulce*, & *Diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hote, consisting of hote simples no whit represſed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambræ*, which may supply the want of the rest, lest the student in Physicke should be ouercharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hote, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *Cardamomum* and the long Pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *Rosarum rubra*. ʒ.iij. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hote natures, when the weather is hote, and in hote seasons, in agues and other hote diseases; and the excessiue heate also of these simples hath bene occasion that the vse thereof hath bene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion piperion Galeni* and *Diacalaminthæ*. The Author therefore perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commanded, that the powders should be tempered in twelue times somuch Sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

Puluis cordiacus doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *radicum Tormentillæ, Dictamni, Tunicis & Scabiosæ, sem. Acetosæ, Endiuiæ, Coriandri præparati, sem. Citrij, Rutæ, Cardui benedicti*, ana. ʒ.j. *trium Santalorum, Ben albi, Ben rubri, Doronici Ro. ligni Aloes, Zedoariæ, Cinamomi, Cardamomi, Maceris, Croci, Rosarum rubra, florum Bugloſſi vtriusque, florum Nymphææ*, ana. ℈.ij. *rasuræ Eboris, Spodij*, that is, *Eboris vsti, ossis è corde Cerui, Corallij albi, Corallij rubri, Succini, Margaritarum spendidarum, Smaragdi, Hyacinthi, Granati*, ana. ℈.j. *Serici crudi torrefacti, boli Armeni, terræ Lemniæ*, ana. ʒ.ß *Caphuræ, Moschi, Ambaris*, ana gra vj. reduce them to powder, and make thereof tables with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

taste or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with fiue or eight times so much Sugar, in this composition truly which is very hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a dose of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand for those which be termed *Diahyssopus*, and *Diaprassus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessary, lest the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth and comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from qualming and swounding, and lasty abandoneth sorrow. ℞. *quatuor semin. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, seminis Portulacæ, & Papaueris albi, seminis Endiuiæ, Oxalydis, & Cytrij, trium Santalorum, ligni Aloes, Zinziberis, Rosarum rubrarum, florum Nymphææ, Buglossi, Violarum, baccarum Myrti, ossis de corde Cerui, Eboris, Doronici Romani, Cinamomi,* ana. ℥.j. *Coralij albi, & rubri,* an. ℥.ß. *Margaritarũ splendidarũ,* ℥.iij. *Ambaris, Caphuræ,* ana. gr.vj. *Moschi,* gr.ij. *Sacchari albi, aqua Buglossi vel Rosarum soluti,* ℔.ij.

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargaritõ* might become more excellent and effectuall, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seeds of Endiue & Sorrell, *Cytrij Ebur, os è corde Cerui, Doronicum Rom.* and *Cinamomum:* all which be apparently good for the heart. There be diuerse Physitions which haue put into this Electuarie, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de Gummis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description thereof, this Electuary containeth, except a few hote Aromates, and many cold simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de Gemmis.

Electuarium de Gemmis doth excellently comfort and strengthen the hart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrifaction, doth release the affected of qualming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadnesse. ℞. *Margaritarum splendidarum* ℥.j.ß. *Saphiri, Hyacinthi, Sardæ,* that is, *Cornioli, Granatorum, Smaragdi,* ana. ℈.ij. & gr.v. *Zedoariæ, Doronici, corticum Citrij mali, Maceris, sem. Ocymi Caryophyllati,* ana. ℥.j. *Coralli rubri, Succini, Eboris,* an. ℈.ij ß. *Ben albi, Ben rubri, Caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, Piperis longi, Spicæ Indicæ, folij, Croci, Cardamomi maioris,* ana. ℥.ß. *trochiscorum Diarrhodon, ligni Aloes,* ℥.ij.ß. *Cinamomi, Galangæ,* ana. ℈.ij. gr.v. *foliorum Auri, foliorum Argenti,* ana. ℈.j. *Ambræ* ℥.j. *Moschi,* gr.xv. *Sacchari albi aqua Rosarum soluti,* ℥.xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium è Gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they be not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stone. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuary some part of the Aromates, especially *Ben albũ & rubrum, Cardamomi maioris, Piper longum, & folium*, which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium

Electuarium Diambræ.

Electuarium Diambræ comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine & the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of aliments, but also of cold humours, and drieth away all the coldnesse of the body & of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception. ℞. *Cinamomi, Doronici Ro. Caryophyllorum, Maceris, Nucis, muschatæ, folij Galangæ*, ana. ʒ.iij. *Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi maioris & minoris*, ana. ʒ.j. *Zinziberis*, ʒ j. ß. *Santali citrini, ligni Aloes, Piperis longi*, ana. ʒ.ij. *Ambaris*, ʒ.j. *Moschi*, ʒ. ß. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with ℔. j. of Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

Plantivs.

Diambras seemeth to consist of all kind of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *Diacuminium*, and *Dianison*, *Diacinamomum*, *Diazinziber*, *Diatrion piperion*, *Diaxiloaloes*, *Diamargaritoncalidum*, *Diamoscu seu dulce*, & *Diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hote, consisting of hote simples no whit represſed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambræ*, which may supply the want of the rest, lest the student in Physicke should be ouercharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hote, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *Cardamomum* and the long Pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *Rosarum rubra*. ʒ.iij. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hote natures, when the weather is hote, and in hote seasons, in agues and other hote diseases; and the excessiue heate also of these simples hath bene occasion that the vse thereof hath bene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion piperion Galeni* and *Diacalaminthæ*. The Author therefore perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commanded, that the powders should be tempered in twelue times somuch Sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

Puluis cordiacus doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *radicum Tormentillæ, Dictamni, Tunicis & Scabiosæ, sem. Acetosæ, Endiuiæ, Coriandri præparati, sem. Citrij, Rutæ, Cardui benedicti*, ana. ʒ.j. *trium Santalorum, Ben albi, Ben rubri, Doronici Ro. ligni Aloes, Zedoariæ, Cinamomi, Cardamomi, Maceris, Croci, Rosarum rubra, florum Bugloss vtriusque, florum Nymphææ*, ana. ℈.ij. *rasuræ Eboris, Spodij*, that is, *Eboris vsti, ossis è corde Cerui, Corallij albi, Corallij rubri, Succini, Margaritarum spendidarum, Smaragdi, Hyacinthi, Granati*, ana. ℈.j. *Serici crudi torrefacti, boli Armeni, terræ Lemniæ*, ana. ʒ.ß *Caphuræ, Moschi, Ambaris*, ana gra vj. reduce them to powder, and make thereof tables with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius.

Aromaticum Rosarum maius, comforteth the stomacke, with a moderate heate, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrailes, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth wind, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recouery of a sickenesse. ℞. *Rosarum rubra*, ℥.xv. *Glycyrrhizæ rasæ*, ℥.vij. *ligni Aloes, Santali citrini*, ana. ℥.iij. *Cinamomi electi, Maceris, Caryophyllorum*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. *Gummi Arabi. Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥.ij ℈.ij. *Nucis muschatæ, Cardamomi, Galangæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Spicæ nardi, Ambræ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Moschi*, ℈.j and make tablets with eight times so much Sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *Aromaticum Rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis.

Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis, mitigateth the heate of the stomacke and midriffe, and yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth wind. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum*, ℥. j. ß. *Santali albi & rubri*, ana. ℥.ij. ß. *Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabici, Eboris vsti*, ana ℈ ij. *Mastiches, Spicæ nardi, Cardamomi, succi Glycyrrhizæ, Croci, Xyloales, Caryophyllorum, Galliæ muschatæ, Anisi, Fæniculi, sem. Ocymi, Acinorum Berberis, sem. Scariolæ, Portulacæ & Papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido. maiorum, Rheubarbari electi, Cinamomi*, ana. ℈.j. *Margaritarum, ossis e corde Cerui*, ana. ℈.ß. *Caphuræ*, gra.vij. *Moschi*, gra.iiij. make thereof tablets with eight times so much Sugar dissolued in Rosewater.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuarie of *Diarrhodon*, the Author hath subtracted *Asarum*, for that it doth ouercome the stomacke, notwithstanding it be pownded lightly: and Sugar candie likewise, for that it hath no more efficacy or vertue then white Sugar. The Electuarie of *Diagalangæ*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the cruditie of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessiue heate: in place whereof if need so require, may be substituted *Diambras* or *Diacalaminthes*.

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon.

Electuarium Diatrion Santalon, correcteth the hote intemper of the liuer and atiddeth it of the remnants of obstructing matter, cureth the laundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomacke ℞. *trium Santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, Rosarum rubra* ana. ℥. iij. *Rheubarbari electi, Eboris vsti, succi Glycyrrhizæ, sem. Portulacæ*, ana ℥.ij. *Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ, quatuor sem. frigid. maio. mundatorum, sem, Intubi*, ana. ℥.j ß. *Caphuræ*, ℈.j. and eight times so much white Sugar dissolued in Rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amylum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion Santalon*, as vnnecessary; neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold af-

fects

fects and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this Electuarie *Diatrion Santalorum.*

Diacrocu.

Diacrocu, which is also commonly termed *Diacurcuma*, dissolueth inueterate affects of the liuer and spleene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and a hard tumour lately begunne. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the Dropsie. ℞. *Croci, Asari, Petroselini Macedon. Dauci, Anisi, sem. Apij*, ana. ℥.ß. *Rheubarbari, Meu, Spicæ nardi*, ana. ℥. vj. *Costi, Myrrhæ, Cassiæ lignea, Scænanthi, Carpobalsami, radicis Rubiæ, succi Absinthij, succi Eupatorij arefacti, olei Balsami*, ana. ℥.ij. *Calami aromatici, Cinamomi*, ana. ℥.j.ß. *Scordij, Scolopendrij, succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ij. and ten times so much white Sugar dissolued in Endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacrocu containeth certaine rare simples and hard to be come by, as *Cassia lignea, Carpobalsamum*, and *Opobalsamum*; which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall be as effectuall to the purpose wherefore it is instituted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuall then *Diacrocu* against inueterate obstructions of the liuer and spleene, against an ill habite, and in the beginning of a Dropsie. ℞. *Laccæ præparatæ, Rheubarbari*, ana. ℥.iij. *Spicæ Indicæ, Mastiches, stipitũ Scænanthi, Absinthij Roma. succi Eupatorij Mesuæ, Sabinæ, Amygdala. amararum, Costi, Myrrhæ, Rubiæ, sem. Opij, Ammeos, Fœniculi & Anisi, Asari, Aristolochiæ longæ, Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Gentianæ, Croci, Cinamomi, Hyssopi, Cassiæ lignea, summitatum Scænanthi, Bdellij*, ana. ℥.j.ß. *Piperis, Zinziberis*, ana ℥.j. *Sacchari albi* twelue times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Dialacca maior, Pleres Archonticon, and the exhilarating Electuarie, do retaine the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be most fit for such affects as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating Electuarie, is falsely ascribed vnto *Galen*: it driueth away sadnesse, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirits, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preserueth the receiuer from hoarinesse of haires. ℞. *florum Ocymi, caryophyllati, Croci, Zedoariæ Xylobalsami, aut ligni Aloes, Caryophyllorum, cũ cytrij Mali, Galangæ, Maceris, Nucis muschatæ, Styracis, Calamintha*, ana. ℥.ij.ß. *Anisi, scobis Eboris, Thymi, Epithymi*, ana. ℥.j. *Caphuræ, Moschi, Ambaris, Margaritarum spendidarum, ossis è corde Cerui*, ana ℥.ß. *foliorum Auri & Argenti*, ana. ℈.ß. of white Sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium Diaspermaton.

Electuarium Diaspermatõ refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, & the conduites of the vrine and seede, doth mildly purge them from all corrup-

tion of humours. ℞. *quatuor semi frigido. maio. & mino. sem, Asparagi, Pimpinellæ, Ocymi, & Petroselini, granorum Halicacabi*, ana. ℥ ij. *Milij solu, Succi Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥. iij. *Cinamomi, Maceris*, ana. ℥. ij. *Sacchari albi* eight times so much dissolued in the water of marrish Mallowe.

Electuarium λίθων θρυπτικὸν.

Electuariũ λίθων θρυπτικον, that is, *Lithon thrupticon*, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauel of the kidneis and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneis, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by litle and litle. ℞. *Spicæ nardi, Zinziberis, Cinamomi, Melanopiperis, Cardamomi, Caryophillorum, Maceris*, ana. ℥. ß. *Costi, Glycyrrhizæ, Cyperi, Tragacanthæ, Chamedryos*, ana ℈. ij. *sem. Apij, Ammeos, Aspargi, Ocymi, Vrticæ, Cytrij mali, Saxifragi, Pimpinellæ, Cardui, Dauci, Fæniculi, Rusci, Petroselini Macedoni. Bardanæ, & Seselios, Asari*, ana. ℥. j. *lapidis Spongiæ, lapidis Lincis, lapidis Cancri, & lapidis Iudaici*, ana. ℥. j. ß. *sanguinis Hircini præparati*, ℥. j. ß. make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white Sugar, dissolued in water of Betonie: but when extremity of paine forceth, and vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, *ex passo Cretico*, frõ ℈. ij. to ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium Diaspermaton we haue read, described for many & sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auaile much against the heate of the kidneis, the scalding of the vrine, and other affects to which it is assigned. These simples be withdrawne and expuncted out of that Electuarie, which they terme *Lithontribon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure: and other astringing be added in their stead, which do hinder the breaking of the stone, & the displaying of the sand: sundry seeds and many stones, and the prepared bloud of the Goate is added, all which haue a singular powre and force against the stone, and against all the *Symptomata* which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heate be feared, it may be tempered with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositum.

Electuarium Diacalaminthes compositũ, doth mightily prouoke the flouds and all purgations of the wombe. ℞. *pulueris Electuarij Diacalaminthes simplicis*, ℥. ß. *foliorum Prassij, Sampsuci, Melissophylli, Artemisiæ, Sabinæ, Viridorum*, ana. ℥. j. *Cyperi, sem. Rutæ & Rubiæ, Maceris, Cinamomi*, ana. ℈ ij. and twelue times so much of white Sugar, dissolued in the water of Feuerfew or Pellitory of the wall.

PLANTIVS

The compound Electuarie of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus analeptica.

ANtidotus analeptica recouereth all the powers of the body enfeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the qualming and swouning, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusion of bloud, or by an excessiue euacuation; it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecteth, nourisheth, strengtheneth, & comforteth. ℞. *Rosarum rubrarum, Glycyrrhizæ,* ana ℥.ij.gra.v. *Gummi Arabici, & Tragacanthæ,* ana ℥.ij. & ℈.ij. *Santali albi & rubri,* ana ℥.j and ℈.j. *succi Glycyrrhizæ, Amyli, semin. Papaueris albi, Portulacæ, Lactucæ, & Seriolæ,* ana ℥.iij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, seminum Cydoniorum, seminum Maluæ, seminum Bomberis, seminum Violarum, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum recentium, Amygdalarum dulcium, pulpæ Sebestен,* ana ℥.ij. *Cariophyllorum, Spodij, Cinamomi,* ana ℥.j. *Croci,* gr.v. *Penidiorum,* ℥.ß. when they be all powned, temper them with sirupe of Violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the Antidotary analepticke, which they terme *Resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Barberies, *Pistacia* be put in the receipt.

Antidotus Diasaterion.

ANtidotus *Diasaterion*, augmenteth the genitall seede, procureth a lust to venery, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular helpe and comfort against the imbecillity of the kidneis & spermaticke vessels, whereby it auaileth much for procreation of children. ℞. *radicis Saterij recentis & solidæ, radicis Pastinacæ satiuæ, radicis Eringij, Nucis Indicæ, Strobulorum, Pistaciorum,* ana ℥.j.ß *Cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, Anisi, sem. Erucæ, linguæ auis quæ semen est Fraxini,* ana ℥.v. *Cinamomi, caudarū Scincorum, semin. Bulbi,* ana ℥.ij ß. *Moschi,* gr.v. *mellis optimi despumati,* ℔.iij. The nootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempered, and after *Nux Indica. Strobuli* and *Pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely powned.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *Diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è Cocco baphico seu grano infectorio.

ANtidotus *è Cocco baphico seu grano infectorio*, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, cheareth the heart, & driues away sorow coming without occasiō: it restraineth and bridleth *Melancholia*, & *Mania*, and recouereth the decayed spirits & powers of the body. ℞. *succi Malorū fragrantiū, aquæ Rosarum,* ana. ℔.ij. *in quibus macera horis* xxiiij. *Serici staminis crudi,* ℔.j. Let it boile easily, and then straine it, and in the strained liquor, boile *granorum infectoriorū,* ℥.ij.

the decoction then will become red, in the which being strained, dissolue *Sacchari albi*, ℔ j. ß. Boile them then againe to the thicknesse of hony: in the end put in *Ambræ crudæ contusæ*, ʒ. ß. and when it is liquefied or melted, sprinkle in these powders, *Ligni Aloes crudi, Cinamomi*, ana ʒ. vj. *lapidis Cyanei loti & præparati*, ʒ. j. ß. *Margaritarum non perforatarum*, ʒ. ij. *foliorum auri purissimi*, ʒ. j. *Moschi*, ℈. j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è Cocco baphico, termed *confectio Alkermes*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already died, and as they terme it, *Karmesino*; for that kind of silke vsually is not died without Galle, Alume, and Arsenicke, which is altogether venimous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis Lauri.

ANtidotus *è baccis Lauri*, doth mightily dissipate wind through heat and tenuity, and is speciall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small ℞. *foliorum Rutæ*, ʒ. x. *Ammeos, Cumini, Nigellæ, Leuistici seminis, Origani, Carui, Amygdalarum amararum, Piperis longi, Mentastri, Dauci, Acori, baccarum Lauri, Castorei*, ana ʒ. ij. *Sagapeni*, ʒ. ß. *Opoponacis*. ʒ. iij. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔ j. ß.

Philonium.

Philonium ministred with *Opium* after sixe moneths, doth take away vehement & grieuous paine, either in the great guts or in the kidneis, or in the Spleene, prouoketh sleepe, staieth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of bloud. ℞ *Croci*, ʒ. v. *Pyrethri, Euphorby, Spicæ nardi, Myrrhæ, Castorij*, ana ʒ. j. *Piperis albi, Hyosciami*, ana ʒ. xx. *Opij*, ʒ. x. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔ ij the dose hereof is from ℈ j. to ʒ. j.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approued both by authority of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alume is sufficient to allay vehement torments, and yet notwithstanding the Author following *Mesue* hath put in Myrrhe and Castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct *Opium*. If the maner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of *Opium* is almost twise so much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they terme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may be ministred in a double Dose, namely from ℈. ij. to ʒ. j.

Antidotus termed Requies.

ANtidotus termed *Requies*, without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, asswageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. ℞ *Rosarum, Violarum*, ana ʒ. iij. *corticum radicum Mandragoræ, seminis Hyosciami albi, & Papaueris albi, seminis Seriolæ, Lactucæ, Portulacæ & Psyllij, Nucis muschatæ, Cinamomi electi*, ana ʒ. j. ß. *trium Santalorum, Spodij, Tragacanthæ*, ana ℈. ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum*.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

ANtidotus termed *Requies*, hath lesse *Opium* then any kind of *Philonium* or of *Opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold; notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *Opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *Opium*, truly it doth not a litle auaile to asswage the burning heate of agues, and dotage, thirst, and whatsoeuer *Symptomata* do proceede of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *Philonium* are to be abandoned as nothing necessary, as both the Antidotary *Diolibanum* and *Athanasia*, and *Musa ænea*, *Requies cum Opio*, *Trifera magna*, & *Esdiæ magna*, of what Authour soeuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *Opium*, if they be ordained to asswage paine, *Philonium* described by this Author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall parts, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *Triphera magna*, *Esdiæ magna*, *Aurea Alexandrina*, and *Athanasia*, *Theriace* and *Mithridatum* may therefore stand in their stead. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is very dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace diatessaron.

THeriace *diatessaron* is excellent good against Epilepsie, Conuulsiõ, Palsey, Cruditie of the stomack, ill Habite, Dropsie, and other cold diseases. Further it auaileth much against venime receiued, against the biting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. ℞. *radicis Gentianæ*, *baccarum Lauri*, *Myrrhæ*, *Aristolochiæ rotundæ*, ana. ℥ ij. and when they be very seriously pownded, receiue and mixe with *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔ ij.

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

THeriace *Andromachi senioris* preuaileth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the Apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, *Cephalalgia*, *Asthma*, *Hæmaptois*, aggrieuance in the stomacke, Iaundies, Dropsie, paines of the kidneis, colicke, goute, melancholicke and lunaticke men, and lastly the Leprosie: it expelleth the floures and a dead child: it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomacke, and the whole body, and preserueth it from a pestilent contagion. ℞. *Trochiscorum scyllitic orum*, ℥ vj. *Trochiscorum theriacorum*, *Magnatis bædycroi*, *Piperis longi*, *Opij*, ana. ℥ iij. *Rosarum rubrarum*, *seminis Napi syluestris*, *Scordij*, *Opobalsami*, *Cinamomi*, *Agarici*, ana. ℥ j. ß. *Myrrhæ*, *Costi*, *Croci*, *Cassiæ lignea*, *Nardi Indicæ*, *Stœnanthi*, *Thuris masculi*, *Piperis albi & nigri*, *Dictamni*, *Mærrubij*, *Rheubarbari*, *Stœchadis*, *semi. Petroselini*, *Macedo*, *Calamites*, *Terebinthinæ*, *Zinziberis*, *radicis Pentaphylli*, ana. ℥ vj. *Polij montani*, *Chamapyteos*, *Styracis calamitæ*, *Mei*, *Amomi*, *Nardi Celticæ*, *Sigilli Lemnij*, *Phu Pontici*, *Chamædryos*, *foliorum Malabatri aut Macis*, *Chalcidis tostæ*, (which may be commodiously pretermitted) *radicis Gentianæ*, *Anisi succi Hypocischidis*, *Car-*

pobalſami, Gummi Arabici ſplendidi, ſem. Fœniculi, Cardamomi minoris, Seſeleos, Acaciæ, Thalaſpios, ſem. Hyperici, Ammeos, ana ℥.ß. Caſtorei, Ariſtolochiæ longæ: Sententis, ſem. Dauci, Bituminis Iudaici, Opoponacis, Centaurij minoris, Galbani, ana ℥.ij. mellis optimi expumati triplum, id eſt, ℔.xiiij.℥.iij Vini optimi odorati, ſo much as ſhall ſuffiſe to diſſolue the liquors and iuyces. The greateſt doſe is ʒ.iiij. or ℥.ß for ʒ.j. of the powder, for ʒ. iiij. of the compoſition containe gra.j. of *Opium*.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the compoſition of Triacle ſet forth by *Andromachus* ſenior, in an Elegiacall verſe, for that neither the number nor the weight of ſimples can in verſe eaſily be changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of ſimples, and peraduenture more conuenient: to the which alſo they added Sothernwood and Gladine, and altered the doſes of certaine ſimples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted ſo certaine. Wherefore without all controuerſie we are to inſiſt on this deſcription onely. Whereas the Author doth admoniſh vs of *Chalcitide id eſt*, vſt vitrioll not to be put into this compoſition, therein imitating *Valerius Cordus*, that ſeemeth very conuenient; for whereas that medicine, eſpecially being burnt, is maruellous cauſticke, *eſcaroticum* and hurtfull to the intrailes, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaile for any externall diſeaſe, there is no cauſe why with ſo great inconueniente and vnpleaſantneſſe of taſte, it ſhould be admitted into this compoſition. For if it be (as ſome men thinke) therefore added to make the compoſition blacke, it ought not for colour ſacke, by taſte and operation ſo much annoy the body. Finally by taking it away, the whole recept will be more commodious, leſſe ſharpe and hote, and will become more pleaſant to the receiuer.

Mithridatum.

Mithridatum doth nigheſt reſemble the power of triacle, and is vſed againſt the ſame diſeaſes with a great deale more facility and leſſe extremity of heate, according vntò the deſcription of *Andromachus*, allowed of *Galen* and other ancient Phyſitions ℞. *Myrrhæ*, *Nardi*, ana ℥.j. ʒ ß. *Croci*, *Cinamomi*, *Scordij*, *Zinziberis*, ana ʒ.vij. ß. *Opij*, ʒ.iiij. graines.xxv. *Styracis*, *Seſeleos*, *Abrotani*, *Libanotidis*, ana ʒ.x. *Caſtorij*, ʒ vii. ʒ.ß. *Scœnanthi*, *Polij*, *Coſti*, *Piperis longi*, *ſem. Dauci*, *Scœnanthi*, *Galbani*, *Terebinthinæ*, ana ʒ.vj. ß. *Piperis albi*, ʒ. v. ʒ.vj. *Petroſelini*, *ſeminis Nardi Celticæ*, *ſeminis Fœniculi*, *folij Indi aut Macris*, *Gentiana*, *Roſarum ſiccarum*, *Mei Athamantici*, ana ʒ.iiij. *Caſſiæ lignea* ʒ. v. ß. *Thuris*, ʒ.vj. ʒ.j. *ſucci Hypociſchidis*, ʒ.vj. gra.xv. *Aſori aut Calami aromatici*, *Phu Pontici*, *Sagapeni*, *fructus Balſami*, *Hyperici*, *Iridis*, *Acatiæ*, *Gumi*, *Cardamomi*, *Policini*, that is, ana ℥.ij, *terræ Lemniæ*, *lumborum Scinci*, *Cypheos*, *Opoponacis*, ana ʒ.vj. *Thlaſpij*, ʒ.vj. ʒ.ij. *Aniſi*, *Hyſſopi*, *Camepyteos*, ana ʒ iij. *Opobalſami*, *Ariſtolochiæ rotundæ*, *Marrubij*, ana ʒ.j. *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔.vj. ß.

PLANTIVS.

There be foure ſundry and very diuerſe compoſitions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (& that the greateſt) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepſus*, deſcribed by *Nicolaus Præpoſitus*, and vſed of all Apothecaries euery where; which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuall againſt maligne and peſtilent

agues

agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lienteries, and many other diseases: and whatsoeuer first Author or inuentor it had, it is now euery where much practised. The second is of *Democritus* an ancient Greeke Author, practised of *Auicenna*, and set out in the Apothecarie booke of *Nicolaus Præpositus*; which as it is found to be both in composition and in vse more facile then the other, so in vertue it is no whit inferiour to the same; but rather more excellent & effectual against al maligne and contagious diseases. The third was described by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Æsius* and other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* ancient Physitions. The two later be not much vnlike, for they consist of the same simples, notwithstanding placed in diuerse order, whose Doses do differ in a certaine few halfe scruples onely, so that they two may seeme fitly to be applyed to the same vse: yet notwithstanding, because this last is somewhat more copious, compounded of 52. simples, and corrected and approued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen*, it is to be esteemed the best of the rest, and most effectuall against the disease tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, because he would haue it vsed onely of all Physitions, and therefore he hath altered the order of the simples, reducing into one place all such as were of one Dose, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue lesse labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiscis, seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è vipera.

TRochisci è vipera, which are vsed in the cõpositiõ of the great triacle; the flesh of chosen & prepared vipers is boiled in pure water with greene Dil and salt, from the bones: then being taken out it is grinded on a marble stone, and it is sprinkled by litle and litle, with like weight of crummes of wheaten bread dried, powring in, in the meane time (if need so require) the owne broth of the vipers, & a litle *Opobalsami aut Succidanei*, whereof Trochiskes be made the weight of ʒ. j. and be diligently dried in the shadow.

Trochisci scyllitici.

TRochischi scyllitici be referred to the same composition of Triacle. ℞. *medullæ Scyllæ assatæ*, ℔. j. *farinæ Erui*, ʒ. viij. and being well bruised they be tempered into *Trochisces*, and be dried in the shadow.

Trochischi hedricoi.

TRochisci hedricoi be likewise applied to the composition of Triacle. ℞. *Mari aut Balsamitæ, Amaraci, Asari, Aspalathi, Calami odorati aut Galangæ, Phu Pontici, Xylobalsami, Opobalsami, aut Succidaneorum, Cinamomi, Costi*, ana ʒ. iij. *Myrrhæ, foliũ Nardi Indicæ, Croci, Cassiæ*, ana ʒ. vj. *Masticis*, ʒ. j. so much wine of the best as sufficeth to the making of Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Cypheos.

TRochiſci Cypheos be requiſite to the compoſition of Mythridate. ℞. *pulpæ Vuarum paſſarum, Terebinthinæ coctæ, Myrrhæ, Scænanthi*, ana ℥.j.ß. *Calami aromatici*, ℥.ix. *Cinamomi*, ℥.ß. *Bdellij, Anicis*, that is, *Blattæ Byzantij, Spicæ nardi, Caſſiæ lignea, Cyperi, Arcenthidum*, that is, *baccarum Iuniperi*, ana ℥. iij. *Aſpalathi*, ℥. ij. ß. *Croci*, ℥.j. *mellis expumati & vini optimi*, ana. ſo much as is ſufficient to the tempering of Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS, *in Trochiſcos.*

There is no alteration made of the Trochiskes which be commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auaileable to the great compoſition left that in the alteration of them there ſhould be ſomewhat changed in the greater compoſitions which be by vſe approued.

Trochiſci è Capparibus.

TRochiſci è Capparibus doth take away the hardneſſe of the Spleene, groſſe melancholy, and diſpatcheth winde. ℞. *corticum radicum Capparis, ſemi. Agri*, ana ℥.vj. *Ammoniaci* ℥.ß. *ſem, Nigellæ calamitæ, ſucci Eupatorij, Amygdalarum amararum, foliorum Rutæ, Ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, ſem. Naſturij*, ana ℥.ij. *Cyperi, Scolopendrij*, that is, *Ceterachi*, ana. ℥. j. receiue and temper the powders in *Ammoniacum* diſſolued in vineger, and make thereof Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſci è Capparibus be very wiſely deſcribed, and yet notwithſtanding if you adde vnto them *Gummi Laccæ ſeu Caucami & Rubei tinctorum*, ana ℥.j. they ſhall become more effectuall; neither be other Trochisks of *Lacca* to be admitted for this purpoſe, but that theſe of Capers be ſufficient enough againſt obſtructions, and inueterate diſeaſes of the Spleene.

Trochiſci de Eupatorio.

TRochiſchi de Eupatorio do diſſolue the obſtructions and tumours of the liuer eſpecially, and doth cure daily agues ariſing thereof, the Iaundies, and beginning of Dropſie. ℞. *Mannæ electæ, ſucci Eupatorij*, ana ℥.j. *Roſarum*, ℥.ß. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of Agrimonie and *Manna* are to be made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſci ex Eupatorio, be ſubſtituted alſo in the ſtead of Trochiskes of Rubarbe and Wormewood, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochiſci Alkakengi ſeu Halycacabi.

TRochiſci Alkakengi ſeu Halycacabi do mitigate the exulcerations of the kidneis and bladder, difficulty of vrine ariſing of thoſe parts, and piſſing of bloud. ℞. *baccarum Halycacabi*, ℥.iij. *ſem. Cytrulli, Melonum, & Cucurbitæ mundatorij*, ana ℥.iij.ß. *boli Armeni, Gummi Arabi. thuris, ſanguinis Draconis, Papaueris albi, Amygdalarum amararum, ſucci Glycyrrhizæ, Tragacanthæ, Amyli, Strobulorum*, ana ℥.vj. *ſem. Apij, Succini, terræ Lemniæ. ſem. Hyoſciami, Opij*, ana. ℥.ij. and with the iuice of winter Cherries, make Trochiskes of theſe ſimples. There be other Trochiskes without *Opium* compounded like vnto theſe.

Trochiſci

Trochiſci è Myrrha.

TRochiſci è *Myrrha*, do mightily bring downe the floures, and do cure the diſeaſe ariſing of their ſuppreſſion, and laſtly do expell the ſeconds, or a dead child. ℞. *Myrrhæ*, ℥.iij. *Lupulorum*, ℥.v. *foliorum Rutæ, Mentaſtri, Pulegij, Cumini, Rubeæ, Aſſæ fœtidæ, Sagapeni, Opoponacis*, ana ℥.ij. and of theſe be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of Mugwort.

Trochiſci è terra Lemnia.

TRochiſci è *terra Lemnia*, do ſtay courſing and outragious humours, eſpecially being thin, do reſtraine the exceſſiue fluxe of the belly inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they do ſuppreſſe profuſion of bloud, iſſuing either out of the noſe, or wombe, or Hemorrhoides, or any other part. ℞ *ſanguinis Draconis, Gummi Arab. Aſſali, Spodij, Acatiæ, Hypochiſchidos, lapidis Hæmatitæ, Balauſtiorum, boli Armeni, terræ Lemniæ, Coralli rubri, Succini*, ana ℥ij. *Margaritarum, Tragacanthæ, Papaueris nigri*, ana. ℥.j. ß *ſeminis Portulacæ toſti, cornu Cerui vſti, Thuris Nucum, Cupreſſi, Croci*, ana. ℥.ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of diſtilled water of Plantaine.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſchi è Ramich be ſubtracted of the Trochisks of *terra Lemnia*, for that they comprehend the greateſt part of them. Theſe Trochiskes *è terra Lemnia* comprehend great ſtore of aſtringing and cooling ſimples, and therefore other aſtringing compoſitions be not requiſite. And ſith this receipt is of all other moſt effectuall and leſſe dangerous, all the other be ſuppreſſed, as *Trochiſci Ramich, Trochiſci Diarrhodõ, Trochiſci Oxyacanthæ, Trochiſci è Succino ſeu Carabæ, & Trochiſci è Spodio*, for that the compoſition of all thoſe is nothing apt nor neceſſary. The Trochiskes of *Diarrhodon* which do conſiſt of Roſes, *Spodion*, red and white Saunders, of Saffrõ and Camphire, may ſupply the place of theſe, eſpecially if they ſeeme to be vnpleaſant in taſte.

Trochiſci è Caphura.

TRochiſci è *Caphura* do aſſwage the heat of burning agues, the feruency of bloud and choler, the inflammation and hote intemper of the intrails, and whatſoeuer thirſt ariſeth thereof. ℞. *Roſarum rubrarum*, ℥.ß. *Spodij, Glycyrrhizæ*, ana ℥ij. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum, Tragacanthæ, Gummi Arabi. Croci, Spicæ nardi Indicæ*, ana ℥.j. *Sãtali citrini*, ℥ij ß. *ligni Aloes, Cardamomi, Amyli, Caphuræ*, ana. ℈.ij *Sacchari albiſſ. Mannæ electæ*, ana. ℥ iij. *Muſcilaginis, Pſillij* depromed out of Roſewater, as much as ſufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ.

TRochiſci *Galliæ Moſchatæ* do maruelouſly corroborate the heart, the brain, and the other intrailes, and do giue a good ſmell to the mouth and the reſt of the body. ℞. *ligni Aloes crudi*, ℥.v. *Ambræ*, ℥. iij *Moſchi*, ℥.j. *Muſcilaginis, Tragacanthæ*, made in Roſewater, ſo much as ſufficeth for Trochiskes.

Trochiſci alyptæ Muſchatæ.

TRochiſci *alyptæ Muſchatæ* haue the ſame effect, either inwardly receiued, or by ſuffumigation, and further, aridde the body of difficulty of breathing. ℞. *Ladani puriſſimi*, ℥.iij. *Styracis Calaminthæ*, ℥.j ß *Styracis rubræ*, ℥.j.

ligni Aloes, ℥.ij. *Ambræ*, ℥.j *Caphuræ*, ℥.ß. *Moschi*, ℈.ß and distilled Rose water as much as need requireth.

Trochisci Bechici albi.

Trochisci Bechici albi, which also be termed *Pilulæ albæ*, do mitigate a sharpe distillation, and do asswage hoarsnes & continuall cough. ℞ *Sacchari albissimi*, ℔.j. *Sacchari candi*, *Penidiorum*, ℥.iiij. *radicis Iridis Florentini*, ℥.ij. *Amyli*, ℥.j.ß. the muscilage of Tragacanth made in Rosewater, so much as sufficeth to the conformation of Trochiskes.

Trochisci Narcotici.

Trochischi Narcotici being safely applied, do asswage the paine of the head and teeth, do procure sleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguish *Erysipelas* and inflammations, and being dissolued in other medicines do mitigate the paine of the externall parts. ℞. *Gummi Arabici & Tragacanthæ*, *Amyli*, ana. ℥.ß. *Ceruse lotæ aqua Rosarum*, ℥.vj. *Styracis*, *Calaminthæ*, *Myrrhæ*, *Castorij*, *Opij sapa solati*, ana. ℈.iiij. *Croci*, ℥ ß. and when they be all bruised they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of Fleewort taken out of Rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought into the order of Trochiskes in this last place, *Narcoticos Trochiscos* against extreme torments, the composition whereof is very apt, and the vse very necessary, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

De Ecligmatis & conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucleis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucleis, do extenuate and deterge grosse humors of the breast and lunges, very conuenient and commodious against *Asthma*, difficulty of breathing, and inueterate coughes. ℞. *Nucleorum pineorum recentium*, ℥.xxx. *pulpæ Palmularum*, ℥.xxxv. *Amygdalarum dulcium & amararum*, *Auellanarum assarum*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Gummi Arabici*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, *Amyli*, *Capilli Veneris*, *Iridis Florentini*, ana. ℥.iiij. *pulpæ Passularum*, *butyri recentis*, *Saccari albissimi*, ana. ℥.iij. *mellis albi expumati*, ℔. iij. *fiat Ecligma*. A wholesome and approued Ecligme more effectuall then the former against the same diseases. ℞. *Cinamomi*, *Hyssopi*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, ana. ℥.ß. *Reripha*, & *Mixaria*, ana. ℥.xxx. *numero*: *Vuarum passarum purgatarum*, *Ficuum aridarum*, *Palmularum pinguium*, ana. ℥.ij. *Fenugraci*, ℥.v. *Capilli Veneris*, M.j. *sem. Anisi*, *Fœniculi & Lini*, *radicis Iridis foliorum Calaminthæ*, ana. ℥.ß. boile them all in ℔.iii. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the strained iuyce with ℔.ij. *Penidiorum* to the thicknes of honey, & then put in *Pinearum expurgatarum*, ℥.v. *Amygdalarum dulcium mundatarum*, *Glycyrrhizæ*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Gummi Arab. Amyli*, ana. ℥.iij. *Iridis*. ℥.ij.

Ecligma è Scylla.

Ecligma è Scylla auaileth against the same diseases. ℞. *succi seu mucoris Scillæ, & mellis optimi expumati*, ana. ℔ j. boibe them to the consistence of an Ecligme.

Ecligma ad Asthma.

Ecligma ad Asthma is an Ecligma which of all other before propounded is most effectuall against *Asthma*. ℞. *Scyllæ assatæ*, ℥ ß. *radicis Iridis, Hyssopi, Prassij, Marruby*, ana. ℥ j. *Myrrhæ, Croci*, ana. ℥ ß. with sufficient quantity of hony, let the compound Ecligma of *Scylla* be confected.

Many simples be condited with Sugar, that they may the longer continue with their full vertue, whereof some be whole, some be bruised: such as be whole be boyled in thrice so much Sugar vntill the whole moisture consumed, there remaineth the perfect consistency of a sirupe, as for example: *Acorus* is condited against the cold diseases of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their strength.

Zinziber is condited against the crudity of the stomacke and slimy fleame in the lungs.

The roote of Bugloss is condited against the palpitation of the heart and qualming.

Peaches, fragrant Apples, the rind of the Citrine, be condited against *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and Peares, be condited to strengthen and corroborate the stomacke.

Walnuts, *Myrobalani, Emblici & Cepuli*, and Nutmegs, being condited, do further the concoction of the stomacke, do get an appetite, and increase strength.

Cherries and the slips of Endiue, Purslaine and Lettuce condited, do refrigerate, asswage thirst, and procure appetite.

Barberies and Ceruises being condited, do allay thirst and the feruency of choler, and restraine fluxe of the wombe.

Satyrion and *Eringium* condited, do increase the seed, and stirre vp a desire to carnality, and further conception.

Conseruæ.

BVt such as cannot well be boiled, let them be bruised and mixed with twise so much Sugar, and so be set in the Sun, and conserued, and retaine the name of compound Sugar, as Iosacchar, Rhodosacchar. But of all other kinds of compound Sugar, these ought especially to be in a readines: Sugar of Rosemary, of the floures of Sage, of the floures of Betony, and of *Stechades*, of the flowres of Piony: for that they be especiall good against the cold diseases of the braine and nerues, to comfort and strengthen them against the Epilepsie and Apoplexie.

The Sugar of the flowers of Flowredeluce, of Maidenhaire and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breast, and ease the lungs.

The Sugar of Comfery doth ſtay ſpitting of bloud.

The Sugar of Violets, and the flowers of Bugloſſe doth refrigerate and cheare the heart.

Sugar of Roſes ſtrengtheneth the ſtomack, ſtayeth diſtillations, and reſtraineth eruption of bloud.

Sugar of the flowers of Cichory cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obſtructions thereof.

Further, there be ſundry medicinable iuyces reſerued to vſe, wherof ſome be ſimple & pure, others mixed with Sugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thicknes of *Sapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *Robuo*, that is, *ſapales*. Theſe iuyces being ſtrained, be permitted to ſettle vntil they wax cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thickneſſe of hony, and then is ſet in the Sunne, and ſo is kept. If Sugar be therewith to be mingled, it muſt be in weight halfe ſo much as the iuyce is.

Succus è Nucibus, termed *Diacaryõn*, auaileth againſt ſharpe diſtillations and *Angina*, and hath of the iuyce of young Walnuts, ℔. iiij. *mellis optimi*, ℔ ij. and be boiled to the thickneſſe of hony.

Succus è Moris, termed *Diamoron*, is good againſt the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and ſharpe diſtillations. ℞ *ſucci Mororum domeſticorum*, ℔. ß. *ſucci Mororum rubri, mellis optimi expumati*, ana. ℔. j. *Sapæ*, ℥. iij. boile them to the conſiſtency of hony.

The iuyce of wild Plumbes be boiled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vſed in ſtead of *Acatia*.

Of Medicines applied outwardly, and firſt of Oyles.

Oleum Roſarum.

Oleum Roſarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the ſtomacke, it doth ſtrengthen, thicken and ſtay fluxes. ℞ *Gemmarum Roſarum rubrarum recentium*, bereft of the prickes and bruiſed, *ſucci Roſarum*, ana. ℔. j. macerate them in ℔. v. of *oleum Omphacinum* which is without Salt, in a veſſell of glaſſe cloſe ſhut; then ſet them ſeuen daies in the Sunne, after boile them three houres in a double veſſell, and the leaues being ſtrained and caſt away, put in new, and change them twiſe or thriſe: in fine, the leaues being againe ſtrained and caſt away, ſet it in the Sunne and boile it in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed. If you want *oleum Omphacinum* without ſalt, the common oile muſt be oftentimes ſtirred and waſhed in the iuyce of ſoure grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum Violarum quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, eaſeth the pleuriticke, and aſſwageth the diſeaſes of the lungs and breaſt: it is made

of

of common oile being old, or of oile of Almonds being new and vnſauory, or which at the leaſt is waſhed with cold water; then freſh purple Violets be put into the oile in a veſſell well couered, and be ſet to Sunne vntill tenne dayes, and euery third day the Violets be changed, and in the end dry Violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphæa.

Oleum Nymphæa doth more refrigerate, and doth eſpecially aſſwage the heate of the kidneis, bladder and head; mitigateth madneſſe, procureth ſleepe: it is made as oile of Violets, of the white flowers of water Lillies macerated in laued oile, but it is ſet in the Sunne twenty daies, in the which ſpace the flowers be changed thrice.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the ſame effect that *Oleum Nymphæa* doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaſeth paine of the head, madneſſe, and procureth ſleepe. The flowers, leaues, and heads of white Poppie being bruiſed, be macerated in laued oile; and it is made as *oleum Nymphæa*, yet it may be mingled in a double veſſell: there be which do preſſe out the oile of the ſeeds of Poppy, as out of Almonds.

Oleum Hyoſcyami albi.

Oleum Hyoſcyami albi is prepared in like order as oile of Poppy, both by maceration and expreſſion, and is as effectuall as oile of Poppie for all the repeated purpoſes.

Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex.

Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex doth more apparently refrigerate, aſſwageth paine proceeding of inflammation, and procureth ſleepe; it is confected of the apples of Mandrake bruiſed and macerated in oile, and eaſily boiled as *oleum Nymphæa*.

Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum.

Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum, doth of all other moſt effectually refrigerate, & doth aſſwage the paines coming of inflammatiõ, and other agrieuances whatſoeuer: being annoynted it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and frenſie; and put to the noſtrils, forthwith it procureth ſleepe. ℞. *Olei* ℔.ij.ß. *ſucci pomorum Mandragoræ*, ℥.iiij. *ſucci Hyoſcyami albi*, ℥ ij. *ſucci capitis Papaueris albi*, ℥ iij. *ſucci Violarum, ſucci Cicutæ tenerrimæ*, ana. ℥.j. *Opij, Styracis, Calaminthæ*, ana. ℥.ß. all which muſt be mixed together, and ſtand in the Sun ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double veſſel vntil the iuice be conſumed: in the end the oile muſt be ſtrained and ſet vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinũ, quod & Cydoniorum, refrigerateth, aſtringeth, is very good for the ſtomack, intrailes and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it reſtraineth vomite, laske, and ſweate. ℞. *Cydoniorum cum cortice & ſemine tuſorum, ſucci Cydoniorum*, ana. ℔.ß. mingle thẽ in a veſſell of glaſſe, & poure in of *Oleum omphacinum*, ℔.j.ß. ſet them in the Sun fifteene daies, then boile

them foure houres in a double veſſell, and the Quince peare being ſtrained, other freſh are likewiſe to be incocted the ſecond time, and alſo the third time, vntill the humour be wholly conſumed. In fine, preſſe out the oile, and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum Myrtinum.

Oleum Myrtinum refrigerateth, aſtringeth, & comforteth, but properly the heart, ſtomack, braine and nerues: it is made as *Milium* of the berries and leaues of Myrtle, by adding the iuyce alſo when they cannot be come by.

Oleum Maſtichinum.

Oleum Maſtichinum, doth by aſtriction corroborate the braine, ſinewes, ſtomacke and liuer, very commodious againſt lientery, vomit, and crudity. ℞. *Maſtiches*, ℥.iij. *aquæ Roſarum*. ℥.iiij. *Olei omphacini vel roſacei*. ℔.j. Boile them in a double veſſell to the conſumption of the water. Wine in ſtead of Roſe water is put in, when as the wearineſſe or the vnluſtineſſe of the ſinewes is to be aſſwaged.

Oleum Menthæ.

Oleum Menthæ doth by annointing corroborate the ſtomacke and other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is confected in this wiſe. The leaues of ſowne Mints bruiſed with the iuyce be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, ſet in the Sunne, boiled and oftentimes changed, as hath bene ſhewed in the oile of Roſes.

Oleum Abſinthij.

Oleum Abſinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doth further concoction, procure appetite, open obſtructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of Wormewood be bruiſed and macerated in *oleo Omphacino*, and it is abſolued as oile of Mint.

Oleum Chamemelinum.

Oleum Chamemelinum, doth with an eaſie obſtruction corroborate the ſinewes, and membranes, and doth excellently aſſwage paine, ℞. *foliorum Chamemeli recentium & tuſorum*, ℔.j. infuſe and macerate them in ſweete mature oile, and let them ſtand in the Sunne twenty of the Canicular daies, and ſtraining and caſting away the leaues, reſerue the oile.

Oleum Liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum aſſwageth the paine of the breaſt, ſtomacke, wombe, kidneis, bladder, and ſinewes, & doth eaſe and concoct them. ℞. *florum Liliorum alborum, integrorum*, caſting onely away the yellow filaments, ℔.j. macerate them in ſweete and mature oile, and ſet them in the Sun twenty daies. There is alſo another compound oile made thereof, more effectuall to all the purpoſes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiueth *Maſtiches*, *Calami aromatici*, *Coſti*, *olei Pyrethri*, *Carpobalſami*, ana. ℥.j. *Caryophyllorum & Cinamomi*, ana. ℥.ß. *Croci*. ℥.iij. Bruiſe them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let thē boile a litle, and being taken from the fire, poure in of ſweete oyle, ℔. ij. of the leaues of Lillies, ℥.viij. ſet them forty dayes in the Sunne, then ſtraine out the oile, and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum

Oleum Leucoij lentei.

Oleum Leucoij lentei, assvageth the paines of the breast, kidneis, sinewes, and ioynts. ℞. *florum Leucoij*, ℔.j. macerated in ℔.j.ß. of sweete oile set in the Sun ten dayes changing the flowers thrise: and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto, if you thinke good, ℥.ij. of the drie flowers.

Oleum Iasminum.

Oleum Iasminum worketh the same effect which *Leucoij* did, but more forcibly. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oile, it is made as the oyle of Lillies was of the flowers of Iasmine.

Oleum Anethinum.

Oleum Anethinum doth moderately calefie and digest, assvageth paine of the head, and ach of the sinewes, procureth sleepe: it is made of the leaues of Dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oile, and set in the Sun one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oile being strained frō the leaues is reserued.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium.

Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated parts, especially the lungs and kidneis: it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feauer, and be consumed. It is made in this wise: Sweete Almonds being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is poured vpon them a little Rosewater: after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a litle bag, they are pressed in a presse, vntill the oile issue out.

Oleum Lumbricorum.

Oleum Lumbricorum doth mollifie with a moderate heate, and assvage paine, very conueniēt for such as be bruised, & haue paine in the ioynts. ℞. *Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & præparatorum*, ℔.ß. *vini albi*, ℥.ij. *olei dulcis*, ℔.ij Boile them to the consumption of the wine and the washing of the Wormes, then straine the oile, and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Irinum.

Oleum Irinum doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it assvageth paine of the liuer, wombe, and ioynts: it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. ℞. *Radicum Iridis tunsarum*, ℔.ß. *florum integrorum*, ℔.j. *decocti*; or if you wish to haue it worke more effectually, take of the iuyce of another Floure-deluce, ℔.j. *olei dulcis*, ℔.ij.ß. boile them in a double vessel till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues, preserue the oile.

Oleum Rutaceum.

Oleum Rutaceum calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth wind more forcibly then Dill, it auaileth against the Cholicke, Palsey, Crampe and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. ℞. *foliorum Rutæ mediocri succorum, succi eiusdem*, ana. ℔.ß macerate them three daies in, ℔.ij of sweete

oile: boile them in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed, and then ſtraining the Rew, change it three or foure times: in fine, reſerue the oile expreſſed.

Oleum Amygdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and deuide, doth diſſipate wind, eſpecially the noiſe of the eares, and openeth the obſtructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifieth hardneſſe, but eſpecially of the ſinewes; it is confected of bitter Almonds dried and purged bruiſed and calcfied in hote boyling water, and preſſed in a preſſe vntill the oile come out.

Oleum è Capparibus.

Oleum è Capparibus by extenuation and deterſiō doth diſſolue euery hardneſſe and obſtruction, but eſpecially of the ſpleene; it aſſwageth the aggrieuances, and caſeth euery diſeaſe of the ſame. ℞. *cortic. radicum Tamariſci, foliorum Tamariſci, ſem. Agni, Scolopendrij ſeu Aſplenij, Cyperi*, ana. ℥ ij. *Aceti, vini optimi*, ana. ℥ ij *olei maturi*, ℔ j. boile them in a double veſſell to the conſumption of the wine and vineger, then ſtraine the oile, and ſtore it.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doth caleſie attenuate, digeſt & ſtrengthen, and as well the ſimple as the compound doth redreſſe the cold and flatulent diſeaſes of the braine, ſtomacke, liuer, ſpleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. ℞. *Spicæ nardi*, ℥ iiij. *vini optimi, aquæ roſaceæ*. ana. ℥ ij. ß. *olei dulcis*, ℔ j. ß boile them three houres in a double veſſell with no very quicke fire, vntill the wine and the water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compoſitum.

Oleum Nardinum compoſitū, ℞. *Spicæ nardi*, ℥ iij *Sampſuchi*, ℥ ij. *Xiloaloes, Enulæ, folij Macris aut Calami aromatici aut Galangæ, foliorum Lauri, Cyperi, Scœnanthi, Cardamomi*, ana ℥ j. ß theſe being bruiſed poure into them *vini, aquæ roſaceæ*, ana. ℔ j. *olei dulcis*, ℔ v. macerate them foure and twenty houres, and then boile them in a double veſſell ſixe houres, ſtirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be conſumed.

Oleum Laurinum.

Oleum Laurinum is hote and extenuating, doth diſſipate the wind of the ſtomack, the Cholicke, and diſſolueth cold diſeaſes of the head, intrailes, wombe, kidneis and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be bruiſed and boiled a good ſpace in water, and the fat that ſwimmeth aboue the ſtrained decoction when it is cooled, muſt be gathered together & ſtored vp for oile.

Oleum Vulpinum.

Oleum Vulpinum attenuateth and ſomewhat digeſteth, it auaileth againſt the gout and all paines of the ioynts, at all times of the ſickneſſe. Boile a foxe vncaſed, and vnboiled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and ſea or ſalt water; and when it is boiled to the halfe, put in *Salis*, ℥ iij. *olei veteris puri*, ℔ iiij. *Thymi, Anethi, Origani*, ana. ℔ ß. Boile them till one

ioynt

ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water, and then presse out the oile.

Oelum è Scorpionibus.

Oleum è Scorpionibus doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loines, it is thought to breake & disturbe the stone in the kidneis, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the *peritoneum*, or iniected into the bladder. ℞. *radicis Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Gentianæ, Cyperi, corticum radicum Capparis*, ana ℥ j. Bruise them all and macerate them in ℔ j ß. of oile of bitter Almonds, and set them to Sun twentie daies: then boile them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the Sun againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthinæ.

Oleum Terebinthinæ is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then Turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues and ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. ℞. *Terebinthinæ lucidæ*, ℔. iiij. put it in a cucurbite of glasse and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oile, and lastly a yellow oile.

Oleum Recinium.

Oleum Recinium, which they call *oleum de Kerra*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therefore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and riddeth the body of *Psora*, *Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clister, it bringeth out wormes and water: it is made thus. ℞. the seedes of the greater Spurge; being bruised, oile is pressed out of them in such force and manner as out of Almonds.

Oleum Balaninum.

Oleum Balaninum doth dissolue paine and noise of the eares, doth wash away the speckles, pimples, spots, and blacke scarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite: it is made of *Balanum Myrepsica*, which the Arabians cal *Been*, and it is burned, calefied, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almonds.

Oleum è Castoreo.

Oleum è Castoreo auaileth much against the cold diseases of the nerues and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. ℞. *Castorei in aqua vitæ soluti*, ℥. j. *olei* ℔ j. boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum Euphorbij simplex.

Oleum Euphorbij simplex worketh the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nostrils, it bringeth downe fleame. ℞. *Euphorbij*, ℥. ß. *Lenco-ij lentei, vini odoriferi*, ana ℥. v. boyle them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de Lateribus.

Oleum de Lateribus which is also termed the Philosophers oile, doth calefie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolue and dissipate cold humors, and easeth the Crampe, Epilepsie, Palsey, the Gout, and all cold affects of the ioynts and nerues; the making therof is in this wise. Breake an old red tile-stone in litle peeces, burne those in hote coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguish them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntil they be replenished with oile; after take them out of the oile, and bruise them into powder, and put the powder in a cucurbite of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oile of stones, is extreme hote and extenuating, penetrating, drying and digesting; it consumeth cold water whatsoeuer in any part of the body, it dissolueth the Epilepsie, Palsey, Crampe, paine of the sinewes and ioynts, of the spleene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affects of the wombe. This oile cometh not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rockes.

Plantivs in Olea.

The Author imitating the vsuall and ancient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they be outwardly applied: he made choice and hath set downe the most effectuall oiles against all kinde of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which were of little vertue or seemed vnnecessary: for he accounteth *oleum Nymphæa Citrina* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other: & *oleum Populeon*, for that *vnguentũ Populeum* is of greater vertue: & he omitteth likewise the oile of the other mandrake, *oleũ Castinum*, *oleum de Piperibus*, and *oleum Maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facility, and yet haue a greater power to calefie, attenuate and digest.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans is effectuall against *Phlegmonaes*, *Erysipelata* and Tetters, & against euery hote intemper. ℞. *Ceræ albæ* ℥. iiij. *Olei rosati* lb. j. and when they be molten in a double vessell, poure them into another, and by pouring cold water by little and little, and now and then changing, are to be tempered a good space in the end, the strained iuyce of Houseleek or of Sorrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applied to affects not vlcerated; or else vineger affused, if the skinne continue hote and not exulcerated.

Plantivs *in Vnguenta.*

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating ointment according to the vsuall description hath neither the iuyce of Nightshade, nor Houseleeke, yet by adiection of them it becometh effectuall against the affects which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Rosarum.

VNguentum Rosatum is applyed vnto the same affects, but truly it is not of such efficacie. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines grease purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water; then like weight of red Roses bruised must be mingled therwith, and so must stand seuen dayes to putrifie; then melt the greale with a lent fire, and straine it: and againe macerating so much of bruised Roses seuen daies, infusing together halfe of the iuyce of Roses, and oile of Almonds sixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vp.

Vnguentum Populeum.

VNguentum Populeum asswageth Phlegmones, burning of agues, feruent heate of the head and kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe. ℞. *gemmarum Populi recentium*, ℔. j. macerated in ℔. iij. of fresh swines greale prepared, vntill all the simples which in order do follow may in Sommer be come by. ℞. *foliorum Papaueris rubri, foliorum Mandragoræ, foliorum Hyosciami, cymarum Rubi tenerrimarum, Solani, Lactucæ, Semperuiui maioris & minoris, Bardanæ, Violæ, Vmbilici Veneris*, ana ℥. iij. bruise them and mixe them with the greale and the buds of the Poplar, and after ten daies infuse ℔ j. of Rose water. Boile them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if neede so require, boile it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

VNguentum album refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth asswage inflammations and exustions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. ℞. *Ceruſæ*, ℥. iij. *Lythargiri*, ℥. ij. lay them in Rose water a good space, then cast away the Rose water, and put them in a mortar, and then by litle and litle poure into them so much Rose oile as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a litle white vineger, and ℥ j. ß. of Camphire.

PLANTIVS

This kinde of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in steed of those which be termed *vnguentum de Lythargiro, Vnguentum nutritum, vnguentum de Ceruſa crudum, & vnguentum de Ceruſa coctum*, which is termed also *Emplaſtrum de Ceruſa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum astringens.

VNguentum astringens, the astringing ointment, bringeth together the open parts of the body, doth compact the conduites and pores, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the *anus*, and of the gut, and being applied doth stay issue of bloud. ℞. *Gallæ immaturæ, nucum Cupressi, baccarũ Myrti, Balaustiorum, Malicorij, corticum Glandium, Acaciæ, Rhois, Mastiches*, ana ℥ j. Bruise them all exquisitly, and macerate them about foure daies in the iuyce of vnripe Medlars & *Sorborum*

immaturorum. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with ℔.i. of oile of Roses often laued in Alume water, & ℥.iiij. of white Waxe.

PLANTIVS.

This astringent ointment for that it is very forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vsed *pro vnguento Comitissæ* or any other astringing ointment.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos.

VNguentum *Diachalciteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begun, and doth resolue such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers & *dyssepulotica*. ℞. *adipis Suillæ recentis sine sale & fibris*, ℔. ii. *olei veteris, Lythargiri triti & creti*, ana. ℔. iii. *Chalcitidos læuigatæ*. ℥. iiii. The greace and the oile be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitriol must be then cast vpon them, stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palmæ aut saltem Myrti, Sorbi* or *Mespili*: & when it is come to the thicknesse of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) must be put in by litle and little, as it is in boyling. Then boile it againe vntill it staine not the fingers, and be come to the consistency of an Emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Diachalciteos (according to this description of *Galen*) is to be vsed in stead of those foure which *Mesues* hath described, two vnder the title of *Vnguentum Diaphœnicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *Vnguentum palmeum*.

Vnguentum Diapompholygos.

VNguentum *Diapompholygos* refrigerateth, astringeth, and restraineth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a scarre. ℞. *olei rosacei*, ℥. x. *succi Solatri*, ℥. iiii. *bulliant ad succi consumptionem: adde Ceræ albæ*, ℥. v. *Ceruſæ lotæ*, ℥. ii. *Plumbi vsti & loti, Pompholygis, Thuris*, ana. ℥. i. *coquantur in Vnguenti formam*.

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans.

VNguentum *rubrum exsiccans*, the red drying ointmẽt worketh the same effect. ℞. *olei Rosarum*, ℔. i. *Ceræ albæ*, ℥. v. *liquatis insperge Lapidis Calaminaris, terræ Lemniæ, exquisite tritorum*, ana ℥ iii. *Lythargiri, Ceruſæ*, ana. ℥. iii. *Camphuræ*, ℥. i. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum Dialthæos.

VNguentum *Dialthæos* is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. ℞. *Althææ radicum recentium & contusarum*, ℔. ij. *seminis Lini & Fenugræci contusorum*, ana. ℔. j. *macerentur in aquæ* ℔. viij. *deinde leuiter coquantur, & exprimatur mucilago de hac*, ℔. ij. *& olei*, ℔. iiij. *bulliant dum mucilago sit absumpta: tum adde Ceræ*, ℔. ß. *Resinæ*, ℔. ß. *Terebinthinæ*. ℥ ij *percoquantur in vnguenti crassitiem*.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum Dialthæos simplex is here described, for that the compound through *Colophoniam, Galbanum*, and *Gummi Hederæ*, was too filthy, and there were other receipts extant of a more dissoluing vertue.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Resumptiuum.

VNguentum Resumptiuum dicitur, hath great power mildly to mollifie without any manifest heate and therfore may be safely applied to such as haue *Asthma* or *Hecticam febrem*, or Consumption, Pleurisie, or an Ague. ℞. *seminis Lini, Althææ & Fenugraeci, Gummi Arabici, Tragacanthæ*, ana. ℥.ij *macerentur & bulliant in* ℔.ß. *aquæ Rosarum.* Straine out the mucilage, and therein dissolue *adipis Suillæ, Gallinæ, Anseris & Anatis*, ana ℥.ij. *Aesipi*, ℥.ß. *olei Violarum, Chamæmeli & Amygdalarum dulcium*, ana. ℥.ij. *medullæ vituli, Butyri recentis, Ceræ albæ*, ana. ℔.ß. *coquantur in Vnguentum.*

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *Resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, asswage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *Diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, and *vnguentum Philagrij*, neither any other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, and to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum Agrippæ.

VNguentum Agrippæ doth not onely mollifie, but also mightily attenuate, diuide, and dissipate *Oedemata corporis*, cureth inueterate affects of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneis, and by annointing prouoketh the belly, and thereby helpeth the Dropsie sicke. ℞. *radicis Brioniæ*, ℔.ij. *radicum Cucumeris agrestis*, ℔.j. *Scyllæ*, ℔.ß. *radicis Iridis recentis*, ℥.iij *radicū Filicis & Ebuli, Tribuli marini*, ana ℥.ij *tunsa omnia recentis macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non randici*, ℔.iiij. *parum deinde feruefiant, & in expresso olei Ceræ citrinæ*, ℥.xv. *liquefiant in vnguenti consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the ointment of *Agrippa* all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boiled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boiling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherefore the Author did in another place very wisely command that no especiall effectuall cataplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhous & hard matters, of these rootes bruised, and crude, with grease and Waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

VNguentum Aregon, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and is very commodious against cold affects of the body, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the lungs, ioynts and great guts. ℞ *Rorismarini, Maioranæ, radicis Iari, Serpilli, Rutæ, radicis Cucumeris agrestis*, ana. ℥ iiij. ß. *foliorum Lauri, Saluiæ, Sabinæ, Pulicariæ maioris & minoris, radicis Brioniæ*, ana ℥ iij. *Laureoli*, ℥.ix. *foliorum Cucumeris agrestis, & Nepitæ*, ana. ℔.ß. *omnia Maiowensi calle-cta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi*, ℔. vj. *affusa aqua vitæ*, ℔. j. *Deinde coquantur dum contabescant & absumpta sit aqua, oleum percolatur, in quo Ceræ*, ℥.xvj. *liquantur, & adipis vrsini*,

olei Laurini, ana ℥.iij. olei Mastichini, ℥ß. Petrolei, ℥j. Butyri, ℥.iiij. Agitando li pulueres insperguntur, Mastiches, Olibani, ana ℥.vij. Pyrethri, Euphorbij, Zinziberis, Piperis, ana ℥.j. omnia vnguenti formam exeant.

Vnguentum Martiatum magnum.

VNguentum Martiatum magnum is especially good against cold affects of the braine, sinewes and ioynts, against quiuering conuulsion, Palsey, and the goute, and is effectuall to mollifie hard tumours especially of the spleene. ℞. Cerae albae ℔.j. olei ℔.iij. Roris marini, foliorum Lauri, ana ℥.iiij. Tamarisci, ℥.ij. Rutae, ℥ iij. ß. Ebuli, Sauinae, Balsamitae, (thuris, Menthae aquaticae) Ocimi, Saluiae, Polij, Calaminthes, Artemisiae, Hellenij, Betonicae, Acanthi (quae est vrsa Branchina) Asparagi, (quae est Aparine) Anemones, (quae herba venti dicitur) Pimpinellae, Agrimonij, Absinthij, Flomi minoris, (qui & herba Paralysis) Costi herbae hortensis, (quae herba dicitur sanctae Mariae) cimarum Sampsuchi, Semperuiui minoris (quod Crassula appellatur) Millefolij, Semperuiui maioris, Chamedryos, Plantaginis seu quinque nerui, Centauri minoris, Fragariae, Quinquefolij, Tetrahit, (id est, herbae Iudaicae) ana ℥.ij. ℥.ii. radicis Althaeae, Cumini, Myrrhae ana ℥.j. ß. Fenugraeci, ℥.vi. Butyri, ℥.v. sem. Vrticae, Violarum & papaueris rubri, Mentastri, (seu Mentae agrestis,) Mentae satiuae, Oxylapati, Polytrichi, Cardiobotani, (id est, Cardui benedicti) Periclemeni (id est, Caprifolij, seu matris Syluae) Maratri, herbae Moschatae (quae est prima Geranij species) Trifolij acetosi (quod Alleluya dicitur) Scolopendrij (quod est Ceterach) Crispulae (id est, Bupthalmi (caphoratae herbae (id est, Abrotani) Styracis, Medullae ceruinae, ana ℥.ij. adipis vrsini, adipis gallinacei, Mastiches, ana ℥.ß. Thuris, ℥.ij. olei Nardini, ℥.j. The herbes must be gathered in the month of May, and being fresh and greene, must be bruised and macerated seuen daies in the best fragrant wine, and the eight day they must be boyled together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oile must be powred in; then they must be againe boiled vntill the herbes be wasted and the wine wholly consumed: after straine and presse out the oile, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, *Styrax, Butyrum, Adipes, Mastiches, Thus, oleum Nardinum & Cera*; and when they are dissolued with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.

Plantivs.

Of *Vnguentum Martiatum* there be three descriptions described in other Authors, truly not very necessary against the cold affects of the sinewes and other parts, sith that *vnguentum Aragon* tofore prescribed is effectuall enough against them: but whosoeuer desireth to haue this *vnguentum Martiatum*, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, and corrected.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus.

VNguentum *Basilicum minus*, which the ancient Physitions termed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth ease, and is very commodious against increasing Phlegmons. ℞. *Resinae, Picis, Cerae* ana ℔.ß. and oile as much as sufficeth.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Basilicum magnum.

VNguentum *Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers, ℞. *Ceræ albæ, Resinæ, Seui vaccini, Picis, Terebinthinæ, Olibani, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥.j. *quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour thought good to alter nothing in these oyntments, namely *vnguento Basilico, Aureo, Apostolorum, Ægyptiaco & Aemulato*, but he corrected the vncertaine and depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento Citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis Dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of Ceruse, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine manner of putting in the Orenges or Citrines, whose pulpe and iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much better then the rinde.

Vnguentum Aureum.

VNguentum *Aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate and safely cure them. ℞. *Ceræ citrinæ*, ℔.ß. *Thuris, Mastiches*, ana. ℥.j. *olei non rancidi*, ℔.ij ß. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.ij. *Resinæ, Colophoniæ*, ana. ℥.j.ß. *Croci*, ℥.j. the Waxe is melted in oile, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to the.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

VNguentum *Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, and in stead ther- of restore new. ℞. *Terebinthinæ, Ceræ albæ, Ammoniaci*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Opoponacis, floris Aeris*, ana. ℥.ij. *Aristolochiæ rotundæ, Thuris masculi, Bdellij*, ana. ℥.vj. *Myrrhæ, Galbani*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Lithargyri*, ℥.ix. *olei si æstas fuerit*, ℔.ij. *si hyems*, ℔.iij. *Bdellium, Ammoniacum, Opoponax*, and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and Waxe, and boiled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum Ægyptiacum.

VNguentum *AEgyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum*, inueterate and fistulous vlcers; doth exiccate and eate out (foot without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh. ℞. *AEruginis*, ℥.v. *mellis optimi*, ℥.xiiij. *Aceti fortis*, ℥.vij. all these be boiled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

VNguentum *ex Enula*, which is called *Enulatum*, is maruellous effectuall against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist; and also against other filthinesse of the skinne. ℞. *radicis Enulæ ex Aceto coctæ, tusæ & cretæ*, ℔.j. *Axungiæ porci, olei*, ana. ℥.iij. *Ceræ nouæ*, ℥.j. *Argenti viui extincti, Terebinthinæ lotæ*, ana. ℥.ij. *Salis vulgaris bene triti*, ℥.ß the Waxe and the grease be liquefied in oile, and to them is added *Enula*, and after Quicke siluer and Salt, and last Turpentine. It shall be with more safety vsed, if in stead of Quicke siluer, of the iuyce of Fumitory and Limons, ana. ℥.j. be put in, and both of them must be had seuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

VNguentum *Citrinum*, or more truly *Citreum*, doth repreſſe pimples ſhooting out of the skinne, eſpecially in the face, either by meane of choler or of ſalt fleame, and doth exterge ſpeckles, tetters, blewneſſe, filthy ſcarres, and rednes of the eies. ℞. *Boracis*, ℥.ij. *Camphoræ*, ℥.j *Corallij albi*, ℥.ß. *Amianti*, id eſt *Aluminis plumoſi*, *Vmbilici marini ſeu Bellirici*, *Tragacanthæ*, *Amyli*, *Criſtalli*, *Enthali*, *Dentali*, *Thuris albi*, *Nitri*, ana. ℥.ij. *Cerußæ ex radice Dracuntij facta*, ℥.j. *Ceruſæ vulgaris*, ℥.vj. *adipis Suillæ recentis*, *ſalis expertis & puri* ℔.ß. *ſeu Caprini*, ℥.j.ß. *adipis Gallinacei*, ℥.j. Liquefie the fattes in a double veſſell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two Orenges cut in ſmall peeces, ſtraine the fat, and then iniect thereto all the other ſimples finely bruiſed, and temper thē with a ſplatter. Laſt of all let the *Borax* and Camphire finely bruiſed be ſtrewed in, & after it hath boiled & become thicke, ſtere it to your vſe.

Emp: noſtrū pro Temporib:
℞ opij: Pul: ℥j: olej nucis
moſchat: per ex pm: ℥ij
Emp: Cæſaris ℞: m: f: hāc
Emplū.

Of Emplaiſters.

Emplaiſtrum Diachylon ſimplex.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon ſimplex* doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, ſpleene and externall parts, and likewiſe diſſolueth, and by litle and litle diſſipateth any ſcirrhous matter, if it be applied in the beginning. ℞. *mucilaginum ſeminis Fenugræci*, *ſeminis Lini*, *radicum Althææ*, ℔. j. *olei veteris puri*, ℔.iij. *Lythagiri purgati atque triti*, ℔.j.ß. The Litharge muſt be diſſolued in a mortar with oile by litle and litle, vntil they be exquiſitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them ſtill with a ſplatter vntill they become thicke. After put into them leaſurely the muſcilages depromed, and boile them to the ſubſtance of an Emplaiſter, and if need ſo require, that it ſhould be more forcible in working, for euery pound of ſimples put in ℥.j. of the roote of Floure-deluce powned.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon magnum* is more effectuall for all and euery the affects tofore repeated, for that it conſiſteth of more mollifying and digeſting ſimples. ℞. *Lythargiri puri*, *triti*, *& creti*, ℔.j. *olei Irini*, *Chamæmelini & Anethini*, ana. ℥ viij. *mucilaginum ſeminis Lini*, *Fenugræci*, *Ficuum pinguium & Vuarum paſſarum*, *ſucci Iridis & Scillæ*, *Aeſypi*, *Ichthyocollæ*, ana ℥ iij ß. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥.iij. *Reſinæ Pini*, *Cereæ citrinæ*, ana. ℥ ij. reduce them all to an Emplaiſter in like order as hath bene deſcribed in the ſimples.

Emp: noſtrū ſichi
Fugū
Terebin
nat:
& mediani
libani

Emplaſtrum è mucilaginibus.

EMplaſtrum *è mucilaginibus* doth alſo mightily mollifie and digeſt hard tumours, it doth ripen an abſceſſe of humours, and when it is burſt, it ſcoureth the quitture and atture. ℞. *mucilaginum ſeminis Lini*, *Althææ*, *Fenugræci*, *& mediani corticis Vlmi*, ana. ℥.iiij.ß. *oleorum Camæmeli*, *Liliorum*, *& Anethi*,

Bol: Armen: Pul: ℥iij nucis
Pul: ℥iij: m: f: Emplū: S. A:

ana ℥ j. *Ammoniaci, Galbani, Opoponacis, Sagapeni*, ana ℥ ß. *Creci*, ℥ ij *Terebinthinæ*, ℥ ij *Ceræ nouæ*, ℥ xx. make an Emplaister in order before prescribed.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRA.

The ancient Physitions haue described many mollifying Emplaisters, and foure of these they intituled vnder the name of *Dyachylon*, whereof these two be the best. And as for this Emplaister of the mucilages, it worketh more forcibly against all the aforesaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*; wherefore the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Mililoto.

EMplastrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is very conuenient in hard tumors of the stomacke, breast, and spleene, and the outretching *hypochondria*. ℞. *Meliloti*, ℥ vj *foliorum Chamæmeli, seminis Fœnugræci, radicis Althææ, baccarũ Lauri, Absinthij, Sampsuchi*, ana ℥ iij. *Cardamomi, Cyperi, Ireos, Spicæ nardi, Ammeos, Cassiæ lignea, seminis Opij, Anisi*, ana ℥ ij ß. *Ammoniaci*, ℥ x. *Styracis, Bdellij*, ana ℥ v. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥ j ß *Ficus pingues*, xij. *seui hircini, Resinæ*, an ℥ ij ß *Ceræ*, ℥ vj. *olei Maiorana & nardini*, so much as sufficeth; make thereof an Emplaister: liquifie the Goates suet, the Rosin and the Waxe in oile, and put into them *Ficus pingues tritas & cretas*, then *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium* dissolued in vineger, & lastly the powders of the other simples scraped.

PLANTIVS.

Emplastrum è Meliloto, è baccis Lauri, Ceroneum, & *Oxycroceum* seeme to be sufficient against all affects and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessary, namely, neither *Emplastrum è Sinapi*, nor *varia Emplastra è fermento*, nor *Emplastrum ex Allijs*, nor the Emplaister which is imputed to *Aristarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis Lauri.

EMplastrum è baccis Lauri doth maruellously asswage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder, and other parts, especially taking their originall of any cold cause or wind. ℞. *Thuris, Mastiches, Myrrhæ*, ana ℥ j. *baccarum Lauri*, ℥ ij. *Cyperi, Costi*, ana ℥ ß. *mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a maruellous Emplaister for the Dropsie, if the dose of *cyperus* be ℥ j ß & ℔ ß. of dried Goates dung be put thereto.

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

EMplastrum Ceroneum doth mollifie the hardnesse of the spleene, doth release the cold affects of the wombe, and easeth the paines of the breast and shoulders proceeding of cold ℞. *Picis nauallis colatæ, Ceræ*, ana ℥ ij ℥ iij. *Sagapeni* ℥ ij. *Ammoniaci, Terebinthinæ, Colophoniæ, Croci*, ana ℥ j ℥ iij. *Aloes, Thuris, Myrrhæ*, ana ℥ j. *Opoponacis, Styracis, Galbani, Mastiches, olibani, Fœnugræci, Styracis rubri, Bdellij*, ana ℥ iij. *Lythargiri* ℥ j ß And the Emplaister must be made in this wise: *Sagapenum, Ammoniacum, Opoponax, Galbanum & Pix* must be liquified in wine and strained, then put too the *Colophonium colatum, deinde Styracem, Mastichen, Thus, Myrrham, Bdellium, gypsum cretasque*. For whych intent

Turpentine, Alume, Lytharge and Fenugreek. The Emplaister which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands by addition of the powder of Aloes and Saffron, alwaies annointing your hands with oile of Laurell, and thereof concinnate *Magdaleæ*.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum doth mollifie & dissipate also euery kind of hardneſſe, doth asswage and driue away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. ℞. *Ceræ, Picis naualis, Croci, Colophoniæ*, ana. ℥.iiij. *Terebinthinæ, Ammoniaci, Galbani, Myrrhæ, Thuris, Maſtiches*, ana ℥.j. ℥.iij. *Galbanum & Ammoniacum* muſt be liqueſied and ſtirred in vineger: the the Pitch muſt be ſtrained and put therto: after that the Waxe, forthwith *Colophonia* and the Turpentine, a little while after the Maſticke and the Myrrhe. The Emplaiſter being decocted muſt be put in cold water, and being ſtrained out, muſt be wrought with powder of Saffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

Emplastrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and alſo cicatrizeth. ℞. *ſuccorum Apÿ, Plantaginis & Betonicæ*, ana. ℔.j. *Ceræ, Picis, Reſinæ, Terebinthinæ*, ana. ℔.ß. Let three of the ſimples be concocted in the iuyces, ſtirring them eaſily to the conſumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto *Terebinthina*.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei.

Emplastrum Gratia Dei conſiſteth almoſt of the ſame ſimples, & ſerueth to the ſame vſe. ℞. *Terebinthinæ*, ℔.ß. *Reſinæ*, ℔.j. *Cere albæ*, ℥.iiij. *Maſtiches*, ℥.j. *Betonicæ, Verbenæ, Pimpinellæ, recentium*, ana. M.j. Bruiſe the herbes, & boile them in white wine vntill they conſume. Then ſtraine out the liquor, in which concoct the Waxe, Roſin and Maſticke, to an apt conſiſtence of an Emplaiſter, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the Turpentine.

Emplastrum Diuinum.

Emplastrum Diuinum is farre better againſt maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and conſumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new fleſh, and bringeth them to a ſcarre. ℞. *Galbani, Myrrhæ*, ana. ℥.j. ℥.ij *Ammoniaci* ℥.iij. ℥.iij. *Opoponacis, Maſtiches, Ariſtolochiæ longæ, Æruginis*, ana. ℥.j. *Lythargiri, olei communis*, ana. ℔.ß. *Ceræ noue*, ℥.viij. *Thuris*, ℥.j. ℥.j. *Bdellÿ*, ℥.ij. *Magnetis*, ℥.iij. The Lytharge by ſtirring is mingled with the oile after it is boiled, vntill it become thicke. Then the Waxe cut in ſmall peeces is added, which being liquified is taken off the fire, and forthwith be iniected *Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Opoponax* and *Bdellium* diſſolued in vineger and wine, boiled and ſtrained: after the powder, *Myrrhæ, Maſtiches, Thuris, Ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, & Magnetis*, is ſprinckled in: in fine, *pulvis Æruginis*, leſt that if it ſhould be boyled any long ſpace, the Emplaiſter become red.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRVM DIVINVM.

These Emplaisters *de Iannis, Gratia Dei, & diuinum*, which be described against wounds and vlcers, be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnnecessary in this place to repeate any other. For *Emplastrum Oribasij duplex, & Emplastrū Apostolorum* be all comprehended vnder this diuine Emplaister, all which serue to the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacy.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

EMplastrum ad Herniam. ℞. *Gallarum, nucum Cupressi, Psillie, Balaustiorum, Acatiæ, seminū Plantaginis, seminis Psillij, seminis Nasturtij, Cepularum gladium, Fabarum torrefactarum, Aristolochiæ longæ & rotundæ, Myrtillorum*, ana. ℥ ß. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of Roles, then torrefie and drie them. Then ℞. *Consolidæ maioris & minoris, Caudæ equinæ, Glasti, Scolopendrij, radicis Osmundæ regalis, & Filicis*, ana ℥ j. *Thuris, Myrrhæ, Aloes, Mastiches, Mummiæ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Boli Armenæ lotæ in aceto, lapidis Calaminaris præparati, Lythargiri Auri, sanguinis Draconis*, ana. ℥ iij. *Picis nauali*, ℔ ij. *Terebinthinæ*, ℥ vj. or as much as sufficeth to make an Emplaister.

PLANTIVS

There be omitted here also other Emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomack, kidneis and wombe, which be not in vse, and in stead whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessity, so that this number of Emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough, both to store the Apothecaries shop, & to cure the chiefe kinds of diseases, causes and symptomates; neither was it necessary to stuffe this Medicamentary booke with vnusuall and vnnecessary compositions, which cannot but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as availe to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) are described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and parts in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERALL TABL

OF ALL THE PRINCIPALL MAT-TERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLVME.

MVSEVM BRITAN NICVM

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	OF paine in the head.	1
2	Of headach caused of heate.	2
3	Of headach caused of cold.	5
4	Of headach caused of drinesse or moistnesse.	6
5	Of headach caused of blood.	7
6	Of headach caused of choler.	8
7	Of headach caused of fleame.	10
8	Of headach caused of windinesse.	11
9	Of headach caused of the stomacke.	12
10	Of headach caused of drunkēnes.	13
11	Of headach caused of feavers.	14
12	Of headach caused of old paine inueterate in the head.	15
13	Of headach called the Migrime.	17.
14	Of giddinesse in the head called Vertigo.	18
15	Of the Frensie.	21
16	Of the Lethargie.	24
17	Of the losse of memorie.	28
18	Of Carus or Subeth.	29
19	Of convelation or taking.	ead.
20	Of profound sleepe called Sopor or Coma.	30
21	Of the losse both of moouing and sense, called Apoplexie.	31
22	Of the Palsey in halfe the body.	33
23	Of the Palsey in one member only	38
24	Of the falling sickenesse.	40.
25	Of the Crampe.	42
26	Of the Mare.	43
27	Of Madnesse.	44
28	Of Melancholy.	45
29	Against trembling and shaking.	48
30	Of the eyes in generall.	48
31	Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	50
32	Of the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable.	52
33	Of diseases which chance to the eies by blood, choler, fleame and melancholie, and their cures.	ead.
	Idem. The making of an excellent water called a Collyrium.	53
34	Of Pannicles.	54
35	Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	56
36	Of the infirmities of the eyes caused of melancholy.	57
37	Of diseases happning to the eyes by outward causes, as by blowes with sticks, staues or stones.	59
38	Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chips by chance into the eyes.	60
39	Of paine in the eares.	61
40	Of sound or noise in the eares.	63
41	Of deafnesse and slow hearing.	ead.
42	Of Impostumes breeding in the eares.	64.
43	Of vlcers in the nose.	65
44	Of bleeding at the nose.	66
45	Of distillation, rheume and hoarsenesse.	68
46	Of paine in the teeth.	69
47	Of teeth that be blacke and loose.	70
48	Of vlcers in the mouth.	71
49	Of a stinking mouth.	72

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	Against inflammation of the Columella.	73
2	Of a loose Columella.	74
3	Of inflammation the tonsils.	75
4	Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils.	76
5	Of the Squinancy.	77
6	Of the Cough.	79
7	Of the Asthma.	81
8	Of the Pleurisie.	82
9	Of the inflammation of the lungs.	84
10	Of spitting of blood.	85
11	Of spitting of matter.	88
12	Of the Phthisicke.	90
13	Of pauting of the heart.	92
14	Of swouning.	93
15	Of lacke of milke.	97
16	Of abundance of milke.	98
17	Of milke that is curded in the breasts of women.	end.
18	Of inflammation of the pap in women.	99

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1	OF weaknes of the stomacke.	100
2	Of yelking and vomiting.	102
3	Of immoderate thirst.	104
4	Of paine in the stomacke.	105
5	Of inflammation of the stomacke.	end.
6	Of abhorring of meate.	107
7	Of a doglike appetite.	108
8	Of great famine.	110
9	Of euill digestion.	111
10	Of windinesse of the stomacke.	114
11	Of yelking or hicket.	115
12	Of choler.	117
13	Of the fluxe Diarrhea.	119
14	Of the fluxe Lienteria.	121
15	Of the fluxe Dysenteria.	123
16	Of Tenasmus.	126
17	Of the Cholicke.	127
18	Of Iliaca passio.	130
19	Of Wormes.	132
20	Of the Hemorrhoids.	135
21	Of the falling out of the fundament.	137
22	Of clefts of the fundamente	138
23	Of the weaknesse of the loines.	end.
24	Of the obstructions of the loines.	141
25	Of inflammation of the loines.	142
26	Of distempes of the spleene.	145
27	Of the inflammation of the spleene.	147
28	Of hardnesse of the spleene.	148
29	Of obstruction of the spleene.	149
30	Of the Iaundies.	end.
31	Of the euill state of the body.	152
32	Of the Dropsie.	153
33	Of the Dropsie Anasarca.	155
34	Of the Dropsie Ascites.	156
35	Of the Dropsie Tympanites.	157
36	Of the veines that send forth bloody urine.	158
37	Of inflammation of the veines.	159
38	Of the stone in the reines.	161
39	Of vnmeasurable pissing.	164
40	Against vlcers of the reines.	166
41	Of the stone in the bladder.	167
42	Of blood broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.	168
43	Of inflammation of the bladder.	169
44	Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.	171
45	Of the Strangury.	173
46	Of difficulty of pissing.	174
47	Of stopping of the veine.	175
48	Of exulceration of the priuie members.	177
49	Of the continuall standing of the yard.	end.
50	Of shedding of sperme or seed.	178
51	Of losse of seminall copulation.	180

Chap. Fol.

52 Against bursting or rupture. 181
53 Of stopping of Menstruis. 183
54 Of flowing of Menstruis. 187
55 Of Womans flowres. 188
56 Of strangling of the womb. 189
57 Of falling out of the womb. 192
58 Of the mole in the matrice. 193
59 Of inflammation of the womb. 195
60 Of windinesse of the womb.
61 Of exulceration of the womb.
62 Of straightnesse of the matrice.
63 To take away barrennesse. 197
64 Of sore travell in child-birth. 203
65 Of the Sciatica. 205
66 Of the goute in the feete and ioynts. 208.

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap. Fol.

1 A Nexposition of feavers. 213
A table of feavers. 217
2 Of one day feaver. 218
3 Of a Diarie lasting nine daies. 220
4 Of a rotten feaver called Synochus. 224
5 Against continuall feavers. 226
6 Of a burning feaver. 228
7 Of a pure intermitting Tertian. 230
8 Against a bastardly Tertian. 234
9 Of a Quartane feaver. 236
10 Of a Quotidian feaver. 239
11 Of a feaver Hecticke. 240
12 Of an Hemetrice feaver. 243
13 Of the Pestilence. 245

The Table of the fift Booke.

Chap. Fol.

1 WHat swellings happen besides nature, commonly called Apostemata. 253
2 Of the differences of those tumors which happe besides nature. 255. Five whence the differences of tumors above nature doth come. 256. Of hote tumors. ead. of cold humors. ead. Tumors complicate, how evill seemeth to have affinitie with the other. ead. of the chiefe tumours that are caused of flowing of humors. 257. what tumors do associate Phlegmone. ead. of Oedematous tumors. ead. of Erysipelas. ead. of Scirrhous tumors and Cancer. 258. of Lepra. 259. Foure kindes of Impetigo. ead. of white Pustules. 263
3 Of the causes of tumors above nature appearing universally on the outside of the body. 263.
4 Of the signes of tumors besides nature generally appearing, together with the indgement thereof. 265. Foure kindes or times of tumors besides nature. 270. Signes of putrefaction. 278
What abscessions may easily be digested. 280
5 The common order of curing of tumors. 271. Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members. 272. the finding out of the causes, the beginning of the cure of tumours above nature 273. The common ingendring of every Phlegmone, ead. Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies. 274
6 Of Abscessions generally. 276. The best order of curing is declared three wayes. 277
7 Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumours ingendred of bloud. 278
Foure differences of tumours caused of bloud. 280
8 Of the causes, signes, & iudgement of Phlegmone.

Chap.	Fol.
9 The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humors affecting the outward parts of the body.	282
Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone.	283
— 10 Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre.	290
— 11 Of the cure of a Carbuncle.	292
12 Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.	295
13 Of the cure of Gangrena.	297
14 Of Erysipelas and other tumors caused of choler.	300
15 Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.	302
16 Of the cure of Erysipelas.	303
17 Of tumors which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes, both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late — Chyrurgians, cholericke pushes.	307
18 Of the euils called Formica, and of other differences of Verruca.	312
19 The iudgement and cure of Verruca	313.
20 Of Oedema and other cold, flegmaticke and flatuous tumours.	315
21 Of the cure of Oedema caused of flegmaticke humor flowing into some member.	317.
22 Of Tumours above nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are comonly called windie Apostems	321
23 Of a tumor caused of a thin substace, which they call Aquosum Apostema, that is, a waterish Apostem.	323.
23 Of the diseases called Glandule, Scrofi, and Struma, together with other Abscessions which they call Phlegmatica excrescentia.	338
25 Of hard and scirrhous tumours engendred of Melancholy.	344
26 Of a Cancerous tumour, which they — commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.	352.

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1 OF the diuerse names of Morbus Gallicus, & where it had beginning.	359
2 Of the signes thereof.	360
3 Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules.	362
— 4 Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.	364
— 5 Of Fumigations.	ead.
6 Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.	365
7 Of the preparation of humours.	ead.
8 Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.	366
9 What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose.	ead.
— 10 Of the decoction of Guaicum.	367
11 Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood.	368
— 12 Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.	370
Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen	ead.
14 What quantity of the decoction is to — be taken at once.	ead.
15 How many daies this decoction ought — be receiued.	371
16 Of the time of giuing this decoction, — and things to be obserued therein.	ead.
17 Of things to be eschued of him that — receiueth this decoction.	372
18 Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure.	ead.
19 Of Excrements.	373
20 Of Diet to be obserued in this cure. —	374.
21 Of the roote of China.	eadem. —
22 Of the way of making this decoction — of the roote of China.	
23 Of the election of China.	
24 Of another manner of making the — coction with Sa[illegible] and the wood	

Chap.	Fol.
without the wood, and sometime with the barke.	376
25 Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath.	377
26 Of suffumigations which some practitioners vse.	ead.
27 Of the manner of perfuming the whole body.	378
28 Of the symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.	379
29 Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.	ead.
30 Of making Suffumigations.	ead.
31 Of the cure by annointing with quicke siluer.	380
32 To correct the symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.	281
33 Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.	382
34 Of Præcipitatū giuen by the mouth.	ead.

The Table of the seuenth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1 OF Suppositaries.	384
2 Of making Nodulus.	385
3 Of making Pessaries.	ead.
4 Of Clisters or Enema.	386
5 Of making Syrupes.	388
6 Of making Iuleps.	392
7 Of Dosis siue Potio.	ead.
8 Of making Bolus.	397
9 Of making Pils.	398
10 Of making Apozema.	ead.
11 Of making Mulsio.	399
12 Of making Powders.	ead.
13 Of Electuaries and Conserues, of Lozenges and Manus Christi.	400
14 of making Conditum & Conserua.	403.
15 Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.	404
16 Of making a Loboch or Ecligma.	405
17 Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.	406
18 Of Epithema or Fotus.	ead.
19 Of making Sacculus.	408
20 Of making Scutum.	ead.
21 Of making a Cataplasme.	ead.
22 Of making Emplastrum.	409
23 Of making Vnguenta.	410
24 Of making a Liniment.	412
25 Of making Frontale.	ead.
26 Of making Cucufa & Semicucufa.	413.
27 Of making Suffitus.	ead.
28 Of making Collyrium.	ead.
29 Of making Nasale, or Errhinum.	414
30 Of making Apophlegmatismus.	ead.
31 Of making Distillations restorative.	415.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Of Syrupes.

SYrupus Acidus simplex.	418
Syrupus è succo Limonum.	420
Oxisaccharum simplex.	421
Oximel simplex.	ead.
Oximel scylliticum.	422
Syrupus è Cichorio.	423
Syrupus Intubi domestici.	424
Syrupus Byzantinus.	ead.
Syrupus Scolopendrij.	425
Syrupus è radicibus.	ead.
Syrupus Adiantinus.	ead.
Syrupus è Stœchade.	426
Syrupus Rosarum siccarum.	427
Syrupus Nymphæa.	ead.
Syrupus de Papauere.	428
Diacodion.	ead.
Syrupus Violarum compositus.	429
Syrupus Zyziphorum.	430
Syrupus de Hyssopo.	ead.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Prassio. ead.
Syrupus Symphyti. 431
Syrupus è succo Buglossi. ead.
Syrupus è Cortice Citrij ead.
Syrupus Melissophylli. 432
Syrupus è Menta. ead.
Syrupus Absinthij. ead.
Codoniorum Miba, that is, the iuyce decocted to thickneſſe. ead.
Syrupus Myrtinus. 433
Syrupus Fumariæ. ead.
Syrupus è Malis odoriferis. ead.
Syrupus Althææ. ead.
Syrupus Raphani. 434
Syrupus Artemisiæ. ead.

Of purging receipts.

Electuarium è Prunis. 435
Catholicum simplex. 436
Catholicum maius. ead.
Syrupus infusionis rosarū pallidarū. ead.
Electuarium è succo Rosarum. 437
Diacydonion. ead.
Electuarium Diacnicu. ead.
Diaphœnicon. ead.
Benedicta. 438
Confectio Hamech. ead.
Hiera simplex. 439
Hiera Diacolocynthidos. ead.
Hydragogum minus. 440
Hydragogum maius. ead.
Vnguentum è Lathyride. ead.
Electuarium Diasaru. 441
Pilulæ è Hiera simplici. ead.
Pilulæ Stomachicæ. ead.
Pilulæ Ruffi. 442
Pilulæ Assairet. ead.
Pilulæ de Eupatorio. ead.
Pilulæ Mastichinæ. ead.
Pilulæ Imperiales. ead.
Pilulæ sine quibus esse nolo. 443
Pilulæ è Fumaria. ead.
Pilulæ Aureæ. ead.
Pilulæ de Agarico. ead.
Pilulæ Cocciæ. ead.
Pilulæ ex Hermodactylis. 444
Pilulæ Polychrestæ. ead.
Pilulæ de lapide Cyanea. ead.
Pilulæ de Thymelea. 445
Pilulæ ex Esula. ead.
Pilulæ è Cynoglosso. ead.
Pilulæ Aristolochiæ. ead.

Of drie Antidotaries.

Dianthon. 446
Electuariū Pleret archonticō. ead.
Diatragacanthum frigidum. ead.
Diaireos simplex. 447
Electuarium Diaireos compositum. ead.
Diacalaminthes. ead.
Diamargaritonfrigidum. 448
Electuarium de Gemmis. ead.
Electuarium Diambræ. 449
Pulvis Cordiacus. ead.
Aromaticum Rosarum maius. 450
Electuarium Diarrhodon Abbatis. ead.
Electuarium Diatrion Santalon. ead.
Driacrocu. 451
Dialacca maior. ead.
Electuarium exhilarans. ead.
Electuarium Diaspermaton. ead.
Electuarium λιθου Σφυδιου. 452
Electuarium Diacalaminthes, compositum ead.

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus Analeptica. 453
Antidotus Diasaterion. ead.
Antidotus è Cocco baphico, seu grani infectorio. ead.
Antodotus è baccis Lauri. 454
Philonium. ead.
Antidotus termed Regnler. ead.
Thuriace Diatessarum. 455
Thuriace Andromachi seu magna. ead.
Mithridatum. 456

De Trochiscis seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è Viperis 457
Trochisci Scyllitici. ead.
Trochisci Hedrichi. ead.

Trochisci Cyphius. 458
Trochisci è Capparibus. ead.
Trochisci de Eupatorio. ead.
Trochisci Alkakengi seu Halycacabi. ead.
Trochisci è Myrrha. 459
Trochisci è terra Lemnia. ead.
Trochisci è Sapphira. ead.
Trochisci Gallia moschata. ead.
Trochisci Alypti moschati. ead.
Trochisci Bechici albi. 460
Trochisci Narcotici. ead.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis Nucibus. 460
Ecligma è Scylla. 461
Ecligma ad Asthma. ead.
Certaine Condites. ead.
Of Conserues. ead.

Of Oyles.

Oleum Rosarum. 462
Oleum Violarum. ead.
Oleum Nymphæa. 463
Oleum Papaueris. ead.
Oleum Hyoscyami albi. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ simplex. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ compositum. ead.
Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum. ead.
Oleum Myrtinum. 464
Oleum Mastichinum. ead.
Oleum Menthæ. ead.
Oleum Absinthij. ead.
Oleum Chamæmelinum. ead.
Oleum Liliorum. ead.
Oleum Leucoij Lutei. 465
Oleum Iasminum. ead.
Oleum Anethinum. ead.
Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium. ead.
Oleum Lumbricorum. ead.
Oleum Irinum. ead.
Oleum Rutaceum. ead.
Oleum Amygdalarum amaratum. 466
Oleum è Capparibus. ead.
Oleum Nardinum. ead.
Oleum Nardinum compositum. ead.
Oleum Laurinum. ead.
Oleum Vulpinum. ead.
Oleum è Scorpionibus. 467
Oleum Terebinthinæ. ead.
Oleum Ricinium. ead.
Oleum Balaninum. ead.
Oleum è Castoreo. ead.
Oleum Euphorbij simplex. ead.
Oleum de lateribus. 468
Petroleum. ead.
Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans. ead.
Vnguentum Rosarum. 469
Vnguentum Populeum. ead.
Vnguentum album. ead.
Vnguentum astringens. ead.
Vnguentum Diacalciteos. 470
Vnguentum Diapompholygos. ead.
Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans. ead.
Vnguentum Diatheos. ead.
Vnguentum Resumptiuum. 471
Vnguentum Agrippæ. ead.
Vnguentum Arcæi. ead.
Vnguentum Marsiatum magnum. 472
Vnguentum Basilicum minus. ead.
Vnguentum Basilicum magnum. 473
Vnguentum Aureum. ead.
Vnguentum Apostolorum. ead.
Vnguentum Ægyptiacum. ead.
Vnguentum ex Enula. ead.
Vnguentum Citrinum. 474

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex. 474
Emplastrum Diachylon magnum. ead.
Emplastrum Muscilaginis. ead.
Emplastrum è Meliloto. 475
Emplastrum è baccis Lauri. ead.
Emplastrum Ceroneum. ead.
Emplastrum Oxycroceum. 476
Emplastrum de Ianua. ead.
Emplastrum Gratia Dei. ead.
Emplastrum Diuinum. ead.
Emplastrum ad Herniam. 477
Aliud ad Herniam. ead.

FINIS.